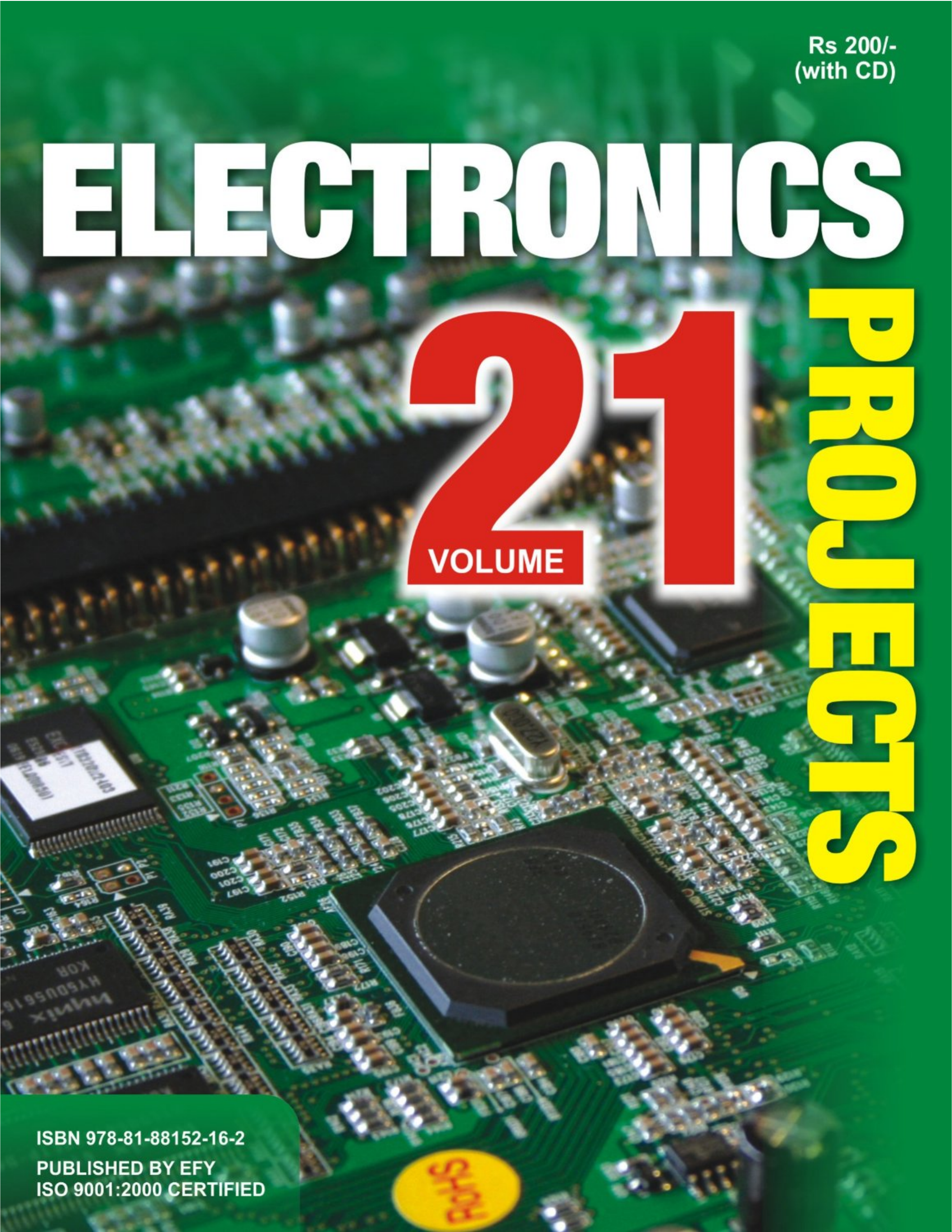
Rs 200/-
(with CD)

ELECTRONICS PROJECTS

VOLUME 21



ISBN 978-81-88152-16-2
PUBLISHED BY EFY
ISO 9001:2000 CERTIFIED

VISIT…

LANZAROTE
Caliente.COM

Electronics Projects
Vol. 21

EFY Books & Publications
FOR YOU

EFY is a reputed information house, specialising in electronics and information technology magazines. It also publishes directories and books on several topics. Its current publications are:

(A) CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS

1.	**Electronics Projects, Vol. 1:** A compilation of selected construction projects and circuit ideas published in Electronics For You magazines during 1979 and 1980.	**Rs 120**
2.	**Electronics Projects, Vol. 2 to 19 (English version):** Yearly compilations (1981 to 1998) of interesting and useful construction projects and circuit ideas published in Electronics For You.	**Rs 120 (each)**
3.	**Electronics Projects, Vol. 20 and 21 (with CD):** Yearly compilations (1999 to 2000).	**Rs 150**
4.	**Electronics Projects, Vol. 16 (हिन्दी संस्करण):** Yearly compilations (1995) of interesting and useful construction projects and circuit ideas published in Electronics For You.	**Rs 95**

(B) OTHER BOOKS

1.	**Learn to Use Microprocessors (with floppy):** By K. Padmanabhan and S. Ananthi (fourth enlarged edition). An EFY publication with floppy disk. Extremely useful for the study of 8-bit processors at minimum expense.	**Rs 180**
2.	**ABC of Amateur Radio and Citizen Band:** Authored by Rajesh Verma, VU2RVM, it deals exhaustively with the subject—giving a lot of practical information, besides theory.	**Rs 75**
3.	**Batteries:** By D.Venkatasubbiah. Describes the ins and outs of almost all types of batteries used in electronic appliances.	**Rs 60**

(C) DIRECTORIES

1.	**EFY Annual Guide:** Includes Directory of Indian manufacturing and distributing units, Buyers' Guide and Index of Brand Names, plus lots of other useful information.	**Rs 300 (with CD)**
2.	***'i.t.'* Directory:** First comprehensive directory on IT industry covering hardware, software, telecom, dotcom and training institues.	**Rs 250 (with CD)**
3.	**Technical Educational Directory:** Includes course-wise and state/city-wise listings of technical educational institutes in India, besides the alphabetical main directory offering all the relevant information about them.	**Rs 100**

(D) MAGAZINES

1.	**Electronics For You (EFY):** In regular publication since 1969, EFY is the natural choice for the entire electronics fraternity, be it the businessmen, industry professionals or hobbyists. From microcontrollers to DVD players, from PCB designing software to UPS systems, all are covered every month in EFY.	**Rs 60 (with CD)** **Rs 30 (without CD)**
2.	**Linux For You (LFY):** Asia's first magazine on Linux. Completely dedicated to the Open Source community. Regular columns by Open Source evangelists. With columns focused for newbies, power users and developers, LFY is religiously read by IT implementers and CXOs every month.	**Rs 100 (with CD)**
3.	***'i.t.'* (Information Technology):** A monthly magazine for 'Techies' and those who want to be. Its readers have two things in common—a background related to IT and the thirst to know more. Topics covered boast technical depth and aim to assist in better usage of IT in organisations.	**Rs 50 (with CD)**
4.	**Facts For You:** A monthly magazine on business and economic affairs. It aims to update the top decision makers on key industry trends through its regular assortment of Market Surveys and other important information.	**Rs 50**
5.	**ePower:** Published every alternate month for the electronic-power industry, primarily consists of all electronic power-supply equipment, and their related components and services. A must read for those in this industry and those catering to it.	**Rs 50**
6.	**BenefIT:** A technology magazine for businessmen explaining how they can benefit from IT.	**Rs 20**

- *Kindly note that these prices can change without any notice.*
- *Registered Post or Courier Delivery for Books and CDs: Rs 40 for first copy, and Rs 15 for every additional copy of any book or directory.*
  Add Rs 25/- on an outside Delhi cheque.
  Important: *The prices mentioned here are the current prices at the time of publication; please reconfirm the prices before placing order, or be prepared to pay the difference—if any*
- *Payment should be sent strictly in advance by demand draft/money order/postal order in favour of EFY associates **Kits 'n' Spares.***

Magazines (Monthly)	1 Year Rs	2 Years Rs	3 Years Rs	5 Years Rs
Electronics For You (with CD)	500	920	1,290	1,800
Electronics For You (without CD)	290	540	760	1,080
'i.t.' (with CD)	420	780	1,070	1,650
Linux For You (with CD)	725	1,395	1,950	3,000
ePower (bi-monthly)	180	360	540	900
Facts For You	400	700	1,000	1,600
BenefIT	190	360	—	—

For retail books orders:

Kits'n'Spares
303, Dohil Chambers
46 Nehru Place, New Delhi 110019
Phone: 26430523, 26449577
E-mail: kits@efyindia.com
Website: www.kitsnspares.com

For subscriptions:

EFY Enterprises Pvt Ltd
D-87/1 Okhla Industrial Area, Phase 1
New Delhi 110020
Phone: 26810601-03
Fax: (011) 26817563, 26812312
E-mail: info@efyindia.com

For bulk orders for books:

Paramount Book Agency
Arch No. 30 (West Approach)
Mahalaxmi, Mumbai 400034
Phone: (022) 24943707, 24925651
Fax: 24950392
E-mail: circulations@ibhworld.com

ELECTRONICS
PROJECTS
VOL. 21

EFY
ISO 9001:2000 CERTIFIED
SINCERELY YOURS

EFY Enterprises Pvt Ltd
D-87/1 Okhla Industrial Area, Phase 1
New Delhi 110020

© EFY Enterprises Pvt Ltd.
First Published in this Edition, January 2006

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any
form without the written permission of the publishers.

ISBN 81-88152-16-1

Published by Ramesh Chopra for EFY Enterprises Pvt Ltd,
D-87/1, Okhla Industrial Area, Phase 1, New Delhi 110020.
Typeset at EFY Enterprises Pvt Ltd and
Printed at Nutech Photolithographers, B-38, Okhla Industrial Area,
Phase 1, New Delhi 110020

FOREWORD

This volume of Electronics Projects is the twenty first in the series published by EFY Enterprises Pvt Ltd. It is a compilation of 24 construction projects and 67 circuit ideas published in 'Electronics For You' magazine during the year 2000.

We are also including a CD with this volume, which not only contains the datasheet of major components used in construction projects but also the software source code and related files pertaining to various projects. This will enable a reader to copy these files directly to his PC and compile/run the program as necessary, without having to type it using the keyboard. In addition, the CD carries useful books, tutorials and other goodies (refer CD Contents page).

In keeping with the past trend, all relevant modifications, corrections and additions sent by the readers and authors have been incorporated in the articles. Queries from readers along with the replies from authors/EFY have also been published towards the end of relevant articles. It is a sincere endeavor on our part to make each project as error-free and comprehensive as possible. However, EFY cannot resume any responsibility if readers are unable to make a circuit successfully, for whatever reason.

This collection of a large number of tested circuit ideas and construction projects in a handy volume would provide all classes of electronics enthusiasts—be they students, teachers, hobbyists or professionals—with a valuable source of electronic circuits, which can be fabricated using readily-available and reasonably-priced components. These circuits could either be used independently or in combination with other circuits, described in this and other volumes. We are sure that this volume, like its predecessors, will generate tremendous interest amongst its readers.

CONTENTS

Section A: Construction Projects

1. Conversion of Audio CD Player to Video CD Player — I 13
2. Conversion of Audio CD Player to Video CD Player — II 16
3. Microprocessor-Controlled Transistor Lead Identifier 19
4. PC-Based Speed Monitoring System 28
5. Stereo Cassette Player 33
6. Resonance Type L-C Meter 39
7. Electrolysis-Proof Complete Water-Level Solution 44
8. Smart Clap Switch 49
9. Electronic Voting Machine 52
10. Digital Number Shooting Game 58
11. PC Interfaced Audio Playback Device: M-Player 62
12. Portable Ozone Generator 69
13. Conference Timer 77
14. Build Your Own C-band Satellite TV Receiver 80
15. EPROM-Based Programmable Number Lock 87
16. Display Schemes for Indian Languages (Hardware and Software) 90
17. 8085 µP-Kit Based Simple IC Tester 107
18. Digital Code Lock 111
19. MOSFET-Based 50Hz UPS-Cum-EPS 115
20. R-2R D/A Converter-Based Function Generator Using PIC16C84 Microcontroller 124
21. PC-to-PC Communication Using InfraRed/Laser Beam 130
22. Multi-Effect Chaser Lights Using 8051 Microcontroller 136
23. Electronic Bell System 140
24. Simple Telephone Recording/Answering Machine 144

Section B: Circuit Ideas

1. Multipurpose Circuit for Telephones 149
2. Simple Code Lock 149
3. Automatic Bathroom Light 150
4. Smart Fluid Level Indicator 151

5. Automatic School Bell System 152

6. Designing An RF Probe ... 154
7. Bass and Treble for Stereo System ... 154
8. Protection for Your Electrical Appliances ... 155
9. Digital Water Level Meter ... 156
10. Universal High-Resistance Voltmeter ... 157
11. Triac/Transistor Checker ... 158
12. A Novel Method of Frequency Variation Using 555 ... 159
13. Pendulum Display ... 160
14. Audio Level Indicator ... 160
15. Clever Rain-Alarm ... 162
16. Laser Controlled On/Off Switch ... 163
17. Telephone Conversation Recorder ... 163
18. Simple and Economic Single-Phasing Preventor ... 164
19. Water-Tank Level Meter ... 165
20. Phone Broadcaster ... 167
21. Telephone Call meter Using Calculator and COB ... 167
22. Simple Electronic Code Lock ... 169
23. Mini Voice-Processor ... 170
24. Latch-up Alarm Using Opto-Coupler ... 171
25. Stepper Motor Driver ... 171
26. Electronic Digital Tachometer ... 172
27. Light-Operated Light Switch ... 174
28. Precision Digital AC Power Controller ... 174
29. Luggage Security System ... 175
30. Add-On Stereo Channel Selector Cum Level Indicator ... 176
31. Water Temperature Controller ... 177
32. Emergency Light ... 178
33. Parallel Telephone With Secrecy ... 180
34. Single Doorbell for Two Doors ... 181
35. Powerful Pest Repeller ... 181
36. Power-Supply Failure Alarm ... 182
37. Stopwatch Using COB and Calculator ... 182
38. Dial a Voltage ... 183
39. Electronic Dancing Peacock ... 184
40. Inverter Overload Protector with Delayed Auto Reset ... 185
41. Telephone Line Based Audio Muting and Light-on circuit ... 186
42. Low-Cost PCO Billing Meter ... 187

43. Automatic Muting Circuit For Audio Systems 188
44. 2-Line Intercom-Cum-Telephone Line Changeover Circuit 189
45. Guard for Refrigerators and Air-Conditioners 190
46. Radio-Band-Position Display 191
47. Binary to Dotmatrix Display Decoder/Driver 192
48. Automatic Speed-Controller for Fans and Coolers 194
49. Blown Fuse Indicator 195
50. Over-/Under-Voltage Cut-Off With On-Time Delay 196
51. One Button for Step, Run, and Halt Commands 197
52. Simple Switch Mode Power Supply 198
53. Toilet Indicator 199
54. Feather-Touch Switches for Mains 200
55. Digital Fan Regulator 201
56. Telephone Ringer Using Timer ICs 203
57. Automatic Battery Charger 203
58. Temperature Measurement Instrument 205
59. Voice Bell 206
60. Moving Curtain Display 207
61. Proximity Detector 208
62. Multichannel Control Using Soft Switches 209
63. An Exclusive Sinewave Generator 210
64. TTL Three-State Logic Probe 211
65. AM DSB Transmitter for Hams 212
66. Ground Conductivity Measurement 213
67. Stepper Motor Control via Parallel Port 214

SECTION A:
CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS

CONVERSION OF AUDIO CD PLAYER TO VIDEO CD PLAYER — I

PUNERJOT SINGH MANGAT

The analogue technology is giving way to the digital technology as the latter offers numerous advantages. Digital signals are not only free from distortion while being routed from one point to another (over various media), but error-correction is also possible. Digital signals can also be compressed, which makes it possible to store huge amounts of data in a small space. The digital technology has also made remarkable progress in the field of audio and video signal processing.

Digital signal processing is being widely used in audio and video CDs and CD playing equipment. These compact disks have brought about a revolution in the fields of audio and video technologies. In audio CDs, analogue signals are first converted into digital signals and then stored on the CD. During reproduction, the digital data, read from the CD, is reconverted into analogue signals. In case of video signals, the process used for recording and reproduction of data is the same as used for audio CDs. However, there is an additional step involved—both during recording as well as reproduction of the digital video signals on/from the compact disk.

This additional step relates to the compression of data before recording on the CD and its decompression while it is being read. As video data requires very large storage space, it is first compressed using MPEG (Motion Picture Expert Group)-compatible software and then recorded on the CD. On reading the compressed video data from the CD, it is decompressed and passed to the video processor. Thus, with the help of the compression technique, huge amount of video data (for about an hour) can be stored in one CD.

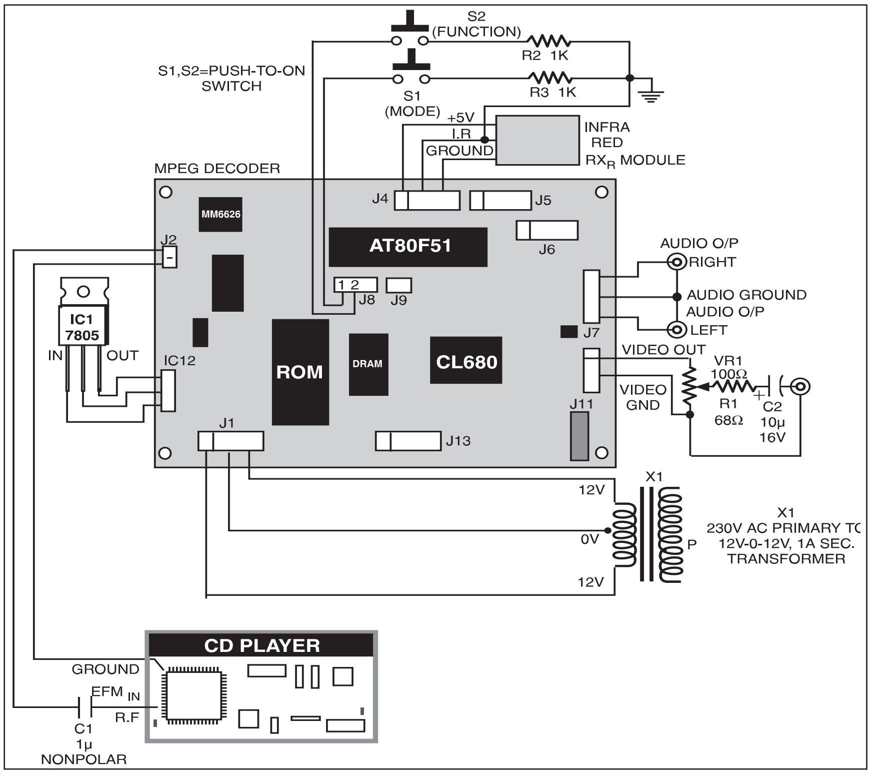

S2
(FUNCTION)
R2 1K
S1,S2=PUSH-TO-ON SWITCH
S1
(MODE)
R3 1K
+5V
I.R
GROUND
INFRA RED RX_R MODULE
MPEG DECODER
MM6626
J4
J5
J6
AT80F51
J2
1 2
J8
J9
IC1
7805
IN
OUT
IC12
ROM
DRAM
CL680
J7
AUDIO O/P
RIGHT
AUDIO GROUND
AUDIO O/P
LEFT
VIDEO OUT
VR1
100Ω
VIDEO GND
R1
68Ω
C2
10µ
16V
J11
J1
J13
X1
12V
0V
12V
P
X1
230V AC PRIMARY TC
12V-0-12V, 1A SEC.
TRANSFORMER
CD PLAYER
GROUND
EFM IN
R.F
C1
1µ
NONPOLAR

Fig. 1: Complete schematic layout and connection diagram for conversion of audio CD to video CD player

Conversion

An audio CD player, which plays only audio CDs, can be converted to play video CDs as well. Audio CD players have all the required mechanism/functions to play video CDs, except an MPEG card, which needs to be added to the player. This card

Fig. 2: CTV using converted CD player

decompresses the data available from the audio CD player and converts it into a proper level of video signals before feeding it to the television. The MPEG card is readily available in the market.

Construction

Step-by-step conversion of an audio CD player to a video CD player is described below with reference to Fig. 1.

***Step 1.* Connection of MPEG card to TV and step-down power transformer to confirm proper working of the MPEG card.**

- Connect IC 7805, a 5-volt regulator, to the MPEG card. Please check for correct pin assignments.
- Connect audio and video outputs of the MPEG card to the audio/video input of TV via jacks J7 and J11 respectively. Use only shielded wires for these connections.
- Check to ensure that the step-down transformer provides 12-0-12 volts at one ampere of load, before connecting it to the MPEG card. Connect it to the MPEG card via jack J1.
- Switch on the TV to audio/video mode of operation. Adjust 100-ohm preset connected at the video output of MPEG card to mid position.
- Switch on the MPEG card by switching on 230 volts main supply to the 12-0-12V transformer.
- If everything works right, 'Sony Digital Technology' messaage will be displayed on the television. The TV screen will display this for about five seconds before going blank. Adjust the 100-ohm preset for a proper level of video signals.

***Step 2.* Connections to audio CD player after confirmation of proper functioning of MPEG card during step 1.**

- Open your audio CD player. Do this very carefully, avoiding any jerks to the audio CD player, as these may damage the player beyond repair.
- Look for the IC number in Table II that matches with any IC in your audio CD player.
- After finding the right IC, note its RF EFM$_{IN}$ pin number from Table II.
- Follow the PCB track which leads away from RF EFM$_{IN}$ pin of the IC and find any solder joint (land) on this PCB track. Solder a wire (maximum half metre) to this solder joint carefully. Other end of this wire should be joined to RF jack J2 of the MPEG card.

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:	
IC1	- LM7805 +5V voltage regulator
Resisters (all ¼W, ±5% metal/carbon film, unless stated otherwise):	
R1	- 68-ohm
R2, R3	- 1-kilo-ohm
VR1	- 100-ohm cermet (variable resistor)
Capacitors:	
C1	- 1µF paper (unipolar)
C2	- 10µF, 16V electrolytic
Miscellaneous:	
X1	- 230V AC primary to 12V-0-12V, 1A sec. transformer
S1, S2	- Push-to-on tactile switch
	- MPEG decoder card (Sony Digital Tech.)
	- TV modulator (optional)
	- AF plugs/jacks (with screened wire)
	- Coaxial connectors—male/female
	- Coaxial cable

TABLE I

Possible Extra Functions

S1 (Mode Switch)	S2 (Function Switch)
Slow	—
Discview	—
Pal/NTSC	Pal NTSC
Vol+	Volume up
Vol-	Volume down
Key+	Left volume down
Key-	Right volume down
L/R/CH	Left, Right, Mute, Stereo
Play/Pause	—

Note: The above-mentioned functions can also be accessed using remote control.

Caution: *Unplug the soldering iron from the mains before soldering this wire because any leakage in the soldering iron may damage the audio CD player.*

- Another wire should be joined between the ground of the audio CD player and the ground of jack J2 of the MPEG card.
- This finishes the connection of the MPEG card to the audio CD player.

***Step 3.* Playing audio and video CDs.**

- Switch on the power to the audio CD player and the MPEG card.
- Put a video CD in the audio CD player and press its play button to play the video CD.
- After a few seconds the video picture recorded on the CD will appear on the television.
- The play, pause, eject, rewind, forward, track numbers, etc buttons present on the audio CD can be used to control the new video CD player.

Now your audio CD player is capable of playing video CDs as well. You can connect a power amplifier to the MPEG card to get a high-quality stereo sound.

TABLE II

DSP ICs and Their EFM$_{IN}$ RF Pin Numbers

DSP IC	EFM$_{IN}$/ RF Pin	DSP IC	EFM$_{IN}$/ RF Pin
KS 5950	5	CXA 1372Q	32, 46
KS 5990, 5991	5	CXA 1471S	18, 27
KS 9210 B	5	CXA 1571S	18, 35
KS 9211 B E, 9212	5	AN 8370S	12, 31
KS 9282	5, 66	AN 8373S	9, 35
KS 9283	66	AN 8800SCE	12
KS 9284	66	AN 8802SEN	9
CXD 1125 QX	5	TDA 3308	3
CXD 1130 QZ	5	LA 9200	35
CXD 1135	5	LA 9200 NM	36
CXD 1163 Q	5	LA 9211 M	72
CXD 1167 R	36	HA 1215 8 NT	46, 72
CXD 1167 Q/QE	5	SAA 7210 (40 pin)	3, 25
CXD 20109	9, 20	SAA 7310 (44 pin)	32
CXD 2500 AQ/BQ	24	SAA 7341	36, 38
CXD 2505 AQ	24	SAA 7345	8
CXD 2507 AQ	14	SAA 7378	15
CXD 2508 AQ	36	TC 9200 AF	56
CXD 2508 AR	36	TC 9221 F	60
CXD 2509 AQ	34	TC 9236 AF	51,56
CXD 2515 Q	36, 38	TC 9284	53
CXD 2518 Q	36	YM 2201/FK	76
LC 7850 K	7	YM 3805	8
LC 7860 N/K/E	7, 8	YM 7121 B	76
LC 7861 N	8	YM 7402	4, 71
LC 7862	30	HD 49215	71
LC 78620	11	HD 49233 AFS	19
LC 78620 E	11	UPD 6374 CU	23
LC 7863	8	UPD 6375 CU	46
LC 7865	8	M 50422 P	15
LC 7866 E	7, 8	M 50427 FP	15, 17
LC 7867 E	8	M 504239	17
LC 7868 E	8	M 515679	4
LC 7868 K	8	M 51598 FP	20
LC 78681	8	MN 35510	43
MN 6617	74	M 65820 AF	17
MN 6222	11	M 50423 FP	17
MN 6625 S	41	CX 20109	20, 9
MN 6626	3, 62	SAA7311	25
MN 6650	6	M50122P	15
MN 66240	44	M50123 FP	17
MN 66271 RA	44, 52	M50127 FP	17
MN 662720	44	UPD6374 CV	3
CXA 72S	18, 46	NM2210FK	76
CXA 1081Q	2, 27	YM2210FK	76

The author tested this project on many audio players including Thompson Diskman and Kenwood Diskman. A photograph of one of the scenes in black and white is included as Fig. 2. (Please see its colour version on cover page.)

No special PCB is required, and hence the same is not included.

The author has preferred to use Sony Digital Technology Card (against KD680 RF-35C of C-cube Technology) because of many more functions it provides.

Additional accessibility features of this card (Sony Digital Technology), as shown in Table I, can be invoked by adding two push-to-on switches between jack 8 (J8) and ground via 1k resistors (Fig. 1). These will enhance the already mentioned functions and facilities available on this card, even though it has not been possible to exploit the card fully due to non-availability of technical details. I hope these additions will help the readers get maximum mileage from their efforts. ■

Readers queries:

1. Can the CD-ROM drives in PCs be converted to VCD players?

2. In place of the cards used in the project, can a VGA card be used?

3. Which audio output (right or left) from (jack 7) C-cube is to be fed to the RF modulator

4. What is the use of push-to-on switch connected to jack J8?

5. In Fig. 1 of the project, a 1µF capacitor is used at the output of the EFM_{IN} pin inside the CD player. Fig. 6 on the other hand does not show any such capacitor. Why?

6. How does the MPEG card's audio output connected to the audio CD player?

7. Will speakers or audio systems be damaged when video CD is played in an audio CD player?

EFY: 1. The conversion of PC CD-ROM drive to video CD player is entirely different and beyond the scope of this article. However, a brief information is given below.

The CD-ROM drive is just like audio CD player (drive), with interface circuitry that connects it to a PC. To play an audio CD, the speed of CD-ROM drive should be 1X, i.e. 1x150 kbps.

In video CD, both audio and video signals are simultaneously stored. In a video CD player, audio circuit along with separate processor circuit known as video signal processor (VSP) is used to process or separate the video signals from audio signals. Thus, any audio CD player can be converted to video CD player by connecting VSP card or MPEG card. The same audio CD or video CD can also be played in the PC through the multimedia software.

The main requirements of playing audio and video CD on the PC are CD-ROM drive, PCI MPEG card, monitor, amplifier, speakers, and Windows 95/Windows 98 software or operating system installed on the PC hard disk.

The IDE interface cable connects the CD-ROM drive and the motherboard. The audio-video cable connects the AV output of the CD-ROM drive and the PCI MPEG card respectively. The PCI VGA cards are used for graphics. The PCI MPEG card does not have RF/EFM_{IN} port like that in VCD decoder card. By using +5V DC and audio-video input ports, one can use this VCD decoder card with CD-ROM drive and the PC. For RF output, RF modulator has to be used in the PC also.

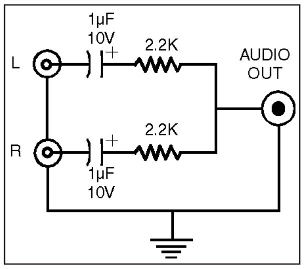


Fig. 1: Connection of audio signals to mono input TV

A multimedia PC (with 4X CD-ROM drive and sound card) operating under Windows '95 or higher version running at 166MHz or more, is capable of playing a video CD.

—Technical Editor

In reply to points 2 to 7, the author Punerjot Singh Mangat replies:

2. VGA card can not be used in place of MPEG converter card.

3. A method for combining the L and R audio outputs from MPEG converter card for feeding the TV modulator (audio input jack) is shown here in Fig. 1.

4. Switches connected to J8 are for additional functions, as mentioned in the article. The card may be used without these connections.

5. Capacitor C1 is used to protect the CD player from any static electricity that may originate in the MPEG card and pass to the audio CD player.

6. To connect the MPEG card's audio output to the audio CD player's amplifier, the scheme shown here in Fig. 2 may be used.

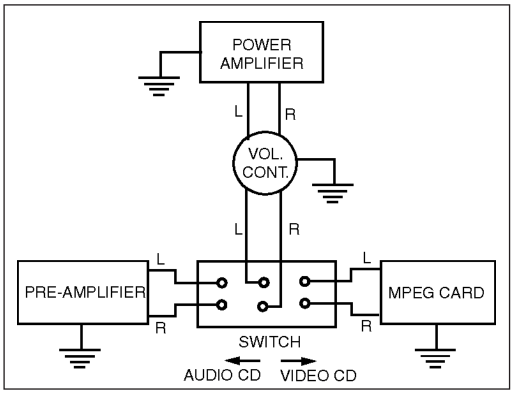


Fig. 2: Connection of external power amplifier to the MPEG card

7. Your audio system or speakers would not be damaged if VCD is played on an ACD player. In some players, high-pitch shrilling or hissing noise may be heard through the speakers. This can easily be avoided by turning off the volume of the ACD player.

CONVERSION OF AUDIO CD PLAYER TO VIDEO CD PLAYER — II

K.N. GHOSH

Want to convert your audio compact disk player into video compact disk player? Here is a simple, economical but efficient add-on circuit design that converts your audio CD player to video CD player.

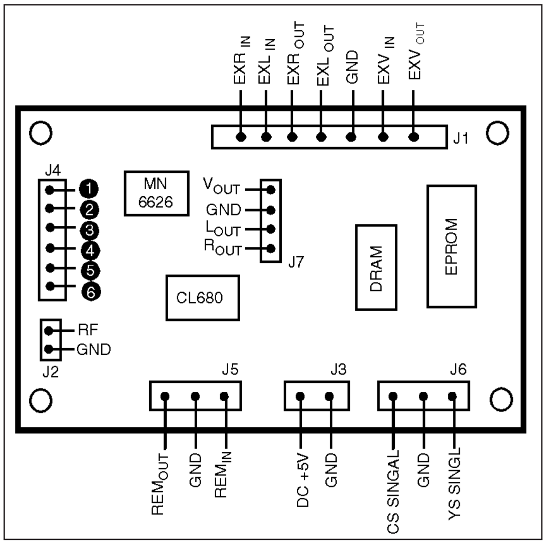
Description

Decoder card. The add-on circuit is based on VCD decoder card, KD680 RF-3SC, also known as MPEG card adopting MPEG-1 (Motion Picture Expert Group) standard, the international standard specification for compressing the moving picture and audio, comprising a DSP (digital signal processor) IC chip CL860 from C-cube (Fig. 1). The VCD decoder card features small size, high reliability, and low power consumption (current about 300 mA), and real and rich colours. This decoder card has two play modes (ver. 1.0 and ver. 2.0) and also the forward and backward scan facility with 9 view pictures, slow-motion play, volume and tone control, and R/L (right/left) vocal.

The decoder card converts your CD player or video game to VCD player to give almost DVD-quality pictures. The card mainly consists of sync signal separator, noise rejection circuit, digital to analogue converter, micro-computer interface, video signal processor, and error detector, etc.

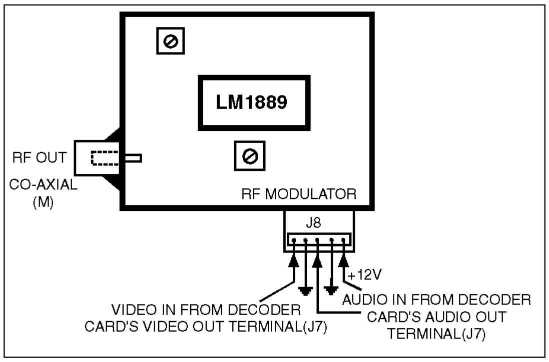
Audio and video signals stored on a CD are in a high-density digital format. On replay, the digital information is read by a laser beam and converted into analogue signals.

One can also use another VCD decoder card comprising an MPEG IC 680 from Technics, and a DSP IC chip, CXD2500, with powerful error-correction from Sony. Similarly, another card, KD2000-680RF, comprising an MPEG IC chip CL680 from Technics and a DSP IC chip MN6627 from C-cube, is available.



EXR$_{IN}$
EXL$_{IN}$
EXR$_{OUT}$
EXL$_{OUT}$
GND
EXV$_{IN}$
EXV$_{OUT}$
J1
J4
1
2
3
4
5
6
MN 6626
V$_{OUT}$
GND
L$_{OUT}$
R$_{OUT}$
J7
DRAM
EPROM
CL680
RF
GND
J2
J5
J3
J6
REM$_{OUT}$
GND
REM$_{IN}$
DC +5V
GND
CS SINGAL
GND
YS SINGL

Fig. 1: Layout diagram of MPEG card from C-cube



LM1889
RF OUT
CO-AXIAL (M)
RF MODULATOR
J8
+12V
VIDEO IN FROM DECODER CARD'S VIDEO OUT TERMINAL(J7)
AUDIO IN FROM DECODER CARD'S AUDIO OUT TERMINAL(J7)

Fig. 2: Layout of TV RF modulator

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:

IC1 - LM78L05 +5V voltage regulator
IC2 - 78L12 +12V voltage regulator
D1,D2 - 1N4001 rectifier diode

Capacitors:

C1 - 2200µF, 35V electrolytic
C2,C3 - 100µF, 16V electrolytic

Miscellaneous:

X1 - 230V AC primary to 18V-0-18V, 1A sec. transformer
- MPEG decoder card (C-cube Digital Tech.)
- TV modulator (optional)
- AF plugs/jacks (with screened wire)
- Coaxial connectors—male/female
- Coaxial cable

RF modulator. Those who do not have audio-video input (AV$_{IN}$) facility in their TV can use a preassembled audio-video to RF converter (modulator) module of 48.25 MHz or 55.25 MHz (corresponding to TV channel 2 or channel 3), which is easily available in the market (refer Fig. 2). The audio and video signals from the decoder card are suitably modulated and combined at the fixed TV channel's frequency in the RF modulator. The output from the modulator can be connected to antenna connector of a colour television.

Power supply unit. The VCD decoder card and the RF modulator require +5V and +12V regulated power supplies

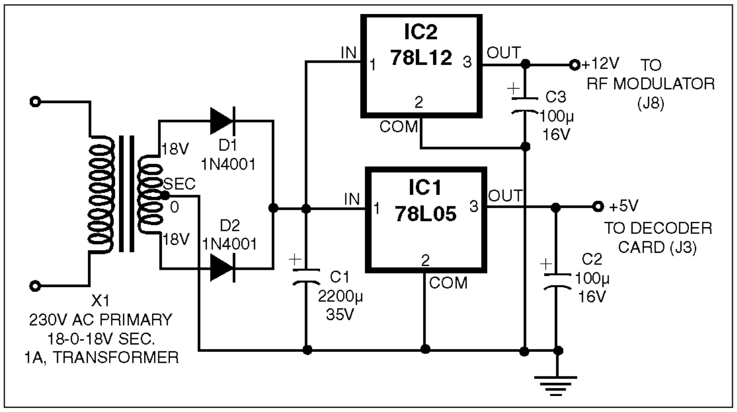

IC2
78L12
IN
1
3
OUT
2
COM
+12V TO RF MODULATOR (J8)
C3
100µ
16V
IC1
78L05
IN
1
3
OUT
2
COM
+5V TO DECODER CARD (J3)
C2
100µ
16V
18V
SEC
0
18V
D1
1N4001
D2
1N4001
C1
2200µ
35V
X1
230V AC PRIMARY
18-0-18V SEC.
1A, TRANSFORMER

Fig. 3: Power supply to cater to MPEG card and RF modulator

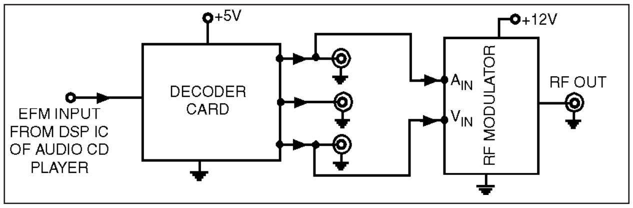

+5V
+12V
EFM INPUT FROM DSP IC OF AUDIO CD PLAYER
DECODER CARD
AIN
VIN
RF MODULATOR
RF OUT

Fig. 4: Block diagram of connections to decoder card and modulator

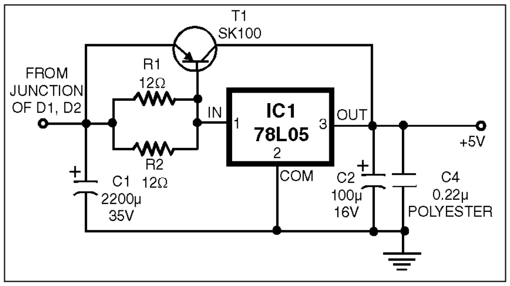

T1
SK100
FROM JUNCTION OF D1, D2
R1
12Ω
R2
12Ω
IN
1
IC1
78L05
2
3
OUT
COM
+5V
C1
2200µ
35V
C2
100µ
16V
C4
0.22µ
POLYESTER

Fig. 5: Modified 5V regulator for enhancing current capability

respectively. Supply design uses linear regulators 7805 and 7812 (Fig. 3). The voltage regulators fitted with TO220-type heat sink should be mounted on the CD player enclosure's rear panel. The circuit can be wired on a general-purpose PCB.

Installation steps.

1. Find suitable place in the enclosure of the audio CD player for fixing the decoder card, RF modulator, and the power supply unit. Make appropriate diameter holes and fix them firmly.

2. Make holes of appropriate dimensions on the rear panel for fixing sockets for power supply and RF output.

3. Refer to Table II (given in part I) and confirm DSP chip type of the existing audio CD player for EFM (eight to fourteenth modulation)/RF signal (from optical pick-up unit of the audio CD player) pin number. Connect EFM_{IN} wire to this pin.

4. Make all the connections as per Fig. 4.

Lab Note (For article I and II). *Text of articles on the same project received separately from the two authors have been been reproduced above so as to make the information on the subject as exhaustive as possible. We are further adding the following information which we have been able to gather during practical testing of the project at EFY.*

1. There may be more than one PCB used in an audio CD player (i.e additional for FM radio and tape recorder functions), and even the DSP chips referred in Table I (given in part-I) may not figure on it. For example, we could not find the subject IC used in AIWA audio CD player. The PCB, which is located closest under the laser system, is related to CD player part. The DSP chip, more often than not, would be a multipin SMT device. In the AIWA system we located two such chips (LA9241M and LC78622E, both from Sanyo). Their data-sheets, picked up from the Internet, revealed the former chip to be an ASP (analogue signal processor) and the latter (LA78622E) the CD player DSP chip for which EFM_{IN} is not found in Table I (given in part-I). For this chip EFM_{IN} pin is pin 10 while pin 8 is the nearest digital ground pins—which we used.

2. Of the two converter cards (one displaying 'Sony Digital Technology' and the other displaying 'C-cube Technology' on the CTV screen), the latter card's resolution and colour quality was found to be very good when tested by us. The C-cube card needs a single 5V DC supply for its operation.

3. During testing it was observed that, frequently, the picture/frames froze on the CTV screen and the power to the MPEG converter card had to be switched off and on again. This fault was attributed to inability of 7805 regulator to deliver the required current (about 300 mA) to the MPEG card. The regulator

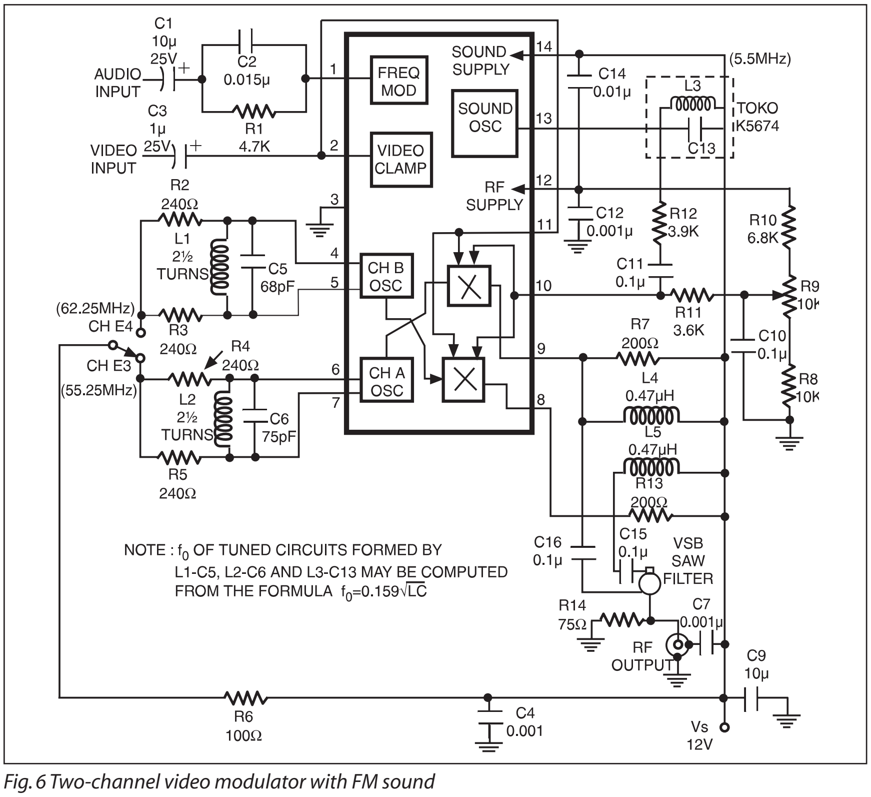

C1
10µ
25V
AUDIO INPUT
C2
0.015µ
R1
4.7K
C3
1µ
25V
VIDEO INPUT
R2
240Ω
L1
2½ TURNS
C5
68pF
(62.25MHz)
CH E4
R3
240Ω
CH E3
(55.25MHz)
R4
240Ω
L2
2½ TURNS
C6
75pF
R5
240Ω
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
FREQ MOD
VIDEO CLAMP
CH B OSC
CH A OSC
SOUND SUPPLY
SOUND OSC
RF SUPPLY
14
13
12
11
10
9
8
C14
0.01µ
(5.5MHz)
L3
TOKO IK5674
C13
C12
0.001µ
R12
3.9K
R10
6.8K
C11
0.1µ
R11
3.6K
R9
10K
R7
200Ω
C10
0.1µ
L4
0.47µH
R8
10K
L5
0.47µH
R13
200Ω
C16
0.1µ
C15
0.1µ
VSB SAW FILTER
R14
75Ω
C7
0.001µ
RF OUTPUT
C9
10µ
R6
100Ω
C4
0.001
Vs
12V
NOTE : f0 OF TUNED CIRCUITS FORMED BY L1-C5, L2-C6 AND L3-C13 MAY BE COMPUTED FROM THE FORMULA f0=0.159√LC

Fig. 6 Two-channel video modulator with FM sound

circuit was therefore modified as shown in Fig. 5 to provide a bypass path for current above 110 mA (approximately). A step-down transformer of 9V-0-9V, 500mA is adequate if the modulator has its own power supply arrangement.

4. RF modulator for TV channels E2 and E3 are available in the market complete with step-down transformer. Hence there may not be any need to wire up a 12V regulator circuit.

5. Apart from the facilities (available in the MPEG decoder card KD680RF-3SC from C-cube), as explained by the author, there are other facilities such as IR remote control of the card functions (via jack J5) and realisation of changeover between NTSC and PAL modes (via jack J4—no connection means PAL mode). Similarly, jack J1 is meant for external audio (EXR_{IN} *and* EXL_{IN}*) and video (*EXV_{IN}*) input and connection of audio (*EXR_{OUT} *and* EXL_{OUT}*) and video (*EXV_{OUT}*) outputs to CTV. The foregoing information is available in document accompanying the MPEG decoder card. However, the detailed application/ information is not provided, and as such we have not tested these additional facilities.*

6. EFM is a technique used for encoding digital samples of audio signals into series of pits and lands into the disc surface. During playback these are decoded into digital representation of audio signal and converted to analogue form using digital-to-analogue converter for eventual feeding to the loudspeakers.

7. For those enthusiasts who wish to rig-up their own video modulator, an application circuit from National Semiconductor Ltd, making use of IC LM2889, which is pin for pin compatible with LM1889 (RF section), is given in Fig. 6.

—Tech Editor

Readers queries:

1. How can the DSP IC be identified, and how can its EFM_{IN} pin be found?

2. Which audio output (right or left) from jack 7 (C-cube) is to be fed to the RF modulator?

3. Will the wire from the audio CD player be connected to jack J2 of the MPEG card from C-cube?

4. What is the use of jack J6?

5. How will the remote be connected from jack J5?

6. Please give details of connector J12.

7. Which remote transmitter may be used to get the remote facility by connecting IR module to jack J4?

8. Is it possible to get the exact picture quality as in an original VCD player?

9. How is the MPEG card's audio output connected to the audio CD player?

10. Is it necessary to use the 5V regulator, as given in Fig. 5 of the article, on the Sony Digital Technology card to prevent freezing of the picture?

The author K.N. Ghosh replies:

1. Considering that it is not easy to find RF/EFM signals for most of the CD players, double protection circuit is designed for this MPEG card at the RF/EFM_{IN} interface, so that the RF/EFM_{IN} port on the card can be used as a probe to detect DSP signals around the DSP chip of CD player, without possibility of burning the main as well as this decoder card. Thus, when RF/EFM signals are unknown in some CD players, connect properly the power supply and audio-video outputs. Connect a wire to jack J2 as probe. Detect the solder joint (land) near DSP chip (multi-pin SMT device that lies closest to the laser system). If the picture and accompanying sound appears on the TV, then solder the wire to the joint properly.

For DSP chips other than those listed in the table, readers are advised to refer the manufacturers' data sheets or the Websites of the manufacturers for RF/ EFM_{IN} pin number.

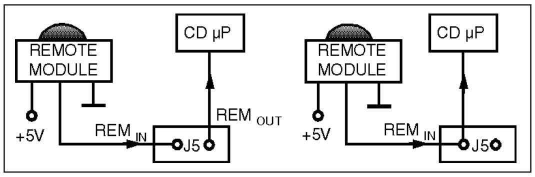


Fig. 1: Serial and parallel connection of IR remote receiver module to jack J5

2. Either of the two audio outputs (L/R) from jack J7 of the MPEG card can be used, if the RF modulator has single audio input provision. Similarly, only one output (either left or right) should be used for the CTV, if it does not have stereo input facility.

3. Yes, RF/EFM_{IN} pin from DSP chip of the audio CD player should be connected to jack J2 of the MEPG card, CL 680RF-3SC, as shown in Fig. 1 (part 1) of the article.

4. C_{out} and Y_{out} signals are to be taken from jack J6 of the MPEG card.

5. There are two methods of connecting IR remote receiver module to jack J5 —serial and parallel connections—as shown in Fig. 1.

6. Jack J12 of the MPEG card is for exchange: input external audio to EXR_{IN} and EXL_{IN} and output external audio from EXR_{OUT} and EXL_{OUT}.

7. The required remote control handset comes with the MEPG card.

8. Yes, by using MPEG card, CL680RF-3SC in the audio CD player, it is possible to get a picture quality exactly as in an original video CD player. CL680RF-3C is a modern, third-generation chip. Now-a-days many audio-video CD player manufacturers are using this card; for example, CHANGHONG'S VD-9000 audio-video CD player.

9. One can connect an external power amplifier to the MPEG card to get a high-quality stereo sound. Connect audio L/R output of the MPEG card to the input L/R connector provided for the CD/AUX/TAPE input. The internal audio power amplifier of the existing audio CD player can also be used for sound reproduction. Connect the audio output L/R of MPEG card to the input (A_{IN}) of the internal audio power amplifier circuit of the existing audio CD player.

10. If a transformer with an adequate current rating (1A) is used, the modified circuit of Fig. 5 is not necessary. Similarly, if existing power supply of the audio CD player has an adequate current delivering capacity, one can use the existing +5V DC to power the MPEG card.

The additional transformer should be placed far away from the optical assembly and it should be shielded properly. Otherwise it may affect the normal working of the CD player.

MICROPROCESSOR-CONTROLLED TRANSISTOR LEAD IDENTIFIER

ARUP KUMAR SEN

Transistor lead identification is crucial in designing and servicing of electronic circuits. A circuit designer or a serviceman must be fully conversant with the types of transistors used in a circuit. Erroneous lead identification may lead to malfunctions, and, in extreme cases, even destruction of the circuit being designed or serviced.

Though transistor manufacturers encapsulate their products in different package outlines for identification, it is impossible to memorise the outlines of innumerable transistors manufactured by the industry. Although a number of manuals are published, which provide pin details, they may not always be accessible. Besides, it is not always easy to find out the details of a desired transistor by going through the voluminous manuals. But, a handy gadget, called transistor lead identifier, makes the job easy. All one has to do is place the transistor in the gadget's socket to instantly get the desired information on its display, irrespective of the type and package-outline of the device under test.

A manually controlled version of the present project had been published in June '84 issue of *EFY (Electronics Projects Vol. 5)*. The present model is totally microprocessor controlled, and hence all manually controlled steps are replaced by software commands. A special circuit, shown in Fig. 1, which acts as an interface to an 8085-based microprocessor kit, has been developed for the purpose.

Principle

Base and type identification. When a semiconductor junction is forward-biased, conventional current flows from the source into the p-layer and comes out of the junction through the n-layer. By applying proper logic voltages, the base-emitter (B-E) or base-collector (B-C) junction of a bipolar transistor may be forward-biased. As a result, if the device is of npn type, current enters only through the base. But, in case of a pnp device, current flows through the collector as well as the emitter leads.

During testing, when leads of the 'transistor under test' are connected to terminals 1, 2, and 3 of the test socket (see Fig.1), each of the leads (collector, base, and emitter) comes in series with one of the current directions indicating LEDs (D2, D4, and D6) as shown in Fig. 1. Whenever the current flows toward a particular junction through a particular lead, the LED connected (in proper direction) to that lead glows up. So, in case of an npn-device, only the LED connected to the base lead glows. However, in case of a pnp-device, the other two LEDs are lit. Now, if a glowing LED corresponds to binary 1, an LED that is off would correspond to binary 0. Thus, depending upon the orientation of the transistor leads in the test socket, we would get one of the six hexadecimal numbers (taking LED connected to terminal 1 as LSB), if we consider all higher bits of the byte to be zero. The hexadecimal numbers thus generated for an npn and pnp transistor for all possible orientations (six) are shown under columns 5 and 6 of Table I. Column 5 reflects the BCD weight of B (base) position while column 6 represents 7's complement of the number in column 5.

We may call this 8-bit hexadecimal number *base identification number* or, in short, *base-Id*. Comparing the base-Id,

TABLE I

Orientation No.	Test socket terminal 3	Test socket terminal 2	Test socket terminal 1	Base-Id for npn	Base-Id for pnp	Collector-Id for pnp and npn
1	C	B	E	02	05	04
2	C	E	B	01	06	04
3	E	C	B	01	06	02
4	E	B	C	02	05	01
5	B	E	C	04	03	01
6	B	C	E	04	03	02

B=Base C=Collector E=Emitter Note: All bits of higher nibble are set to zero.

TABLE II

Q2 (MSB)	Q1	Q0 (LSB)
0	0	1
0	1	0
1	0	0

TABLE III. SET 1

$\overline{Q2}$	$\overline{Q1}$	$\overline{Q0}$
0	0	1
0	1	0
1	0	0

TABLE IV. SET 2

$\overline{Q2}$	$\overline{Q1}$	$\overline{Q0}$
1	1	0
1	0	1
0	1	1

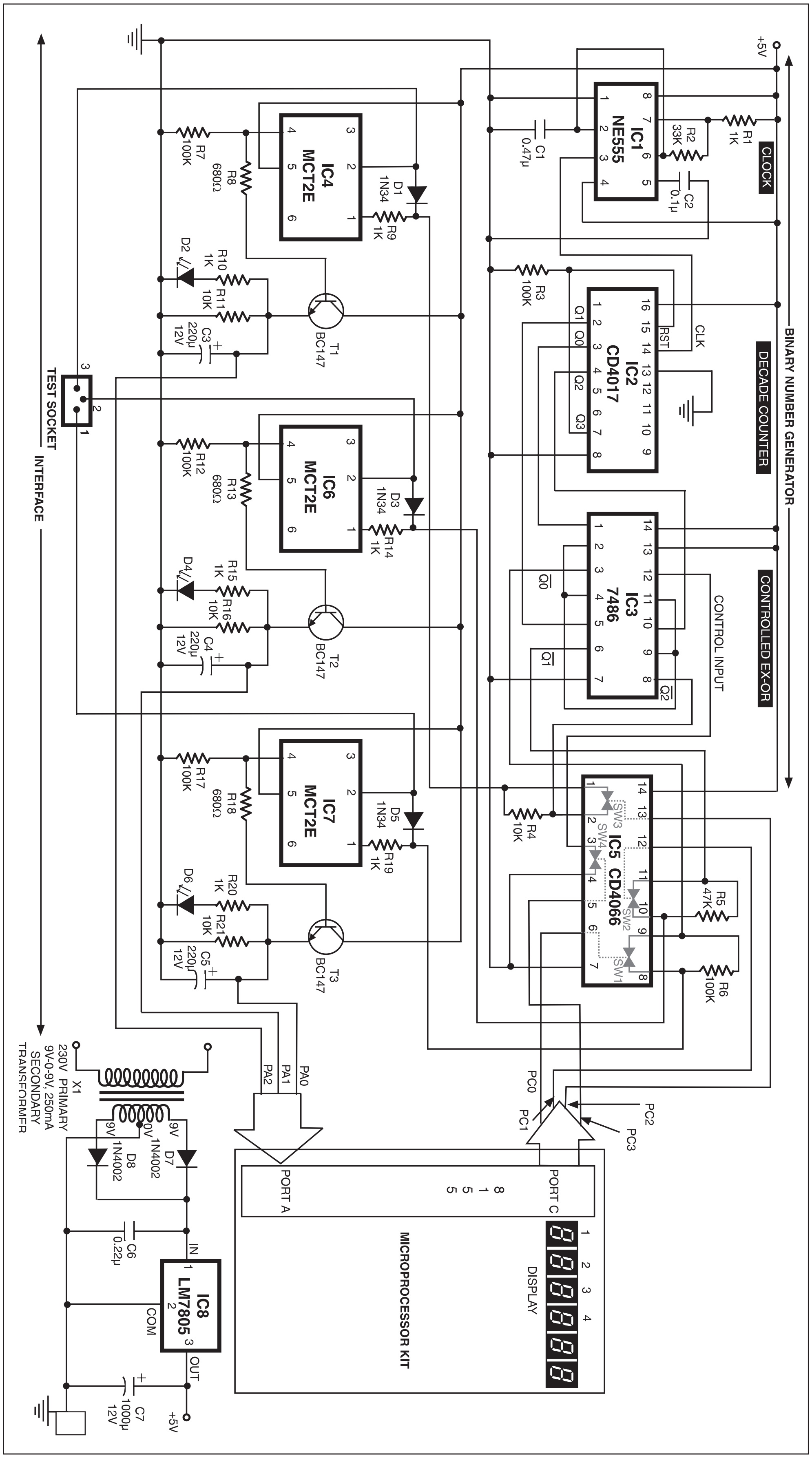

+5V
CLOCK
R1 1K
R2 33K
IC1 NE555
C1 0.47µ
C2 0.1µ
BINARY NUMBER GENERATOR
DECADE COUNTER
IC2 CD4017
R3 100K
CLK
RST
Q0
Q1
Q2
Q3
CONTROLLED EX-OR
CONTROL INPUT
IC3 7486
Q̄0
Q̄1
Q̄2
IC5 CD4066
SW1
SW2
SW3
SW4
R4 10K
R5 47K
R6 100K
IC4 MCT2E
IC6 MCT2E
IC7 MCT2E
D1 1N34
D3 1N34
D5 1N34
R9 1K
R14 1K
R19 1K
R7 100K
R8 680Ω
R12 100K
R13 680Ω
R17 100K
R18 680Ω
D2
D4
D6
R10 1K
R11 10K
R15 1K
R16 10K
R20 1K
R21 10K
C3 220µ 12V
C4 220µ 12V
C5 220µ 12V
T1 BC147
T2 BC147
T3 BC147
TEST SOCKET
INTERFACE
PA0
PA1
PA2
PC0
PC1
PC2
PC3
PORT A
PORT C
8155
MICROPROCESSOR KIT
DISPLAY
X1
230V PRIMARY
9V-0-9V, 250mA
SECONDARY
TRANSFORMER
9V
0V
9V
D7 1N4002
D8 1N4002
C6 0.22µ
IC8 LM7805
IN
COM
OUT
C7 100µ 12V
+5V

Fig. 1: Schematic circuit diagram of the transistor lead identifier

generated with Table I, a microprocessor can easily indicate the type (npn or pnp) and the base of the device under test, with respect to the test socket terminals marked as 1, 2, and 3. The logic numbers, comprising logic 1 (+5V) and logic 0 (0V), applied to generate the base-Id, are three bit numbers—100, 010, and 001. These numbers are applied sequentially to the leads through the test socket.

Collector identification. When the base-emitter junction of a transistor is forward-biased and its base-collector junction is reverse-biased, conventional current flows in the collector-emitter/emitter-collector path (referred to as C-E path in subsequent text), the magnitude of which depends upon the magnitude of the base current and the beta (current amplification factor in common-emitter configuration) of the transistor. Now, if the transistor is biased as above, but with the collector and emitter leads interchanged, a current of much reduced strength would still flow in the C-E path. So, by comparing these two currents, the collector lead can be easily identified. In practice, we can apply proper binary numbers (as in case of the base identification step mentioned earlier) to the 'device under test' to bias the junctions sequentially, in both of the aforesaid conditions. As a result, the LEDs connected to the collector and emitter leads start flickering alternately with different brightness. By inserting a resistor in series with the base, the LED glowing with lower brightness can be extinguished.

In the case of an NPN device (under normal biasing condition), conventional current flows from source to the collector layer. Hence,

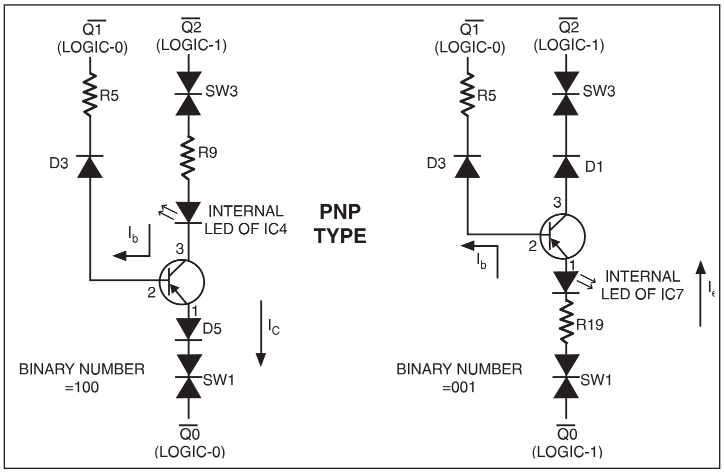


Fig. 2: Effective biasing of PNP transistors using set 1 binary numbers

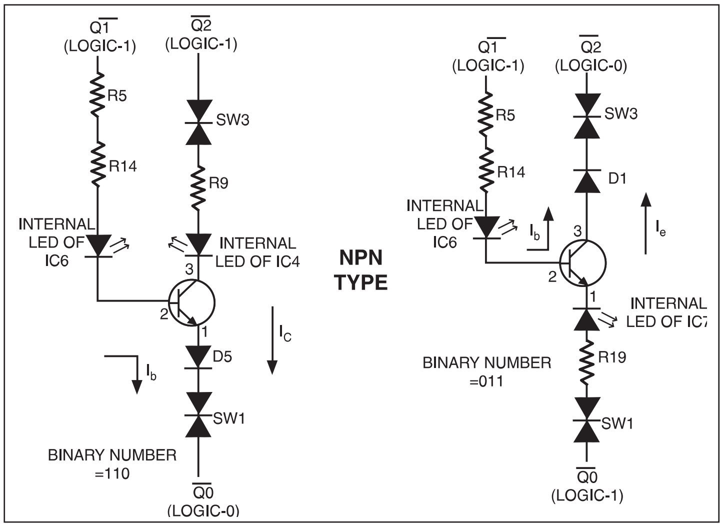


Fig. 3: Effective biasing of NPN transistors using set 2 binary numbers

the LED connected to the collector only would flicker brighter, if a proper resistor is inserted in series with the base. On the other hand, in case of a pnp device (under normal biasing condition), current flows from source to the emitter layer. So, only the LED connected to the emitter lead would glow brighter. As the type of device is already known by the base-Id logic, the collector lead can be easily identified. Thus, for a particular base-Id, position of the collector would be indicated by one of the two numbers (we may call it collector-Id) as shown in column 7 of Table I.

Error processing. During collector identification for a pnp- or an npn-device, if the junction voltage drop is low (viz, for germanium transistors), one of the two currents in the C-E path (explained above) cannot be reduced adequately and hence, the data may contain two logic-1s. On the other hand, if the device beta is too low (viz, for power transistors), no appreciable current flows in the C-E path, and so the data may not contain any logic-1. In both the cases, lead configuration cannot be established. The remedy is to adjust the value of the resistor in series with the base. There are three resistors (10k, 47k, and 100k) to choose from. These resistors are connected in series with the testing terminals 1, 2, and 3 respectively. The user has to rotate the transistor, orienting the base in different terminals (1, 2, or 3) on the socket, until the desired results are obtained. To alert the user about this action, a message 'Adjust LED' blinks on the display (refer error processing routine in the software program).

The circuit

The binary number generator. In this section, IC1 (an NE555 timer) is used as a clock pulse generator, oscillating at about 45 Hz. The output of IC1 is applied to clock pin 14 of IC2 (4017-decade counter). As a result, the counter advances sequentially from decimal 0 to 3, raising outputs Q0, Q1, and Q2 to logic-1 level. On reaching the next count, pin 7 (output Q3) goes high and it resets the counter. So, the three outputs (Q0, Q1, and Q2) jointly produce three binary numbers, continuously, in a sequential manner (see Table II).

Q0 through Q2 outputs of IC2 are connected to inputs of IC3 (7486, quad 2-input EX-OR gate). Gates of IC3 are so wired that they function as controlled EX-OR gates. The outputs of IC3 are controlled by the logic level at pin 12. Thus, we obtain two sets of outputs (marked Q0, $\overline{Q1}$, and $\overline{Q2}$) from IC3 as given in Tables III (for pin 12 at logic 1) and IV (for pin 12 at logic 0) respectively.

One of these two sets would be chosen for the output by the software, by controlling the logical state of pin 12. Set-1 is used to identify the base and type (npn or pnp) of the 'transistor under test,' whereas set-2 is exclusively used for identification of the collector lead, if the device is of npn type.

The interface. The three data output lines, carrying the stated binary numbers (coming from pins 3, 6, and 8 of IC3), are connected separately to three bi-directional analogue switches SW1, SW2, and SW3 inside IC5 (CD4066). The other sides of the switches are connected to the terminals of the test socket through some other components shown in Fig. 1. The control line of IC3 (pin 12) is connected to the analogue switch SW4 via pin 3 of IC5. The other side of SW4 (pin 4) is grounded. If switch SW4 is closed by the software, set-1 binary numbers are applied to the device under test, and when it is open, set-2 binary numbers are applied.

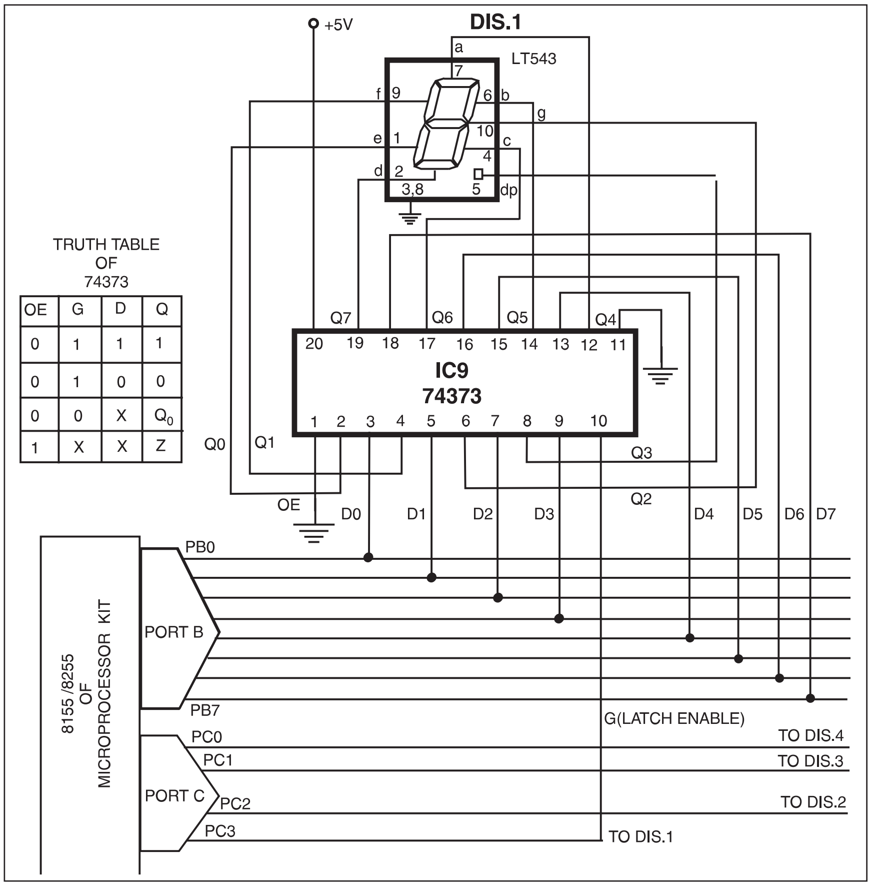
To clearly understand the functioning of the circuit, let us assume that the 'transistor under test' is inserted with its collector in slot-3, the base in slot-2, and the emitter in slot-1 of the testing socket.

Initially, during identification of the base and type of the device, all the analogue switches, except SW4, are closed by the software, applying set-1 binary numbers to the device. Now, if the device is of pnp type, each time the binary number 100 is generated at the output of IC3, the BC junction is forward-biased, and hence, a conventional current flows through the junction as follows:

$\overline{Q2}$ (logic 1)→SW3→R9→internal LED of IC4→slot3→collector lead→CB junction→base lead→slot-2→D3→pin 10 of IC5→SW2→$\overline{Q1}$ (logic 0).

Similarly, when the binary number 001 is generated, another current would flow through the BE junction and the internal LED of IC7. The number 010 has no effect, as in this case both the BC and BE junctions become reversed biased.

From the above discussion it is apparent that in the present situation, as the internal LEDs of IC4 and that of IC7 are forward-biased, they would go on producing pulsating optical signals, which would


+5V
DIS.1
LT543
a
7
f 9
6 b
g
10
e 1
c
4
d 2
3,8
5 dp
TRUTH TABLE OF 74373
Q7
Q6
Q5
Q4
20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11
IC9
74373
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10
Q0
Q1
Q3
Q2
OE
D0
D1
D2
D3
D4
D5
D6
D7
PB0
PORT B
PB7
8155 /8255 OF MICROPROCESSOR KIT
G(LATCH ENABLE)
PC0
TO DIS.4
PC1
TO DIS.3
PORT C
PC2
TO DIS.2
PC3
TO DIS.1

TRUTH TABLE OF 74373

OE	G	D	Q
0	1	1	1
0	1	0	0
0	0	X	Q_0
1	X	X	Z

Fig. 4: Schematic circuit of special display system

be converted into electrical voltages by the respective internal photo-transistors. The amplified pulsating DC voltages are available across their emitter resistors R7 and R17 respectively. The emitter followers configured around transistors T1 and T3 raise the power level of the opto-coupler's output, while capacitors C3 and C5 minimise the ripple levels in the outputs of emitter followers.

During initialisation, 8155 is configured with port A as an input and ports B and C as output by sending control word 0E(H) to its control register.

Taking output of transistor T1 as MSB(D2), and that of T3 as LSB(D0), the data that is formed during the base identification, is 101 (binary). The microprocessor under the software control, receives this data through port A of 8155 PPI (port number 81). Since all the bits of the higher nibble are masked by the software, the data become 0000 0101=05(H). This data is stored at location 216A in memory and termed in the software as base-Id.

Now, if the device is of npn type, the only binary number that would be effective is 010. Under the influence of this number both BC and BE junctions would be forward-biased simultaneously, and hence conventional current would flow in the following two paths:

1. $\overline{Q1}$ (logic 1)→SW2→R14→internal LED (IC6)→slot-2→base lead→BC junction→collector lead→slot-3→D1→SW3→$\overline{Q2}$ (logic 0)
2. $\overline{Q1}$ (logic 1)→SW2→R14→internal

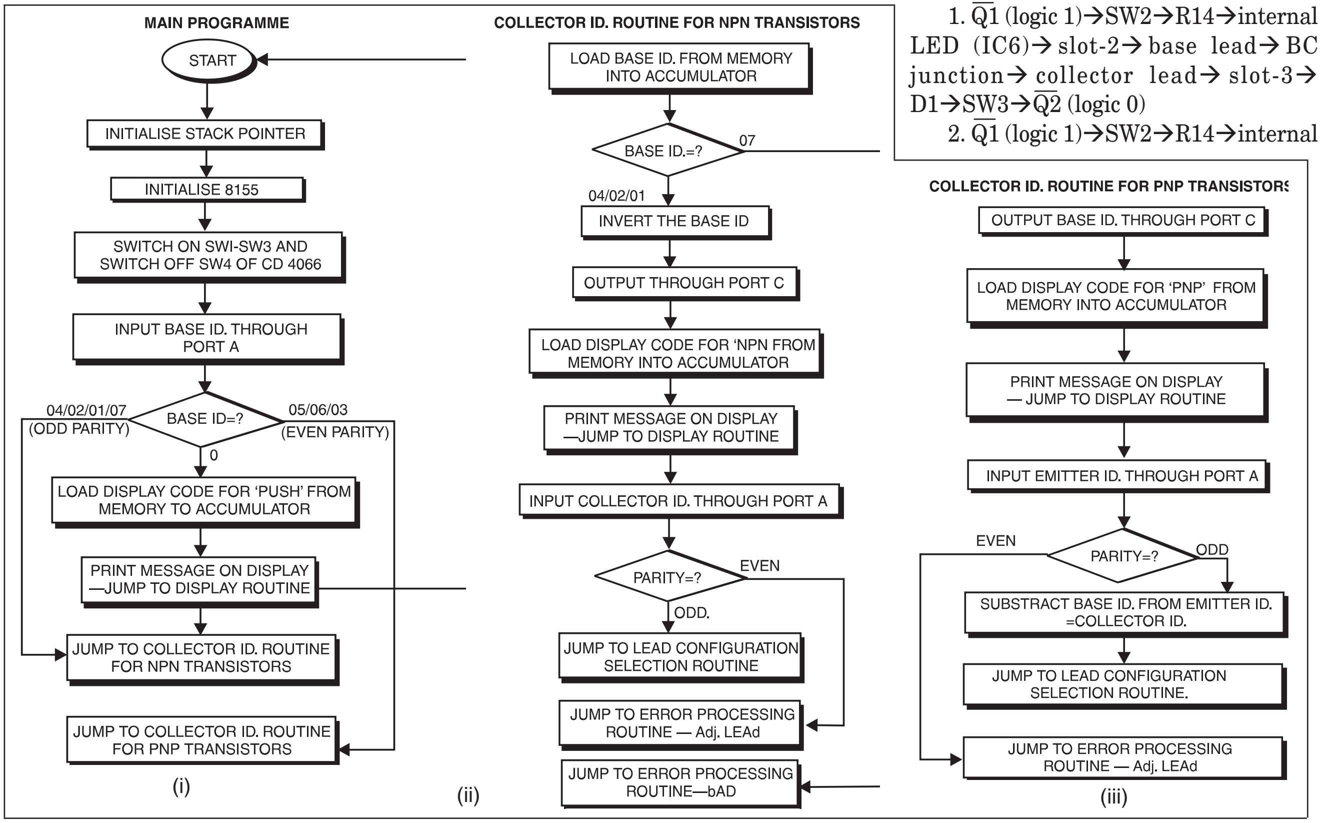

MAIN PROGRAMME
START
INITIALISE STACK POINTER
INITIALISE 8155
SWITCH ON SWI-SW3 AND SWITCH OFF SW4 OF CD 4066
INPUT BASE ID. THROUGH PORT A
04/02/01/07 (ODD PARITY)
BASE ID=?
05/06/03 (EVEN PARITY)
0
LOAD DISPLAY CODE FOR 'PUSH' FROM MEMORY TO ACCUMULATOR
PRINT MESSAGE ON DISPLAY —JUMP TO DISPLAY ROUTINE
JUMP TO COLLECTOR ID. ROUTINE FOR NPN TRANSISTORS
JUMP TO COLLECTOR ID. ROUTINE FOR PNP TRANSISTORS
(i)
COLLECTOR ID. ROUTINE FOR NPN TRANSISTORS
LOAD BASE ID. FROM MEMORY INTO ACCUMULATOR
BASE ID.=?
07
04/02/01
INVERT THE BASE ID
OUTPUT THROUGH PORT C
LOAD DISPLAY CODE FOR 'NPN FROM MEMORY INTO ACCUMULATOR
PRINT MESSAGE ON DISPLAY —JUMP TO DISPLAY ROUTINE
INPUT COLLECTOR ID. THROUGH PORT A
PARITY=?
EVEN
ODD.
JUMP TO LEAD CONFIGURATION SELECTION ROUTINE
JUMP TO ERROR PROCESSING ROUTINE — Adj. LEAd
JUMP TO ERROR PROCESSING ROUTINE—bAD
(ii)
COLLECTOR ID. ROUTINE FOR PNP TRANSISTORS
OUTPUT BASE ID. THROUGH PORT C
LOAD DISPLAY CODE FOR 'PNP' FROM MEMORY INTO ACCUMULATOR
PRINT MESSAGE ON DISPLAY — JUMP TO DISPLAY ROUTINE
INPUT EMITTER ID. THROUGH PORT A
EVEN
PARITY=?
ODD
SUBSTRACT BASE ID. FROM EMITTER ID. =COLLECTOR ID.
JUMP TO LEAD CONFIGURATION SELECTION ROUTINE.
JUMP TO ERROR PROCESSING ROUTINE — Adj. LEAd
(iii)

Fig. 5: Flowcharts for the main program and various subroutines

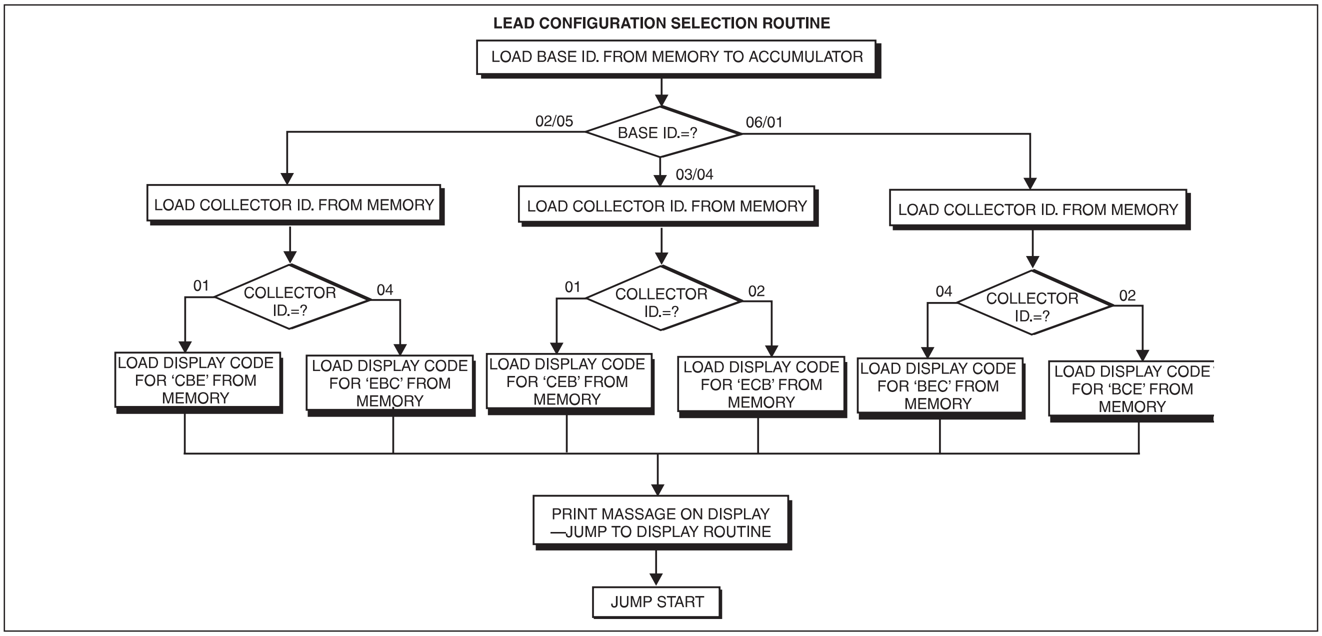

LEAD CONFIGURATION SELECTION ROUTINE
LOAD BASE ID. FROM MEMORY TO ACCUMULATOR
BASE ID.=?
02/05
03/04
06/01
LOAD COLLECTOR ID. FROM MEMORY
LOAD COLLECTOR ID. FROM MEMORY
LOAD COLLECTOR ID. FROM MEMORY
COLLECTOR ID.=?
01
04
COLLECTOR ID.=?
01
02
COLLECTOR ID.=?
04
02
LOAD DISPLAY CODE FOR 'CBE' FROM MEMORY
LOAD DISPLAY CODE FOR 'EBC' FROM MEMORY
LOAD DISPLAY CODE FOR 'CEB' FROM MEMORY
LOAD DISPLAY CODE FOR 'ECB' FROM MEMORY
LOAD DISPLAY CODE FOR 'BEC' FROM MEMORY
LOAD DISPLAY CODE FOR 'BCE' FROM MEMORY
PRINT MASSAGE ON DISPLAY —JUMP TO DISPLAY ROUTINE
JUMP START

Fig. 5 (iv)

TABLE V

PC7	PC6	PC5	PC4	PC3	PC2	PC1	PC0
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1

TABLE VI

PC7	PC6	PC5	PC4	PC3	PC2	PC1	PC0
0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1

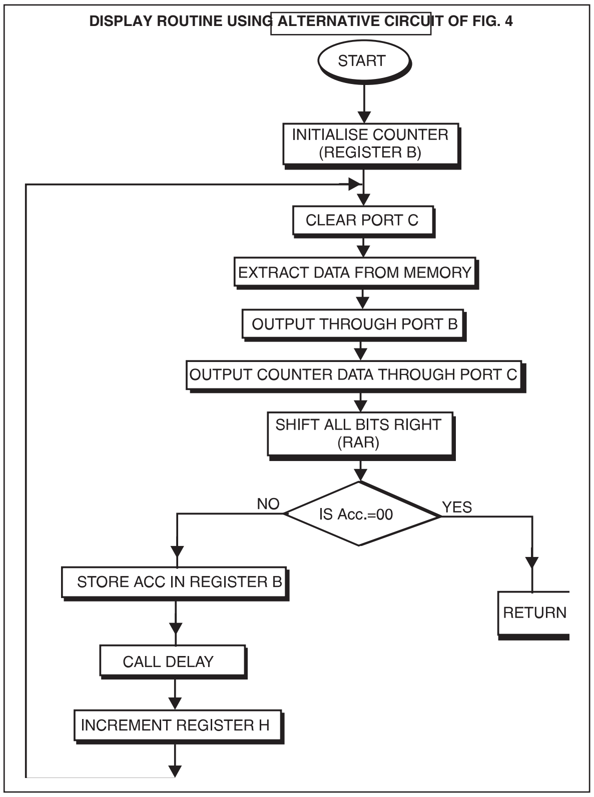

DISPLAY ROUTINE USING ALTERNATIVE CIRCUIT OF FIG. 4
START
INITIALISE COUNTER (REGISTER B)
CLEAR PORT C
EXTRACT DATA FROM MEMORY
OUTPUT THROUGH PORT B
OUTPUT COUNTER DATA THROUGH PORT C
SHIFT ALL BITS RIGHT (RAR)
IS Acc.=00
NO
YES
STORE ACC IN REGISTER B
RETURN
CALL DELAY
INCREMENT REGISTER H

Fig. 5 (v)

LED (IC6)→slot-2→base lead→BE junction→emitter lead→slot 1→D5→SW1→$\overline{Q0}$ (logic 0)

Thus, only the internal LED of IC6 would start flickering, and the data that would be formed at the emitters of the transistors is also 010. Accordingly, the base-Id that would be developed in this case is 0000 0010=2(H).

Since, under the same orientation of the transistor in the socket, the base-Ids are different for a pnp and an npn device, the software can decode the type of the device.

In a similar way we can justify the production of the other base-Ids, when their collector, base, and emitter are inserted in the testing socket differently.

Once the base-Id is determined, the software sends the same number for a pnp-device (here=05(H)) through port C (port number 83), with the bit format shown in Table V.

As a result, the control input of SW2 (pin 12 of IC5) gets logic 0. So the switch opens to insert resistor R5 in series with the base circuit. This action is necessary to identify the emitter (and hence the collector) lead as described earlier under 'Principle' sub-heading.

On the contrary, since an npn-device uses the set-2 binary numbers for identification of the collector (hence the emitter), the same number (base-Id) obtained during base identification cannot be sent through port C, if the device under test is of npn type. The base-Id found must be EX-ORed first with OF (H). Since the base-Id found here is 02 (H), the data to be sent through port C in this case would be as shown in Table VI.

Note that PC3 becomes logic-1, which would close switch SW4 to get the set-2 binary numbers.

Once resistor R5 is inserted in the base circuit, and set-1 binary numbers are applied to the device (pnp type), it would be biased sequentially in three distinct ways, of which only two would be effective. The same are shown in Fig. 2.

In case of binary number 100, the current through the internal LED of IC4 would distinctly be very low compared to the current flowing during number 001, through the internal LED of IC7. If R5 is of sufficiently high value, the former current may be reduced to such an extent that the related LED would be off. Hence, the data that would be formed at the emitters of transistors T1-T3 would be 001.

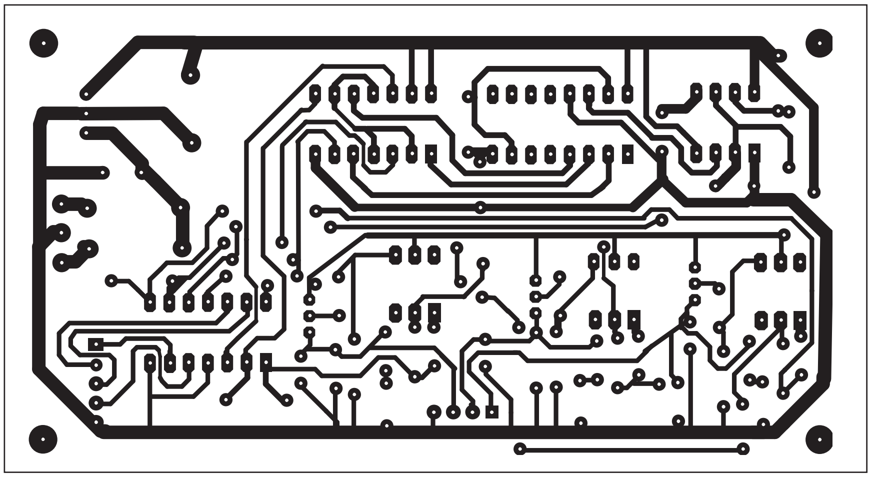


Fig. 6: Actual-size, single-sided PCB layout for the circuit in Fig. 1

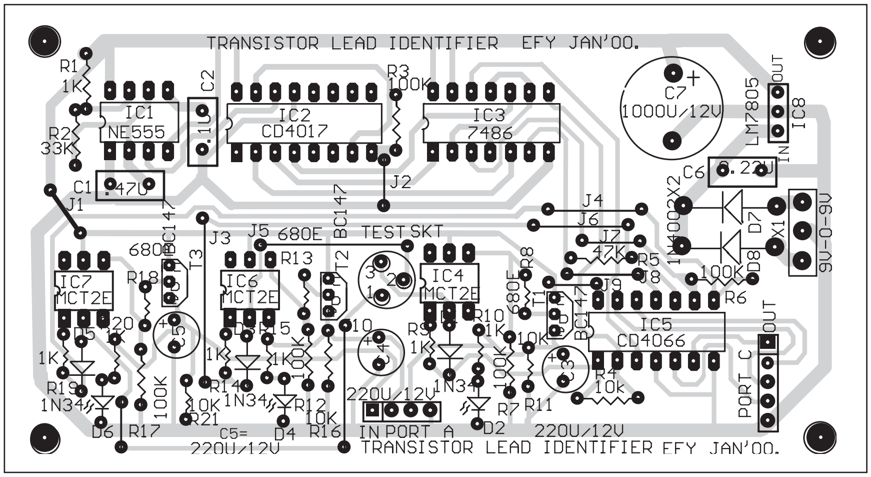

TRANSISTOR LEAD IDENTIFIER EFY JAN'00.
R1
1K
IC1
NE555
R2
33K
C2
0.1U
IC2
CD4017
R3
100K
IC3
7486
C7
1000U/12V
LM7805
IC8
OUT
IN
C1
.47U
J1
J2
C6
0.22U
J3
J4
J5
J6
J7
J8
J9
680E
BC147
T3
T2
T1
TEST SKT
1N4002X2
D7
D8
X1
9V-0-9V
IC7
MCT2E
R18
IC6
MCT2E
R13
IC4
MCT2E
R8
680E
R5
47K
R6
100K
IC5
CD4066
OUT
PORT C
R19
1N34
D6
R17
100K
R21
R14
10K
1N34
R12
10K
R16
D4
C5=
220U/12V
220U/12V
IN PORT A
R9
1K
R10
1K
1N34
100K
R7
R11
D2
R4
10k
220U/12V
TRANSISTOR LEAD IDENTIFIER EFY JAN'00.

Fig. 7: Component layout for the PCB

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:

IC1	- NE555, timer
IC3	- CD4017, decade counter-decoder
IC3	- 7486, quad EX-OR gates
IC4,IC6,IC7	- MCT2E, optocoupler
IC5	- CD4066, quad bilateral switch
IC8	- LM7805, 3-terminal +5V regulator
T1,T2,T3	- BC147, npn transistor
D1,D3,D5	- 1N34, point contact diode
D2,D4,D6	- LED, 5mm
D7,D8	- 1N4002, rectifier diode

Resistors (All ¼ watt +/- 5% metal/carbon film unless stated otherwise)

R1,R9,R10,R14, R15,R19,R20	- 1 kilo-ohm
R2	- 33 kilo-ohm
R5	- 47 kilo-ohm
R4,R11,R16,R21	- 10 kilo-ohm
R3,R6,R7,R12,R17	- 100 kilo-ohm
R8,R13,R18	- 680 ohm

Capacitors:

C1	- 0.5µF polyster
C2	- 0.1µF polyster
C3-C5	- 220µF/12V electrolytic
C6	- 0.22µF polyster
C7	- 1000µF/12V electrolytic

Miscellaneous:

X1	- 230V/9V-0-9V, 250mA power transformer

It would be modified by the software to 0000 0001=01(H). This is termed in the software as emitter-Id and is stored at memory location 216B.

On the other hand, if the device is of npn type, set-2 binary numbers are to be applied to it, and the transistor would be biased as shown in Fig. 3. Here, only the internal LED of IC4 would flicker. So, the data at the output would be 100=04(H). This is termed in the software as collector-Id, and is stored in memory location 216C. (In case of pnp-device, the collector-Id is determined mathematically by subtracting the Base-Id from the emitter-Id.)

So the result could be summarised as:

pnp type:
Base-Id = 05(H), Collector-Id = 01(H).
npn type:
Base-Id = 02(H), Collector-Id = 01(H).

With this result, the software would point to configuration CBE in the data table, and print the same on the display. By a similar analysis, lead configuration for any other orientation of the device in the test socket would be displayed by the software, after finding the related base- and collector-Id.

The Display. The display procedure described in this article is based on IC 8279 (programmable keyboard/display interface) which is used in the microprocessor kit. The unique feature of the 8279-based display system is that, it can run on its own. You just have to dump the data to be displayed on its internal RAM, and your duty is over. 8279 extracts this data from its RAM and goes on displaying the same without taking any help or consuming the time of the microprocessor in the kit.

Unfortunately, not all the microprocessor kits present in the market are fitted with this IC. Instead, some of them use a soft-scan method for display purpose. Hence, the stated procedure cannot be run in those kits. Of course, if the monitor program of the kit is to be used, which may have an in-built display routine to display the content of four specific memory locations—all at a time, the same may be used in place of the present display procedure.

Note: *Display subroutine at address 20FC used at* EFY, *making use of the monitor program of the Vinytics 8085 kit, during program testing, is listed towards the end of the software program given by the author. To make use of the author's display subroutine, please change the code against 'CALL DISPLAY' instruction (code CDFC 20) everywhere in the program to code CD 40 21 for 8279 based display or code CD 07 21 for alternate display referred in the next paragraph.*

Alternatively, one can construct a special display system using four octal D-type latches (74373) and four seven-segment LED displays (LT543). Only one latch and one display has been shown in the schematic circuit of Fig. 4 along with its interface lines from 8155 or 8255 of the kit. To drive this display, a special soft-scan method explained in the following para has to be used.

The soft scan display procedure. The procedure extracts the first data to be displayed from memory. The start memory address of the data to be displayed is to be supplied by the calling program. This data (8-bit) is output from

TRLEAD.LST

Memory Map And Software listing in 8085 Assembly Language

RAM Locations used for program :2000H - 21BBH
Stack pointer initialised :2FFFH
Monitor Program :0000H - 0FFFH
Display Data Table :2160H - 219AH
Control/Status Register of 8155 :80H
Port A (Input) of 8155 :81H
Port B (Output) of 8155 :82H
Port C (Output) of 8155 :83H

```
Address Op Code   Label    Mnemonic       Comments
;Initialisation, base and type identification
2000    31FF2F    MAIN:    LXI SP,2FFFH   Initialisation of the ports. A as the
2003    3E0E               MVI A,0EH      input and C as the output port.
2005    D380               OUT 80H        Sends 07 through port C to make SW1,
2007    3E07               MVI A,07H      SW2, SW3 ON and SW4 OFF.
2009    D383               OUT 83H        Time delay should be allowed before
200B    CD3320             CALL DELAY     measuring the logic voltages across
200E    CD3320             CALL DELAY     capacitors C1, C2, and C3, so that
2011    CD3320             CALL DELAY     they charge to the peak values.
2014    AF                 XRA A          Clears the accumulator
2015    DB81               IN 81H         Input data from interface through.
portA   2017E607           ANI 07H        Test only first 3 bits, masking others
2019    326A21             STA 216AH      Stores the number in memory.
201C    CA2A20             JZ P           If the number is zero jumps to 202A
201F    EA3D20             JPE P2         If the number has even no. of 1s,
                                          jumps to 203D (refer note 2)
2022    E26820             JPO P3         If the number has odd no. of 1s, jump
                                          to 2068 (refer note 1)
2025    00                 NOP            No operation
2026    00                 NOP            No operation
2027    00                 NOP            No operation
2028    00                 NOP            No operation
2029    00                 NOP            No operation
202A    218921    P:       LXI H,2189H    Points to message "PUSH" in data
                                          table
202D    CDFC20             CALL DISPLAY   Displays the message
2030    C30020             JMP MAIN       Jumps to start.
;Delay sub-routine
2033    11FFFF DELAY:      LXI D,FFFFH    Loads DE with FFFF
2036    1B                 DCX D          Decrements DE
2037    7A                 MOV A,D        Moves result into Acc.
2038    B3                 ORA E          OR E with Acc.
2039    C23620             JNZ 2036       If not zero, jumps to 2036
203C    C9                 RET            Returns to calling program
;Collector identification program for PNP transistors
203D    216A21    P2:      LXI H,216AH    Points of Base-Id in data table
2040    7E                 MOV A,M        Extracts the number to the accumula-
                                          tor
2041    D383               OUT 83H        Send the number to the interface
2043    216021             LXI H,2160H    Points to message 'PnP' in data table
2046    CDFC20             CALL DISPLAY   Displays the message
2049    CD3320             CALL DELAY     Waits for few moments
204C    CD3320             CALL DELAY     Waits for few moments
204F    CD3320             CALL DELAY     Waits for few moments
2052    AF                 XRA A          Clears the accumulator
2053    DB81               IN 81H         Seeks data from the interface
2055    E607               ANI 07H        Masks all bits except bits 0,1 and 2
2057    EAA021             JPE ERR        If the data contains even no. of 1s
                                          jumps to error processing routine
205A    326B21             STA 216BH      Stores the data (Emitter-Id) in
                                          memory
205D    47                 MOV B,A        Moves the Emitter-Id. to B register
205E    3A6A21             LDA 216AH      Extracts Base-Id from memory
2061    90                 SUB B          Subtracts Emitter-Id from Base-Id
2062    326C21             STA 216CH      Stores the result(Collector-Id)in mem.
 2065   C39220             JMP P4         Jumps to select lead configuration
;Collector identification program for NPN transistors
2068    216A21    P3:      LXI H,216AH    Points to Base-Id in data table
```

```
Address Op Code   Label    Mnemonic       Comments
206B    7E                 MOV A,M        Extract the number to the accumula-
                                          tor
206C    FE07               CPI 07H        Refer note 1
206E    CAB621             JZ ER          Jumps to error processing routine
2071    EE0F               XRI 0FH        Refer note 2
2073    D383               OUT 83H        Send the number to the interface
2075    216421             LXI H,2164H    Points to the message "nPn"
2078    CDFC20             CALL DISPLAY   Displays the same
207B    CD3320             CALL DELAY     Waits for few moments
207E    CD3320             CALL DELAY     Waits for few moments
2081    CD3320             CALL DELAY     Waits for few moments
2084    AF                 XRA A          Clears the accumulator
2085    DB81               IN 81H         Seeks data from the interface
2087    E607               ANI 07H        Checks only first three bits
2089    EAA021             JPE ERR        If 2 bits are at logic-1 jumps to 21A0
208C    326C21             STA 216CH      Store the No. (Collector-Id)into mem.
208F    C39220             JMP P4         Jumps to select lead configuration
;Lead configuration selection program
2092    216A21    P4:      LXI H,216AH    Extracts Base-Id from memory loca-
                                          tion
2095    7E                 MOV A,M        216A to the accumulator
2096    FE05               CPI 05H        If the number is 05,
2098    CABA20             JZ P4A         jumps to subroutine 4A
209B    FE06               CPI 06H        If the number is 06,
209D    CAD020             JZ P4B         jumps to the subroutine 4B
20A0    FE03               CPI 03H        If the number is 03,
20A2    CAE620             JZ P4C         jumps to the subroutine 4C
20A5    FE02               CPI 02H        If the number is 02,
20A7    CABA20             JZ P4A         jumps to the subroutine 4A
20AA    FE01               CPI 01H        If the number is 06,
20AC    CAD020             JZ P4B         jumps to the subroutine 4B
20AF    FE04               CPI 04H        If the number is 04,
20B1    CAE620             JZ P4C         jumps to the subroutine 4C
20B4    CDFC20    M:       CALL DISPLAY   Jumps to display the lead configura-
                                          tion
                                          selected in P4A or P4B or P4C
20B7    C30020             JMP MAIN       Jumps back to start
;Lead configuration selection (Base Id.=05 or 02)
20BA    216C21    P4A:     LXI H,216CH    Extracts Collector-Id from memory
                                          location
20BD    7E                 MOV A,M        216C to the accumulator
20BE    FE01               CPI 01H        If it is = 01, jumps to 20CA
20C0    CACA20             JZ E           If it is = 04, points to lead
                                          configuration "EbC"
20C3    217521             LXI H,2175H    in data table
20C6    C3B420             JMP M          Jumps to display the lead
                                          configuration pointed
20C9    00                 NOP            NOP
20CA    217121    E:       LXI H,2171H    Points to lead config."CbE" and jumps
20CD    C3B420             JMP M          display the configuration
;Lead configuration selection (Base Id.= 06 or 01)
20D0    216C21    P4B:     LXI H,216CH    Extracts Collector-Id from memory
                                          location
20D3    7E                 MOV A,M        216C to the accumulator
20D4    FE02               CPI 02H        If it is STE02, jumps to 20E0
20D6    CAE020             JZ B I         If it is =04, points to lead
20D9    217D21             LXI H,217DH    configuration "bEC" in data table
20DC    C3B420             JMP M          Jumps to display the lead
                                          configuration pointed
20DF    00                 NOP            No oPeration
20E0    217921    B:       LXI H,2179H    Points to lead configuration "bCE"
20E3    C3B420             JMP M          and jumps display the configuration
;Lead configuration selection (Base Id.=03 or 04)
20E6    216C21    P4C:     LXI H,216CH    Extracts Collector-Id from memory
                                          location
20E9    7E                 MOV A,M        216C to the accumulator
20EA    FE01               CPI 01H        If it is =01, jumps to 20F6
20EC    CAF620             JZ C           If it is =02, points to lead
```

Address	Op Code	Label	Mnemonic	Comments
20EF	218121		LXI H,2181H	configuration “ECb” in data table
20F2	C3B420		JMP M	Jumps to display the lead
20F5	00		NOP	configuration pointed; no operation
20F6	218521	**C:**	LXI H,2185H	Points to lead configuration “CEb”
20F9	C3B420		JMP M	and jumps to display the configuration

;Display routine using 8279 of the kit (if present)

Address	Op Code	Label	Mnemonic	Comments
2140	0E04		MVI C,03	Sets the counter to count 4 characters
2142	3E90		MVI A,90	Sets cont.8279 to auto-incr. mode
2144	320160		STA 6001	Address of 8279 cont. reg.=6001
2147	7E		MOV A,M	Moves 1st data character from mem. Loc. pointed to by calling instruction.
2148	2F		CMA	Inverts data (refer note below)
2149	320060		STA,6000	Stores data in 8279 data reg. (addr=6000)
214C	0D		DCR C	Decrements counter
214D	CA5421		JZ 2154	Returns to calling program if count=0
2150	23		INX H	Increments memory pointer
2151	C34721		JMP2147	Jumps to get next character from memory
2154	C9		RET	Returns to the calling program

Note: In the microprocessor kit used, data is inverted before feeding the 7-seg display.

;Alternative Display Subroutine to be used with interface circuit of Fig. 4

Address	Op Code	Label	Mnemonic	Comments
2107	0608		MVI B,08H	Store 0000 1000 in reg.B
2109	3E00		MVI A,00H	Out 00H through Port C to latch data in all
210B	D383		OUT 83H	74373s. (no data would move to O/Ps)
210D	7E		MOV A,M	Moves the 1st char. Of the data pointed, to the accumulator (mem. address given by
210E	D382		OUT 82H	calling program)
2110	78		MOV A,B	By moving out reg.B data throgh port C
2111	D383		OUT 83H	a specific latch is enabled.
2113	1F		RAR	Logic 1 of counter data moves right 1 bit
2114	FE00		CPI 00H	Checks to see logic 1 moves out from acc.
2116	CA2121		JZ 2121H	(All 4 data digits latched)to return to the calling program.
2119	47		MOV B,A	Else stores back new counter data to B reg.
211A	CD3320		CALL DELAY	
211D	23		INX H	Memory pointer incremented by 1
211E	C30921		JMP 2109H	Jumps to the next character from the table
2121	C9		RET	Returns to the calling program

;Error Sub-routine

Address	Op Code	Label	Mnemonic	Comments
21A0	219121	**ERR:**	LXI H,2191H	Points to the message “Adj.” in memory
21A3	CDFC20		CALL DISPLAY	Calls the display routine to display the same
21A6	CD3320		CALL DELAY	Waits
21A9	CD3320		CALL DELAY	Waits
21AC	219621		LXI H,2196H	Points to the message “LEAd” in memory
21AF	CDFC20	**BAD:**	CALL DISPLAY	Calls the display routine to display
21B2	C30020		JMP MAIN	Jumps back to start
21B5	00		NOP	No operation
21B6	218D21	**ER:**	LXI H,218DH	Points to message “bAd” in the data table
21B9	C3AF21		JMP BAD	Jumps to display the message

Data table:

Addr.	Data	Display	Addr.	Data	Display	Addr.	Data	Display
2160	37	P	2179	C7	b	2189	37	P
2161	45	n	217A	93	C	218A	E3	U
2162	37	P	217B	97	E	218B	D6	S
2163	00		217C	00		218C	67	H
2164	45	n	217D	C7	b	218D	C7	b
2165	37	P	217E	97	E	218E	77	A
2166	45	n	217F	93	C	218F	E5	d
2167	00		2180	00		2190	00	
216A	Base-id (store)		2181	97	E	2191	7	a
216B	Emitter-id (store)		2182	93	C	2192	E5	d
216C	Collector-id (store)		2183	C7	b	2193	E1	J
2171	93	C	2184	00		2194	00	
2172	C7	b	2185	93	C	2196	83	L
2173	97	E	2186	97	E	2197	97	E
2174	00		2187	C7	b	2198	77	A
2175	97	E	2188	00		2199	E5	D
2176	C7	b				219A	00	
2177	93	C						
2178	00							

Address of routines/labels:

MAIN	2000	P	202A	DELAY	2033	D	2036
P2	203D	P3	2068	P4	2092	M	20B4
P4A	20BA	E	20CA	P4B	20D0	B	20E0
P4C	20E6	C	20F6	DISPLAY	20FC	ERR	21A0
BAD	21AF	ER	21B6				

Notes:

1. During Base identification, if the data found has odd parity, only then the program jumps to this routine (starting at 2068 at P3:) for collector identification. A single logic-1 denotes a good transistor, whereas three logic-1 (i.e. Base-Id = 07) denote a bad transistor with shorted leads. Hence the program jumps to error processing routine to display the message “bAd”.

2. The purpose of sending the Base-Id number to the interface through Port-C, is to insert a resistor in series with the Base (as indicated in the principle above). The logic-1(s) of the Base-Id, set the switches connected with the collector and emitter leads to “ON”, and that with the base to “OFF”. The result is, the resistor already present in the base circuit (10K, 47K or 100K which one is applicable), becomes active. To achieve this result, the Base-Id found for an NPN device is to be inverted first.

;Display subroutine used by EFY using monitor program of Vinytics kit.

```
20FC    C5        DISPLAY: PUSH B
20FD    3E00               MVI A,0H
20FF    0600               MVI B,0H
2101    7E                 MOV A,M
2102    CDD005    CALL 05D0H
2105    C1                 POP B
2106    C9                 RET
```

port B of 8155/8255 PPI (after proper coding for driving the seven-segment displays), used in the kit. Data lines are connected in parallel to all the octal latches. But only one of the four latches is enabled (via a specific data bit of port C of 8155/8255) to receive the data and transfer the same to its output to drive the corresponding seven-segment LED display. To enable a particular latch, a logic 1 is sent through a particular bit of port C (bit 4 here, for the first data) by the software. Subsequently, logic 0 is sent through that bit to latch the data transferred. The program then jumps to seek the second data from memory, and sends the same through port B as before. However, in this case logic 1 is sent through bit 3 of port C, to latch the data to the second seven-segment LED display, and so on.

TABLE VII

; Modification to Collector Identification Program for pnp Transistors

Address	Op Code	Label	Mnemonic	Comments
203D	216021	**P2:**	LXI H,2160H	Points to message ‘PnP’in data table
2040	CDFC20		CALL DISPLAY	Displays the message
2043	216A21		LXI H,216AH	Points to Base-Id in data table
2046	7E		MOV A,M	Extract the number to the accumulator
2047	D383		OUT 83H	Send number via port C to interface

Register B of 8085 is used as a counter, and is initially stored with the binary number 00001000 (08H). Each time a data

TABLE VIII

; Modification to Collector Identification Program for npn Transistors

Address	Op Code	Label	Mnemonic	Comments
2068	216421	**P3:**	LXI H,2164H	Points to the message ‘nPn’
206B	CDFC20		CALL DISPLAY	Displays the same on display.
206E	216A21		LXI H,216AH	Points to Base-Id in DATA table
2071	7E		MOV A,M	Extract the number to the accumulator
2072	FE07		CPI 07H	Refer note.1 (see original program.)
2074	CAB621		JZ ER	Jumps to error processing routine
2077	EE0F		XRI 0FH	Refer note.2 (see original program.)
2079	D383		OUT 83H	Send number to interface (via port C)

is latched, the logic 1 is shifted right by one place. So, after the fourth data is latched, the reg. B content would be 0000 0001. Shifting operation is done after first moving the data from the register to the accumulator, and then storing the result back into the register once again if the zero flag is not set by the RAR operation. Now, with the reg. B content = 0000 0001, one more shifting of the bits towards right would make the accumulator content = 0000 0000, which would set the zero flag. And hence the program would jump back to the calling one. It would be interesting to note the same reg. B content (a binary number comprising a logic 1) is sent through port C to enable the particular latch.

Since the base Id numbers and the code to enable a specific latch are sent through the same port (port C) in the alternate display, the base Id must be sent first for displaying the message PnP/nPn. Therefore changes or modifications are required in the original program pertaining to collector identification program for pnp transistors (at locations 203D through 2048) and npn transistors (at locations 2068 through 207A) as given in Tables VII and VIII respectively.

Software flow charts. Software flow charts for main program and various subroutines are shown in Fig. 5.

PCB and parts list are included only for the main interface diagram of Fig. 1. The actual-size, single-sided PCB for the same is given in Fig. 6 while its component layout is shown in Fig. 7. ■

Readers queries:

1. The unconnected pins of IC CD4017 (sequential counter) should be grounded to get correct truth table.

2. You have given the data for npn, pnp, bce, etc. Does this data change from one microprocessor kit to another? If yes, please give me the solution.

3. Can we identify the leads of power transistors? What alteration should be done to the circuit for the same?

Manjunath
Bangalore

The author, Arup Kumar Sen, replies:

1. The unused pins of sequential BCD counter-decoder IC CD4017 cannot be grounded, as these carry decoded outputs.

2. The data PnP/nPn/BCE............, as displayed on the kit’s display, does not depend upon the kit’s architecture. But, a special display system has to be incorporated, as indicated in the article, if the display system of the kit uses a soft-scan technique or a display controller IC other than 8279.

3. Yes, a power transistor can also be tested. However, the orientation of the transistor leads in the socket may have to be changed during testing. The necessity of this action and cause behind this are clearly indicated in the article under the sub-heading ‘Error Processing Subroutine’.

PC BASED SPEED MONITORING SYSTEM

SANTHOSH JAYARAJAN

This project describes the software and hardware necessary to monitor and capture in real time the speed of any rotating object. The speed may be defined/stored/displayed in any of the three units: RPM (rev./minute), RPS (rev./second), or RPH (rev./hour). The system uses a sampling time of two seconds and can store up to 16 minutes of data per file. The x and y axes can be scaled to read any speed and the x-axis can be 'stretched' to observe clustered points.

The hardware mainly comprises a proximity switch whose output is connected to the printer (LPT1) port of the computer through an opto- coupler. The proximity switch is used as a speed-sensor. The program is written in C++ and has effective error handling capability and a help facility. This system can be used to monitor the speed of rotating parts in the industry or to read and record wind speeds.

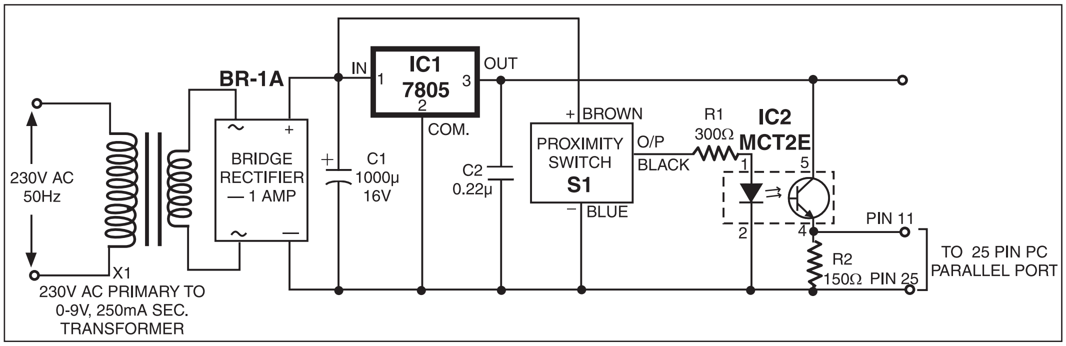

230V AC
50Hz
X1
230V AC PRIMARY TO
0-9V, 250mA SEC.
TRANSFORMER
BR-1A
BRIDGE
RECTIFIER
— 1 AMP
~
+
—
C1
1000µ
16V
IN
IC1
7805
1
2
3
OUT
COM.
C2
0.22µ
+ BROWN
PROXIMITY
SWITCH
S1
− BLUE
O/P
BLACK
R1
300Ω
IC2
MCT2E
1
5
2
4
PIN 11
R2
150Ω
PIN 25
TO 25 PIN PC
PARALLEL PORT

Fig. 1: Interface circuit for PC based speed monitoring system

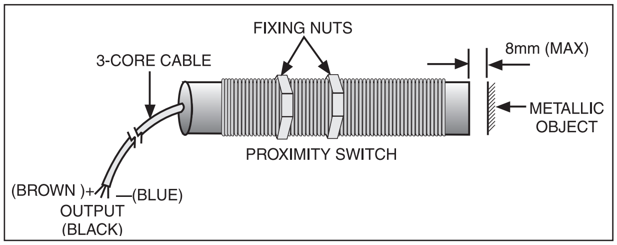

FIXING NUTS
3-CORE CABLE
8mm (MAX)
METALLIC
OBJECT
PROXIMITY SWITCH
(BROWN)+
(BLUE)
OUTPUT
(BLACK)

Fig. 2: Proximity switch

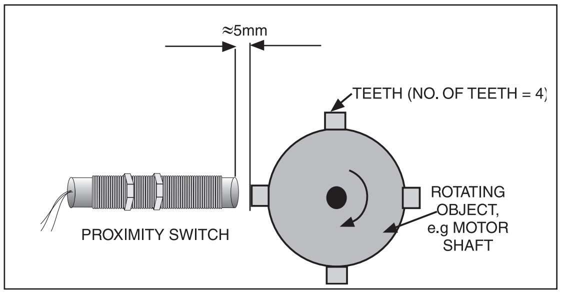

≈5mm
TEETH (NO. OF TEETH = 4)
ROTATING
OBJECT,
e.g MOTOR
SHAFT
PROXIMITY SWITCH

Fig. 3: Mounting of proximity switch

The hardware interface

The hardware interface circuit is given in Fig. 1. A 230V AC primary to 9V AC, 250mA secondary transformer followed by IC 7805 is used for catering to the power supply requirement for proximity switch and the opto-coupler. The proximity switch, as shown in Fig. 2, is a 3-wire switch (e.g. PG Electronics' EDP101) which operates at 6V to 24V DC.

The inductive type proximity switch senses any metal surface from a distance of about 5 mm to 8 mm. Thus, a gear or fan blade is ideal for counting the number of revolutions. The number of teeth that trigger (switch-on) the proximity switch during every revolution are to be known for the software to calculate the speed of the machinery. The output of the circuit, available across resistor R2, is fed to the PC via 25-pin 'D' connector of parallel port LPT1. Pin 11 pertains to data bit D7 of the input port 379(hex) of the LPT1 port having base address 378(hex), and pin 25 is connected to PC ground. (In fact, pins 18 through 25 of the parallel port are strapped together and connected to ground.)

The proximity switch is mounted on a stationary part, such as a bolt or stud, in such a way that it senses each tooth of the rotating part as shown in Fig. 3. Two fixing nuts are provided on the threaded body of the proximity switch for securing it firmly onto a fixed part of the machinery.

The software prompts the operator to enter the number of teeth (being sensed during every revolution), which is used by the program for calculation of RPM, RPS, or RPH, as the case may be. In any specific application, where non-metallic rotating parts are present and inductive proximity switch cannot be used, one may

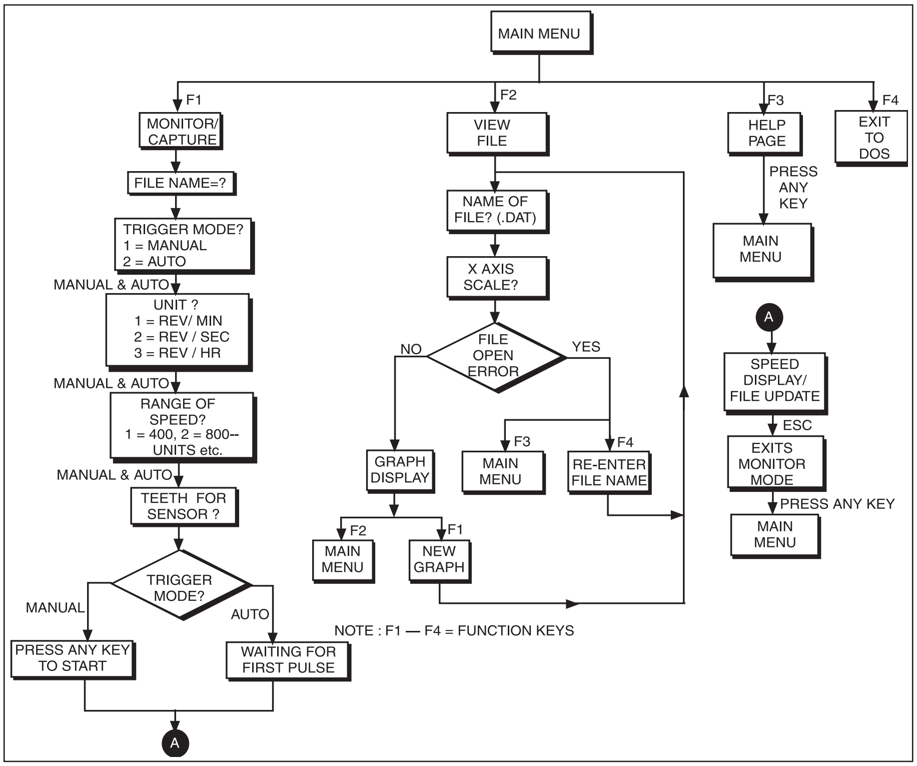

MAIN MENU
F1
F2
F3
F4
MONITOR/ CAPTURE
VIEW FILE
HELP PAGE
EXIT TO DOS
PRESS ANY KEY
MAIN MENU
FILE NAME=?
NAME OF FILE? (.DAT)
TRIGGER MODE? 1 = MANUAL 2 = AUTO
X AXIS SCALE?
MANUAL & AUTO
UNIT ? 1 = REV/ MIN 2 = REV / SEC 3 = REV / HR
FILE OPEN ERROR
NO
YES
A
SPEED DISPLAY/ FILE UPDATE
MANUAL & AUTO
RANGE OF SPEED? 1 = 400, 2 = 800-- UNITS etc.
ESC
F3
F4
GRAPH DISPLAY
MAIN MENU
RE-ENTER FILE NAME
EXITS MONITOR MODE
MANUAL & AUTO
TEETH FOR SENSOR ?
PRESS ANY KEY
MAIN MENU
F2
F1
MAIN MENU
NEW GRAPH
TRIGGER MODE?
MANUAL
AUTO
NOTE : F1 — F4 = FUNCTION KEYS
PRESS ANY KEY TO START
WAITING FOR FIRST PULSE
A

Fig. 4: Structural block diagram of software

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:		
IC1	-	7805 regulator 5V
IC2	-	MCT2E opto-coupler
Resistors (all ¼ watt, ± 5% metal/carbon film, unless stated otherwise)		
R1	-	300-ohm
R2	-	150-ohm
Capacitors:		
C1	-	1000µF, 16V electrolytic
C2	-	0.22µF polyster
Miscellaneous:		
X1	-	230V AC primary to 0-9, 250mA sec. transformer
BR-1A	-	Bridge rectifier, 1-amp.
S1	-	Proximity switch (refer text)

HELPS.PG1 file contents

+++SPEED MASTER HELP PAGE+++

This software can be used to capture and monitor the speed of any rotating part for a maximum of eight minutes with a total sampling time of two seconds. The software has four menu levels which can be selected from the Main Menu.

In Capture/Monitor mode the software has two trigger modes, viz, Manual, which waits for a key press and Auto, which waits for the first pulse from the sensor.

The captured file can be viewed in any X-axis scale. However, all points coming out of the view page are clipped off.

When using the gear teeth for speed calculation, please enter the teeth per revolution to enable internal calculation of speed to be made.

Enter the filename where the data is to be stored, when prompted. The same file can be viewed in the view page option. If an invalid file name is entered, or the file cannot be opened, an error is displayed and the user can exit to Main.

...Press Any Key to Return to Main...

use photo-electric switch to do the counting for 2-second sampling period.

As interface circuit can easily be wired on any general-purpose PCB, no PCB layout is included for it. The two wires to be extended to 25-pin parallel port may be connected using a 25-pin male 'D' connector.

Lab Note: *Magnetic proximity switches, from various manufacturers, are available in the market. The important specifications include operating DC voltage range, operating current and its sensitivity, i.e. the maximum distance from a metallic object such that the switch operates. These specifications are normally mentioned on the proximity switch itself or in the accompanying literature.*

FILE Contents of DEMO.DAT Showing Rev./min.

1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
15	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	15	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	30	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	15	0	0
0	15	0	90	0	15	0	0
0	15	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	120	0	0	0	0	0	15
30	30	0	0	30	0	0	0
0	150	0	0	0	0	0	0
30	0	0	0	0	0	0	15
0	30	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	15	60	0	0	15	0	0
30	150	0	0	0	0	0	
0	0	0	0	0	15	0	

The software

The structural block diagram of the software is shown in Fig. 4. The software has the following four main modules, which are activated from the main menu using four of the function keys, F1 through F4.

1. Speed monitor and capture module. This module is used to monitor the speed and store the data in a user-defined file.

(a) The module first prompts for the filename. The file name is entered with an extension .DAT.

(b) The next entry is called 'trigger mode'. It specifies how the software should start monitoring and capturing data. The options are: 1 = manual and 2 = auto. If option 1 is selected, the system waits for a key press to start the monitoring and capturing operation.

If option 2 (auto mode) is selected, the system waits for the first pulse from the proximity switch to start monitoring and capturing of data.

(c) The next entry relates to 'units', which has the following further options:

1 = Revolutions/min.
2 = Revolutions/sec.
3 = Revolutions/hr

(d) The next entry pertains to the 'range of speed,' which must be more than the maximum speed that is expected. The options are:

1 = 400 units
2 = 800 units, etc

(e) The next entry concerns the 'number of teeth' and represents the number of pulses from the proximity switch per revolution.

After making the above entries, the

following message is displayed on the monitor screen:

"Trigger mode: Auto (or Manual) Waiting for first pulse (or Press any key to start)"

depending on the trigger mode. If manual mode has been selected, then hit any key to start. If auto mode is selected, the software waits for the first pulse from the proximity sensor to proceed. The display then shows the speed in the units selected and the capture file name. Pressing ESC exits the monitor mode after closing the capture file. Pressing any other key returns to main menu.

2. Viewing a graph file. This module is used to view an existing data file. Sequential contents of a DEMO.DAT file are shown in a box (using eight columns). If a non-existant filename is entered, the software detects the opening error and prompts the user for re-entering the filename. The various prompts for entering the required data are:

(a) File name – Enter the full filename with extension.

(b) Enter the x-axis scale factor to enable the graph to be 'stretched' on the x-axis to observe cramped points properly. After entering the x-axis scale, the graph appears along with all relevant data, like scale factors for x and y axis, file name, and units, etc.

(c) While still in the graph mode, you may view a new graph after pressing F1. For returning to the main menu, press F2.

3. Help. This module provides one page of help and reads from a file called HELPS.PG1. If this file cannot be opened, or is not available, the software prompts with "Help file not found or cannot be opened." Pressing any key from the help page returns one to main menu. The contents of HELPS.PG1 are given in the box (on previous page).

Program Listing for SPEEDM.CPP

```
#include<conio.h>
#include<iostream.h>
#include<graphics.h>
#include<dos.h>
#include<stdio.h>
#include<time.h>
#include<fstream.h>
#include<process.h>
#include<stdlib.h>
void startgraphics();//start graphics system//
void openingmenu();//opening menu//
void monitor();//monitor and save to file//
float readspeed(int unit,int teeth);//read the speed//
void display(int unit);//display the speed//
void view();//View a Speed vs Time Graph//
void grid();//Draw the graph grid//
void displayhelp(char helpfilename[10]);
void exiit();
void help();
int roundoff(float number);
//Global Variables//
int unit;int teeth;
float speed;
char monitorfile[8];
int gdriver;int gmode;
int mid;
//Program main menu//
void main()
{
startgraphics();
openingmenu();
}
//Graphics initialisation//
void startgraphics()
{
registerbgidriver(EGAVGA_driver);
registerbgifont(small_font);
registerbgifont(triplex_font);
int gdriver = DETECT, gmode;
initgraph(&gdriver, &gmode, "");
}
//Opening menu//
void openingmenu()
{
setfillstyle(LTSLASH_FILL,5);
bar(10, 10, 635, 470);
setlinestyle(SOLID_LINE,0,2);
rectangle(10,10,635,470);
setlinestyle(SOLID_LINE,0,2);
rectangle(200,40,400,90);
setcolor(BLUE);
line(200,91,400,91);
line(200,92,400,92);
line(401,90,401,40);
settextstyle(2,HORIZ_DIR,8);
setcolor(YELLOW);
outtextxy(220,50,"SPEED TRACK");
setcolor(LIGHTBLUE);
outtextxy(150,120,"1.SPEED MONITOR & CAPTURE - F1");
setcolor(LIGHTRED);
outtextxy(150,180,"2.VIEW SPEED vs TIME GRAPH - F2");
setcolor(LIGHTMAGENTA);
outtextxy(150,240,"3.SPEED TRACK HELP - F3");
setcolor(LIGHTCYAN);
outtextxy(150,300,"4.EXIT TO SHELL - F4");
setcolor(LIGHTGREEN);
outtextxy(180,360,"Enter your choice    ");
outtextxy(200,383,"(F1 TO F4) ");
USERCHOICE:
while(!kbhit())
{ }
char userchoice=getch();
switch(userchoice)
{
case (char(59)):monitor();break;
case (char(60)):view();break;
case (char(61)):help();break;
case (char(62)):exiit();break;
default:goto USERCHOICE;
}
}

//Monitoring the speed online and storing the data//
void monitor()
{
int s;int t;
int trigger;
int yrange;
char unitf[8];
int speedf;
restorecrtmode();
clrscr();
window(1,1,80,25);
clrscr();
textcolor(YELLOW);
textbackground(LIGHTBLUE);
gotoxy(25,3);
cprintf(" - S P E E D  T R A C K -");
gotoxy(25,4);
cprintf("========================");
gotoxy(25,6);
cprintf("MONITOR & CAPTURE PAGE");
window(10,8,75,8);
textcolor(YELLOW);
clrscr();
cprintf("Enter file name to store Speed  data (****.***) - ");
scanf("%8s", &monitorfile);
GETTRIGGER:
textcolor(YELLOW);
clrscr();
cprintf("Enter trigger mode(1=Manual,2=First pulse) - ");
scanf("%d", &trigger);
if(trigger<1 || trigger>2)
{
clrscr();
textcolor(YELLOW+BLINK);
cprintf("........Value out of range,Enter 1 or 2........");
delay(2000);
goto GETTRIGGER;
}
GETUNIT:
textcolor(YELLOW);
clrscr();
cprintf("Enter Unit for Speed(1=Rev/min,2=Revs/sec,3=Revs/Hr) - ");
scanf("%d", &unit);
if(unit<1 || unit>3)
{
textcolor(YELLOW+BLINK);
clrscr();
cprintf("    ........Value out of range............    ");
delay(2000);
goto GETUNIT;
}
GETRANGE:
textcolor(YELLOW);
clrscr();
cprintf("Enter Range for Speed(1=400 units, 2=800 units..etc) - ");
scanf("%d", &yrange);
if(yrange<1 || yrange>100)
{
textcolor(YELLOW+BLINK);
clrscr();
cprintf("    ........Value out of range............    ");
delay(2000);
goto GETRANGE;
}
GETTEETH:
textcolor(YELLOW);
clrscr();
cprintf(" Enter Number of teeth for Sensor - ");
scanf("%d", &teeth);
if(teeth<1 || teeth>100)
{
textcolor(YELLOW+BLINK);
clrscr();
```

```
cprintf("     ........Value out of range...........     ");
delay(2000);
goto GETTEETH;
}
//Open the file for data storage
fstream infile;
infile.open(monitorfile,ios::out);
//Store the units
char *unitf1 = "Rev/min";
char *unitf2 = "Rev/sec";
char *unitf3 = "Rev/hr" ;
switch(unit)
{
case 1:infile<<unitf1<<endl;break;
case 2:infile<<unitf2<<endl;break;
case 3:infile<<unitf3<<endl;break;
}
//Entering the units and y scale to capture file//
//fstream infile;
//infile.open(monitorfile,ios::out);
infile<<yrange<<endl;
clrscr();
//Setting the trigger mode//
switch(trigger)
{
case 1:textcolor(YELLOW+BLINK);cprintf
        ("Trigger mode:  Manual ..Press any key
        to Start");getch();break;
case 2:textcolor(YELLOW+BLINK);cprintf
("Trigger mode:  Auto..Waiting for first pulse..");
    s=inp(0x379);t=s;while(s==t)s=inp(0x379);break;
    default:textcolor(YELLOW+BLINK);cprintf
     ("Trigger mode: Manual ..Press any key to
    Start"); getch();break;
}
startgraphics();
for(int pointno=1;pointno<481;++pointno)
{
char in;
display(unit);
speedf=roundoff(speed);
infile<<speedf<<endl;
if (kbhit())
{
if ((in = getch()) == '\x1B')break;
}
}
infile.close();//Close the file,clean up and return
        to main//
restorecrtmode();
window(10,8,75,8);
textcolor(YELLOW+BLINK);
cprintf("Data Capture Interrupted or File full(960
sec)..Press any key..");
getch();
startgraphics();
openingmenu();
}
//Read the speed and convert into the asked
        units//
float readspeed(int unit,int teeth)
{
int sett=255;int tes=255;mid=0;
clock_t start, end=0;
sett=inp(0x379);
tes=sett;
for(start=clock();(end-start)/CLK_TCK<2.0;
            end=clock())
{
sett=inp(0x379);
if(sett!=tes)++mid;
tes=sett;
}
//Calculation of the speed depending on unit
            selected//
switch(unit)
{
case 1:return(mid*15.0/(teeth));
case 2:return(mid/(4.0*teeth));
case 3:return(mid*900.0/teeth);
default:return(mid/(4.0*teeth));
}
}
//Display the speed on the screen update every 2
            secs//
void display(int unit)
{
char msgd[80];
char msgf[80];
fstream infile;
setcolor(LIGHTRED);
setbkcolor(LIGHTGREEN);
settextstyle(1,HORIZ_DIR,4);
rectangle(5,5,630,470);
outtextxy(175,30,"SPEED MASTER");
moveto(150,400);
outtext("Press ESC to exit.....");
outtextxy(150,300,"Capture file =");
sprintf(msgf, "%s", monitorfile);
outtextxy(400,300,msgf);
moveto(150,100);
outtext("Speed ");
switch(unit)
{
case 1:outtextxy(250,100,"in Revs/Min");break;
case 2:outtextxy(250,100,"in Revs/Sec");break;
case 3:outtextxy(250,100,"in Revs/Hr");break;
}
speed=readspeed(unit,teeth);
cleardevice();
sprintf(msgd, "%f", speed);
outtextxy(250,200,msgd);
}
void view()//View a speed vs time graph//
{
VIEWSTART:
closegraph();
int xscale=1;int yscale;
char msgx[2];char msgmaxy[5];char msgmaxx
   [5];char msgy[2];char msgun[8];char gunits[8];
char msgfile[10];
char filename[8];
char msgpoint[5];
int coordinate[10000];
int errorcode;
fstream infile;
window(1,1,80,25);
clrscr();
textcolor(RED);
textbackground(BLUE);
gotoxy(25,3);
cprintf(" - S P E E D   M A S T E R - ");
gotoxy(25,5);
cprintf("     VIEW FILE PAGE     ");
window(10,8,50,8);
textcolor(YELLOW);
clrscr();
cprintf("  Enter name of file to view - ");
scanf("%8s", &filename);
scalefactor:
int i=0;int pointcount=0;
XAXIS:
clrscr();
cprintf("  Enter X axis scale factor - ");
scanf("%d", &xscale);
if(xscale<0||xscale>9) goto XAXIS;
infile.open(filename,ios::in);
if(infile.fail())
{
window(10,8,70,9);
textcolor(YELLOW+BLINK);
clrscr;
cprintf("..Error opening file or file does not
    exist..\n\r Press F3 to exit,F4 to re-enter ");
ERRORGRAPH:
while (!kbhit())
{ }
char choicegraph;
choicegraph=getch();
switch(choicegraph)
{
case (char(62)):goto VIEWSTART;
case (char (61)):main();break;
default:goto ERRORGRAPH;
}
}
infile>>gunits>>yscale;
while(!infile.eof())
{
infile>>coordinate[i];
++i;
++pointcount;
}
infile.close();
startgraphics();
cleardevice();
setcolor(CYAN);
setbkcolor(DARKGRAY);
rectangle(10,40,490,440);
settextstyle(2,HORIZ_DIR,6);
outtextxy(140,15,"Speed  Master..GRAPH  VIEW
            PAGE..");
setcolor(GREEN);
outtextxy(492,40,"Graph Variables");
outtextxy(492,60,"X scale =");
outtextxy(492,75,"Y scale =");
outtextxy(492,90,"Units =" );
outtextxy(492,105,"File =" );
outtextxy(492,120,"Points = " );
setcolor(GREEN);
outtextxy(492,150,"Options:");
outtextxy(492,165,"F1= New Graph");
outtextxy(492,180,"F2= Main Menu");
outtextxy(492,210,"NOTE:");
outtextxy(492,225,"X axis=960sec");
outtextxy(492,240,"Y axis=400units");
outtextxy(492,255,"For Xscale=1");
outtextxy(492,270,"and Yscale=1");
setcolor(YELLOW);
sprintf(msgx, "%d", xscale);
outtextxy(580,60, msgx);
sprintf(msgy, "%d", yscale);
outtextxy(580,75, msgy);
sprintf(msgun, "%s", gunits);
outtextxy(580,90, msgun);
sprintf(msgfile, "%5s", filename);
outtextxy(565,105, msgfile);
sprintf(msgpoint, "%d", pointcount);
outtextxy(567,120, msgpoint);
sprintf(msgmaxx, "%d", (960/xscale));
outtextxy(480,450,msgmaxx);
sprintf(msgmaxy, "%d", (400*yscale));
outtextxy(10,20,msgmaxy);
outtextxy(60,20,msgun);
outtextxy(480,460,"Seconds");
grid();
setviewport(10,40,490,440,1);
setcolor(GREEN);
int x1=0;int y1=0;
int j;
for (j=0;j<pointcount-1;++j)
{
line(x1*xscale,400-y1/yscale,(j+1)*xscale,400-
        coordinate[j]/yscale);
x1=j+1;
y1=coordinate[j];
}
GRAPHMENU:
while (!kbhit())
{ }
char choiceg;
choiceg=getch();
switch(choiceg)
{
case (char(59)):goto VIEWSTART;
case (char (60)):closegraph();main();break;
default:goto GRAPHMENU;
```

```
}
}
//To draw the graph grid//
void grid()
{
int i;
setcolor(RED);
for(i=140;i<440;i=i+100)
line(10,i,490,i);
setcolor(BLUE);
for (i=70;i<490;i=i+60)
line(i,40,i,440);
}
//Main help call function//
void help()
{
closegraph();
clrscr();
displayhelp(“HELPS.PG1”);
getch();
}
//Exit to shell with graphics clean up//
void exiit()
{
cleardevice();
setbkcolor(LIGHTGREEN);
setcolor(RED);
moveto(150,200);
outtext(“Exiting to DOS..”);
delay(2000);
closegraph();
exit(1);
}
//Display the helpfile if resident or else indicate error//
void displayhelp(char helpfilename[10])
{
fstream infile;
textbackground(BLACK);
window(1,1,80,25);
textcolor(LIGHTRED);
const int max=80;
char buffer[max];
clrscr();
infile.open(helpfilename,ios::in);
if(infile.fail())
{
window(10,8,70,9);
textcolor(YELLOW+BLINK);
clrscr;
cprintf(“.....HELP NOT AVALABLE OR ERROR OPENING FILE.....\n\r ....Press any KEY TO RETURN TO MAIN....”);
getch();
main();
}
while(!infile.eof())
{
infile.getline(buffer,max);
cout<<buffer;
cout<<endl;
}
infile.close();
getch();
main();
}
//Function to round off the float number to the nearest integer//
int roundoff(float number)
{
int quotient;
float result;
quotient=int(number);
result=number-quotient;
if(result>0.5)
{
return(quotient+1);
}
else
{
return(quotient);
}
}
```

□

STEREO CASSETTE PLAYER

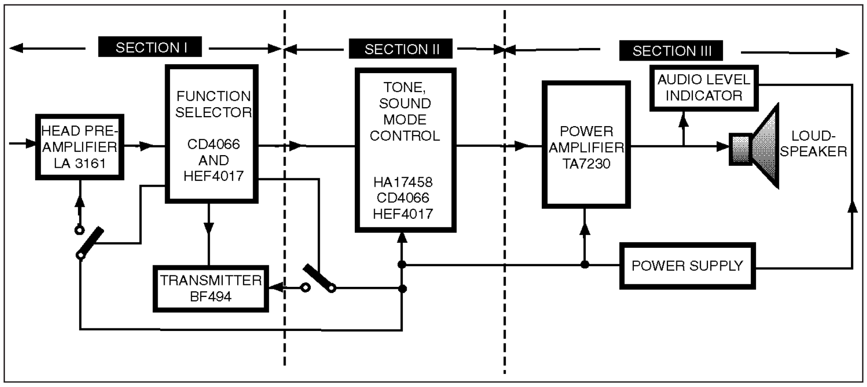
REJO G. PAREKKATTU

An electronics hobbyist always finds pleasure in listening to a song from a cassette player assembled with his own hands. Here are the details of a stereo cassette player with the following features, which many electronics enthusiasts would love to assemble and enjoy:

1. Digital 4-function selector (radio, tape, line input, and transmit).
2. Four sound modes (normal, low boost, hi-fi, and x-bas).
3. Bass and treble controls.
4. Function and output level displays.
5. Built-in FM transmitter for cordless head-phones.

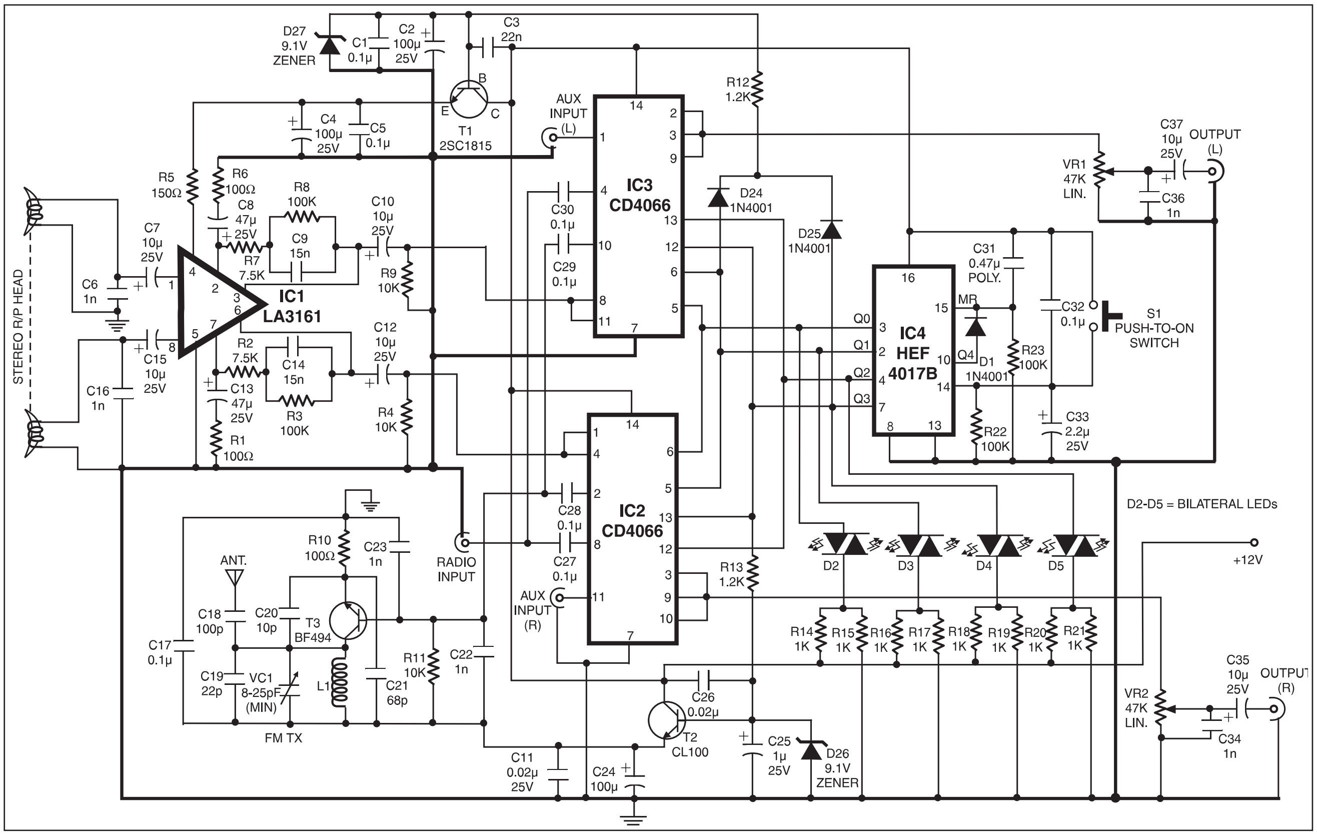
Description

The functional block diagram of the stereo cassette player is shown in Fig. 1. The circuit may be divided into three functional sections as shown in the block diagram.



SECTION I
SECTION II
SECTION III
HEAD PRE-AMPLIFIER LA 3161
FUNCTION SELECTOR CD4066 AND HEF4017
TONE, SOUND MODE CONTROL HA17458 CD4066 HEF4017
POWER AMPLIFIER TA7230
AUDIO LEVEL INDICATOR
LOUD-SPEAKER
TRANSMITTER BF494
POWER SUPPLY

Fig. 1: Functional block diagram of stereo cassette player



D27 9.1V ZENER
C1 0.1µ
C2 100µ 25V
C3 22n
T1 2SC1815
B
E
C
R12 1.2K
AUX INPUT (L)
IC3 CD4066
C4 100µ 25V
C5 0.1µ
R5 150Ω
R6 100Ω
C8 47µ 25V
R8 100K
C9 15n
C10 10µ 25V
R7 7.5K
R9 10K
C30 0.1µ
C29 0.1µ
D24 1N4001
D25 1N4001
VR1 47K LIN.
C37 10µ 25V
OUTPUT (L)
C36 1n
C31 0.47µ POLY.
C32 0.1µ
S1 PUSH-TO-ON SWITCH
STEREO R/P HEAD
C6 1n
C7 10µ 25V
IC1 LA3161
C12 10µ 25V
R2 7.5K
C14 15n
C13 47µ 25V
R3 100K
R4 10K
R1 100Ω
C15 10µ 25V
C16 1n
IC4 HEF 4017B
Q0
Q1
Q2
Q3
Q4
MR
D1 1N4001
R23 100K
R22 100K
C33 2.2µ 25V
IC2 CD4066
C28 0.1µ
C27 0.1µ
AUX INPUT (R)
RADIO INPUT
D2-D5 = BILATERAL LEDs
D2
D3
D4
D5
+12V
R13 1.2K
R14 1K
R15 1K
R16 1K
R17 1K
R18 1K
R19 1K
R20 1K
R21 1K
ANT.
R10 100Ω
C23 1n
C18 100p
C20 10p
T3 BF494
C17 0.1µ
C19 22p
VC1 8-25pF (MIN)
L1
C21 68p
R11 10K
C22 1n
FM TX
C11 0.02µ 25V
C24 100µ
T2 CL100
C26 0.02µ
C25 1µ 25V
D26 9.1V ZENER
VR2 47K LIN.
C35 10µ 25V
OUTPUT (R)
C34 1n

Fig. 2: Preamplifier and function selector and FM TX (Section I)

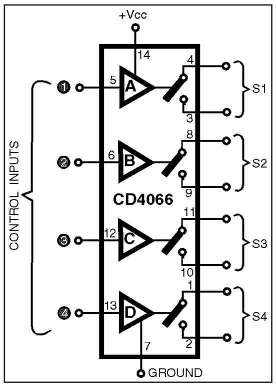

+Vcc
14
5
A
4
3
S1
8
6
B
9
S2
CD4066
11
12
C
10
S3
1
13
D
2
7
S4
CONTROL INPUTS
GROUND

Fig. 3: Internal schematic diagram of CD4066 switcher IC

Section I (Fig. 2). It comprises a stereo head preamplifier, a function selector, and an FM transmitter. The preamplifier is built around IC LA3161. The outputs from 200-ohm stereo R/P (record/play) head are connected to the left and right input pins 1 and 8 of LA3161 preamplifier. A 9V regulated power supply, obtained from the voltage regulator built around transistor T1, is used for the preamplifier. The outputs of this preamplifier are routed to the function selector configured around two CD4066 (quad bipolar analogue switches) and an HEF4017 (decade counter).

When any control input pin (5, 6, 12, and 13) of CD4066, as shown in Fig. 3, is made high, it can switch AC and/or DC signals between its corresponding output pins (3-4, 8-9, 10-11, and 1-2 respectively) in both directions. In other words, it acts like an analogue switch which can be turned on or off by making its input control pin high or low. A single IC contains four such switches/sections (A, B, C, and D). The control inputs of the two ICS (CD4066) are derived from the decade counter IC (HEF4017). Only four outputs of this IC (Q0 through Q3) are used and the fifth output Q4 (pin 10) is connected to the reset pin (pin 15) via diode D1.

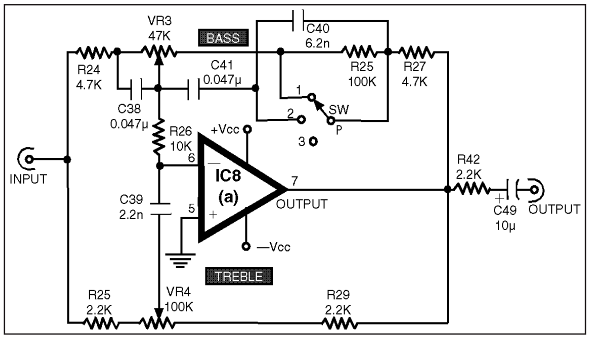

VR3
47K
BASS
C40
6.2n
R24
4.7K
C41
0.047μ
R25
100K
R27
4.7K
C38
0.047μ
1
2
SW
P
3
R26
10K
+Vcc
6
IC8
(a)
7
R42
2.2K
INPUT
C39
2.2n
5
OUTPUT
C49
10μ
OUTPUT
—Vcc
TREBLE
R25
2.2K
VR4
100K
R29
2.2K

Fig. 4: Simplified schematic diagram of tone and sound mode control (left channel)

When power is turned on, the output Q0 (pin 3) of this IC will be high. In this condition any audio signal fed to the 'radio I/P' terminal reaches the output. If desired, the audio output from a radio receiver can be connected to this input terminal. Circuit diagram and details of such radio receivers have appeared in earlier issues of Electronics Projects.

With each depression of switch S1, the outputs of IC4 (Q0-Q3) go high sequentially to control different modes of operation. When Q1 (pin 2) of IC4 goes high, the audio signals from the output of the preamplifier reach the output terminals of the circuit. At the same time, a 9V regulated power supply to the preamplifier is switched on through transistor T1. When Q2 (pin 4) goes high, any audio signals applied to the auxiliary I/P terminals (Aux. I/P (L) and Aux. I/P(R)) reach the output terminals. When Q3 (pin 7) goes high, the power to both the FM transmitter and preamplifier is switched on and the signals from the preamplifier appear at the base of transistor T3 (BF494) which, in association with some passive components, forms an FM transmitter. The details of coil L1 are included in the parts list. The frequency of this transmitter falls between 88 and 108 MHz.

The frequency can be slightly varied by adjusting trimmer capacitor VC1. The transmitted signals can be received on any FM receiver working in 88-108 MHz range. LEDs D2 through D5 are bilateral LEDS which are used to display the selected function.

Section II. This section employs a JFET dual operational amplifier LF353 whose gain for different audio frequencies is controlled by the corresponding potentiometer settings (VR3 and VR6 for bass, VR4 and VR5 for treble for left and right channels respectively) and, additionally, by sound mode selector switch S2. The simplified circuit diagram for left channel is shown in Fig. 4, while the complete schematic circuit diagram is shown in Fig. 5.

In the simplified diagram, the function of decade counter IC (HEF 4017) and bipolar analogue switcher ICs (CD4066) are replaced by a simple switch, SW. The output of

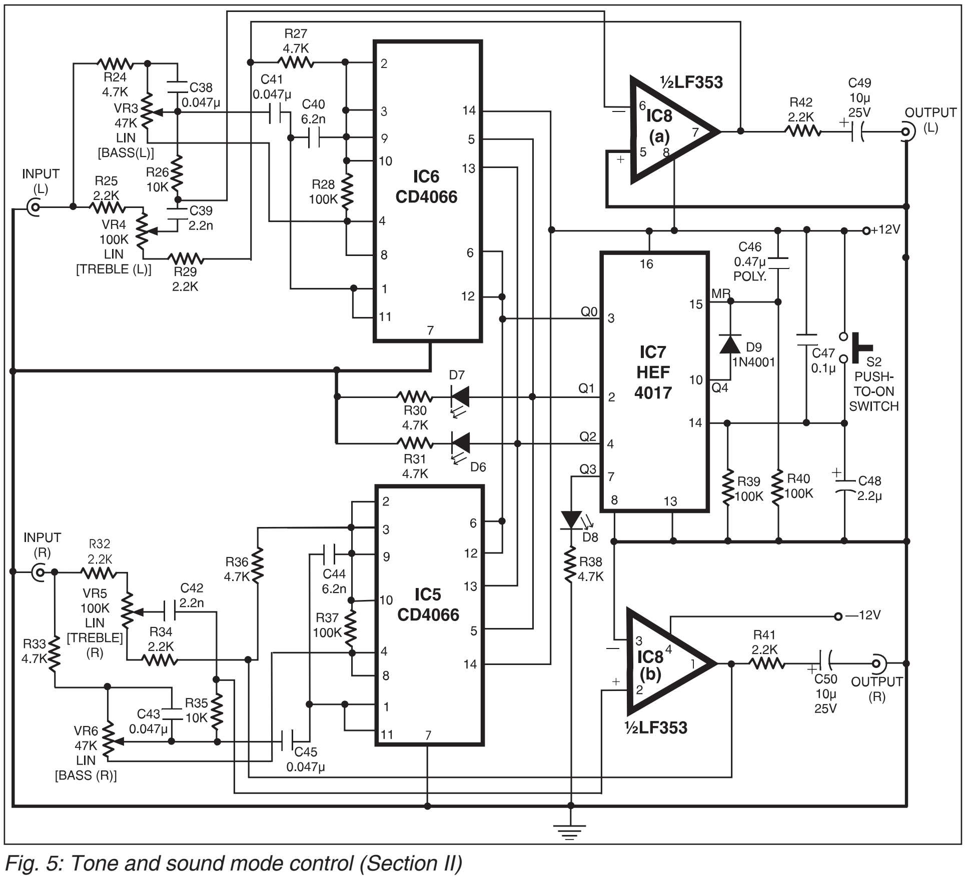

R27
4.7K
R24
4.7K
C38
0.047μ
C41
0.047μ
C40
6.2n
VR3
47K
LIN
[BASS(L)]
INPUT
(L)
R25
2.2K
R26
10K
C39
2.2n
R28
100K
IC6
CD4066
VR4
100K
LIN
[TREBLE (L)]
R29
2.2K
½LF353
IC8
(a)
R42
2.2K
C49
10μ
25V
OUTPUT
(L)
+12V
16
C46
0.47μ
POLY.
15
MR
D9
1N4001
Q0
Q1
Q2
Q3
IC7
HEF
4017
Q4
C47
0.1μ
S2
PUSH-
TO-ON
SWITCH
D7
R30
4.7K
R31
4.7K
D6
R39
100K
R40
100K
C48
2.2μ
D8
R38
4.7K
INPUT
(R)
R32
2.2K
VR5
100K
LIN
[TREBLE]
(R)
R33
4.7K
R34
2.2K
C42
2.2n
R36
4.7K
C44
6.2n
R37
100K
IC5
CD4066
VR6
47K
LIN
[BASS (R)]
C43
0.047μ
R35
10K
C45
0.047μ
—12V
IC8
(b)
½LF353
R41
2.2K
C50
10μ
25V
OUTPUT
(R)

Fig. 5: Tone and sound mode control (Section II)

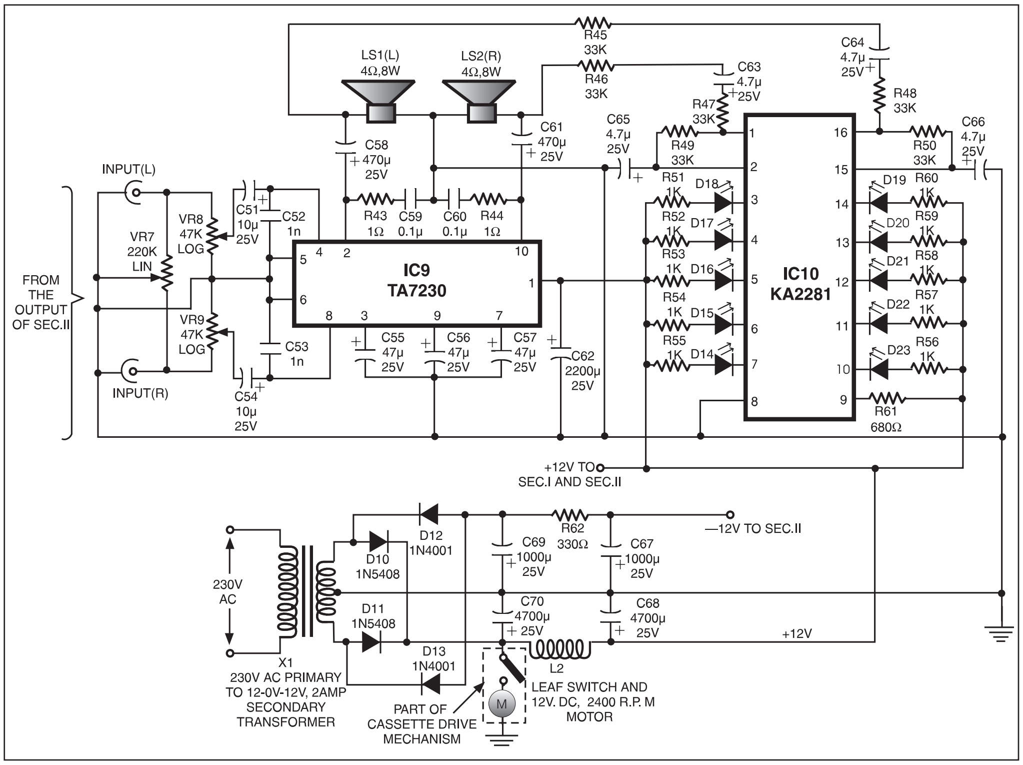

R45
33K
R46
33K
LS1(L)
4Ω,8W
LS2(R)
4Ω,8W
C63
4.7µ
25V
C64
4.7µ
25V
R48
33K
R47
33K
C58
470µ
25V
C61
470µ
25V
C65
4.7µ
25V
R49
33K
R50
33K
C66
4.7µ
25V
INPUT(L)
R43
1Ω
C59
0.1µ
C60
0.1µ
R44
1Ω
R51
1K
D18
D19
R60
1K
C51
10µ
25V
C52
1n
VR8
47K
LOG
VR7
220K
LIN
R52
1K
D17
D20
R59
1K
IC9
TA7230
IC10
KA2281
R53
1K
D16
D21
R58
1K
FROM
THE
OUTPUT
OF SEC.II
R54
1K
D15
D22
R57
1K
VR9
47K
LOG
C53
1n
C55
47µ
25V
C56
47µ
25V
C57
47µ
25V
C62
2200µ
25V
R55
1K
D14
D23
R56
1K
INPUT(R)
C54
10µ
25V
R61
680Ω
+12V TO
SEC.I AND SEC.II
D12
1N4001
R62
330Ω
—12V TO SEC.II
D10
1N5408
C69
1000µ
25V
C67
1000µ
25V
230V
AC
D11
1N5408
C70
4700µ
25V
C68
4700µ
25V
+12V
D13
1N4001
L2
X1
230V AC PRIMARY
TO 12-0V-12V, 2AMP
SECONDARY
TRANSFORMER
PART OF
CASSETTE DRIVE
MECHANISM
M
LEAF SWITCH AND
12V. DC, 2400 R.P. M
MOTOR

Fig. 6: Preamplifier, audio level indicator, and power supply (Section III)

preamplifier (section I) is applied as input to the inverting terminal of op-amp IC8 and at the output we obtain a 180° phase shifted amplified signal. Potentiometers VR3 and VR4 are used to control low frequency (bass) and high frequency (treble) response respectively.

In the normal mode (Q0 output of IC7 high), pole-P of switch SW is in contact with terminals 1 and 2 simultaneously. In this condition, normal gain is achieved for both high and low frequencies as per settings of VR3 and VR4. But the mid-range frequency components get attenuated due to capacitor C41 (0.047µF).

In the hi-fi mode (Q1 output of IC7 high), pole-P of the switch is in contact with terminal 1. In this position, normal gain is achieved

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:

IC1	- LA3161 stereo preamplifier
IC2,IC3,IC5,IC6	- CD4066B quad bilateral analogue switch
IC7,IC4	- HEF4017B decade counter
IC8	- LF353 JFET input dual op-amp
IC9	- TA7230 stereo power amplifier
IC10	- KA2281 stereo level indicator
T1	- 2SC1815 npn transistor
T2	- CL100 npn transistor
T3	- BF494 npn transistor
D1,D12,D13, D24 D25,D9	- 1N4001 rectifier diode
D2,D3,D4,D5	- Bilateral coloured LEDs
D6-D8,D14-D23	- Coloured LED
D10,D11	- 1N5408 rectifier diode
D26,D27	- 9.1V zener

Resistors (all ¼W, ±5% metal carbon film, unless stated otherwise)

R1,R6,R10	- 100-ohm
R2,R7	- 7.5-kilo-ohm
R3,R8,R22,R23, R28,R37,R39,R40	- 100-kilo-ohm
R4,R9,R11, R26,R35	- 10-kilo-ohm
R5	- 150-ohm
R12,R13	- 1.2-kilo-ohm
R14-R21,R51-R60	- 1-kilo-ohm
R24,R27,R33,R30 R31,R36,R38	- 4.7-kilo-ohm
R25,R32,R29, R34 R41,R42	- 2.2-kilo-ohm
R43,R44	- 1-ohm
R45-R50	- 33-kilo-ohm
R61	- 680-ohm
R62	- 330-ohm,0.5W
VR1-VR3,VR6	- 47-kilo-ohm linear potmeter
VR4,VR5	- 100-kilo-ohm linear potmeter
VR7	- 220-kilo-ohm linear potmeter
VR8,VR9	- 47-kilo-ohm log potmeter

Capacitors:

C1,C5,C17,C27-C30, C32,C47,C59,C60	- 0.1µF ceramic disc
C2,C4,C24	- 100µF, 25V electrolytic
C3,C11,C26	- 22nF ceramic disc
C6,C16,C22,C23 C34,C36,C22, C23,C52,C53	- 1nF ceramic disc
C7,C15,C35,C37 C49,C50,C10, C12,C51,C54	- 10µF, 25V electrolytic
C8,C13,C55, C56,C57	- 47µF, 25V
C9,C14	- 15nF polyester
C18	- 100pF ceramic disc
C19	- 22pF ceramic disc
C20	- 10pF ceramic disc
C21	- 68pF ceramic disc
C25	- 1µF, 25V electrolytic
C31,C33,C46,C48	- 2.2µF, 25V electrolytic
C38,C41,C43,C45	- 0.047µF polyester
C39,C42	- 2.2nF polyester
C40,C44	- 6.2nF polyester
C58,C61	- 470µF, 25V electrolytic
C62	- 2200µF electrolytic
C63-C66	- 4.7µF, 25V electrolytic
C67,C69	- 1000µF, 25V electrolytic
C68,C70	- 4700µF, 25V electrolytic
VC1	- 8-25pF trimmer

Miscellaneous:

L1	- 5T, 22 SWG, 5mm dia air core
L2	- 250T, 18 SWG over a ferrite rod
X1	- 230V AC primary to 12-0-12V, 2A sec. transformer
S1,S2	- Push-to-on tactile switch
	- Tape drive mechanism complete with 200-ohm R/P stereo head, leaf switch, and 12V DC, 2400 rpm motor
	- Telescopic antenna
LS1,LS2	- 4-ohm, 8W, 9cm diameter woofers with piezoelectric tweeter
	- Readymade FM/AM radio reciever kit
	- Cabinet
	- Shielded cable
	- Heat sink and other hardware items

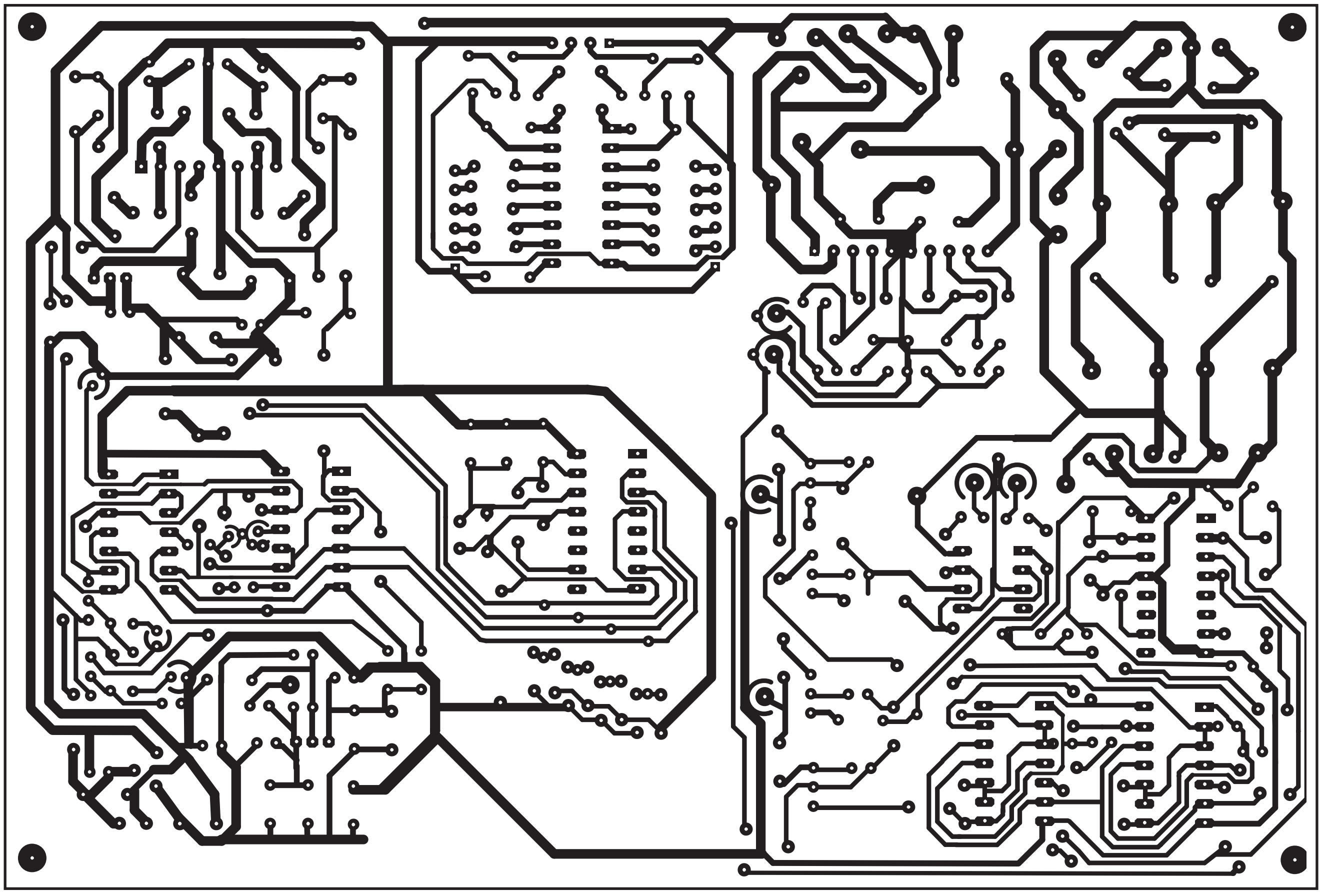


Fig. 7. Actual-size, single-sided PCB for stereo cassette player

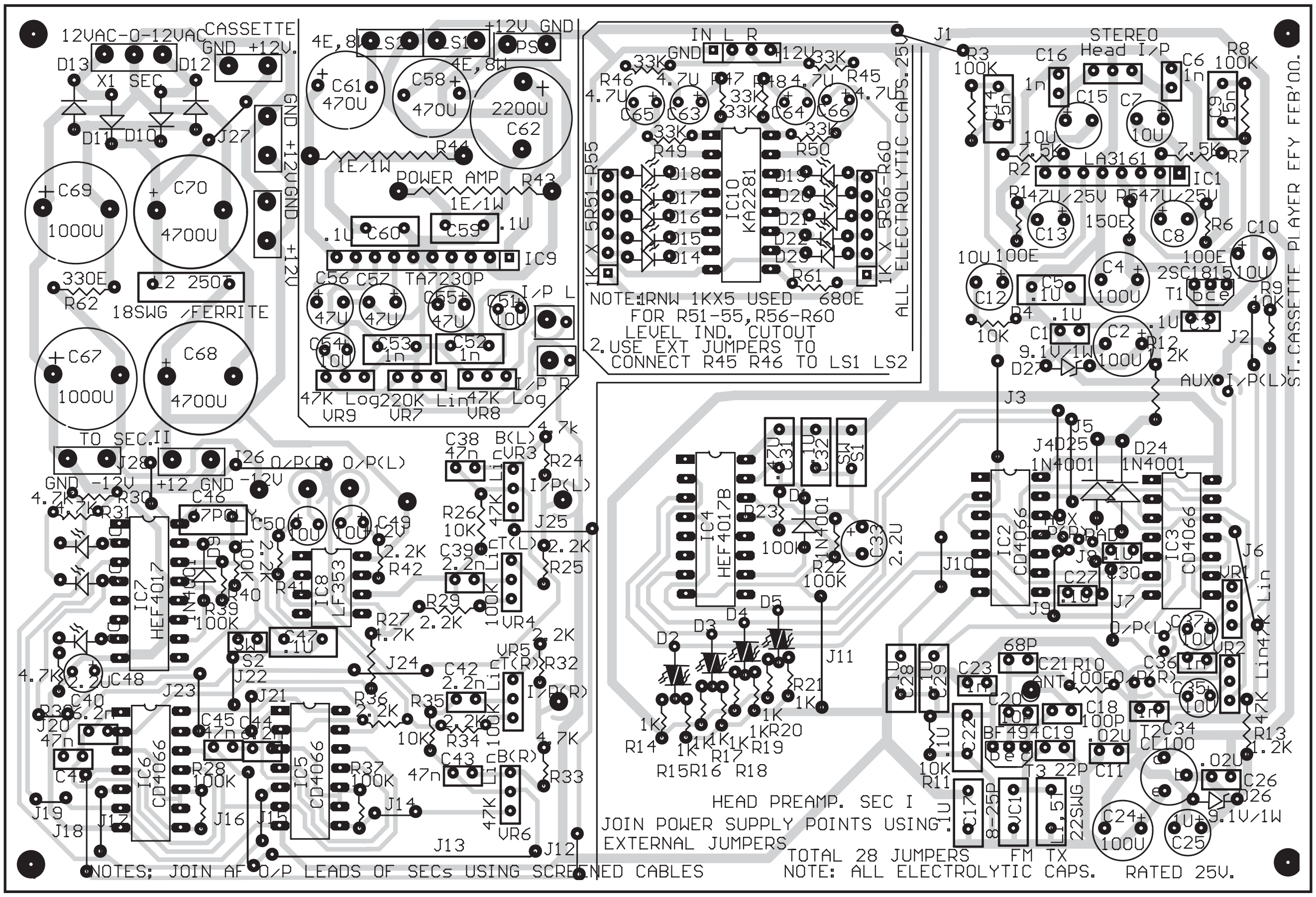

12VAC-0-12VAC
CASSETTE GND +12V.
X1 SEC
D10
D11
D12
D13
J27
GND +12V
GND +12V
C69 1000U
C70 4700U
C67 1000U
C68 4700U
330E R62
L2 250T 18SWG /FERRITE
TO SEC.II
J28
J26
GND -12V +12 GND -12V
O/P(R)
O/P(L)
4E,8W
LS1
LS2
+12V GND
PS
C61 470U
C58 470U
C62 2200U
R44 1E/1W
POWER AMP
R43 1E/1W
.1U C60
C59 .1U
IC9
TA7230P
C56 C57 47U 47U
C55 47U
C54 10U
C64 10U
C53 1n
C52 1n
I/P L
I/P R
47K Log VR9
220K Lin VR7
47K Log VR8
IN L R
GND
+12V
C65 C63 C64 C66
4.7U
33K
R45 R46 R47 R48 R49 R50
IC10 KA2281
D14 D15 D16 D17 D18 D19 D20 D21 D22 D23
R61 680E
1K X 5R51-R55
1K X 5R56-R60
ALL ELECTROLYTIC CAPS.25V
NOTE:1RNW 1KX5 USED FOR R51-55,R56-R60
LEVEL IND. CUTOUT
2.USE EXT JUMPERS TO CONNECT R45 R46 TO LS1 LS2
J1
STEREO Head I/P
R3 100K
R8 100K
C16 1n
C6 1n
C14 15n
C9 15n
C15 10U
C7 10U
R2 7.5K
R7 7.5K
LA3161
IC1
R1 47U/25V
R5 47U/25V
C13
C8
150E
R6
C10
10U 100E
C12
C5 .1U
C4 100U
100E
2SC1815 T1 bce
10U
R9 10K
R4 10K
C1 .1U
C2 100U
C3 .1U
R12 2K
9.1V/1W
D27
J2
AUX I/P(L)
ST. CASSETTE PLAYER EFY FEB'00.
J3
J4 D25 1N4001
J5
D24 1N4001
IC2 CD4066
IC3 CD4066
J10
J9
J8
J7
J6
C27
C30
VR1 Lin
O/P(L)
C37
VR2
47K Lin
R13 1.2K
C36
C35
C28
C29
C23
68P
C21
R10
100E
ANT
C20
C18 100P
T2 CL100
C34
BF494
C19
.02U
C11
T3
22P
bce
10K
R11
.1U
C22
C17 8-25P
VC1
L1 5T 22SWG
FM TX
C24 100U
C25
C26 .02U
D26 9.1V/1W
C38 47n
B(L)
4.7K
VR3
R24
I/P(L)
R26 10K
47K Lin
J25
T(L)
2.2K
R25
C39 2.2n
R29 2.2K
100K Lin
VR4
R27 4.7K
VR5
T(R)
R32
2.2K
J24
C42 2.2n
I/P(R)
R36 2.2K
R35
2.2K
10K
R34
100K Lin
B(R)
4.7K
47n
C43
R33
47K Lin
VR6
J13
J12
J14
4.7K R30 R31
C46 47P
C50 10U
C49 10U
IC7 HEF4017
D9
100K R39
R40
2.2K R42
R41
IC8 LF353
SW S2
C47 .1U
4.7K C48
2.2U
C40 2.2n
R38
J20 47n
C41
J19
J18
J17
J23
J22
J21
IC6 CD4066
R28 100K
C45 C44 47n
IC5 CD4066
R37 100K
J16
J15
C31 C32 S1 SW
IC4 HEF4017B
D1 1N4001
R23 100E
R22 100K
C33 2.2U
D2 D3 D4 D5
J11
R14 1K
R15 R16 R17 R18 R19 R20 R21 1K
HEAD PREAMP. SEC I
JOIN POWER SUPPLY POINTS USING EXTERNAL JUMPERS
TOTAL 28 JUMPERS
NOTE: ALL ELECTROLYTIC CAPS. RATED 25V.
NOTES; JOIN AF O/P LEADS OF SECs USING SCREENED CABLES

Fig. 8. Component layout for the PCB

for entire audio frequency range (since capacitor C41 is disconnected from the feedback path).

When pole-P of switch SW is in position 2 (Q2 output of IC7 high), the attenuation of mid-range frequency components is re-established and also the gain of the amplifier for very low frequencies increases (since an additional feedback resistance of 100k (R25) is introduced in the feedback loop). This is the low-frequency boost mode.

When pole-P is in contact with terminal 3 (Q3 output of IC7 high), normal gain is provided for the high-frequency components (treble) and higher gain is available for a wide range of low frequencies (including some mid-range frequencies). This is termed as the X-BAS mode. The gain of the amplifier for different frequencies, in each of the above-mentioned modes, is also dependent on VR3 and VR4 potmeter settings.

In the actual circuit diagram, the bipolar analogue switcher (CD4066) replaces switch SW. The LEDs D6, D7, and D8 are used to represent the sound modes—low-boost, hi-fi, and X-BAS repsectively. Switch S2 is used to select variouse sound modes. At power on, Q0 (pin 3) of IC7 is high and therefore normal sound mode is *on.*

Section III (Fig. 6). This section comprises an audio power amplifier, a 12V dual power supply, and an audio level indicator. The power amplifier used is the popular IC-TA7230, which delivers up to 7-watt (RMS) power per channel into a 4-ohm load. This IC has in-built short circuit protection and over-temperature cut-off. A suitable heat sink must be connected to the IC to prevent thermal runaway. Potmeters VR8 and VR9 are volume controls for left and right channels respectively, while VR7 is the balance control.

A dual power supply is used for the circuit. The +12V section uses a π filter with capacitors in the parallel arms and an inductor in the series arm. However, for the –12V supply, the inductor of the series arm (as used for +12V supply) is replaced by a resistor. Filters are provided to reduce the ripple factor and thereby reduce hum (noise). Please refer inductor details in parts list.

The audio level indicator is built around IC KA2281. LEDs D14 through D23 are connected at its outputs to show the audio level of each channel in five steps. The input to this audio level indicator is derived from the output of the power amplifier. The gain of this level indicator can be varied by changing the values of resistors R49 and R50.

Assembly

The complete circuit, with the exception of the audio level indicator, can be assembled on a single PCB. A separate PCB is used for the audio level indicator and for mounting LEDs (D2 through D8). Single-sided, actual-size PCB for the complete circuit is given in Fig. 7. The component layout for the PCB is shown in Fig. 8.

Use sockets for all ICs except IC1 and IC9. Shielded wires must be used for connections to stereo head and all potentiometers. The PCB must be mounted away from power transformer and DC motor.

Inductor L2 should also be placed away from the power transformer. If inductor L2 is difficult to procure or fabricate, it may be substituted with a 5-ohm, 5W wire-wound resistor.

A suitable cassette drive mechanism and cabinet may be used to assemble the stereo cassette player. Readymade cabinets and cassette mechanisms are available in the market.

Adjust potmeters VR1 and VR2 for minimum distortion at higher volume level. Use separate aerials for FM transmitter and FM receiver. ❑

Readers queries:

Q1. I would like the author to clarify my following doubts:

In the circuit, radio input and FM transmitter are meant for mono signals. What are the changes required to convert it into a stereo transmitter for cordless stereo headphones? What is the range of the FM transmitter and how can we extend it?

The transmitting function is present only when 'tape' mode is selected. For transmission function in other modes, what are the modifications required?

The author has further mentioned that in normal mode, mid-range frequency components get attenuated due to capacitor C41 (0.047µF). Can I add a condenser mic preamplifier with a mixer circuit in this mode to obtain karaoke function?

M.P. Murugesan
Juticorin

Q2. You have not given the connections of the middle pins of the bi-coloured LEDs D2-D5.

IC LF353 is not available in our local market. So, I have used op-amp µA741 in its place. Will it make a difference? Can you give me a procedure for checking the circuit step by step, as my project does not seem to work?

Y. Srinivas
Eluru

Q3. I want to use only the preamplifier part along with volume, treble, and bass control functions of the stereo cassette player circuit as I already have a STK459 IC-based power amplifier. Please tell me where from should I bisect the circuit.

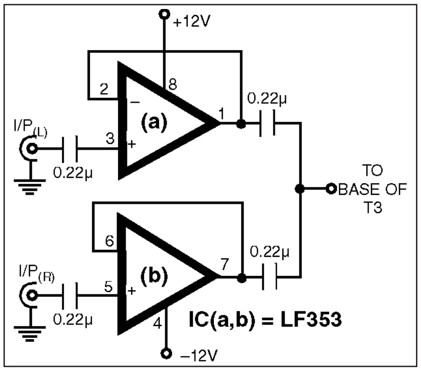


Fig. 1: Modification for transmission in all modes

- FM receiver has only the mono output as per the circuit connections. If I provide similar signal (audio) to the circuit, will the sound be heard from both the speakers? If not, what should I do to get the output from both the speakers?
- If I give output from a stereo Walkman headphone to AUX-IN terminal of the circuit, will the amplification be done? Also, will the tone mode support be available for AUX- IN?
- What is the function of bilateral LEDs in the circuit?

Chetan Devi
Through e-mail

The author, Rejo G. Parekkattu, replies:

A1. Usually, the FM/AM radio receiver kits are provided with a mono audio output. However, there are stereo decoders based on chips like TBA1330/KA2261. If one has such a circuit, connect the left and right outputs of the circuit to pin 4 of IC3 and pin 8 of IC2 respectively via suitable coupling capacitors.

In my prototype, a low-power FM transmitter is used. It can transmit only mono audio signals, up to a range of about

50 metres. To increase the range of the transmitter, a power amplifier stage can be added to it. Please refer 'Long Range FM Transmitter' circuit by Pradeep G, published in Dec. '99 issue of EFY (or Electronics Projects, Vol. 19). Only the power amplifier stage of this transmitter, built around transistor T2 (2N3866), is required to be added.

For this purpose, wind coil L2 of the Dec. '99 circuit (or Electronics Projects, Vol. 19) over coil L1 of my circuit. The transistor T2 in Section I can be replaced with another transistor having higher current rating. However, such long-range transmission is illegal.

For transmission in all modes, a number of changes will be required in Section-I, which I think are quite unnecessary. One can directly tune the FM/AM receiver to any radio station and therefore an extra radio transmission from the cassette player is not required. The only problem is that auxiliary signals cannot be transmitted by using this circuit.

If transmission in all modes is required, connect the circuit given in Fig. 1 here to the outputs of Section I, and connect its output to the base of transistor T3. The circuit employs two voltage followers to prevent loading of inputs.

Disconnect pins 7 and 10 of IC4 (HEF 4017) from the circuit. Then connect pin 7 to pin 15 of IC4 via diode D1, instead of pin 10. Also remove diode D25 from the circuit. Connect the base of transistor T2 to +12V via resistor R13 (1.2-kilo-ohm), instead of connecting it to pin 7 of IC4.

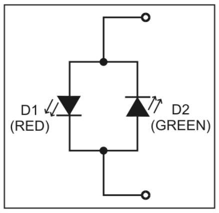


Fig. 2: Depiction of bilateral LEDs

You can mix the output of a condenser mic preamplifier with the output of Section II. In the normal mode, your sound can replace the vocals of the record to some extent, giving some sort of karaoke function.

For stereo FM transmission, some special circuit will be required. It needs some type of encoding before transmission. Realising this function with discrete components is not easy. ICs for this special application might be existing.

A2. LEDs D2-D5 are coloured bilateral LEDs, which have only two terminals. It is analogous to two LEDs connected back to back, as shown in Fig. 2. If such LEDs are not available, D2-D5 may be replaced with ordinary LEDs. In this case biasing resistors R15, R17, R19, and R21 are not required. The connections will be similar to those of LEDs D6-D8.

IC µA741 cannot be used in place of LF353. If LF353 is not available, any other 8-pin dual op-amp like HA17458, TL072, NE5532, etc may be used.

For testing the circuit, check whether the outputs of the decade counters are changing in order, on pressing switches S1 and S2. If they are not functioning, check the related components and replace the ICs, if necessary. The other components in the circuit are less likely to get damaged.

If all connections are correct and all components are right, the circuit is sure to work, as the prototype made by me is working perfectly.

A3. To use STK459 as power amplifier, you can avoid the power amplifier circuit based on TA7230 and directly connect the output of section 2 (Fig. 5 in the article) to the inputs of STK459 power amplifier through volume and balance controls.

The mono output of the FM receiver is mixed equally in both the channels by the circuit, so you can hear the sound from both the speakers.

Amplification will surely be performed on the AUX.IN inputs with tone mode support.

Bilateral LEDs are used to display the selected function (TAPE, AUX, RADIO, and TRANSMIT).

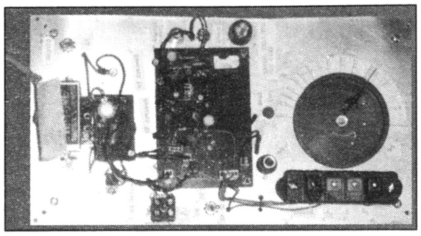
If you use STK459 as power amplifier, use a separate power supply (+18V, 3amp or above) for it. (The power supply circuit in the construction project will not support STK459.)

The PCB design plays an important role in reducing distortions such as hum. Lines carrying high current, such as lines to the speaker terminals, should be kept separated from the sensitive parts of the circuit, such as components in the preamplifier section.

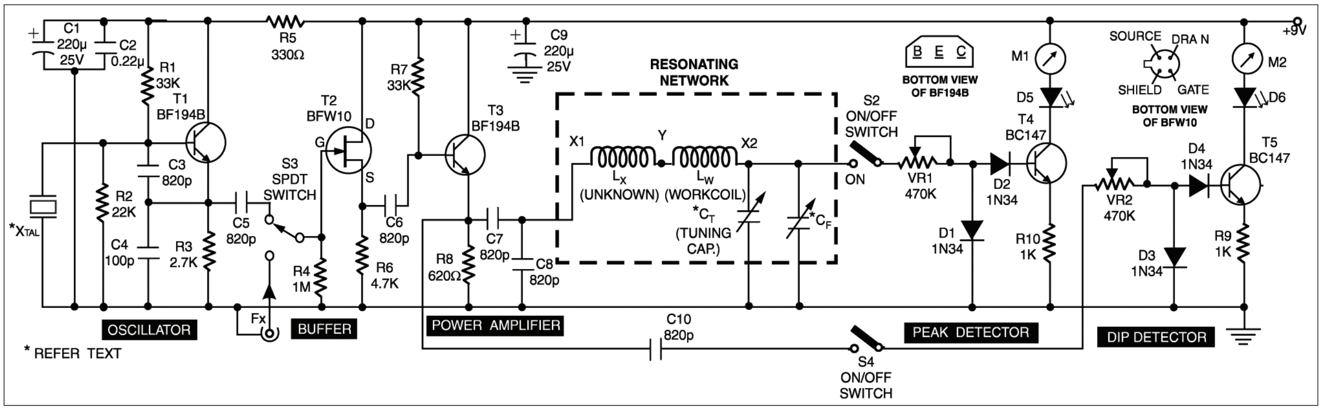
RESONANCE TYPE L-C METER

ARUP KUMAR SEN

The voltage developed across a capacitor or an inductor in a series-resonant LCR circuit reaches its maximum value at resonance. This fact can be used to find the value of an unknown inductance or a capacitance. The present circuit is based on this very principle and it may be used to measure an inductance of even less than 1 µH, or a capacitance of the order of a few pico Farads. The quality factor 'Q' of the circuit can be measured if the applied RF voltage and the resonant voltage, developed across an inductor or a capacitor, are measured with the help of a sensitive RF voltmeter, since Q is simply the ratio of these two voltages.

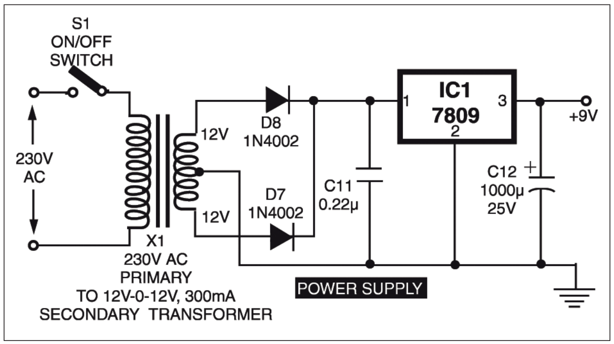


Author's prototype



C1
220µ
25V
C2
0.22µ
R1
33K
T1
BF194B
R5
330Ω
T2
BFW10
G
D
S
R7
33K
T3
BF194B
C9
220µ
25V
RESONATING NETWORK
X1
Y
X2
LX
LW
(UNKNOWN) (WORKCOIL)
*CT
(TUNING CAP.)
*CF
S2
ON/OFF SWITCH
ON
VR1
470K
D2
1N34
D1
1N34
B E C
BOTTOM VIEW OF BF194B
M1
D5
T4
BC147
R10
1K
SOURCE
DRAIN
SHIELD
GATE
BOTTOM VIEW OF BFW10
M2
D6
T5
BC147
D4
1N34
VR2
470K
D3
1N34
R9
1K
+9V
*XTAL
R2
22K
C3
820p
C4
100p
R3
2.7K
C5
820p
S3
SPDT SWITCH
R4
1M
Fx
C6
820p
R6
4.7K
R8
620Ω
C7
820p
C8
820p
C10
820p
S4
ON/OFF SWITCH
OSCILLATOR
BUFFER
POWER AMPLIFIER
PEAK DETECTOR
DIP DETECTOR
* REFER TEXT

Fig. 1: Schematic diagram of the resonance L-C meter



S1
ON/OFF SWITCH
230V AC
12V
12V
D8
1N4002
D7
1N4002
C11
0.22µ
IC1
7809
1
2
3
C12
1000µ
25V
+9V
X1
230V AC PRIMARY
TO 12V-0-12V, 300mA SECONDARY TRANSFORMER
POWER SUPPLY

Fig. 2: 9V power supply

Methodology

Signal from a variable-frequency RF source is applied to the coil under test, which is in series with a resonating network comprising a known value of inductance (called work-coil) and a standard variable calibrated capacitor. The resonance condition is detected by a peak detector which detects the peak voltage developed across the capacitor at resonance and gives a visual indication of the same. An unknown inductance is measured in two steps as follows:

1. The circuit is tuned to resonance, using calibrated tuning capacitor, with the work-coil in the circuit. The in-circuit value of calibrated capacitor is noted. Let this value be CA in pico Farad.

2. The unknown inductance is brought in series with the work-coil, and the circuit is retuned to resonance using the calibrated capacitor. Let the new in-circuit value of the calibrated capacitor be CB pico Farad.

In both the cases tuning is done by varying the value of the standard calibrated capacitor. Since frequency of the RF source is the same in both the cases (say f MHz), the unknown value of inductance of the coil under test, LX (in micro henries), can be calculated using the following relation:

$$L_X = \frac{(C_A - C_B) \times 10^6}{(2\pi f)^2 C_A C_B} \quad \mu H \qquad (1)$$

When inductance L_W (in micro Henries) of the work-coil is known, the value of unknown inductor, L_X, can also be calculated using the relation:

$$L_X = \frac{L_W \times (C_A - C_B)}{C_B} \quad \mu H \qquad (2)$$

Alternatively, the coil under test can

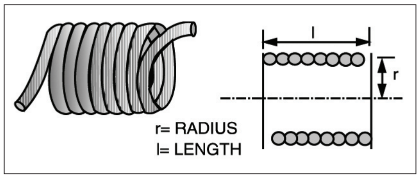


Fig. 3: Single-layer coil

be connected directly to the circuit, without any work-coil in series. In this case the inductance is given by the relation:

$$L_X = \frac{10^6}{(2\pi f)^2 C} \ \mu H \qquad (3)$$

where f is in MHz and C is in pF.

The value of a small unknown capacitor, C_X, can also be measured similarly in the following two steps:

1. A resonant condition is achieved by varying the standard capacitor against a particular combination of a work-coil and a crystal (forming part of crystal oscillator). Let the in-circuit value of tuning capacitor be C_A pF.

2. The unknown capacitor is connected in parallel to the standard capacitor, and decreasing the value of the standard tuning capacitor brings the resonant condition back. Let this new in-circuit value of the tuning capacitor be C_B pF.

The value of the unknown capacitor C_X would be the difference of these two values of the standard variable capacitor, i.e.

$$C_X = (C_A - C_B)\ pF \qquad (4)$$

The formulae (1) to (3) are based on the assumption that there would be no mutual inductive coupling between the work-coil and the coil under test, and no stray capacitance exists to affect the resonating network. The stray capacitance, if any, is to be determined and added to both CA and CB to get better accuracy. The stray capacitance would have no effect upon the results obtained using the method pertaining to formula (4) above, as it would be cancelled out by the subtraction procedure.

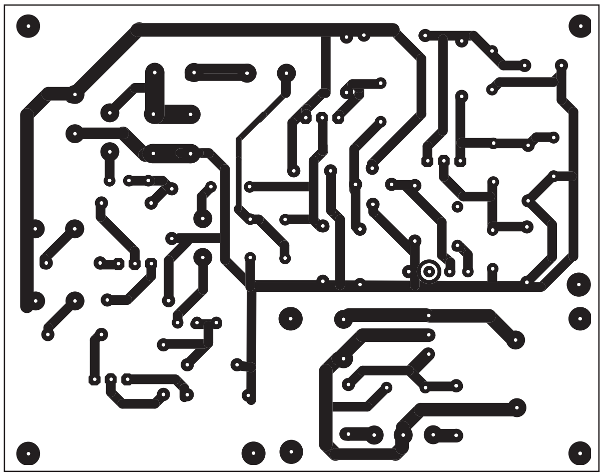


Fig. 4: Actual-size, single-sided PCB layout for the circuit

Description

In the present circuit shown in Fig. 1, the RF signal source is formed using a crystal-controlled Colpitt's oscillator, a buffer amplifier, and a power amplifier.

The frequency of the RF source may be varied from 1.8 MHz to 14.3 MHz by connecting different crystals of known resonant frequencies. (Refer parts list.)

TABLE I
Work-coil Specifications for Different Crystal Frequencies

Crystal frequency (MHz)	SWG enameled copper wire	Turns /inch	Coil diameter (in inch)	No. of turns closely wound	Inductance (μH)
1.8	36	120	0.4	88	45
3.5	36	120	0.3*	30	10
6.0	36	120	0.3*	30	10
10.0	28	63	10/16	10	2.3
12.0	28	63	1016	10	2.3
14.3	28	63	10/16	10	2.3

***Note.** The coils are to be wound on standard ebonite coil formers (ferrite cored) that are used in radio work. The listed inductance values are with the core almost completely dipped in the hole of the former. The values, without a core, would be approximately half of the listed values.*

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:	
IC1	- 7809, 3-terminal +9V regulator
T1, T3	- BF194B npn transistor
T2	- BFW10 field-effect transistor
T4, T5	- BC147 npn transistor
D1-D4	- 1N34/OA79 point-contact signal diode
D5, D6	- LED, 5mm
D7, D8	- 1N4002 rectifier diode
Resistors (all ¼ watt, ± 5% metal/carbon film, unless stated otherwise)	
R1, R7	- 33-kilo-ohm
R2	- 22-kilo-ohm
R3	- 2.7-kilo-ohm
R4	- 330-ohm
R5	- 1-meg-ohm
R6	- 4.7-kilo-ohm
R8	- 620-ohm
R9, R10	- 1-kilo-ohm
VR1, VR2	- 470-kilo-ohm, variable (linear)
Capacitors:	
C1, C9	- 220µF, 25V electrolytic
C2, C11	- 0.2µF ceramic disc
C3	- 100pF polyester
C4 - C8, C10	- 820pF polyester
C12	- 1000µF, 25V electrolytic
C_T	- 10pF - 280pF 2J type
C_F	- 0pF - 10pF trimmer
Miscellaneous:	
X1	- 230V AC primary to 12V-0-12V, 250mA secondary transformer
LW	- Work-coil (refer Table I)
M1, M2	- DC mA meter, 1 mA F.S.D.
Xtal	- 1.8, 3.5, 6, 10, 12, 14.3 MHz quartz crystal
SW1, SW2, SW4	- ON/OFF switch
SW3	- SPDT switch
	- BNC and SIP connectors
	- Snap connectors for coils (male/female)

Transistor T1, along with capacitors C3 and C4, and crystal Xtal, forms the Colpitts oscillator. The crystal operates near its parallel resonant frequency. Necessary positive feedback is obtained via capacitors C3 and C4 with a feedback factor $\beta = (C3+C4)/C3$. Since the voltage gain A of a common-collector stage is less than unity, β is made slightly greater than unity to sustain oscillation. (Loop gain Aβ becomes 1 in steady-state condition.) The output of the oscillator is taken from emitter of transistor T1 and is fed to the power amplifier transistor T3, through a buffer stage. Field-effect transistor T2, configured as a common drain amplifier, serves as a buffer amplifier. Due to the high input impedance of the source follower, loading on the oscillator is very low. Moreover, any variation in the output load impedance has no pulling effect on the oscillator frequency. The use of common collector configuration for the oscillator and the power amplifier stages provides a better high-frequency response.

The peak voltage at resonance is indicated by the intensity of LED D5 connected to the collector terminal of transistor T4. A milliammeter (M1) may also be used in series with the LED to get sharper tuning. The base of transistor T4 is driven by the average DC voltage developed over a complete cycle, at the output of a half-bridge rectifier. The rectifier is formed with two point-contact RF signal diodes (1N34), D1 and D2. The input signal to the bridge is the voltage developed across the parallel combination of variable capacitors C_T (calibrated tuning capacitor, such as the one used in radio work with $C_{max} \cong 280$ pF for 2J) and CF (calibrated fine tuning capacitor 0-10 pF). Diode D1 conducts only during positive half cycle of the input signal and causes a base current proportional to the average value of the signal voltage to flow through the B-E (base-emitter) junction of transistor T4. On the other hand, diode D2 conducts heavily during negative half cycle and ensures that no reverse-bias leakage current flows through diode D1 via B-E junction. (The leakage current reduces the average voltage developed over a complete cycle, and hence, reduces the intensity of the LED.) If a second identical detector stage, built around transistor T5, is connected to the power amplifier output (emitter of transistor T3), it would show a dip in the intensity of the LED, as the resonant circuit is tuned to a peak.

Positive 9V supply, for the meter circuit, is derived using a conventional three-terminal fixed-voltage regulator IC 7809. AC mains voltage is stepped down by power transformer X1 from 230V AC to 12V AC, which is then rectified to deliver the unregulated DC input to the regulator IC. (Refer Fig. 2.)

Construction

Actual size single-side PCB for the circuits of Figs. 1 and 2 is given in Fig. 4 and its component layout is shown in Fig. 5.

During construction, special care is to be exercised towards lead dressing. Any stray coupling from output to input through a stray capacitance, or an unwanted mutual inductance, may produce unwanted oscillations, which would hamper the reliability of the meter. Since stray capacitances play a very adverting role in a measurement, the same should be minimised by keeping the length of the connecting wires as short as possible.

The voltage developed across tuning capacitors (C_T and C_F) gradually increases as the frequency of oscillation is lowered. Hence, the input to the peak detector must be controlled accordingly for its safe operation. On the other hand, a reduction in the applied voltage to the peak detector reduces the current through the LED, which again enhances the sharpness in tuning. The peak detector input should not have any direct coupling with the power amplifier via a stray resistance or capacitance, as it would cause hindrance during the search for a peak.

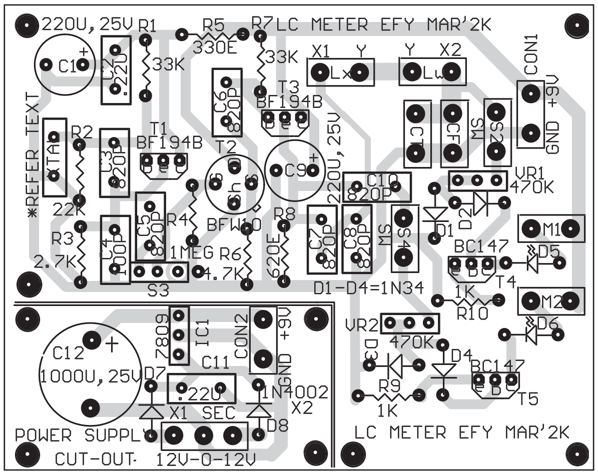


Fig. 5: Component layout for the PCB

To get better results, different work-coils are to be used with different crystal frequencies. The details of these coils are given in Table I.

If a continuously variable RF source is desired, one may substitute the crystal in the oscillator circuit with a suitable combination of an inductance and a variable condenser. The approximate frequency of oscillation of the circuit can be determined with the help of a radio receiver—by bringing it close to the meter circuit. The frequency on the dial at which maximum reception would be heard is the desired frequency.

The required inductance for a particular frequency range can be calculated from the following relation:

$$L = \frac{\lambda_{max} - \lambda_{min}}{(1885)^2 . C_{max}} \quad \mu H \qquad (5)$$

Here, C is in µF and $C_{max} \cong 280$ pF for 2J. λ is the wavelength in metres corresponding to a particular frequency, and is given by the relation:

$$\lambda = \frac{300}{f} \text{ metres,}$$

where f is the frequency in MHz.

To wind a coil of required inductance, we may use the following equation:

$$L = \frac{(r.l.n.)^2}{9r + 10l} \quad \mu H \qquad (6)$$

Here, r is the mean radius, l is the length of the coil in inches, and n is the number of turns per inch of the selected SWG (as per wire tables). Initially, a table of l-vs-L is to be generated for a particular SWG, by putting various values of winding length l in equation (6) and finding the resultant L. The winding length, and consequently the number of

TABLE II
Construction Details of the Coils

Coil	Radius(r) (inch)	Length (l) (inch)	Turns (N)	L* (µH)
L_1	10.4/16	5/16	20	7
L_2	10.4/16	3/16	10	2.2
L_3	0.25	1.25	77	25
L_4	0.25	13/16	50	15
L_5	10.4/16	2/16	4	0.4

$$*L_X = \frac{(r \times N)^2}{9r + 101} \quad \mu H$$

TABLE III
Determination of the Unknown Inductances by Two-frequency Method

Coil	Peak response obtained at f_{osc} (MHz)	C(pF)	Results L(µH)
L_1	3.5	265.2	
	6	74.8	7.16
L_2	10	81.6	
	14.3	20.4	2.1
L_3	1.8	265.2	25.2

TABLE IV
Determination of Unknown Inductances by Series Connection Method

Coil	Peak response obtained at f_{osc} (MHz)	C(pF)	Results L(μH)
L_1 (L_W)	6	65	
L_1 (L_W)+L_2(L_X)	6	40.8	L_2=2.3
L_3 (L_W)	1.8	265.2	
L_3 (L_W)+L_4(L_X)	1.8	156.4	L_4=13.6
L_2 (L_W)	14.3	20.4	
L_2 (L_W)+L_5(L_X)	14.3	10.3	L_5=0.43

turns required for the inductance calculated above, may then be found from this table. However, it is to be noted that formula (6) above could only help us to get close to the target inductance. The desired value is then achieved by adjusting its core, after connecting the coil in the circuit.

In equation (6) we may substitute N (total number of turns) for product l.n, if desired.

Methods

Some methods to find the value of inductance are given below:

1. Direct connection. Most of the unknown inductances may be measured by connecting them directly to the circuit and using the relation:

$$L = \frac{10^6}{\quad} \mu H \qquad (7)$$

Here, f is in MHz and C is in pF. The steps to be followed are given below:

1. Switch on the RF generator (switch S1) with the coil under test connected to the circuit across points X1-X2.

2. Switch on S2 to apply RF power to the resonating network.

3. Rotate LED-intensity-control potmeter VR1 to obtain the maximum intensity of LED D5.

4. Tune calibrated tuning capacitor C_T (and/or fine-tuning calibrated capacitor C_F) for maximum intensity of LED D5, or peak on the meter. The intensity of LED D5, or the deflection of the meter pointer, would be the maximum at resonance. If no peak is found, it might be due to low signal input to the peak detector. Gradually decrease the in circuit resistance value of potmeter VR1. If still no peak is found, it would mean that crystal frequency is not appropriate. Try with another crystal.

5. Note down the capacitance values from the dials of C_T and C_F. The total value of capacitance C is given by C = C_T+C_F+C_{Stray}.

The value of C_{Stray} may be in the range of 10-30 pF. If C_T is sufficiently high, C_{Stray} may be dropped from the calculation.

6. Calculate the value of L_X using equation (7).

2. Series connection. This includes following steps:

1. Insert a crystal in the crystal socket. Connect the coil under test across terminals X1-Y and a suitable work-coil across X2-Y (Table I). Initially short X1-Y terminals using a small wire. Tune C_T and C_F to get a peak on LED D5 (or meter). Note the capacitance values from the dials of tuning capacitors C_T and C_F. Let this value be C_A. If no peak is obtained, try with another crystal and work-coil combination.

2. Remove the short across X1-Y and retune the circuit by rotating C_T (and/or C_F) towards lower capacitance value to establish the peak once again. Make a fine adjustment using C_F. Note the new positions on the dials. Let the new sum of C_T and C_F be C_B.

3. Calculate the value of the unknown inductance from Eqs (1) or (2) given above.

3. Two-frequency method. If a coil of inductance L_X gives peak responses on two different frequencies—f_A at C_A and f_B at CB on tuning the dial—then L_X can be calculated from the formula given below:

$$L_X = \frac{1}{C_A - C_B} \left(\frac{1}{(2\pi f_A)^2} - \frac{1}{(2\pi f_B)^2} \right) \qquad (8)$$

Method to find the value of capacitance. Follow the steps given below:

1. Tune the circuit to resonance against a particular crystal and work-coil combination.

2. Read the capacitance values from the dials. Let the sum be C_A pF.

3. Connect the capacitor under test in parallel with C_T.

4. Retune the circuit to get the peak back.

5. Note the new values of capacitance from the dials. Let the sum be C_B pF.

6. Calculate the unknown capacitance from the relation:

$C_x = (C_A–C_B)$ pF

Method to determine an unknown frequency. Frequency of an unknown RF sinewave signal may be measured by following the steps given below:

1. Connect a suitable work-coil in the circuit.

2. Connect the RF signal source (with unknown frequency F_X) to the gate of buffer transistor T2, after disconnecting the crystal oscillator from it, with the help of switch S3.

3. Apply power to the meter by turning switch S1 'on'.

4. Apply RF power to the resonant circuit after turning switch S2 'on'.

5. Tune the resonant circuit to get a peak. If no peak is obtained, try with another work-coil.

6. Note the capacitance value from the dials of the tuning capacitors. Let the sum be C.

7. Calculate the frequency of the incoming RF signal using the following relation:

$$f = \frac{1000}{2\pi \sqrt{(L_w . C)}} \text{ MHz}$$

Here, L_w is in μH and C is in pF.

Calibration

If a standard variable capacitor is not available, we may use, after proper calibration, a 2J type variable capacitor which is generally used for radio work. To calibrate the same, follow the steps given below: 1. Switch on the RF source with a 3.5 MHz crystal, 17μH work-coil, and a 2J capacitor for C_T.

2. Rotate the tuning capacitor towards its maximum capacity (approx. 280 pF).

3. Tune by varying the slug of the coil to get a peak on the meter or LED.

4. If you require a resolution of 10 pF, connect a standard low-tolerance 10 pF capacitor in parallel with C_T. Instantly the circuit would be out of tune.

5. Rotate capacitor C_T to get back the peak again. Mark the new position of CT. It would be C_{max} =10 pF.

6. Redo steps 4 and 5 to cover the entire angular span (=180o). Each time the new position of C_T would be 10pF less than its previous value.

Limitations

While tuning with C_T to get a resonance, the LCR circuit may produce a peak voltage at the harmonic frequency of the crystal used, which would give misleading results. To avoid this situation, the positions of those harmonic frequencies on the dial of C_T, for a particular crystal and work-coil combination, should be spotted first, by rotating the capacitor over its full swing.

During tuning, if a conductive body is brought near the resonant network of the variable capacitor, interference would be produced.

Results

Coils practically wound, using the formulae given in the article, and inductance practically determined, using two-frequency method and series connection method, are tabulated in Tables II, III, and IV respectively.

Power supply may be assembled separately on the PCB, which may be cut out from the main PCB. Variable tuning capacitors (C_T and C_F), snap connectors for coils (L_W and L_X), switches, LEDs, potmeters, etc may be mounted on front panel. ❑

ELECTROLYSIS-PROOF COMPLETE WATER-LEVEL SOLUTION

LOKESH KUMATH

One major problem in using water as a conducting medium arises due to the process of electrolysis, since the sensor probes used for level detection are in contact with water and they get deteriorated over a period of time. This degradation occurs due to the deposition of ions on the probes, which are liberated during the process of electrolysis. Thereby, the conductivity of the probes decreases gradually and results in the malfunctioning of the system. This can be avoided by energising the probes using an AC source instead of a DC source.

The circuit presented here incorporates the following features:

1. It monitors the reservoir (sump tank) on the ground floor and controls the pump motor by switching it 'on' when the sump tank level is sufficient and turning it 'off' when the water in the sump tank reaches a minimum level.

2. Emergency switching on/off of the pump motor manually is feasible.

3. The pump motor is operated only if the mains voltage is within safe limits. This increases the life of the motor.

4. It keeps track of the level in the overhead tank (OHT) and switches on/off the motor, as required, automatically.

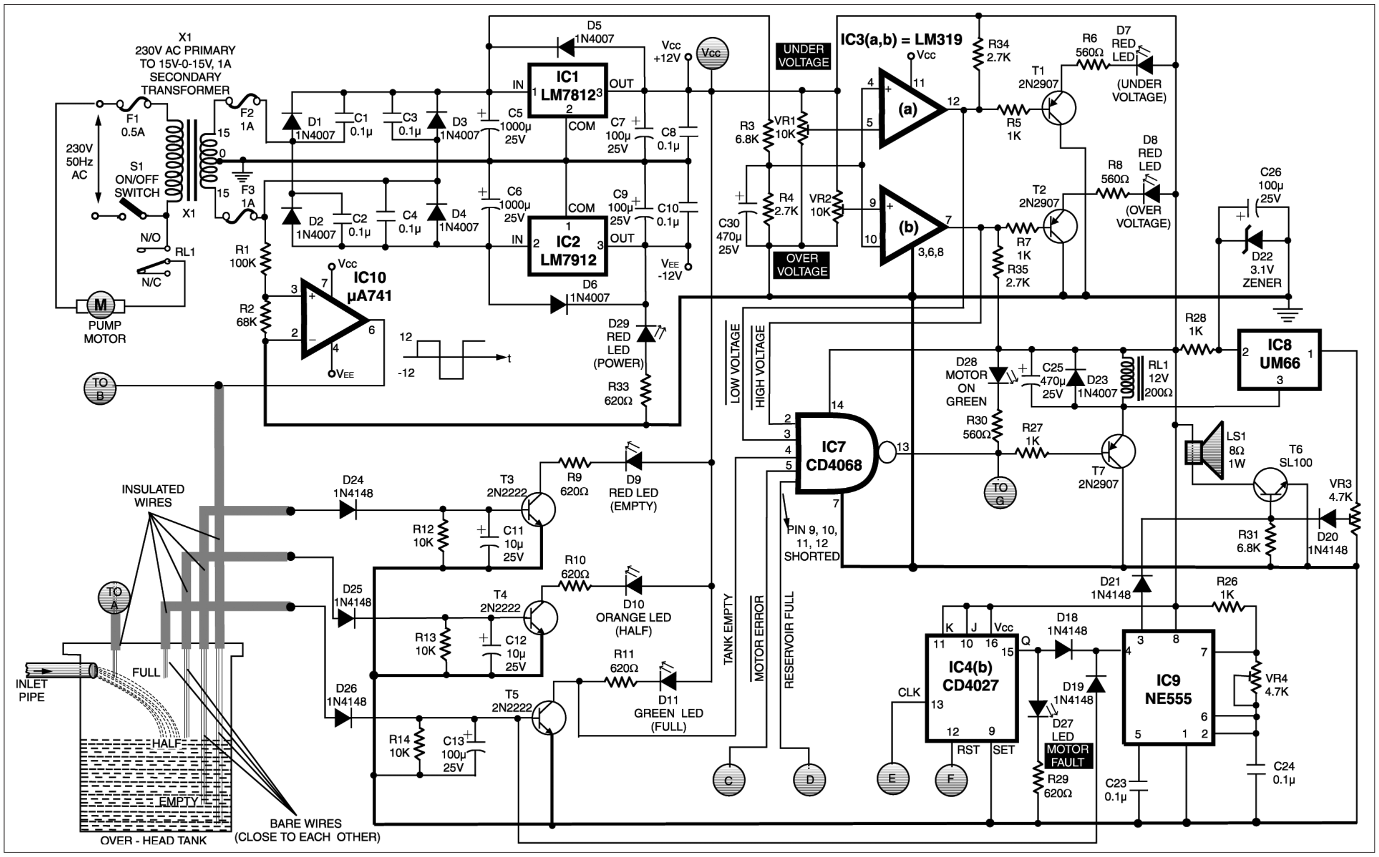

X1
230V AC PRIMARY TO 15V-0-15V, 1A SECONDARY TRANSFORMER
F1 0.5A
230V 50Hz AC
S1 ON/OFF SWITCH
F2 1A
F3 1A
N/O
N/C
RL1
M
PUMP MOTOR
D1 1N4007
D2 1N4007
D3 1N4007
D4 1N4007
C1 0.1µ
C2 0.1µ
C3 0.1µ
C4 0.1µ
D5 1N4007
IC1 LM7812
IN
OUT
COM
C5 1000µ 25V
C6 1000µ 25V
C7 100µ 25V
C8 0.1µ
C9 100µ 25V
C10 0.1µ
IC2 LM7912
D6 1N4007
Vcc +12V
VEE -12V
R1 100K
R2 68K
IC10 µA741
12
-12
t
D29 RED LED (POWER)
R33 620Ω
TO B
UNDER VOLTAGE
OVER VOLTAGE
IC3(a,b) = LM319
R3 6.8K
VR1 10K
R4 2.7K
VR2 10K
C30 470µ 25V
(a)
(b)
3,6,8
R34 2.7K
R5 1K
T1 2N2907
R6 560Ω
D7 RED LED (UNDER VOLTAGE)
R8 560Ω
D8 RED LED (OVER VOLTAGE)
T2 2N2907
R7 1K
R35 2.7K
C26 100µ 25V
D22 3.1V ZENER
R28 1K
IC8 UM66
LOW VOLTAGE
HIGH VOLTAGE
D28 MOTOR ON GREEN
C25 470µ 25V
D23 1N4007
RL1 12V 200Ω
R30 560Ω
R27 1K
T7 2N2907
TO G
IC7 CD4068
PIN 9, 10, 11, 12 SHORTED
LS1 8Ω 1W
T6 SL100
VR3 4.7K
R31 6.8K
D20 1N4148
INSULATED WIRES
D24 1N4148
D25 1N4148
D26 1N4148
T3 2N2222
T4 2N2222
T5 2N2222
R9 620Ω
R10 620Ω
R11 620Ω
D9 RED LED (EMPTY)
D10 ORANGE LED (HALF)
D11 GREEN LED (FULL)
R12 10K
R13 10K
R14 10K
C11 10µ 25V
C12 10µ 25V
C13 100µ 25V
TO A
INLET PIPE
FULL
HALF
EMPTY
OVER - HEAD TANK
BARE WIRES (CLOSE TO EACH OTHER)
TANK EMPTY
MOTOR ERROR
RESERVOIR FULL
C
D
E
F
D21 1N4148
R26 1K
IC4(b) CD4027
CLK
RST
SET
D18 1N4148
D19 1N4148
D27 LED MOTOR FAULT
R29 620Ω
C23 0.1µ
IC9 NE555
VR4 4.7K
C24 0.1µ

Fig. 1: Circuit diagram of complete water level solution (contd. refer Fig. 2)

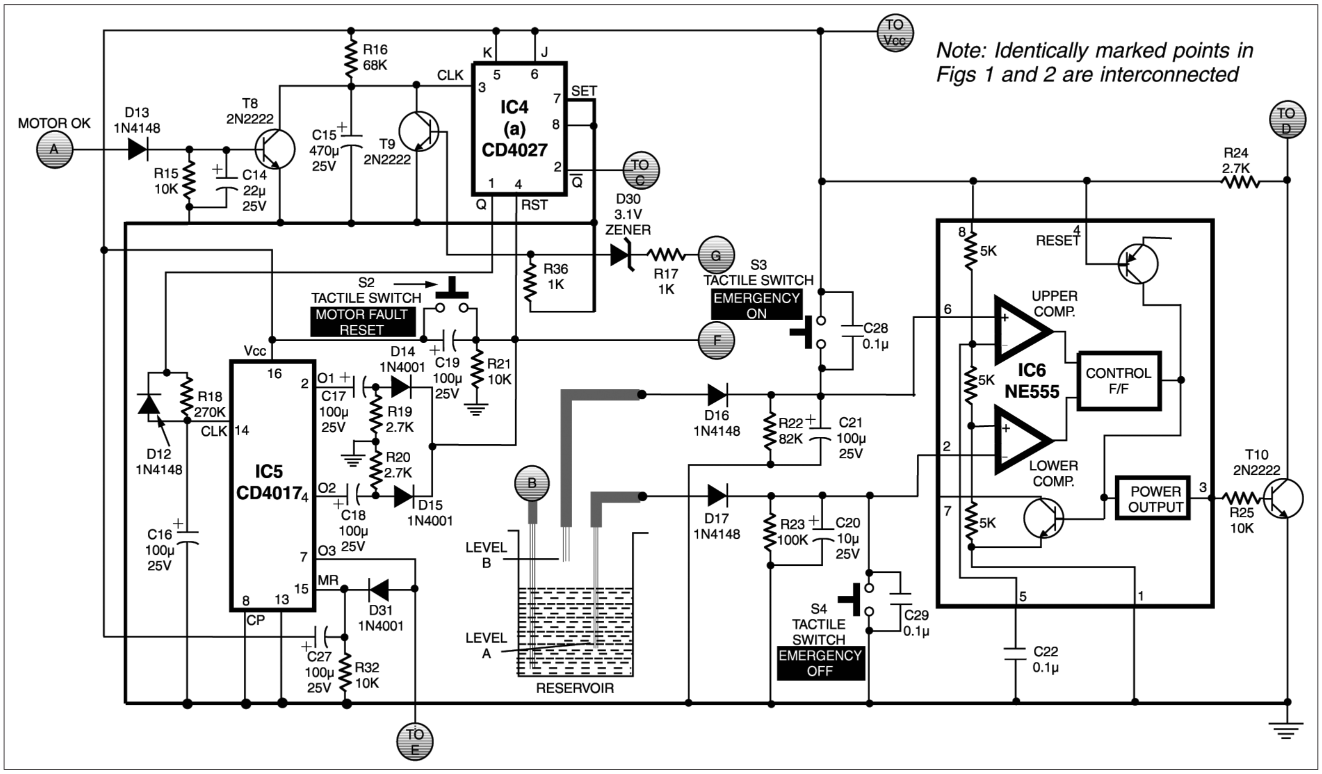

Note: Identically marked points in Figs 1 and 2 are interconnected
TO Vcc
TO D
MOTOR OK
A
D13 1N4148
R15 10K
C14 22µ 25V
T8 2N2222
R16 68K
C15 470µ 25V
T9 2N2222
CLK
K
J
IC4 (a) CD4027
SET
Q
RST
TO C
D30 3.1V ZENER
R17 1K
G
R36 1K
S2 TACTILE SWITCH
MOTOR FAULT RESET
S3 TACTILE SWITCH
EMERGENCY ON
C28 0.1µ
F
R24 2.7K
Vcc
D14 1N4001
C19 100µ 25V
R21 10K
R18 270K
D12 1N4148
C16 100µ 25V
CLK
IC5 CD4017
O1
C17 100µ 25V
R19 2.7K
R20 2.7K
O2
C18 100µ 25V
D15 1N4001
O3
MR
CP
D31 1N4001
C27 100µ 25V
R32 10K
TO E
B
LEVEL B
LEVEL A
RESERVOIR
D16 1N4148
D17 1N4148
R22 82K
C21 100µ 25V
R23 100K
C20 10µ 25V
S4 TACTILE SWITCH
EMERGENCY OFF
C29 0.1µ
C22 0.1µ
5K
RESET
UPPER COMP.
IC6 NE555
CONTROL F/F
LOWER COMP.
POWER OUTPUT
T10 2N2222
R25 10K

Fig. 2: Part circuit of complete water level solution (contd. from Fig. 1)

5. It checks the proper working of the motor by sensing the water flow into the tank. The motor is switched 'on' and 'off' three times, with a delay of about 10 seconds, and if water is not flowing into the overhead tank due to any reason, such as air-lock inside the pipe, it warns the user by audio-visual means.

6. It gives visual and audio indications of all the events listed above.

7. An audio indication is given while the motor is running.

8. The system is electrolysis-proof.

Description

The power supply section (Fig. 1). It comprises a step-down transformer (with secondary voltage and current rating of 15V-0-15V, 1A respectively), followed by a bridge rectifier, filter, and 12-volt regulators [LM7812 for +12V (V_{CC}) and LM7912 for –12V (V_{EE})]. Capacitors C1-C4, across rectifier diodes, and C8 and C10, across regulator output, function as noise eliminators. Diodes D5 and D6 are used as protection diodes.

The under- and over-voltage cut-off section (Fig. 1). It comprises a dual comparator, two pnp transistors, and a few other discrete components. This part of the circuit is meant to stop the motor in case of a low mains voltage (typically 180V to 190V) or a voltage higher than a specified level (say 260V to 270V). The unregulated DC is sampled by means of a potential divider network comprising resistors R3 and R4. The sampled voltage is given to two comparators inside IC LM319. The reference voltages for these two comparators are set by presets VR1 and VR2. The outputs of both the comparators are active-low (normally high, until the low or high voltage limits are exceeded). That is, when the AC mains goes below (or rises above) the preset levels, the outputs of the comparators change to logic zero. The output of either comparator, when low, results in lighting up of the respective LED—D7 (for lower limit) and D8 (for upper limit) via transistors T1 and T2 (2N2907), which are switching transistors.

The outputs from the comparators also go to 8-input NAND gate IC7 (CD4068) to control the motor via transistor T7. All inputs to IC7 are high when all conditions required for running of the pump motor are fulfilled. When one or more conditions are not met, the output of IC7 goes high to de-energise relay RL1 via transistor T7.

Bipolar squarewave generation (Fig. 1). One side of the secondary of transformer X1 is also connected to opamp IC10 (µA 741), which is used here as a comparator to provide bipolar square wave (having positive and negative halves). It is not advised to directly connect the secondary output to the probe in the tanks because, if due to any reason the primary and secondary get shorted, there is a risk of shock, as the secondary would be directly connected to the probes immersed in water inside the tank. But if we use a comparator in between the secondary and probes, the IC would get open in case primary and secondary windings are short-circuited. For additional safety, fuses F2 and F3, both of 1A capacity, are connected to the output of secondary windings.

Pump motor fault-detection circuit (Figs 1 and 2). A sensor probe detects the flow of water. It is fixed just at the mouth of the inlet pipe, inside the overhead tank. When the motor is off (output 'G' of NAND gate IC7 is high), transistor T9 (2N222) is 'on' (saturated) and, therefore, capacitor C15 is short-circuited. It also pulls the clock input pin 3 of IC4(a) flip-flop to ground. Zener D30 ensures that transistor T9 does not conduct with logic 0 voltage (1 to 2V) at its base.

When the motor is running (all the inputs to NAND gate IC7 are high), transistor T9 base is pulled to ground and thus capacitor C15 starts charging via resistor

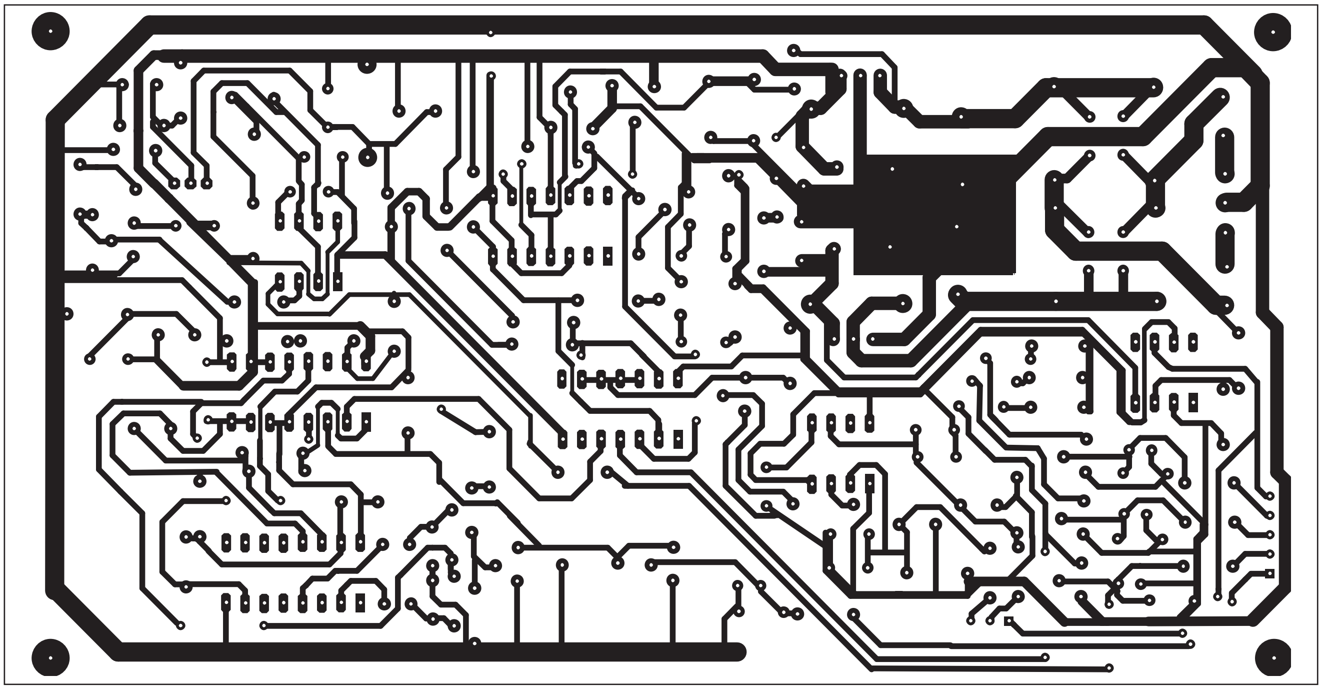


Fig. 3. Actual-size, single-sided PCB layout for the circuit shown in Figs 1 and 2

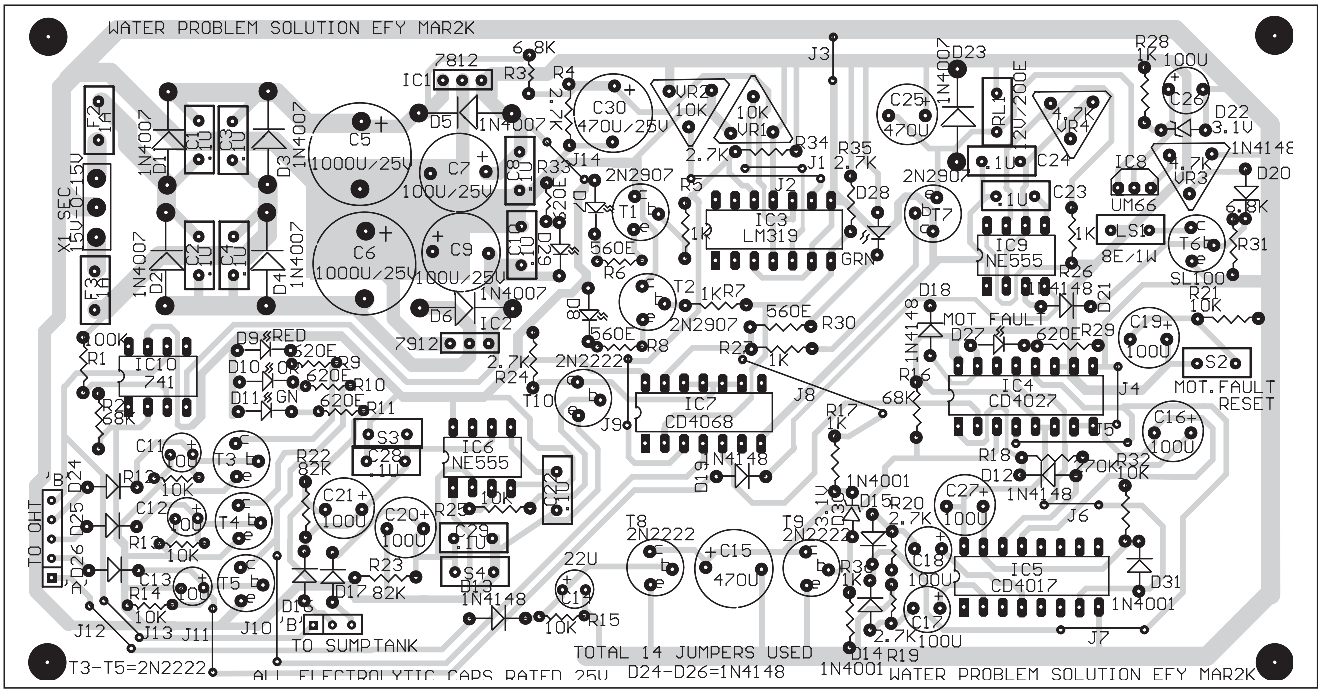

WATER PROBLEM SOLUTION EFY MAR2K
7812
IC1
6.8K
R3
R4
C30 470U/25V
VR2 10K
10K VR1
J3
D23 1N4007
R28 1K
100U
C26
C25 470U
RL1 12V/200E
4.7K VR4
D22 3.1V
1N4148
D20
VR3 4.7K
IC8 UM66
X1 SEC. 15V-0-15V
F2 1A
F3 1A
1N4007 D1
C1 .1U
C3 .1U
D3 1N4007
C5 1000U/25V
D5 1N4007
C7 1000U/25V
C8 .1U
R33 620E
J14
2N2907
T1
2.7K
R34
J1
R35 2.7K
J2
IC3 LM319
D28
GRN
2N2907
T7
.1U C24
.1U C23
1K
IC9 NE555
LS1 8E/1W
T6
R31
6.8K
SL100
1N4007 D2
C2 .1U
C4 .1U
D4 1N4007
C6 1000U/25V
C9 1000U/25V
C10 .1U
D29
560E
R5
R6
T2
1K R7
2N2907
560E
R30
R26
1N4148
D21
R21 10K
D6 1N4007
IC2
7912
D8
560E R8
R27
1K
D18
1N4148
MOT. FAULT
D27
620E
R29
C19 100U
S2
MOT. FAULT RESET
100K
R1
IC10 741
R2 68K
D9 RED
620E R9
D10 OR
620E R10
D11 GN
620E R11
2.7K
R24
2N2222
T10
J9
IC7 CD4068
J8
R16 68K
IC4 CD4027
J4
J5
R17 1K
C16 100U
S3
C28 .1U
IC6 NE555
C22 .1U
D19
1N4148
R18
D12
470K
R32 10K
1N4148
J6
C11 10U
T3
R12 10K
C12 10U
T4
R13 10K
C13 10U
T5
R14 10K
D24
D25
D26
'B'
'A'
TO OHT
R22 82K
C21 100U
C20 100U
R25
10K
C29 .1U
S4
D13
1N4148
R23 82K
D16
D17
T8 2N2222
C15 470U
T9 2N2222
C14 22U
R15 10K
1N4001
D15
R20 2.7K
D30
3.1V
R3
1K
C27 100U
C18 100U
C17 100U
IC5 CD4017
D31
1N4001
J7
D14
R19
2.7K
J10
'B'
TO SUMPTANK
J11
J12
J13
TOTAL 14 JUMPERS USED
T3-T5=2N2222
ALL ELECTROLYTIC CAPS RATED 25V
D24-D26=1N4148
1N4001
WATER PROBLEM SOLUTION EFY MAR2K

Fig. 4: Component layout for the PCB

R16. The RC combination is selected [using the well-known charging formula $V(t) = V_{final}(1-e^{-t/RC})$] such that it takes about 15 seconds for the capacitor to reach 1/3 Vcc, i.e. about 4 volts to clock flip-flop IC4(a) to toggle, taking its Q pin low to stop the motor (via IC7, transistor T7, and relay RL1). However, if water starts flowing within 15 seconds after the starting of motor, transistor T8 would start conducting and discharge capacitor C15, not allowing it to charge, irrespective of the state of transistor T9. Thus capacitor C15 remains discharged.

But if water does not flow due to any reason, such as air lock or pump motor failure, IC4(a) toggles after about 15 seconds, which makes its $\overline{Q}$ pin 2 low. As a result, the output of IC7 goes high and the motor stops. Simultaneously, capacitor C15 is discharged. At the instant $\overline{Q}$ goes low, Q (pin 1) goes high and so a clock is applied to IC5 via resistor-capacitor combination of R18-C16, so that clock input pin 14 of IC5 goes high after about 10 seconds. As a result, pin 2 of IC5 goes high and resets IC4(a) to make Q high again. This starts the motor again.

But if water still does not flow into the OHT this time, $\overline{Q}$ of IC4(a) becomes low again to switch off the motor. Simultaneously, IC5 gets another clock pulse and IC4(a) is reset once again

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:		
IC1	-	7812, +12V regulator
IC2	-	7912, –12V regulator
IC3	-	LM319 dual comparator
IC4	-	CD4027 dual JK flip-flop
IC5	-	CD4017 Johnson ring counter
IC6, IC9	-	NE555 timer
IC7	-	CD4068, 8-input NAND gate
IC10	-	µA741 op-amp
IC8	-	UM66 melody generator
T1, T2, T7	-	2N2907 pnp switching transistor
T3-T5, T8-T10	-	2N2222 npn switching transistor
T6	-	SL100 npn transistor
D1-D6, D23	-	1N4007 rectifier diode
D7-D11, D27-D29	-	LED, coloured
D12, D13, D16-D21 D24-D26	-	1N4148 switching diode
D14, D15, D31	-	1N4001 rectifier diode
D22, D30	-	3.1V zener diode
Resistors (all ¼ watt, ± 5% metal/carbon film, unless stated otherwise)		
R1, R23	-	100-kilo-ohm
R2, R16	-	68-kilo-ohm
R3, R31	-	6.8-kilo-ohm
R4, R19, R20, R24, R34,R35	-	2.7-kilo-ohm
R5, R7, R17, R26-R28, R36	-	1-kilo-ohm
R6, R8, R30	-	560-ohm
R9-R11, R29, R33	-	620-ohm
R12-R15, R21, R25, R32	-	10-kilo-ohm
R18	-	270-kilo-ohm
R22	-	82-kilo-ohm
VR1-VR2	-	10-kilo-ohm, preset
VR3, VR4	-	4.7-kilo-ohm, preset
Capacitors:		
C1-C4, C8, C10, C22-C24, C28, C29	-	0.1µF ceramic disc
C5, C6	-	1000µF, 25V electrolytic
C7, C9, C13, C16-C19, C21, C26, C27	-	100µF, 25V electrolytic
C11, C12, C20	-	10µF, 25V electrolytic
C14	-	22µF, 25V electrolytic
C15, C25, C30	-	470µF, 25V electrolytic
Miscellaneous:		
X1	-	230V AC to 15V-0-15V, 1A sec. transformer
RL1	-	Relay 12V, 200-ohm with contact rating ≥ 10A
	-	IC bases
LS1	-	Speaker, 8-ohm, 1W
	-	Heat-sinks for IC1 and IC2
S1	-	Mains on/off switch
S2-S4	-	Single-pole tactile switches
F1	-	0.5A fuse
F2-F3	-	1A fuse
	-	Sensing probes

after 10 seconds to restart the motor. If this condition repeats for the third time, pin 7 of IC5 goes high, to reset it. The same output from pin 7 of IC5 functions as a clock pulse for IC4(b), to give a logic high signal to RESET pin 4 of IC9 (NE555), configured as astable multiviberator.

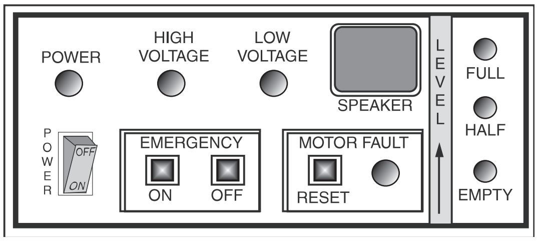


Fig. 5: Proposed front-panel layout

The output of IC9 is used to switch 'on' the speaker at the set frequency. The frequency (tone) can be set using preset VR4. The Q output of IC4(b) is also used to light up the 'Motor Fault' LED D27. This fault condition can be reset by pressing switch S2 to reset IC4(a) and IC4(b), after taking appropriate remedial action such as filling the foot-valve of the motor with water or by removing the airlock inside the pipe.

Reservoir/sump tank level detection (Fig. 2). To start the motor when the water level in the reservoir is sufficient (level B), and to stop the motor when the level falls below a particular level (level A), are the two functions performed by this section. IC6 (timer NE555) is configured here to function in the bistable mode of operation. When the water level is below the minimum level A, both pins 2 and 6 of IC6 are low. In this state, the output is high, as the internal R-S flipflop is in the set condition.

When water rises up to level A and above, but below level B, pin 2 is at high level. But in this state no change occurs at the output because both the inputs to the flip-flop are at logic zero, and so the initial condition remains at the output.

When water touches level B probe, pin 6 goes high and the output low. As a result, collector of transistor T10 goes high and the motor starts, if all other inputs of IC7 are also high. Thus, water level in the reservoir starts decreasing, and when it goes below level A, the output of IC6 goes high and the motor stops.

Capacitors C20 and C21 act as filter capacitors. The value of C21 is selected such that it takes about 10 seconds to reach 2/3 Vcc potential at pin 6, thereby avoiding any erroneous start of the motor due to random fluctuations in the water level of the reservoir due to any reason. Resistors R22 and R23 are bleeder resistors for discharging these capacitors. Switches S3 and S4 are used to switch 'on' and switch 'off' the motor respectively, in case of any emergency.

Miscellaneous functions (Figs 1 and 2). Transistors T3 through T5 are used to drive LEDs D9 through D11, which indicate the level of water inside the overhead tank. The base of transistor T5 is also connected to RESET pin 4 of IC9 to sound an alarm (similar to that in case of motor fault), indicating that the overhead tank has been filled completely. At this instant LED D11 is lit to indicate this condition, while during motor fault condition motor fault LED D27 is lit. Thus, by using the same alarm facility and two different LEDs, two different conditions are indicated. The collector of the same transistor T5 is connected to NAND gate IC7 to switch off the motor when the tank is filled up to its maximum level.

The ground pin of melody generator UM66 (IC8) is connected to the emitter of transistor T7. Thus, the melody IC is 'on' when the motor is running. The volume of this melody can be controlled by preset VR3.

Diode D23 connected across the relay is the 'snubber' diode to protect emitter junction of T7. Capacitor C25 is added to avoid chattering of the relay.

LS1 can be any 0.25W-1W, 8-ohm speaker. RL1 should be a good-quality 12V, 200-ohm relay, with a contact rating of at least 10A. The combinations of capacitor-resistor C19-R21 and C27-R32 form power-on reset circuits. Since the CMOS ICs are used here, the noise margin is quite high. The front-panel layout for the system is given in Fig. 5.

Precautions

1. The probes should be made of a material which is rust-proof, such as aluminium or brass.

2. Adjust presets VR1 and VR2 using an auto-transformer.

3. IC1 and IC2 should be provided with heat-sinks.

4. Level A of the reservoir should be such that the foot-valve is just under water.

5. The probes energised with AC (connected to output of IC10) should

run up to the bottom of the OHT and sump tanks.

6. The water-flow-sensing probe should be installed well above the 'tank-full' level.

7. Remember that the 'low level' LED indicates that water is between the 'low level' and 'half level'. When both 'low level' and 'half level' LEDs are on, the water level is between 'half' and 'full level'.

8. The probes inserted deep, down to the bottom, should be completely uncovered up to the top position of the tank, and the different probes should be as close as possible (but not too close to avoid any water droplets sticking across them) to have minimum water resistance.

A single-sided, actual-size PCB for the complete circuit of the project is given in Fig. 3, and a component layout for the same is given in Fig. 4.

Readers queries:

Q1. I have used 1HP motor. Its maximum starting current is 5.1 amp. Due to this large current and long connecting wires, there is a drop of 30 to 40 volts when the motor keeps going 'on' and 'off' alternately.

Dinesh Kumar
Sonepat

Q2. It is mentioned whether the circuit can be used for 3-phase pump motors. The recommended wattage of the motor is also not mentioned.

Sajith M.K.
Nileshwar

Q3. Complete working is not explained by the author, as to how the motor starts when the OHT is empty, and this is not connected to IC7 (CD4068).

The overhead tank is provided with 'Empty', 'Half' and 'Full' probes connected via 1N4148 diodes to the bases of transistors T3-T5. T5's collector is connected to IC7 pin 4 and green LED 'full' marked 'tank empty' to input of IC7.

What is the duration of the alarm when the OHT is full?

A. Narasimha Murthy
Bangalore

The author, Lokesh Kumath, replies:

A1. The fluctuation in the mains when a motor is switched 'on' lasts only for about 1 or 2 seconds. This interval is too less for capacitor C5 (1000µF) to discharge significantly and activate the under-voltage cut-off section around LM319 comparator (voltage at its pin 4 is not likely to fall below that of pin 5). Capacitor C30 also helps to maintain constant voltage at pin 4 for such a short duration.

Anyway, if this problem occurs, it can be corrected in one of the following ways:

1. Setting preset VR1 more towards ground.

2. Increasing values of capacitors C5 and C6 to 2200 µF, 50V.

3. Connecting a capacitor of about 100 µF, 25V between base and Vcc of transistor T7.

4. Increasing voltage rating of transformer X1 to 18V-0-18V or more.

A2. The circuit is meant to simply control (switch 'on'/'off') the tank motor with the help of relay RL1. Thus, a 3-pole relay (or three separate relays, one for each phase) can be substituted for relay RL1, without any other change, to control a 3-phase motor.

Pump motor of any wattage/HP can be used as long as the relay contacts' current rating is adequate for the given pump motor.

For switching 'on' a 3-phase pump motor, a starter is normally required, because of very high initial current/torque requirement. Circuits, which control 3-phase pump motor via starter, have been published in EFY Dec'99 issue (refer Electronics Projects Vol. 19).

A3. Red LED (D3) has nothing to do with starting the motor. It only gives an indication that water level in the OHT is below the 'Empty' level. Motor is 'on' as long as the green LED (D11) is 'off' and other conditions like proper voltage (mains), reservoir full, etc are true. The motor goes 'off' as soon as the green LED lights, because the 'tank empty' signal goes low.

Green LED simply indicates that the OHT is completely filled and thus 'tank empty' signal goes false to swtich 'off' the motor.

The alarm is continously 'on' until the power for the circuit is switched 'off', or the water level in the OHT goes just below its full level. One can simply connect a switch between the base of transistor T5 and the anode of diode D19 to switch off the alarm.

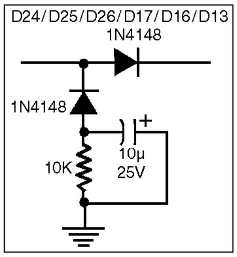


Fig. 1: Modified sensor output circuit

Note. To allow flow of current through watet in bath the directions for preventing electrolysis, the modification given in Fig. 1 should be incorporated for all sensor probes dipped in water.

SMART CLAP SWITCH

LOKESH KUMATH

Circuit of a smart clap switch, incorporating certain unique features, is presented here. It overcomes the shortcomings observed in normal clap switches. The following two special features, which you would not have observed in other clap switches, are incorporated in its design:

(a) It comprises a 4x4 clap switch, i.e. it operates only when you clap four times to switch 'on' a device. Similarly, for switching 'off' the device, you are required to again clap four times.

(b) The clapping should occur within an interval of about 3.5 seconds, otherwise the clap switch status will remain unchanged.

In an ordinary clap switch, the connected device is switched 'on' by a single clap and is switched 'off' in a similar manner by a single clap. Since the transducer used in a clap switch is normally a condenser mic, it is unable to detect difference between a clap and a sound produced by a metallic object falling on the ground or simply the shouting sound from a person. This is a common problem encountered in clap switches.

In the circuit of the smart clap switch, this problem is completely eliminated. It will not be affected by any spurious sound, including the one produced when a door is strongly banged. This can be well understood from the working of the circuit explained below.

The circuit

230V AC is converted into 12V regulated DC supply using 15-0-15,1A secondary, step-down transformer and other related components. Since CMOS ICs are used in the circuit, its power consumption is quite low and the noise immunity of the circuit is high (about 5.4V).

Resistor R1 biases the condenser microphone and the electrical signals (converted from sound waves) are fed to buffer stage N1 with high input impedance. The high-frequency noise signals are bypassed to ground by shunting the microphone with capacitor C1. The mic output is fed to a preamplifier stage built around op-amp N2. The gain of preamplifier stage is 6.6.

The next stage comprising capacitor C4 and resistor R6 constitutes a high-pass filter with a cut-off frequency of about 3 kHz. This filter avoids false activation of the switch by spurious low-frequency sounds such as those produced by a fan, a motorcycle, and other gadgets. Although this precaution may not be absolutely essential because we are using a coded sound, it provides additional safety.

The high-pass filter stage is followed by an amplifier stage around op-amp N3 with a gain of 23. Thus, the overall gain of the op-amps N2 and N3 is about 150, which is quite adequate.

The next stage formed using op-amp N4 is a comparator. The reference voltage connected to the inverting terminal of the comparator can be varied, from about 0.2V to about 8V, by adjusting preset VR1. Thus, the sensitivity to clap sound can be set by preset VR1. The red LED D1 gives an indication that the clap signal has been detected.

[Note: IC6 (NE555), configured as a monostable, with a pulse width of 250 ms, has been added at EFY lab during the course of testing, to eliminate the effect of multiple pulses generated at the output of comparator N4, even with a single clap.]

TABLE I

Q_D	Q_C	Q_B	Q_A	Switch/Device status
0	0	0	0	Device remains 'off' in this region as Q_C remains at logic low
0	0	0	1	
0	0	1	0	
0	0	1	1	
0	1	0	0	Device remains 'on' in this region as Q_C remains at logic high
0	1	0	1	
0	1	1	0	
0	1	1	1	
1	0	0	0	Device is reset to off state (unstable state)

The main control section is formed around IC5 (CD40192), which is a 4-bit up/down presetable decade counter. CD40192

PARTS LIST	
Semiconductors:	
IC1	- LM324 quad op-amp
IC2	- 7812 +12V regulator
IC3	- CD4027 dual JK flip-flop
IC4, IC6	- NE555 timer
IC5	- CD40192 up/down decade counter
D1, D9	- Colour LED
D2-D4, D8	- 1N4007 rectifier diode
D5-D7	- 1N4148 switching diode
T1, T2	- 2N2907 pnp transistor
T3	- 2N2222 npn transistor
Resistors (all ¼W, ±5% metal carbon film, unless stated otherwise)	
R1, R15, R26	- 10-kilo-ohm
R2, R3, R18, R19, R21	- 100-kilo-ohm
R4, R7, R9, R13, R14, R16 R20, R22, R23	- 1-kilo-ohm
R5, R6	- 5.6-kilo-ohm
R8, R24	- 22-kilo-ohm
R10	- 220-ohm
R11	- 4.7-kilo-ohm
R12	- 680-ohm
R17	- 33-kilo-ohm
R25	- 470-ohm
VR1	- 10-kilo-ohm preset
Capacitors:	
C1	- 47nF ceramic disk
C2, C3	- 4.7µF, 25V electrolytic
C4, C6-C8, C12, C18	- 0.01µF ceramic disk
C5, C10, C13	- 100µF, 25V electrolytic
C9	- 2200µF, 25V electrolytic
C11, C17	- 10µF, 25V electrolytic
C14, C15, C16	- 0.1µF ceramic disk
Miscellaneous:	
RL1	- 12V, 200-ohm relay
MIC1	- Condenser microphone
X1	- 230V AC primary to 15V-0-15V, 1A secondary transformer
	- Heat-sink
F1, F2	- 1A fuse

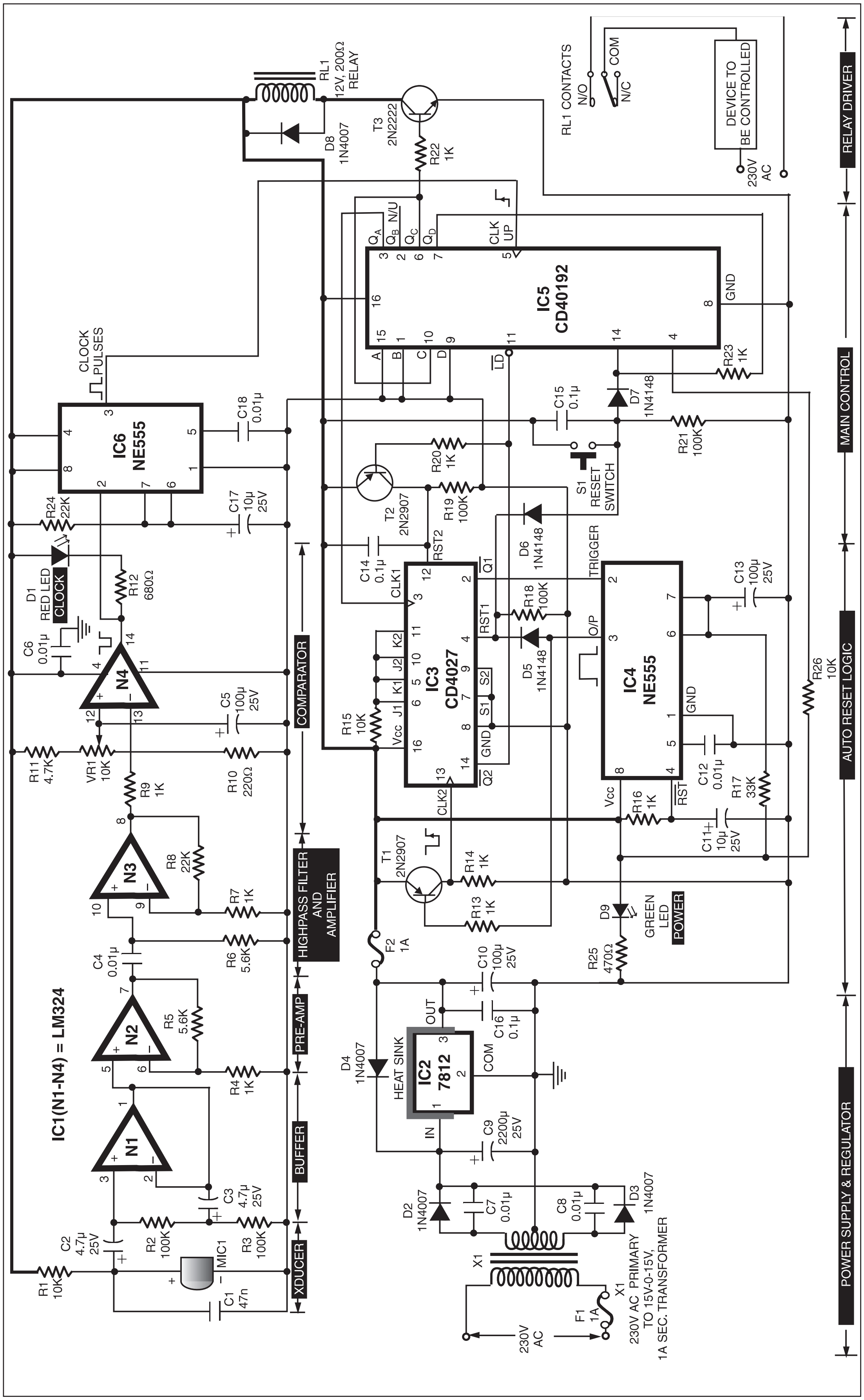

IC1(N1-N4) = LM324
N1
N2
N3
N4
IC2 7812
IC3 CD4027
IC4 NE555
IC5 CD40192
IC6 NE555
CLOCK PULSES
RL1 12V, 200Ω RELAY
D8 1N4007
T3 2N2222
R22 1K
RL1 CONTACTS
N/O
COM
N/C
DEVICE TO BE CONTROLLED
230V AC
T2 2N2907
T1 2N2907
S1 RESET SWITCH
D1 RED LED
CLOCK
D9 GREEN LED
POWER
D4 1N4007
HEAT SINK
F2 1A
F1 1A
X1 230V AC PRIMARY TO 15V-0-15V, 1A SEC. TRANSFORMER
MIC1
XDUCER
BUFFER
PRE-AMP
HIGHPASS FILTER AND AMPLIFIER
COMPARATOR
POWER SUPPLY & REGULATOR
AUTO RESET LOGIC
MAIN CONTROL
RELAY DRIVER

Fig. 1: Schematic diagram of smart clap switch

is a CMOS version of 74192. Here, one can even use CD40193, a 4-bit up/down binary counter, since counting up to decimal digit 8 only is involved. The above-mentioned ICs are pin-to-pin compatible.

The other ICs used in the control section are IC3 (dual JK flip-flop) and IC4 (NE555 timer, configured as monostable flip-flop). When power is applied to the circuit, IC3, IC4, and IC5 are reset by power-on reset circuits comprising capacitor-resistor combinations of C14-R19, C11-R16, and C15-R21 respectively. Thus, all outputs of IC5 (Q_A to Q_D) are at logic zero. Hence, all the parallel load inputs (A through D) of IC5 are also at logic zero. The Q outputs of IC3 are 'low' while its $\overline{Q}$ outputs are 'high'. The CLK2 input of IC3 is initially 'high' because transistor T1 is in conduction state.

Now, when a clap sound is produced, IC5 gets a low-to-high going clock pulse. Its count goes up from 0000 to 0001, i.e. it is incremented by one digit. Since Q_A goes from 'low' to 'high', it acts as a clock (CLK1) for first section of IC3. As a result Q1 of the IC3 goes 'low' to trigger IC4, which produces a pulse of about 3.5-second duration at its output pin 3. The output of IC4 is inverted by transistor T1, which toggles the second JK flip-flop inside IC3. As a consequence, its Q2 output goes 'low' and the count present at the parallel load inputs are loaded. The parallel count loading depends on the number of clock pulses arriving at IC5 within these 3.5-seconds, which again depends on the number of claps produced within the same period. Table I shows the status at parallel inputs of IC5 and the status of relay RL1 or the device connected via the normally-open contacts of the relay to the supply.

The first clap activates the monostable flip-flop IC4. It is clear from Table I that if no further claps occur within 3.5 seconds of the first clap, the parallel inputs to IC5 become 0000 because Q_C output (connected to C input) would still be 'low' when load input becomes active low, at the end of 3.5-second. period. Thus 0000 is loaded into IC5, thereby keeping the relay or the device connected to the switch in its previous state.

This happens up to a total of three claps occuring within the allotted time duration of 3.5-seconds. But if three more claps occur after the first clap, within the allotted 3.5-second time, the output of IC5 becomes 0100 and the connected device turns 'on'. At this stage, the parallel input is 0100 and therefore, on parallel loading, the output of IC5 keeps the device in the 'on' state.

Even if a total of seven claps occur (i.e. three more claps after the device is 'on'), the counter remains loaded with 0100, thereby resetting the device to its previous state. Thus, once the device is 'on', it requires a total of four claps within 3.5 seconds to turn 'off' the device. This happens because at the fourth clap count, the output reaches 1000 (from its previous output of 0100). As a result, Q_D becomes 'high', and IC3 and IC5 are reset to their initial state.

Diode D5 is used to reset flip-flop 1 of IC3, once IC4 has been triggered. Transistor T2 is used to reset flip-flop 2 of IC3 when a $\overline{LD}$ pulse has been applied to IC5. Manual reset switch S1 (tactile type) is used to switch off the connected device, at any instant. It thus serves as an 'emergency off' switch.

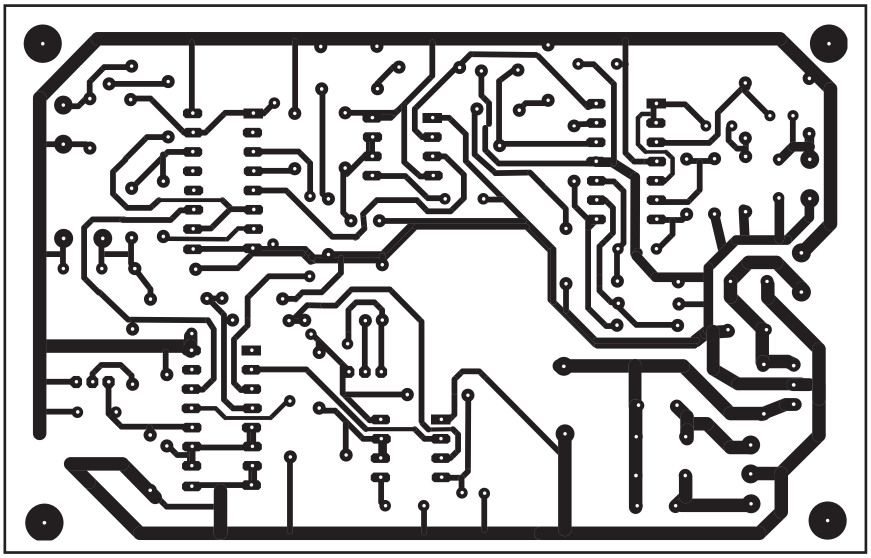


Fig. 2: Actual-size, single-sided PCB layout for the circuit

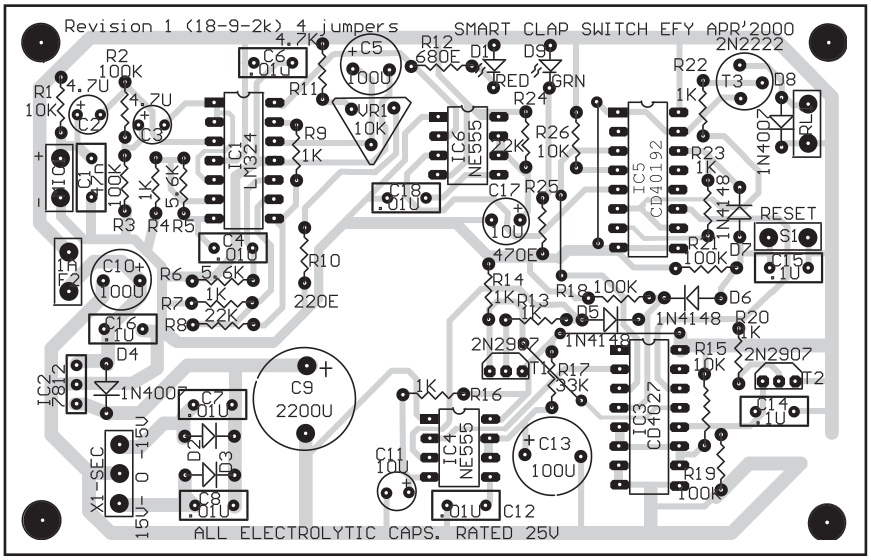

Revision 1 (18-9-2k) 4 jumpers
SMART CLAP SWITCH EFY APR'2000
4.7K
C5
100U
R12
680E
D1
RED
D9
GRN
R22
1K
2N2222
T3
D8
R2
100K
R1
4.7U
10K
C2
4.7U
C3
C6
.01U
R11
VR1
10K
R24
22K
R26
10K
IC6
NE555
IC1
LM324
R9
1K
RL
1N4007
C1
47n
100K
1K
5.6K
R3
R4
R5
C18
.01U
C17
10U
R25
470E
IC5
CD40192
R23
1K
1N4148
RESET
S1
R21
100K
D7
C15
.1U
C4
.01U
R10
220E
C10
100U
R6
5.6K
R7
1K
R8
22K
1A
F1
R14
1K
R13
1K
R18
100K
D5
1N4148
1N4148
D6
R20
1K
C16
.1U
D4
IC2
7812
1N4007
C7
.01U
C9
2200U
1K
R16
2N2907
T1
R17
33K
IC4
NE555
C13
100U
IC3
CD4027
R15
10K
2N2907
T2
C14
.1U
R19
100K
C11
10U
C12
.01U
D2
D3
C8
.01U
X1-SEC
15U 0 15U
ALL ELECTROLYTIC CAPS. RATED 25V

Fig. 3: Component layout for the PCB

Precautions. The microphone should be soldered as close to the PCB as feasible, using shielded wire. Heat-sink should be provided for the regulator IC2. If you desire to change the timings within which claps should occur, use the formula given below to calculate the values of timing resistor R and capacitor C for the pulse width of a monostable flip-flop using timer IC NE555.

t = 1.1 RC seconds

where t is the time for which output goes 'high', R is the value of R17 in ohms, and C is the value of C13 in farads.

Finally, a switch across 'common' and 'N/O' contacts of the relay may be used to bypass the smart clap switch, if desired.

Actual-size, single-sided PCB for the circuit shown in Fig. 1 is given in Fig. 2. Component layout for the PCB is given in Fig. 3.

ELECTRONIC VOTING MACHINE

JUNOMON ABRAHAM

Now-a-days electronic voting machines are being used effectively. The confidence of the voter in its flawless working is gradually building up and these machines are thus becoming quite popular throughout the country. (Please note that the design being presented here is not intended to resemble that of electronic voting machines used by the Election Commission. If any resemblance is noticed between the two, it is totally unintended.) Features of the electronic voting machines include avoidance of invalid votes and reduction of counting time and the consequent expenditure incurred on manpower deployment.

Hardware description

The voting machine circuit being described here is designed around Intel's basic 8085 microprocessor. It has two main units:

(i) control and processing unit, and
(ii) keyboard and display unit.

Keyboard and display are interfaced through a general-purpose programmable peripheral interface (PPI) IC 8255. The system monitor programs are stored in 2732 EPROM. RAM 6116 is used for storing counts and a portion of it is also used as stack. IC 74LS373 (octal D-type latch) is used for segregating the lower order address bits from multiplexed address/data bus of 8085. Two of the higher order bits are decoded by 74LS138 to generate chip select signals for IC4 through IC6. The address/address range for each device is shown in Table I. Please note that during I/O read/write instructions in µP 8085, the 8-bit address used is duplicated on lower (AD0-AD7) as well as higher (A8-A15) address bus.

TABLE I
Address Map of Devices Used

Address (Hex)	Device	
0000-01FF	EPROM	
8000-80FF	RAM	
C0	Port A	of 8255
C1	Port B	
C2	Port C	
C3	Control port	

Here we have used ports B and A as output ports and port C as input port.

The system runs with a clock frequency of 1.79 MHz (i.e. half the crystal oscillator frequency of 3.58 MHz). Auto reset facility is incorporated in this system for avoiding corruption of count during interruption in power supply. This is achieved by using the latching property of SCR. A battery backup (3x1.5V UM3 type) is provided for RAM chip to retain the latest counts.

The control and processing unit comprises the 8085 microprocessor, memory (EPROM and RAM), and some function switches. To get an overview of the voting machine, we shall start with the explanation of the functional switches.

Start switch (S48). When the circuit is initially powered on, it is in reset state due to the auto reset facility. If you want to activate the system, press the 'start' button. This causes the SCR to conduct and take RS pin 36 of 8085 to logic 'high'. As a result 8085 microprocessor becomes active. In this state, the microprocessor will execute the booting program (starting at location/address 0000H).

Clear switch (S52). This switch is used for clearing the previous count in memory. When pressed, the RST 5.5 interrupt starting at location 002CH is invoked. Here the vector (0100H) pointing to the sub-routine for clearing the memory contents is stored.

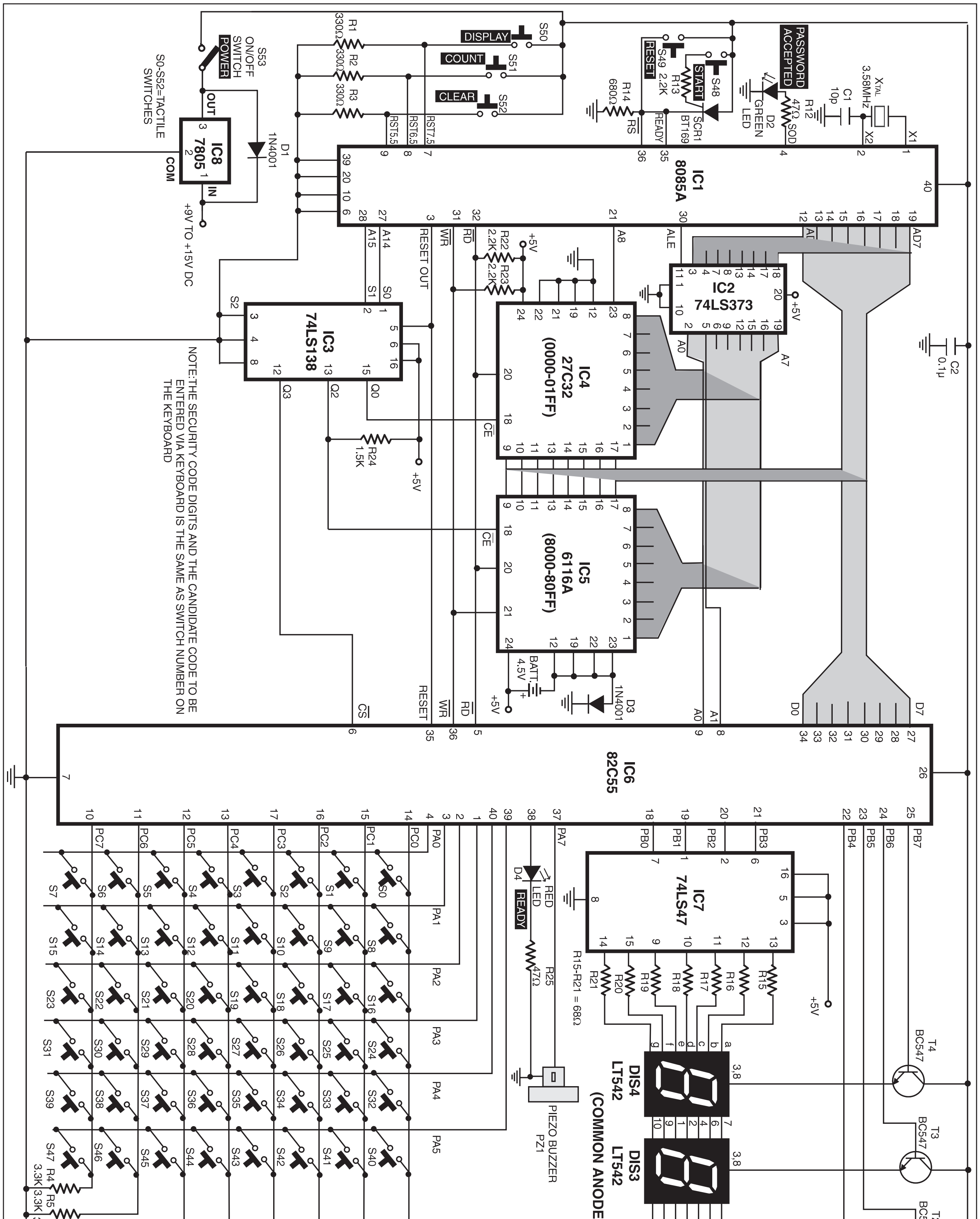
Display switch (S50). This switch activates RST 7.5 interrupt (location 003CH) containing vector for executing 'display routine' used for displaying the count of the votes polled by any candidate. If one wants to see the count of a specific candidate, 'display' switch is pressed first, followed by the depression of the switch on the keyboard allocated to the specific candidate.

Count switch (S51). This switch activates RST 6.5 interrupt (location 0034H, containing the jump address 00B6 for count subroutine) for activating the microprocessor to accept only one vote for a candidate, by depressing the keyboard switch allocated to that candidate.

Reset switch (S49). If any malfunctioning is observed during the operation of

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:	
IC1	- 8085A microprocessor
IC2	- 74LS373 octal latch
IC3	- 74LS138 decoder/demultiplexer
IC4	- 27C32 EEPROM
IC5	- 6116A RAM
IC6	- 82C55 programmable peripheral interface
IC7	- 74LS47, BCD to 7-segment decoder/driver
IC8	- 7805, +5V regulator
T1-T4	- BC547 npn transistor
D1, D3	- 1N4001 rectifier diode
D2, D4	- Colour LED
SCR1	- BT169
Resistors (all ¼W, ±5% metal carbon film, unless stated otherwise)	
R1-R3	- 330-ohm
R4-R11	- 3.3-kilo-ohm
R12	- 47-ohm
R13, R22, R23	- 2.2-kilo-ohm
R14	- 680-ohm
R15-R21	- 68-ohm
Capacitors:	
C1	- 10pF ceramic disc
C2	- 0.1µF ceramic disc
Miscellaneous:	
Xtal	- 3.58MHz crystal
S53	- On/off switch
S0-S52	- Tactile switch
P21	- Piezo buzzer
DIS1-DIS4	- LT542 common-anode display
	- 4.5V battery



IC1 8085A
IC2 74LS373
IC3 74LS138
IC4 27C32 (0000-01FF)
IC5 6116A (8000-80FF)
IC6 82C55
IC7 74LS47
IC8 7805
XTAL 3.58MHz
C1 10p
C2 0.1µ
R12 47Ω
D2 GREEN LED
SOD
PASSWORD ACCEPTED
S48 START
S49 RESET
R13 2.2K
SCR1 BT169
R14 680Ω
READY
RS
S50 DISPLAY
S51 COUNT
S52 CLEAR
R1 330Ω
R2 330Ω
R3 330Ω
RST7.5
RST6.5
RST5.5
D1 1N4001
S53 ON/OFF SWITCH
POWER
S0-S52=TACTILE SWITCHES
OUT
IN
COM
+9V TO +15V DC
ALE
A8
A14
A15
RESET OUT
WR
RD
R22 2.2K
R23 2.2K
+5V
S0
S1
S2
Q0
Q2
Q3
CE
R24 1.5K
NOTE:THE SECURITY CODE DIGITS AND THE CANDIDATE CODE TO BE ENTERED VIA KEYBOARD IS THE SAME AS SWITCH NUMBER ON THE KEYBOARD
AD7
A0
A7
D0
D7
A1
BATT. 4.5V
D3 1N4001
CS
RESET
PA0
PA1
PA2
PA3
PA4
PA5
PA7
PB0
PB1
PB2
PB3
PB4
PB5
PB6
PB7
PC0
PC1
PC2
PC3
PC4
PC5
PC6
PC7
D4 RED LED
READY
R25 47Ω
PIEZO BUZZER PZ1
R15-R21 = 68Ω
T1 BC547
T2 BC547
T3 BC547
T4 BC547
DIS1 LT542
DIS2 LT542
DIS3 LT542
DIS4 LT542
(COMMON ANODE DISPLAY)
R4-R11 3.3K
S0-S47

Fig. 1: Schematic diagram of the electronic voting machine.

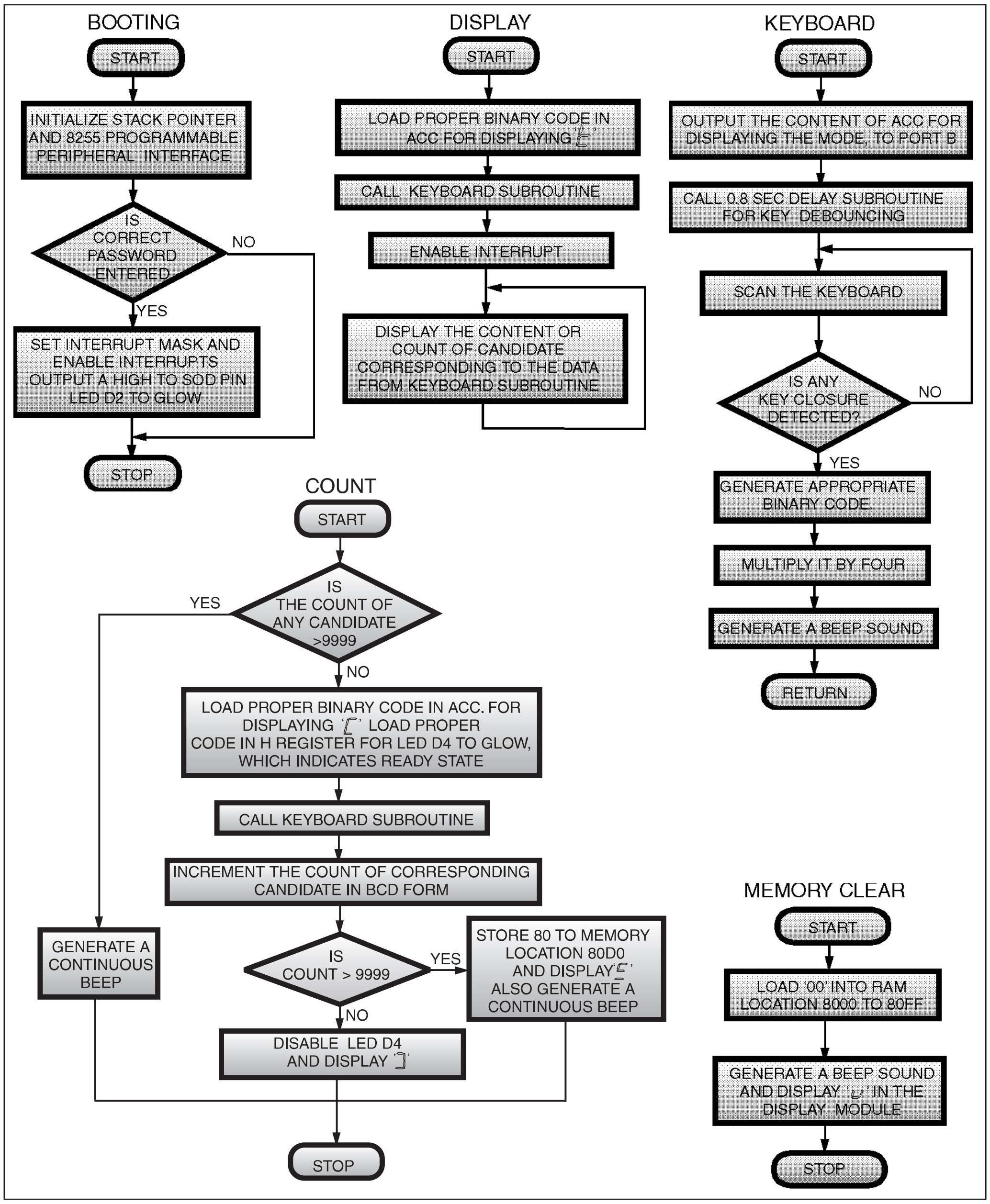

BOOTING
START
INITIALIZE STACK POINTER AND 8255 PROGRAMMABLE PERIPHERAL INTERFACE
IS CORRECT PASSWORD ENTERED
NO
YES
SET INTERRUPT MASK AND ENABLE INTERRUPTS .OUTPUT A HIGH TO SOD PIN LED D2 TO GLOW
STOP
DISPLAY
START
LOAD PROPER BINARY CODE IN ACC FOR DISPLAYING
CALL KEYBOARD SUBROUTINE
ENABLE INTERRUPT
DISPLAY THE CONTENT OR COUNT OF CANDIDATE CORRESPONDING TO THE DATA FROM KEYBOARD SUBROUTINE
KEYBOARD
START
OUTPUT THE CONTENT OF ACC FOR DISPLAYING THE MODE, TO PORT B
CALL 0.8 SEC DELAY SUBROUTINE FOR KEY DEBOUNCING
SCAN THE KEYBOARD
IS ANY KEY CLOSURE DETECTED?
NO
YES
GENERATE APPROPRIATE BINARY CODE.
MULTIPLY IT BY FOUR
GENERATE A BEEP SOUND
RETURN
COUNT
START
IS THE COUNT OF ANY CANDIDATE >9999
YES
NO
LOAD PROPER BINARY CODE IN ACC. FOR DISPLAYING ' ' LOAD PROPER CODE IN H REGISTER FOR LED D4 TO GLOW, WHICH INDICATES READY STATE
CALL KEYBOARD SUBROUTINE
INCREMENT THE COUNT OF CORRESPONDING CANDIDATE IN BCD FORM
GENERATE A CONTINUOUS BEEP
IS COUNT > 9999
YES
NO
STORE 80 TO MEMORY LOCATION 80D0 AND DISPLAY' ' ALSO GENERATE A CONTINUOUS BEEP
DISABLE LED D4 AND DISPLAY ' '
STOP
MEMORY CLEAR
START
LOAD '00' INTO RAM LOCATION 8000 TO 80FF
GENERATE A BEEP SOUND AND DISPLAY ' ' IN THE DISPLAY MODULE
STOP

Fig. 2: Flow chart for the various software programs

the voting machine, the RESET switch can be used to shut down the system.

This voting machine has the capability to handle up to 48 candidates. Each switch on the keyboard represents one specific candidate. If one does not need all the 48 switches, only the required number of switches need to be wired. The remaining keyboard switches can be done away with. In this unit, LED D4 is used to indicate that the system is ready for accepting the next (one) vote.

TABLE II

Start Address Map of Hardware Interrupts

Address (hex)	Interrupt
0024	TRAP
002C	RST 5.5
0034	RST 6.5
003C	RST 7.5

Operating Procedure

1. Switch 'on' the power, using switch S53.

2. Press 'start' button.

3. A software-based security feature has been added in this system which requires one to enter the password digits via the keyboard for getting access to the machine for its operation. (The maximum length of password is seven digits, but it can be changed by adjusting some values in the system software.) At present, only three-digit password is used. If the password digits entered via keyboard equal the password stored in the EPROM, LED D2 glows to give access for operation of the machine.

4. If the entered password is incorrect, press RESET button (S49) and proceed again from the first step.

5. Clear the previous content of count memory by pressing 'clear' button (S52). Clearance of memory is indicated by symbol '⊔' in the display.

6. Now press 'count' switch S51. The display of symbol '⊏' and the glowing of LED D4 would mean that the system is ready for accepting one vote. (Please note that the 'count' switch is placed under the control of electoral staff so that it is satisfied with the identity of the voter before allowing him/her to cast his/her vote.)

7. Now, the voter can cast his/her vote by pressing the appropriate keyboard switch allocated to the candidate of his/her choice. The acceptance of the vote by the system is acknowledged by a beep sound as well as the display of the '⊐' symbol in the display and 'off' condition of LED D4.

8. Steps 6 and 7 have to be repeated for casting a fresh vote.

9. If the count of any particular candidate's votes (count) is needed to be displayed, press 'display' switch and then the switch corresponding to the specific candidate on the keyboard.

10. Reset the system.

11. Switch 'off' the system.

Software description

The system programs are stored in the EPROM. The entire software VOTE.LST is divided into five modules, namely, booting, display, clearing memory,

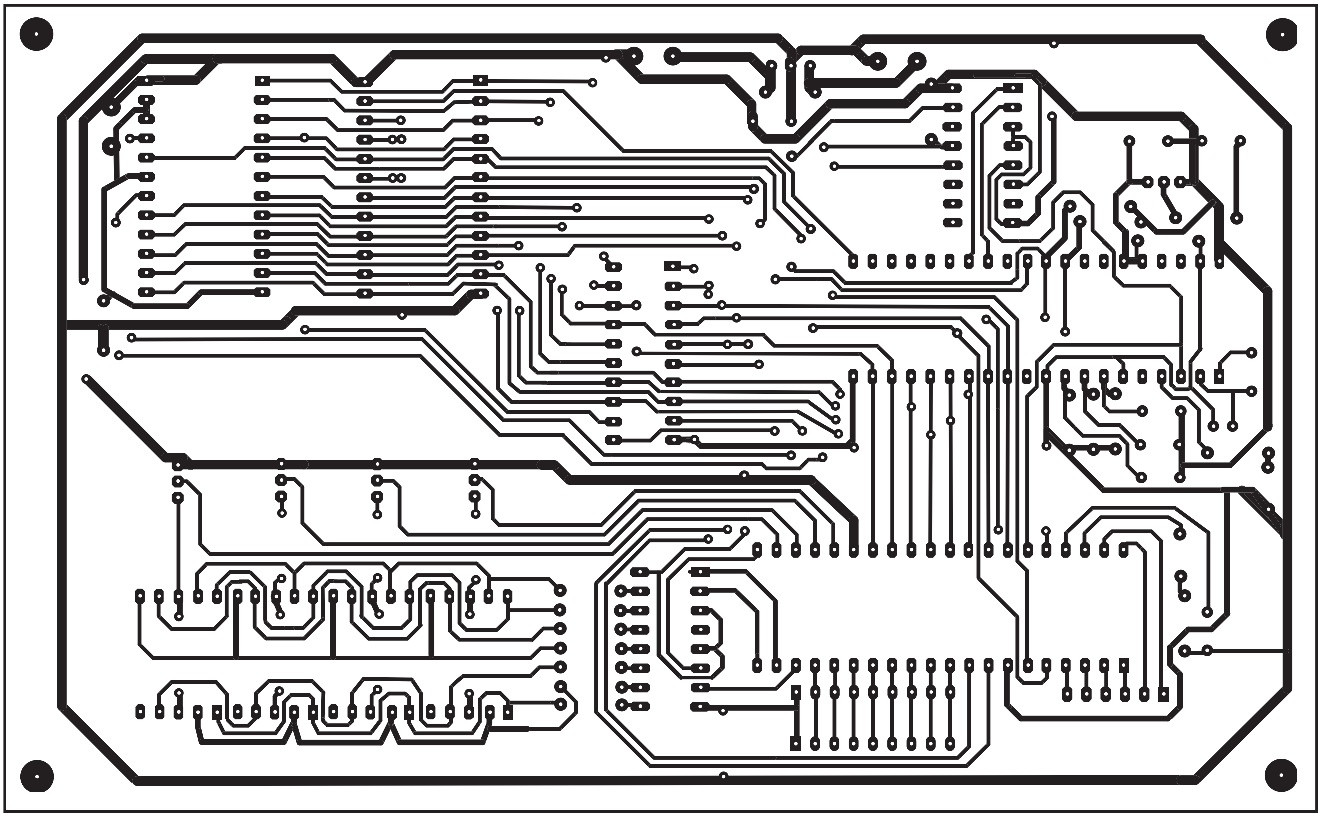
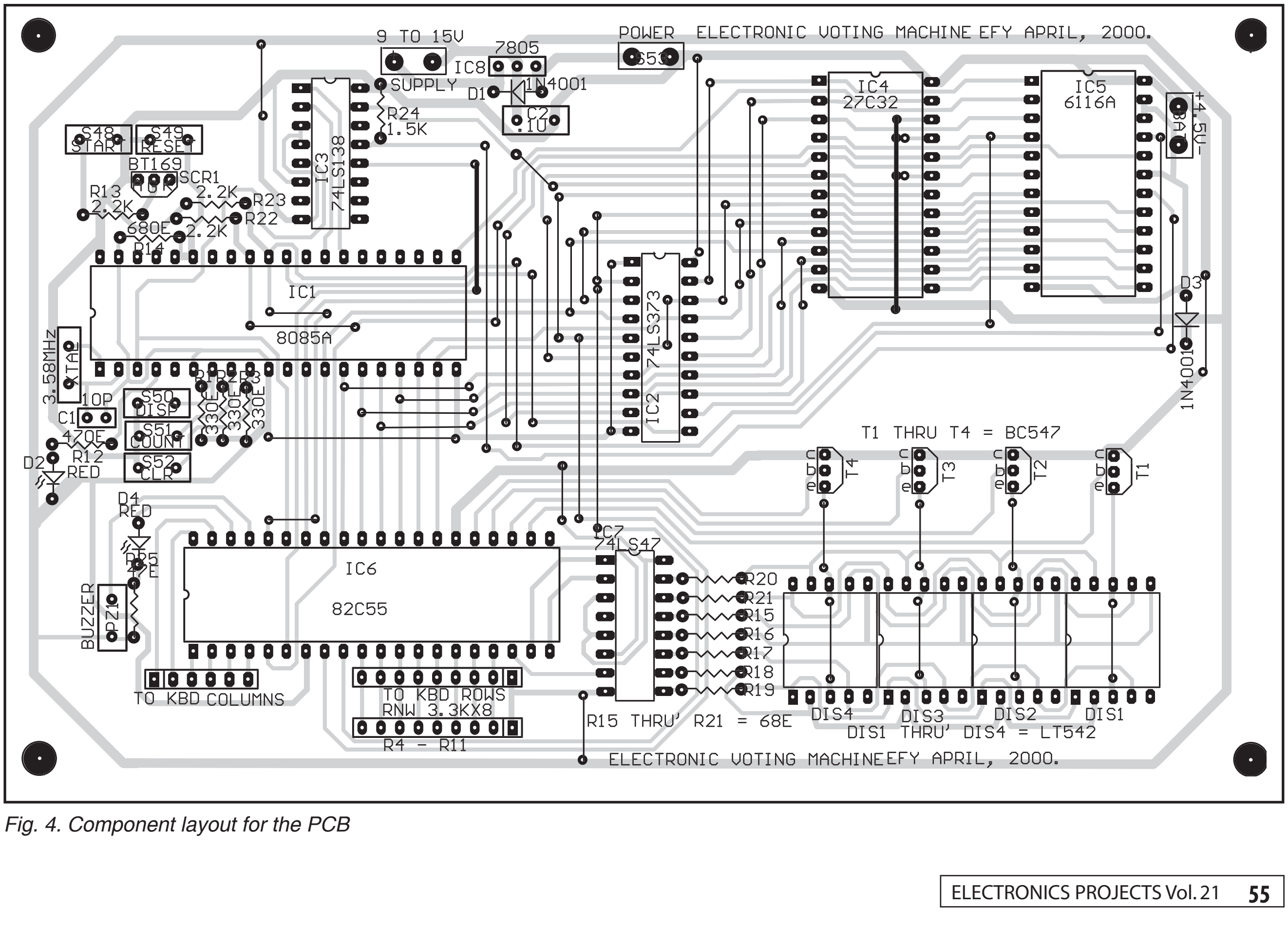


Fig. 3. Actual-size, single-sided PCB for stereo cassette player



POWER
ELECTRONIC VOTING MACHINE EFY APRIL, 2000.
9 TO 15V
SUPPLY
7805
IC8
D1
1N4001
C2
.1U
S53
S48
START
S49
RESET
BT169
SCR1
R13
2.2K
R23
R22
680E
R14
R24
1.5K
IC3
74LS138
IC4
27C32
IC5
6116A
+4.5V-
BAT
IC1
8085A
3.58MHz
XTAL
C1
10P
470E
R12
D2
RED
S50
DISP
S51
COUNT
S52
CLR
R1
R2
R3
330E
IC2
74LS373
D3
1N4001
T1 THRU T4 = BC547
c
b
e
T4
T3
T2
T1
D4
RED
R25
47E
BUZZER
PZ1
IC6
82C55
IC7
74LS47
R20
R21
R15
R16
R17
R18
R19
TO KBD COLUMNS
TO KBD ROWS
RNW 3.3KX8
R4 - R11
R15 THRU' R21 = 68E
DIS4
DIS3
DIS2
DIS1
DIS1 THRU' DIS4 = LT542
ELECTRONIC VOTING MACHINE EFY APRIL, 2000.

Fig. 4. Component layout for the PCB

counting, and keyboard.

The operation of each module can easily be understood with reference to the flowcharts.

Booting. This module initialises the stack pointer, 8255 PPI, verifies the password entered via the keyboard, and initialises the interrupts.

Display. This module uses the interrupt service subroutine at RST 7.5. This is used for displaying the count (votes) polled by each of the candidates.

Clearing memory. This module is invoked via interrupt service subroutine RST 5.5. It is used to clear the count memory.

Counting. This module uses the interrupt service subroutine RST 6.5. It activates the microprocessor to accept only one vote. If the count of any candidate exceeds '9999', it will produce a continuous beep sound and display '⊓̲', and then onwards the system will not be ready for accepting any further vote. Thus, the maximum number of votes that can be registered against any one candidate should not exceed 9999. This is the limitation in the present design.

Keyboard. This module is used for checking key closure and generating the binary value corresponding to the closed switch.

Password security

This voting machine has a password option. The length of the password is limited to a maximum of seven digits. The password should be decided before burning the program in the EPROM. Password checking is performed during execution of booting program. For entering the password, the same keyboard switches are used that otherwise represent specific candidates.

For the setting of password (PW), the length of PW is chosen first and then it is loaded into register C using instruction 'MVI A, length' in the booting program. The digits of the password are stored in memory locations 00F9H to 00FFH. Each of the PW digits chosen is multiplied by 4 and converted into hex format, and then stored in consecutive memory locations starting from 00F9H. For example, in the present listing the PW is 1, 4, 8; the length is loaded as 03 in register C and the hex data loaded at specified locations is as follows:

EPROM location	Hex data	Conversion	PW digit
00F9	← 04	← 04H ← 04 ← 4x1	1
00FA	← 10	← 10H ← 16 ← 4x4	4
00FB	← 20	← 20H ← 32 ← 4x8	8

An actual-size, single-sided PCB for the circuit shown in Fig. 1 is given in Fig. 3, while its component layout is given in Fig. 4.

VOTE.LST

```
Address  Opcode    Mnemonics  Comments

Booting Program
0000     31 FF 80  LXI SP, 80FF Initialise SP
0003     3E 89     MVI A, 89  Initialise 8255
0005     D3 C3     OUT, C3    Port A, B =  input, Port C = output
0007     11 F9 00  LXI D, 00F9 Load Stored Password (PW)
000A     0E 03     MVI C, 03  Password length = 3 digits
000C     C5        PUSH B
000D     D5        PUSH D
000E     AF        XRA A      Makes contents of Acc. zero
000F     67        MOV H, A   Make H reg contents zero
0010     CD 70 00  CALL
                   KEYBOARD
0013     D1        POP D
0014     C1        POP B
0015     1A        LDAX D     Load Acc. from mem loc pointed by
                              DE
0016     BD        CMP L
0017     C2 23 00  JNZ 0023   If PW is incorrect, stop execution
001A     13        INX D
001B     0D        DCR C
001C     C2 0C 00  JNZ, 000C
001F     3E C8     MVI A, C8  If PW is right, enable the interrupts
                              and glow the LED (D2) to
0021     30        SIM        indicate that the system is
0022     FB        EI         energised
0023     76        HLT

RST 5.5 (contains vector for memory clearing subroutine)
002C     00        NOP
002D     C3 00 01  JMP        Jump to Interrupt Secvice
                   MEMCLEAR   Subroutine MEMCLEAR

RST 6.5 (contains vector for count subroutine)
0034     00        NOP
0035     C3 B6 00  JMP COUNT  Jump to Interrupt Service
                              Subroutine COUNT

RST 7.5 Display subroutine
003C     00        NOP
003D     00        NOP
003E     31 FF 80  LXI SP, 80FF Initialise SP
0041     3E 1E     MVI A, 1E  Load  data  byte for displaying
```

```
Address  Opcode    Mnemonics  Comments

0043     26 00     MVI H, 00  display mode indicator 'ヒ'
0045     CD 70 00  CALL
                   KEYBOARD   Check key closure
0048     FB        EI
0049     E5        PUSH H
004A     06 10     MVI B, 10  Scan the display
004C     7E        MOV A, M
004D     B0        ORA B
004E     D3C1      OUT C1
0050     11 7F 01  LXI D, 017F
0053     1B        DCX D
0054     7A        MOV A, D
0055     B3        ORA E
0056     C2 53 00  JNZ 0053
0059     23        INX H
005A     78        MOV A, B
005B     07        RLC
005C     47        MOV B, A
005D     D2 4C 00  JNC 004C
0060     E1        POP H
0061     C3 49 00  JMP 0049

Keyboard subroutine
0070     D3 C1     OUT C1     Display the mode
0072     CD 20 01  CALL DELAY(O/P contents of Acc. thro Port B)
0075     FB        EI
0076     IE 00     MVI E, 00  Scan the keyboard
0078     3E 80     MVI A, 80
007A     06 06     MVI B, 06
007C     07        RLC
007D     6F        MOV L, A
007E     B4        ORA H
007F     D3 C0     OUT C0
0081     DB C2     IN C2
0083     0E 08     MVI C, 08
0085     0F        RRC
0086     DA 9C 00  JC 009C
0089     1C        INR E
008A     16 7F     MVI D, 7F
008C     15        DCR D
008D     C2 8C 00  JNZ 008C
```

```
Address  Opcode    Mnemonics   Comments
0090     0D        DCR C
0091     C2 85 00  JNZ 0085
0094     7D        MOV A, L
0095     05        DCR B
0096     C2 7C 00  JNZ 007C
0099     C3 76 00  JMP 0076
009C     F3        DI
009D     7B        MOV A, E    If closed key is sensed, multiply
009E     07        RLC         the key number by 4
009F     07        RLC
00A0     6F        MOV L, A
00A1     3E 80     MVI A, 80
00A3     67        MOV H, A
00A4     D3 C0     OUT C0      Generate a beep
00A6     CD 20 01  CALL DELAY
00A9     AF        XRA A
00AA     D3 C0     OUT C0
00AC     C9        RET
```

Count subroutine

```
00B6     31 FF 80  LXI SP, 80FF
00B9     3A D0 80  LDA  80D0   Load contents of mem loc 80D0
00BC     FE 80     CPI 80      If overflow occurs, generate
00BE     C2 C4 00  JNZ  00C4   continuous beep
00C1     D3 C0     OUT C0
00C3     76        HLT
00C4     3E 1A     MVI A, 1A   If there is no overflow,
00C6     26 40     MVI H, 40   load data byte for displaying count
00C8     CD 70 00  CALL        count mode indicator ‘[’ and
                   KEYBOARD    glowing LED D4
00CB     0E 04     MVI C, 04   Increment the count of the key
00CD     7E        MOV A, M    number (candidate code) pressed
00CE     3C        INR A       Increment Acc
00CF     77        MOV M, A    Move mem (HL) to Acc.
00D0     FE 0A     CPI 0A
00D2     C2 EB 00  JNZ 00EB
00D5     36 00     MVI M, 0    If it becomes 10,  make mem
                               (HL)=0
00D7     23        INX H
00D8     0D        DCR C
00D9     C2 CD 00  JNZ 00CD
00DC     2B        DCX H
```

```
Address  Opcode    Mnemonics   Comments
00DD     36 0D     MVI M, 0D
00DF     3E 80     MVI A, 80   If overflow occurs, store 80 to
00E1     D3 C0     OUT C0      memory locatio 80D0 and display
00E3     32 D0 80  STA  80D0   ‘⊑’. Also generate a
00E6     3E 1D     MVI A, 1D   continuous beep
00E8     D3 C1     OUT C1
00EA     76        HLT
00EB     3E 1B     MVIA, 1B
00ED     D3 C1     OUT C1      Success display ‘⊐’
00EF     FB        EI
00F0     76        HLT
```

Password data

```
00F9     04        DB 04       See text
00FA     10        DB10
00FB     20        DB 20
```

Memory clear subroutine

```
0100     21 00 80  LXI H, 8000
0103     36 00     MVI M, 00   Load ‘00’ to RAM areas
0105     2C        INR L
0106     C2 03 01  JNZ  0103
0109     3E 80     MVI A, 80   After clearing, generate
010B     D3 C0     OUT C0      a beep  and display ‘:’
010D     CD 20 01  CALL DELAY
0110     3E 1C     MVI A, 1C
0112     D3 C1     OUT C1
0114     AF        XRA A
0115     D3 C0     OUT C0
0117     FB        EI
0118     76        HLT
```

0.8 sec Delay Subroutine

```
0120     F5        PUSH PSW
0121     C5        PUSH B
0122     01 FF FF  LXI B, FFFF
0125     0B        DCX B
0126     78        MOV A, B
0127     B1        ORA C
0128     C2 25 01  JNZ 0125
012B     C1        POP B
012C     F1        POP PSW
012D     C9        RET
```

Readers queries:

Q1. Please explain the construction and implementation of the keyboard in the PCB.

Dency Lawrence
Aranmula (Kerala)

Please clear my following doubts:

Q1. I am finding it difficult to get RAM IC 6116A. Can I replace it with RAM IC 7628?

Q2. Why is the number entered through the keyboard multiplied by 4?

Q3. Why is a delay of 0.9 msec given in the keyboard subroutine?

Brijesh Raj K.B.
Bangalore

EFY: In reply to Mr Lawrence's letter:

A1. *The connections of the keyboard are clearly shown in the circuit diagram. It can be constructed on a separate general-purpose PCB with the help of the circuit diagram.*

In reply to Mr Brijesh's letter:

A1. *IC 6116A cannot be replaced with IC 7628.*

A2. *Please note that the author has allotted the same keyboard switches for casting the vote to specific candidates (for polling votes) as well as for entering the password number (refer keyboard switches in Fig. 1). He has reserved four consecutive locations for each candidate (as a candidate could poll maximum 9999 (dec.)). Thus, to serve both purposes, i.e. polling of votes and entering numbers, he adopted this particular scheme).*

A3. *This delay is given with the assumption that the user would have by this time completed his keyboard stroke and the software will take note of the fresh keyboard stroke after this delay is over.*

Q1. How should we enter password? Is password only for operation of the instrument? How should we connect resistors R4-R11 in PCB.

Mansoor Ahmed Bari
Chickmagalur

The author, Junomon Abraham, replies:

A1. *We can use the same keyboard for entering password. Here a particular number (148) is used as the password, the digits of which have to be entered one by one (for digit 1 press S1, for digit 4 press S4, and so on). Yes, password is only for activating the voting machine. You can directly insert the 3.3 Kilo-ohm X8 RNW (9-pin) into the space provided in the PCB for resistor R4-R11. (Note: Pin 1 of RNW is common-gnd.)*

DIGITAL NUMBER SHOOTING GAME

A. JEYABAL

Many electronic video games are available in the market. But for those who may prefer to assemble the gadget themselves, a digital number shooting game circuit is described here.

A train of single-digit random numbers appears on a 7-segment display, and the player has to shoot the number by pressing switch corresponding to that number before it vanishes. If he shoots the number correctly, he scores ten points which are displayed on the scoreboard. Successful shooting is accompanied by a beep sound.

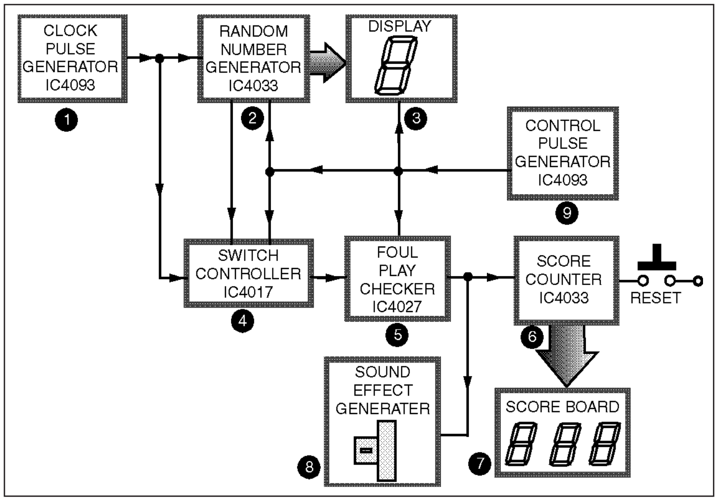


Fig. 1: Block diagram of the digital number shooting game

The circuit

Fig. 1 shows the block diagram of the whole circuit. Blocks 1, 2, and 3 constitute the random number generator. Block 4 controls the ten triggering switches and block 5 checks for any foul play. The score-board is constituted by blocks 6 and 7, while block 8 is meant for audio indication.

Block 9 controls the speed of the number displayed, the digital counter, the switch controller, and the foul play checker.

Clock pulse generator. The schematic diagram of digital number shooting game is shown in Fig. 2. The Schmitt trigger input NAND gates N1 and N2 of IC CD4093 (IC1) are used for producing clock pulses for random number generation. NAND gate N2, in combination with capacitor C2 and resistor R2, forms an oscillator to produce pulses. NAND gate N1 and its associated components comprising capacitor C1 and resistor R1 form another oscillator, whose frequency is one tenth the frequency of the former oscillator.

The pulses from the two oscillators are ANDed by NAND gate N2 to get random clock pulses. The output frequency from gate N2 (pin 4) varies due to phase difference between the two oscillator frequencies and the period of 'on' state of output from gate N3 (pin 10).

The prototype was carefully watched for consecutive 150 random numbers generated by IC2 (and displayed on DIS.1). No repetition in the order of the numbers was witnessed but, interestingly, at times, the same number was repeated thrice.

Random number generator and switch controller. The output of gate N2 (pin 4) is connected to pin 1 of decade counter/decoder/7-segment LED driver CD4033 (IC2). This IC counts and drives the 7-segment display DIS.1. The control pulse produced by gate N3 activates this

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:		
IC1	:	CD4093 Schmitt trigger quad two-input NAND gate
IC2, IC5, IC6	:	CD4033 decade counter/ decoder/7-segment LED display driver
IC3	:	CD4017 decade counter/ decoder
IC4	:	CD4027 dual JK flip-flop
T1, T2	:	BC547 npn silicon transistor
DIS.1-DIS.4	:	LT543 common-cathode, 7-segment LED display
Resistors (all ¼watt, ±5% carbon film, unless stated otherwise)		
R1,R2,R4,R6-R9	:	100-kilo-ohm
R3	:	470-kilo-ohm
R5	:	1-mega-ohm
R10-R12	:	1-kilo-ohm
VR1	:	1-mega-ohm pot
Capacitors:		
C1	:	0.1µF ceramic disk
C2	:	0.01µF ceramic disk
C3	:	0.001µF ceramic disk
C4	:	0.22µF ceramic disk
C5	:	100µF, 16V electrolytic
Miscellaneous:		
PZ1	:	Piezo buzzer, continuous type
S0-S10	:	Push-to-on switch
S11	:	On/Off switch
	:	DC IN socket

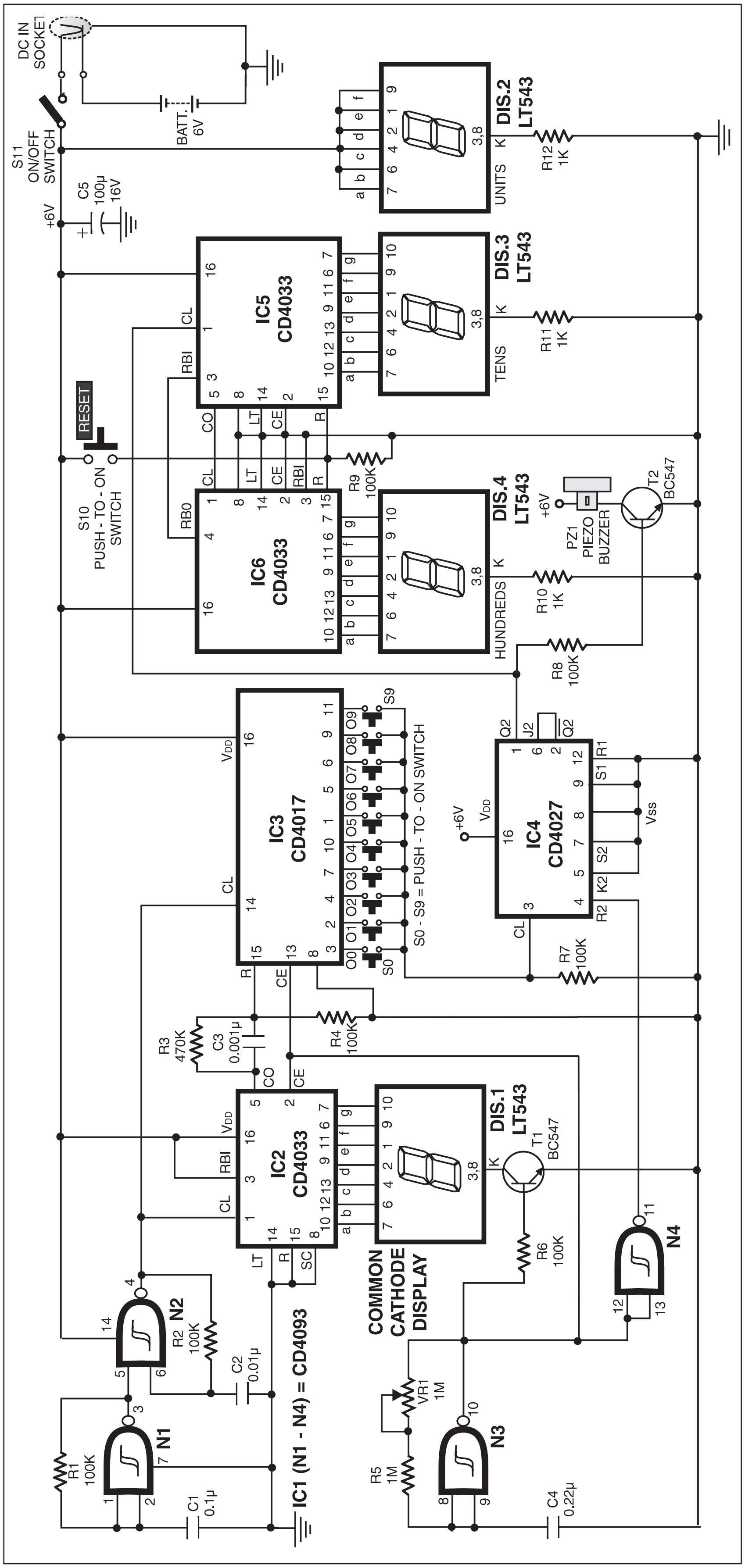

DC IN SOCKET
S11 ON/OFF SWITCH
+6V
C5 100µ 16V
BATT. 6V
DIS.2 LT543
UNITS
R12 1K
IC5 CD4033
DIS.3 LT543
TENS
R11 1K
RESET
S10 PUSH - TO - ON SWITCH
R9 100K
IC6 CD4033
DIS.4 LT543
HUNDREDS
R10 1K
PZ1 PIEZO BUZZER
T2 BC547
R8 100K
IC3 CD4017
S0 - S9 = PUSH - TO - ON SWITCH
IC4 CD4027
Vss
R7 100K
R3 470K
C3 0.001µ
R4 100K
IC2 CD4033
DIS.1 LT543
T1 BC547
COMMON CATHODE DISPLAY
R6 100K
N4
N2
R2 100K
C2 0.01µ
N1
R1 100K
C1 0.1µ
IC1 (N1 - N4) = CD4093
VR1 1M
R5 1M
N3
C4 0.22µ

Fig. 2: Circuit diagram of the digital number shooting game

display.

The clock pulses also go to decade counter/decoder IC CD4017 (IC3, pin 14). This IC controls the trigger switches. Ten push-to-on switches designated 'S0' through 'S9' are connected to the ten Q outputs (pins 3, 2, 4, 7, 10, 1, 5, 6, 9, and 11 respectively) of this IC.

These Q outputs become 'high' one by one sequentially with every clock pulse. IC2 and IC3 must count in unison, i.e. for the number shown in the display the corresponding Q output of IC3 should be 'high'. For the numbers 0 through 9, the Q0 through Q9 outputs of IC3 respectively must become 'high'. For this purpose, the 'carry out' (pin 5) of IC2 is connected to the reset pin 15 of IC3 through a differentiator circuit comprising resistor R4 and capacitor C3.

During the transition from 9 to 0, the state of 'CO' pin 5 changes from 'low' to 'high' and the differentiator circuit produces a sharp pulse to reset IC3. Thus, in every ten pulses, any timing difference, if present, is corrected. Resistor R3 (470k) connected in parallel to capacitor C3 quickly discharges it during the low state of 'CO' pin 5 of IC2.

Control pulse generator. NAND gate N3, along with its external components, forms another oscillator of very low frequency (of the order of 1 Hz to 4 Hz). Its frequency can be varied with the help of potentiometer VR1.

For proper functioning of CD4033 and CD4017, their clock-enable (CE) pins 2 and 13 respectively must be held 'low'. These pins are connected to the output of gate N3 (pin 10). If these pins are in logic high state, the ICs are disabled from receiving clock pulses, and the Q outputs of IC3 and segment drive outputs of IC2 retain their last state before the CE pins go 'high'.

The control clock pulses from gate N3 also go to the base of transistor BC547B (T1). This transistor pulls down the common cathode of 7-segment LED display DIS.1 to ground during the high level of control clock pulses, to display the number.

The control pulse also performs one more function. After being inverted by NAND gate N4, it resets JK flip-flop IC CD4027 (IC4), which serves as the foul play checker.

In nutshell, during the low state of output of gate N3, both IC2 and IC3 are

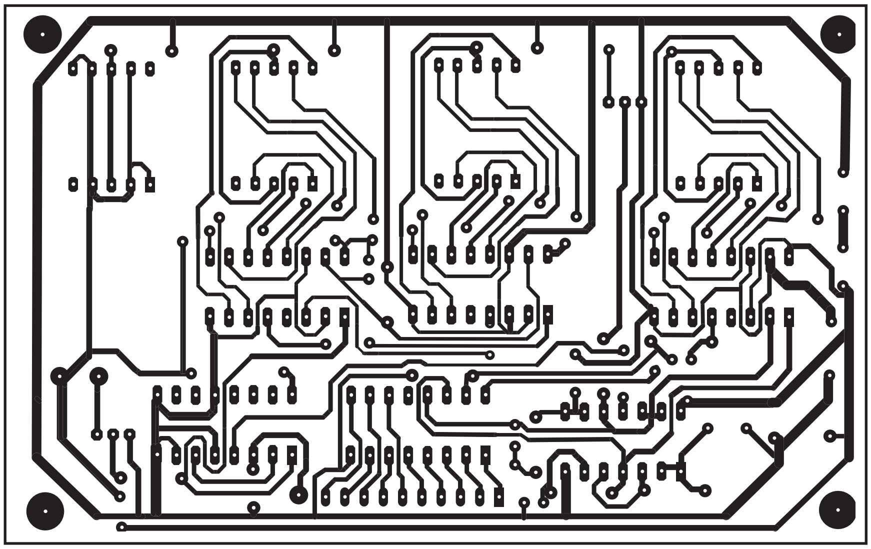


Fig. 3: Actual-size, single-sided PCB layout for the circuit

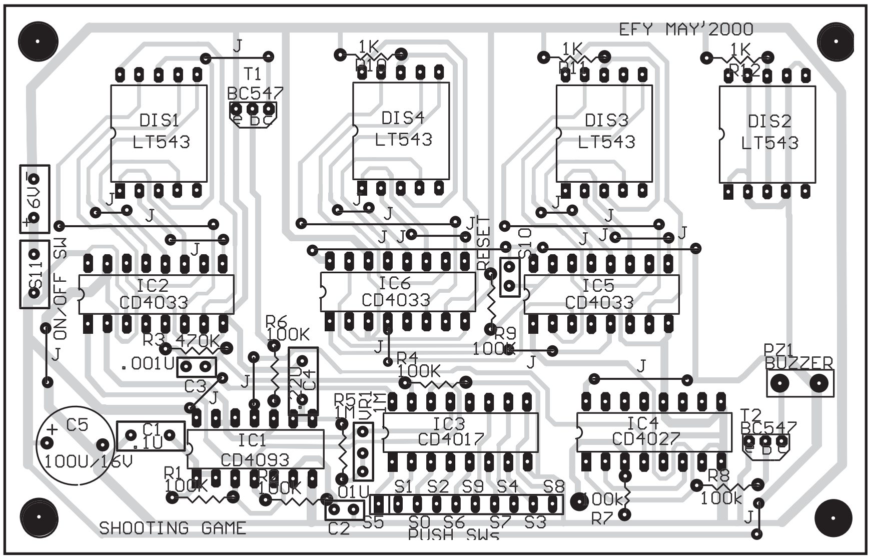


Fig. 4: Component layout for the PCB

enabled and the pulses are counted by IC2, but the number cannot be seen in the display because transistor T1 is reverse biased and hence cut-off.

When the output of gate N3 changes to high state, IC2 and IC3 are disabled. T1 gets its base voltage and pulls down the cathode of display DIS.1, and the display shows the number (which is a random number). At the same time, the Q output of IC3 corresponding to the displayed number goes 'high'.

Now, if one presses the correct key corresponding to the number shown in the display, before it vanishes, a high-going pulse is applied to clock input pin 3 of IC4. Its Q output (pin 1) becomes 'high', which advances the tens counter (IC5 of the scoreboard). It also biases transistor T2, to drive the piezo buzzer PZ1 for confirmation of the number shot.

Foul play checker/debouncer. Due to bouncing, the switches produce spurious pulses and lead to erratic operation. The player may press a switch more than once to score more, and may keep pressing a switch before the respective number is displayed. This is where the foul play checker/debouncer circuit comes into play.

For faithful operation, the circuit requirements are as follows:

1. The spurious pulses must be ignored.

2. The counter must advance only on the first pressing of the switch for a number and further pressing must be ignored.

3. The pressing of the switch should be effected only after the corresponding number is displayed.

To fulfil all these conditions, the dual JK flip-flop IC CD4027 (IC4) is employed and only one of the two flip-flops is used. The flip-flop is inhibited when both J and K inputs are low (requirements 1 and 2). The data on the J input is transferred to the Q output for a positive-going clock pulse only (requirement 3). The K input (pin 5) of IC CD4027 is grounded and J input (pin 6) is connected to $\overline{Q}$ output (pin 2). One terminal of all the ten switches is connected to clock input (pin 3) of IC4. Control pulses from gate N3 (pin 10) are inverted by gate N4 before it goes to reset pin 4.

During the low-level period of gate N3, output of gate N4 is 'high' and the flip-flop (IC4) is in the reset state. If any one of the ten switches is pressed, even though clock pulses are present at clock input (pin 3) of IC4, the Q output will not change, as this IC is in the reset state.

When the output of gate N3 is 'high', the output of gate N4 is 'low', which clears IC4 from the reset state. If the player presses the correct switch, a clock pulse is applied to the clock input (pin 3) of IC CD4027. The 'high' level data from J input is transferred to $\overline{Q}$ output (pin 1) of this IC and IC5 advances by one count, which means ten points (DIS.2 is always zero). Now Q output (pin 2) of IC4, which is connected to J input, goes 'low'. As both J and K inputs are at low level, IC4 is inhibited and further clock pulses to pin 3 of IC4 have no effect.

Score counter and scoreboard. This block comprises two decade counter/decoder/7-segment display driver ICs CD4033 (IC5, IC6), and three common cathode 7-segment LED displays (DIS.2 through DIS.4). The 'a' through 'f' segments of DIS.1, meant for units, are directly connected to positive supply rail and its cathode is connected to negative supply rail through a 1k (R12) current-limiting resistor. Thus it always shows zero.

The Q output (pin 1) of IC4 is connected to clock input (pin 1) of IC5, the tens counter. The carry-out (pin 5) of IC5 is connected to the clock input (pin 1) of IC6 for cascading hundreds counter. The CE (pin 2) and Lamp Test (pin 14) of both IC5 and IC6 are grounded, for proper functioning. Both resets (pin 15) are grounded through a 100k (R9) resistor and connected to positive supply, through reset switch S10.

Ripple blanking input (pin 3) of IC6 is grounded, so the leading zero to be displayed in DIS.4 will be blanked out. The ripple blanking output (pin 4) will be low while the number to be displayed is zero. Likewise, zero will be blanked out in display DIS.3, because RB0 of IC6 is connected to RB1 of IC5. So when reset switch S10 is depressed, the unit counter display shows only zero and the other two displays are blanked out.

The maximum score which can be displayed is 1000, after which it automatically resets to zero.

Sound-effect generator. For simplicity and compactness, a piezo buzzer (continuous type) is employed. When the Q output of IC4 goes high, after the correct switch is pressed, it forward biases transistor BC547B (T2) and drives the piezo buzzer. This produces a beep sound for confirmation of successful shooting of that number.

Construction

This circuit can be assembled on a ready-made PCB or strip board. However, a proper single-sided PCB for the circuit of Fig. 2 is shown in Fig. 3 and its component layout is shown in Fig. 4. For switches, push-to-on tactile or membrane switches can be used. For power supply, four pen-torch cells (AA3) can be used with a battery holder. DC IN socket is provided for connecting a battery eliminator for operating it on mains supply.

□

PC INTERFACED AUDIO PLAYBACK DEVICE: M-PLAYER

N.V. VENKATARAYALU AND M. SOMASUNDARAM

Sounds of various kinds have always fascinated human beings. Many devices have been invented for recording and playing back the sounds—from magnetic tapes to DVD (digital versatile disc), from Adlib cards to high-performance sound cards with 'surround sound' capability. For personal computers (PCs), there is a wide variety of such devices. A modern PC, generally, has a 'Sound Blaster' card installed in it. If your PC does not have a sound card, here is a low-cost audio playback circuit with bass, treble, and volume controls to create your own music player.

The playback device 'M-player' (i.e. media player) described here uses minimal hardware to achieve a moderately good-quality audio playback device. The software that accompanies the hardware is meant for a PC running under MS-DOS or a compatible operating system. This device can play a simple 8-bit PCM (pulse code modulation) wave file with some special effects. The PC is connected to the device through the PC parallel port.

Hardware

The circuit functions as an 8-bit mono player, i.e. the sound files (with .WAV extension) with sound quantised to eight bits or 256 levels can be played. In case of files with 16-bit quantisation, these are re-quantised as discussed under 'Software' subheading. Thus, only eight bits are sent to the card through the printer port.

Since there is no duplex communication necessary between the player card and the PC, it is sufficient to use the eight output data lines of the port 378H (pins 2 through 9 of 25-pin D-connector). This 8-bit digital output is converted into an analogue signal using DAC 0808 (IC1) from National Semiconductor.

The output current from the DAC varies with the input digital level (represented by bits D0 through D7), the reference voltage (V_{ref}), and the value of series resistor R1 connected to V_{ref} pin 14 of DAC0808 IC. The output current I_o (in mA) is given by the relationship:

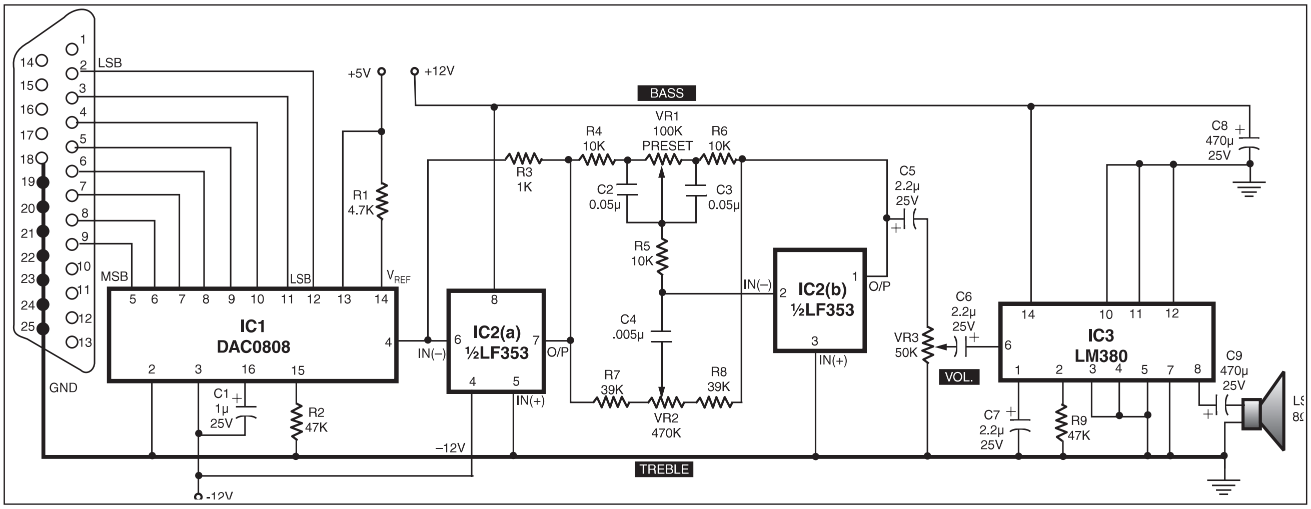
[illegible]

$$\frac{D3}{32}+\frac{D2}{64}+\frac{D1}{128}+\frac{D0}{256}\Bigg]$$

where V_{ref} is the reference voltage in volts and R1 is the resistance in kilo-ohms.

The output current from the DAC is converted into its corresponding voltage using a simple current-to-voltage converter wired around one part of the dual wideband JFET op-amp LF353. The output from IC2(a) is the required audio signal that has to be processed and amplified to feed the speaker. The part following the I-V converter is the bass- and treble-control circuit employing RC-type variable low-pass and high-pass filters connected to the input of audio amplifier built around the second op-amp inside LF353 [IC2(b)].

The frequency response of the filters can be varied using potentiometers VR1 and VR2. The low frequencies or bass can



1
2 LSB
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
MSB
LSB
GND
+5V
+12V
R1
4.7K
VREF
5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14
IC1
DAC0808
2 3 16 15
4
C1
1µ
25V
R2
47K
-12V
8
6
7
IN(–)
IC2(a)
½LF353
O/P
4 5
IN(+)
–12V
R3
1K
BASS
R4
10K
VR1
100K
PRESET
R6
10K
C2
0.05µ
C3
0.05µ
R5
10K
C4
.005µ
R7
39K
R8
39K
VR2
470K
TREBLE
IN(–)
2
IC2(b)
½LF353
1
O/P
3
IN(+)
C5
2.2µ
25V
VR3
50K
VOL.
C6
2.2µ
25V
14
10 11 12
6
IC3
LM380
1 2 3 4 5 7 8
C7
2.2µ
25V
R9
47K
C8
470µ
25V
C9
470µ
25V

Fig. 1: Circuit of M-player audio playback device

be cut or boosted with the help of potentiometer VR1. Similarly, high frequencies or treble can be cut or boosted with the help of potentiometer VR2. At low frequencies, capacitors C2, C3, and C4 act as open circuits and the effective feedback is through 10k resistors (R4, R5, and R6) and potentiometer VR1.

The audio amplifier IC2(b) acts as an inverting amplifier and the amplification (or attenuation) of the low-frequency bass signals depends on the value of potentiometer VR1. The frequency f1 at which C = C2 = C3 becomes effective is given by the equation:

[illegible]

At frequnecies higher than f2 (f>f2, high end of audio range), capacitors C2 and C3 overcome the effect of potentiometer VR1. As C2 and C3 behave as short, potentiometer VR1 has no effect on the output response. Now, the gain is controlled by treble potentiometer VR2. The frequency f2, below which treble potentiometer VR2 has no effect on the response, is given by the equation:

$$f2 = \frac{1}{2\pi \text{ x } VR2 \text{ x } C4} \text{ Hz}$$

The output of this module is sent to the final 2-watt audio power amplifier (LM380) stage through potentiometer VR3 which is used as the volume control. The power output of this module is fed to an 8-ohm speaker. The audio power amplifier is designed to give a gain of around 50.

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:		
IC1	-	DAC0808 8-bit D/A converter
IC2	-	LF353 JFET input wide-band op-amp
IC3	-	LM380, 2-watt audio amplifier
Resistors (all ¼watt, ±5% carbon film, unless stated otherwise)		
R1	-	4.7-kilo-ohm
R2, R9	-	47-kilo-ohm
R3	-	1-kilo-ohm
R4-R6	-	10-kilo-ohm
R7, R8	-	39-kilo-ohm
VR1	-	100-kilo-ohm potmeter
VR2	-	470-kilo-ohm potmeter
VR3	-	50-kilo-ohm potmeter
Capacitors:		
C1	-	1µF, 25V electrolytic
C2, C3	-	0.05µF ceramic disk
C4	-	0.005µF ceramic disk
C5-C7	-	2.2µF, 25V electrolytic
C8, C9	-	470µF, 25V electrolytic
Miscellaneous:		
	-	25-pin D connector (male)
	-	Loudspeaker 8-ohm, 2W
	-	Power supply: (a) +12V, 500mA
	-	(b) –12V, 100mA
	-	(c) +5V, 100mA

One can also use LM380 in various other configurations as per one's requirements. Another popular configuration is the 'bridge configuration'—in which two LM380s can be used to obtain larger power output with a gain of 300.

Parallel port

The output of the parallel port is TTL compatible. So, logic level 1 is indicated by +5V and logic level 0 by 0V. The current that one can sink and source varies from port to port. Most parallel ports can sink and source around 12 mA.

The software assumes 0x378 (378H) to be the base address of the parallel port to which the device is connected. Another possible base address is 0x278 (278H). It is advised to modify this address of the parallel port in the software program, after checking the available parallel port on your PC.

TABLE I
Relevant Details of Parallel Port

Pin No. (D-type 25)	Pin No. (centronics)	SPP signal	Direction in/out	Register
2	2	Data 0	Out	Data
3	3	Data 1	Out	Data
4	4	Data 2	Out	Data
5	5	Data 3	Out	Data
6	6	Data 4	Out	Data
7	7	Data 5	Out	Data
8	8	Data 6	Out	Data
9	9	Data 7	Out	Data
18 - 25	19-30	Ground	Gnd	

Actual-size PCB layout for audio playback circuit of Fig. 1 is given in Fig. 2 and its component layout in Fig. 3.

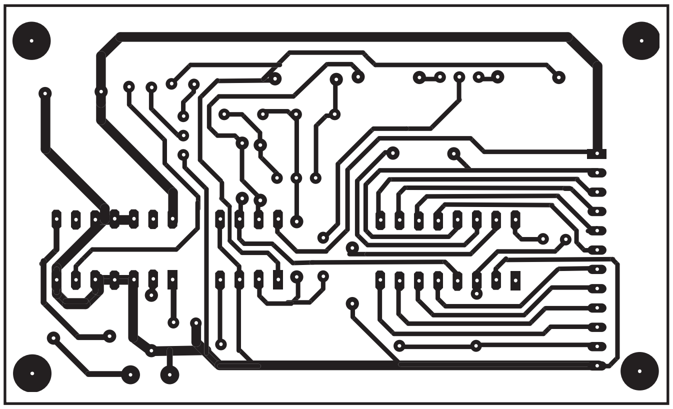


Fig. 2: Actual-size PCB layout for M-player

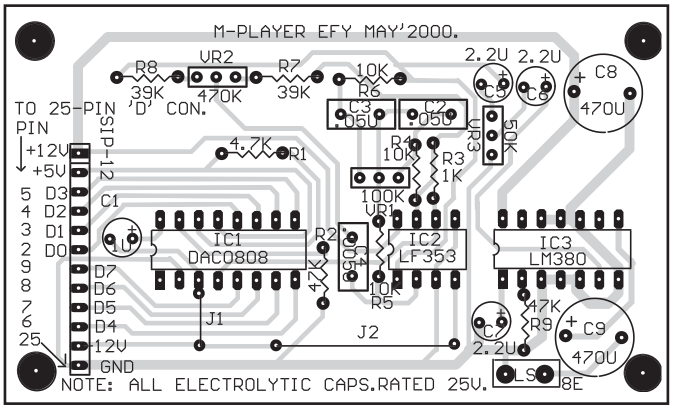


Fig. 3: Component layout for the PCB

Software

The software accompanying this construction project is written in Turbo C/C++ for DOS. It can be used to play simple 8-bit PCM wave files. 16-bit wave files are converted into 8-bit PCM data before proceeding.

Even stereo wave files can be played; but not the stereo way. Only one channel is chosen. Up to six-channel PCM data can be read and converted into mono 8-bit PCM data. This software is accompanied with a C_TUI-based interface.

The wave file format is probably the least undocumented sound format since there are different schemes with different number of chunks of related information in the file. Even the chunks can be of variable size. Therefore it is difficult to get documentation on all available chunks.

This software can be used only on PCM data with data chunk. Every wave file has some minimum chunks (see Table II). These chunks will be present in every

TABLE II
Wave File Format

From byte	Number of bytes	Information
RIFF chunk:		
0	4	Contains the characters 'RIFF'
4	4	Size of the RIFF chunk
WAVE chunk:		
0	4	Contains the characters 'WAVE'
4	Variable	The FORMAT chunk
The normal FORMAT chunk:		
0	4	Contains the characters 'fmt'
4	4	Size of the FORMAT chunk
8	2	Value specifying the scheme 1-PCM, 85-MPEG layer III
10	2	Number of channels 1-mono, 2-stereo, etc.
12	4	Number of samples per second. This gives us the playback rate.
16	4	Average number of bytes per second. This field is used to allocate buffers, etc.
20	2	Contains block alignment information.
22	Variable	This field contains format-specific data. For PCM files, this field is 2 bytes long

wave file. Then there are other chunks which are actually non-standard. In PCM itself, the above chunk may be followed either by DATA chunk or by LIST chunk which, in turn, has lots of sub-chunks. *(Any information obtained on these chunks by the readers may please be shared with the authors.)*

During playback, the speed with which the processor in the PC can execute the main loop is first studied using a dummy loop and thus the delay is adaptively varied with respect to the speed of target processor. This is one of the methods to achieve invariance of the playback speed over a wide range of processor speeds available.

The software can be used to play with the following effects:

- Play normally
- Play with a different playback rate, i.e. play it fast or slow
- Fade-in or fade-out the volume levels either linearly or exponentially
- Reverse the wave file and then play

The menu items can be selected using keyboard keys Alt+F for file, Alt+E for effects, and Alt+O for operation. Apart from the software, the hardware can be used to vary bass, treble, and volume for the wave file that is played. Thus, the hardware and software complement each other to provide a good music player. The software does not include mouse support.

Conclusion

We have presented a simple sound card to playback .wav files with bass and treble controls. Though the current design plays only mono files (stereo files are converted to mono), a stereo file player can be designed in a similar manner. The software can be modified to play audio files other than .wav files without any change in the hardware circuit. The encoding format of the other audio file types (like .ra, .mp3) is only to be known. With that, those files can be decoded and raw digital 8-bit data can finally be sent to the hardware device. The hardware device can even be permanently mounted inside the PC with all the power supplies (+12V, +5V, and –12V) tapped from the system's SMPS.

Note: *The complete source code consisting of Mplayer.cpp, Sounds.h, Globals.h, the executable file Mplayer.exe, and a sample wave file have been included in the CD (optional) accompanying Electronics Projects Vol. 21.*

MPLAYER.CPP

```
#include “Sounds.h”
void DisplayTip(char *string)
{
text_info tinf;
if(strlen(string)<75)
{
gettextinfo(&tinf);
textbackground(LIGHTGRAY);textcolor(RED);
gotoxy(2,25);
for(int i=0;i<75;i++) cprintf(“ ”);
gotoxy(2,25);
cprintf(string);
textattr(tinf.attribute);
gotoxy(tinf.curx,tinf.cury);
}
return;
}
void Window(int x1,int y1,int x2,int y2,char
                  *caption,int BackCol,int TextCol)
{
text_info tinfo;
int i,j;
gettextinfo(&tinfo);
textbackground(BackCol);textcolor(TextCol);
for(j=y1;j<=y2;j++){
gotoxy(x1,j);
for(i=x1;i<=x2;i++)
cprintf(“ ”);
}
gotoxy(x1+1,y1);
for(i=x1+1;i<=x2-1;i++)
cprintf(“%c”,205);
gotoxy(x1+1,y2);
for(i=x1+1;i<=x2-1;i++)
cprintf(“%c”,205);
for(j=y1+1;j<=y2-1;j++){
gotoxy(x1,j);
cprintf(“%c”,186);
gotoxy(x2,j);
cprintf(“%c”,186);
}
gotoxy(x1,y1);cprintf(“%c”,201);
gotoxy(x2,y1);cprintf(“%c”,187);
gotoxy(x1,y2);cprintf(“%c”,200);
gotoxy(x2,y2);cprintf(“%c”,188);
if(caption!=NULL){
textcolor(WHITE);
gotoxy(x1+2,y1);
cprintf(“%s”,caption);
}
textattr(tinfo.attribute);
return;
}
void DrawScreen(void)
{
textbackground(LIGHTGRAY);textcolor(BLAC
K);
clrscr();
Window(1,2,80,24,NULL,BLUE,WHITE);
gotoxy(1,1);cprintf(“ File Effects Operation”);
textcolor(RED);
gotoxy(3,1);cprintf(“F”);
gotoxy(12,1);cprintf(“E”);
gotoxy(24,1);cprintf(“O”);
textbackground(BLUE);textcolor(LIGHTBLUE);
gotoxy(3,10);cprintf(“ ”);
delay(75);
gotoxy(3,11);cprintf(“ ”);
delay(75);
gotoxy(3,12);cprintf(“ ”);
delay(75);
gotoxy(3,13);cprintf(“ ”);
delay(75);
gotoxy(3,14);cprintf(“ ”);
delay(75);
gotoxy(3,15);cprintf(“ ”);
delay(75);
gotoxy(3,16);cprintf(“ ”);
delay(75);
gotoxy(3,17);cprintf(“ ”);
return;
}
void MenuInitialise(void)
{
int i;
// The FILE menu option
Menu[MNU_FILE].nextMenu=MNU_EFFECT;
Menu[MNU_FILE].prevMenu=MNU_OPERA-
TION;
Menu[MNU_FILE].Child=FALSE;
Menu[MNU_FILE].num_items=4;
for(i=0;i<4;i++)
{
Menu[MNU_FILE].Enabled[i]=TRUE;
Menu[MNU_FILE].subMenu[i]=NONE;
Menu[MNU_FILE].String[i]=(char *)malloc(15);
Menu[MNU_FILE].Tip[i]=(char *)malloc(50);
Menu[MNU_FILE].OptionID[i]=1+i;
}
Menu[MNU_FILE].Enabled[1]=FALSE;
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_FILE].String[0][0]),“Open”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_FILE].String[1][0]),“Save”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_FILE].String[2][0]),“-”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_FILE].String[3][0]),“Exit”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_FILE].Tip[0][0]),“Open the *.wav file”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_FILE].Tip[1][0]),“Save as a *.wav file”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_FILE].Tip[2][0]),” “);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_FILE].Tip[3][0]),”Quit the program”);
Menu[MNU_FILE].AtX=2;Menu[MNU_FILE].AtY=2;
// The EFFECT menu option
Menu[MNU_EFFECT].nextMenu=MNU_OPERATION;
Menu[MNU_EFFECT].prevMenu=MNU_FILE;
Menu[MNU_EFFECT].Child=FALSE;
Menu[MNU_EFFECT].num_items=5;
for(i=0;i<5;i++)
{
Menu[MNU_EFFECT].Enabled[i]=FALSE;
Menu[MNU_EFFECT].subMenu[i]=NONE;
Menu[MNU_EFFECT].String[i]=(char*)malloc(15);
Menu[MNU_EFFECT].Tip[i]=(char *)malloc(50);
Menu[MNU_EFFECT].OptionID[i]=11+i;
}
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_EFFECT].String[0][0]),“Fade In”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_EFFECT].String[1][0]),“Fade Out”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_EFFECT].String[2][0]),“-”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_EFFECT].String[3][0]),“Reverse”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_EFFECT].String[4][0]),“Playback Rate”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_EFFECT].Tip[0][0]),“Reduce volume with increasing time”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_EFFECT].Tip[1][0]),“Increase volume with increasing time”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_EFFECT].Tip[2][0]),“ ”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_EFFECT].Tip[3][0]),“Reverse the wave file”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_EFFECT].Tip[4][0]),“Vary the Playnack Rate”);
Menu[MNU_EFFECT].subMenu[0]=MNU_FADEIN;
Menu[MNU_EFFECT].subMenu[1]=MNU_FADEOUT;
Menu[MNU_EFFECT].AtX=11;Menu[MNU_EFFECT].AtY=2;
// The OPERATION menu option
Menu[MNU_OPERATION].nextMenu=MNU_FILE;
Menu[MNU_OPERATION].prevMenu=MNU_EFFECT;
Menu[MNU_OPERATION].Child=FALSE;
Menu[MNU_OPERATION].num_items=3;
for(i=0;i<3;i++)
{
Menu[MNU_OPERATION].Enabled[i]=FALSE;
Menu[MNU_OPERATION].subMenu[i]=NONE;
Menu[MNU_OPERATION].String[i]=(char*)malloc(15);
Menu[MNU_OPERATION].Tip[i]=(char*)malloc(50);
Menu[MNU_OPERATION].OptionID[i]=21+i;}
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_OPERATION].String[0][0]),“Play”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_OPERATION].String[1][0]),“-”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_OPERATION].String[2][0]),“Record”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_OPERATION].Tip[0][0]),“Play the file that was opened”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_OPERATION].Tip[1][0]),“ “);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_OPERATION].Tip[2][0]),“Record sound through the microphone”);
Menu[MNU_OPERATION].AtX=23;Menu[MNU_OPERATION].AtY=2;
// The FADE-IN menu option
Menu[MNU_FADEIN].nextMenu=Menu[MNU_FADEIN].prevMenu=NONE;
Menu[MNU_FADEIN].Child=TRUE;
Menu[MNU_FADEIN].num_items=2;
for(i=0;i<2;i++)
{
Menu[MNU_FADEIN].Enabled[i]=FALSE;
Menu[MNU_FADEIN].subMenu[i]=NONE;
Menu[MNU_FADEIN].String[i]=(char *)malloc(15);
Menu[MNU_FADEIN].Tip[i]=(char *)malloc(50);
Menu[MNU_FADEIN].OptionID[i]=31+i;
}
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_FADEIN].String[0][0]),“Linear”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_FADEIN].String[1][0]),”Exponential”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_FADEIN].Tip[0][0]),“Apply Linear attenuation or amplification”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_FADEIN].Tip[1][0]),“Apply Exponential attenuation or amplification”);
Menu[MNU_FADEIN].AtX=33;Menu[MNU_FADEIN].AtY=2;
// The FADE-OUT menu option
Menu[MNU_FADEOUT].nextMenu=Menu[MNU_FADEOUT].prevMenu=NONE;
Menu[MNU_FADEOUT].Child=TRUE;
Menu[MNU_FADEOUT].num_items=2;
for(i=0;i<2;i++)
{
Menu[MNU_FADEOUT].Enabled[i]=FALSE;
Menu[MNU_FADEOUT].subMenu[i]=NONE;
Menu[MNU_FADEOUT].String[i]=(char *)malloc(15);
Menu[MNU_FADEOUT].Tip[i]=(char*)malloc(50);
Menu[MNU_FADEOUT].OptionID[i]=41+i;
}
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_FADEOUT].String[0][0]),“Linear”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_FADEOUT].String[1][0]),“Exponential”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_FADEOUT].Tip[0][0]),“Apply Linear attenuation or amplification”);
strcpy(&(Menu[MNU_FADEOUT].Tip[1][0]),“Apply Exponential attenuation or amplification”);
Menu[MNU_FADEOUT].AtX=33;Menu[MNU_FADEOUT].AtY=2;
}
void RemoveMenu(int MenuID)
{
int i,j;
textbackground(BLUE);textcolor(WHITE);
gotoxy(Menu[MenuID].AtX,Menu[MenuID].AtY);
for(i=0;i<30;i++) cprintf(“%c”,205);
for(i=1;i<=Menu[MenuID].num_items+2;i++)
{
gotoxy(Menu[MenuID].AtX,Menu[MenuID].AtY+i);for(j=0;j<30;j++) cprintf(“ ”);
}
return;
}
int ShowMenu(int MenuID)
{
MENU *menu;
int *subMenu;
int nextMenu, prevMenu;
char **String, **Tip;
int *OptionID;
BOOL *Enabled;
char IsChild;
int num_items;
int longLength,length;
int StartX,StartY;
int i,j;
int CurSelect=0,ch,RetVal;
menu=&(Menu[MenuID]);
num_items=menu->num_items;
String=menu->String;
nextMenu=menu->nextMenu;
prevMenu=menu->prevMenu;
subMenu=menu->subMenu;
IsChild=menu->Child;
OptionID=menu->OptionID;
Tip=menu->Tip;
Enabled=menu->Enabled;
StartX=menu->AtX;
StartY=menu->AtY;
longLength=strlen(String[0]);
if(subMenu[0]!=NULL) longLength+=3;
for(i=1;i<num_items;i++)
{
length=strlen(String[i]);
if(subMenu[i]!=NULL) length+=3;
if(length>longLength) longLength=length;
}
textbackground(LIGHTGRAY);textcolor(WHITE);
for(i=StartY;i<StartY+num_items+2;i++)
{
gotoxy(StartX,i);cprintf(“ ”);
gotoxy(StartX+longLength+5,i);cprintf(“ ”);
}
StartX++;
gotoxy(StartX,StartY);cprintf(“%c”,218);
for(i=0;i<longLength+2;i++) cprintf(“%c”,196);
cprintf(“%c”,191);
gotoxy(StartX,num_items+StartY+1);cprintf(“%c”,192);
for(i=0;i<longLength+2;i++) cprintf(“%c”,196);
cprintf(“%c”,217);
for(i=0;i<num_items;i++)
{
if(String[i][0]!=‘-’)
{
textcolor(WHITE);
gotoxy(StartX,StartY+i+1);cprintf(“%c ”,179);
if(Enabled[i])
textcolor(BLACK);
else
textcolor(BROWN);
gotoxy(StartX+2,StartY+i+1);
for(j=0;j<longLength+1;j++)
if(j<strlen(String[i]))
cprintf(“%c”,String[i][j]);
else
cprintf(“ ”);
textcolor(WHITE);
cprintf(“%c”,179);
}
else
{
textcolor(WHITE);
gotoxy(StartX,StartY+i+1);cprintf(“%c”,195);
for(j=0;j<longLength+2;j++) cprintf(“%c”,196);
cprintf(“%c”,180);
}
}
for(;;)
{
DisplayTip(Tip[CurSelect]);
textbackground(GREEN);
if(Enabled[CurSelect])
textcolor(BLACK);
else
textcolor(BROWN);
gotoxy(StartX+1,StartY+CurSelect+1);
cprintf(“ ”);
for(j=0;j<longLength+1;j++)
if(j<strlen(String[CurSelect]))
cprintf(“%c”,String[CurSelect][j]);
else
cprintf(“ ”);
ch=getch();
if(ch==0) ch=getch();
ch+=300;
switch(ch)
{
case ESCAPE:
RemoveMenu(MenuID);
return(-1);
case ENTER:
RemoveMenu(MenuID);
if(Enabled[CurSelect]==TRUE)
return(OptionID[CurSelect]);
else
return(-1);
case LEFT_ARROW:
if(IsChild==TRUE)
{
RemoveMenu(MenuID);
return(0);
}
else
{
if(prevMenu!=NONE)
{
RemoveMenu(MenuID);
return(ShowMenu(prevMenu));
}
}
break;
case RIGHT_ARROW:
if(subMenu[CurSelect]!=NONE)
{
RetVal=ShowMenu(subMenu[CurSelect]);
if(RetVal!=0)
{
RemoveMenu(MenuID);
return(RetVal);
}
}
else
{
if(nextMenu!=NONE)
{
RemoveMenu(MenuID);
return(ShowMenu(nextMenu));
}
}
break;
case DOWN_ARROW:
textbackground(LIGHTGRAY);
if(Enabled[CurSelect])
textcolor(BLACK);
else
textcolor(BROWN);
gotoxy(StartX+1,StartY+CurSelect+1);
cprintf(" ");
for(j=0;j<longLength+1;j++)
if(j<strlen(String[CurSelect]))
cprintf("%c",String[CurSelect][j]);
else
cprintf(" ");
CurSelect++;
if(CurSelect==num_items) CurSelect=0;
while(String[CurSelect][0]=='-')
{
if(CurSelect==num_items)
CurSelect=0;
else
CurSelect++;
}
break;
case UP_ARROW:
textbackground(LIGHTGRAY);
if(Enabled[CurSelect])
textcolor(BLACK);
else
textcolor(BROWN);
gotoxy(StartX+1,StartY+CurSelect+1);
cprintf(" ");
for(j=0;j<longLength+1;j++)
if(j<strlen(String[CurSelect]))
cprintf("%c",String[CurSelect][j]);
else
cprintf(" ");
CurSelect—;
if(CurSelect<0)          CurSelect=num_items-1;
while(String[CurSelect][0]=='-')
{
if(CurSelect<0)
CurSelect=num_items-1;
else
CurSelect—;
}
break;
}
}
}
void ButtonDisplay(int x1,int y1,char state
                                        char *caption)
{
text_info tinfo;
gettextinfo(&tinfo);
int i;
if(state==ENABLE_NOTACTIVE) textcolor
                                        (YELLOW);
if(state==ENABLE_ACTIVE) textcolor(WHITE);
if(state==DISABLE) textcolor(LIGHTGRAY);
textbackground(CYAN);
gotoxy(x1,y1);cprintf(" %s ",caption);
textbackground(LIGHTGRAY);textcolor(YELLOW);
cprintf("%c",220);
gotoxy(x1+1,y1+1);for(i=0;i<8;i++)cprintf("%c",223);
textattr(tinfo.attribute);
}
void ButtonPushed(int x1,int y1,char *caption)
{
text_info tinfo;
gettextinfo(&tinfo);
int i;
textbackground(LIGHTGRAY);textcolor(WHITE);
gotoxy(x1,y1);cprintf("          ");
gotoxy(x1,y1+1);cprintf("          ");
textbackground(CYAN);
gotoxy(x1+1,y1);cprintf(" %s ",caption);
delay(250);
gotoxy(x1,y1);cprintf(" %s ",caption);
textbackground(LIGHTGRAY);textcolor(YELLOW);
cprintf("%c",220);
gotoxy(x1,y1+1);cprintf("  ");for(i=0;i<8;i++)
                                 cprintf("%c",223);
textattr(tinfo.attribute);
}
BOOL DisplayDialog(char mode)
{
int Control=0,ch;
int x=29,y=5,i=0,N=0;
char TempStr[40];TempStr[0]=0;
switch(mode)
{
case FILE_OPEN:     Window(10,3,70,9,"Open
              File",LIGHTGRAY,YELLOW);break;
case FILE_SAVE:     Window(10,3,70,9,"Save
              File",LIGHTGRAY,YELLOW);break;
case PLAYBACK_RATE: Window(10,3,70,9,"
  Playback Rate",LIGHTGRAY,YELLOW);break;
}
ButtonDisplay(25,7,ENABLE_NOTACTIVE,"
                                   Ok  ");
ButtonDisplay(45,7,ENABLE_NOTACTIVE,"Cancel");
textbackground(LIGHTGRAY);textcolor(YELLOW);
gotoxy(13,5);
if(mode==FILE_OPEN || mode==FILE_SAVE)
{
cprintf("Enter Filename: ");
strcpy(TempStr,sFileName);
N=39;
}
else
{
cprintf("Playback Rate : ");
strcpy(TempStr,sPlayBackRate);
N=5;
}
textbackground(BLUE);textcolor(WHITE);
cprintf("                              ");
gotoxy(29,5);cprintf("%s",TempStr);
i=strlen(TempStr);
x+=i;
for(;;)
{
switch(Control)
{
case 0:
_setcursortype(_NORMALCURSOR);
textbackground(BLUE);textcolor(WHITE);
ButtonDisplay(45,7,ENABLE_NOTACTIVE,"Cancel");
gotoxy(x,y);
break;
case 1:
_setcursortype(_NOCURSOR);
ButtonDisplay(25,7,ENABLE_ACTIVE,"  Ok  ");
break;
case 2:
ButtonDisplay(45,7,ENABLE_ACTIVE,"Cancel");
ButtonDisplay(25,7,ENABLE_NOTACTIVE,"
                                   Ok  ");
break;
}
ch=getch();
if(ch==0) ch=getch()+300;
ch+=300;
switch(ch)
{
case TAB:
Control=(++Control)%3;
break;
case ESCAPE:
_setcursortype(_NOCURSOR);
ButtonPushed(45,7,"Cancel");
ch=1; Control=2;
break;
case ENTER:
_setcursortype(_NOCURSOR);
ButtonPushed(25,7,"  Ok  ");
ch=1;Control=1;
break;
case SPACE:
if(Control==2){_setcursortype(_NOCURSOR);
             ButtonPushed(45,7,"Cance;ch=1;}
if(Control==1){_setcursortype(_NOCURSOR);
            ButtonPushed(25,7,"  Ok  ");ch=1;}
break;
case BACK_SPACE:
if(Control==0 && i>0)
{
gotoxy(—x,y);
cprintf(" ");
i—;
TempStr[i]=0;
gotoxy(29,5);
cprintf("%s",TempStr);
}
break;
default:
ch-=300;
if(ch<300 && i<N)
{
TempStr[i++]=(char)ch;
TempStr[i]=0;
gotoxy(29,5);
cprintf("%s",TempStr);
x++;
}
break;
}
if(ch==1) break;
}
textbackground(BLUE);textcolor(WHITE);
for(ch=3;ch<=9;ch++)
}
gotoxy(10,ch);
for(i=10;i<=70;i++)
cprintf(" ");
}
if(Control==1)
{
if(mode==FILE_SAVE || mode==FILE_OPEN)
                    strcpy(sFileName,TempStr);
if(mode==PLAYBACK_RATE)
strcpy(sPlayBackRate,
                                     TempStr);
return(TRUE);
}
return(FALSE);
}
void SetEnvVariables(){}
void SaveFile(){}
void main()
```

```
{
int ch;
textbackground(BLACK);textcolor(LIGHTGRAY);
clrscr();
_setcursortype(_NOCURSOR);
DrawScreen();
MenuInitialise();
sFileName[0]=0;
strcpy(sPlayBackRate,”22400");
for(;;)
{
DisplayTip(“Ready”);
ch=getch();
if(ch==0) ch=getch();
ch+=300;
switch(ch)
{
case AltF:ch=ShowMenu(MNU_FILE);break;
case AltE:ch=ShowMenu(MNU_EFFECT);break;
case  AltO:ch=ShowMenu(MNU_OPERATION);
                                        break;
}
switch(ch)
{
case FILE_EXIT:
ch=AltX;
break;
case FILE_OPEN:
if(DisplayDialog(FILE_OPEN))
if(mOpen())
{
for(int i=0;i<5;i++)
Menu[MNU_EFFECT].Enabled[i]=TRUE;
Menu[MNU_OPERATION].Enabled[0]=TRUE;
for(i=0;i<2;i++)
{
Menu[MNU_FADEIN].Enabled[i]=TRUE;
Menu[MNU_FADEOUT].Enabled[i]=TRUE;
}
}
break;
case FILE_SAVE:
/*if(DisplayDialog(FILE_SAVE))mSave();*/
break;
case FADEIN_LINEAR:
FadeCommon(FADEIN,LINEAR);
break;
case FADEIN_EXP:
FadeCommon(FADEIN,EXPONENTIAL);
break;
case FADEOUT_LINEAR:
FadeCommon(FADEOUT,LINEAR);
break;
case FADEOUT_EXP:
FadeCommon(FADEOUT,EXPONENTIAL);
break;
case REVERSE:
ReverseWave();
break;
case PLAYBACK_RATE:
if(DisplayDialog(PLAYBACK_RATE)==FALSE)
SetPlayBackRate(0);
else
SetPlayBackRate(1);
break;
case PLAY:
mPlay();
break;
}
if(ch==AltX)
{
_setcursortype(_NORMALCURSOR);
textcolor(LIGHTGRAY);
textbackground(BLACK);
clrscr();
printf(“MPLAYER Ver.1.0\n”);
printf(“——————————\n”);
printf(“\tM.Somasundaram  -  msoms@vsnl.com\n
\tN.V.Venkatarayalu - v_rayalu@vsnl.com\n\n”);
break;
}
}
}
```

SOUNDS.H

```
#include “Globals.h”
////////// Playback Sounds //////////////
void mPlay(void)
{
FILE *fp;
unsigned char Sample;
clock_t t1;
long k=0,t=0,i=0;
fp=fopen(“test.aud”,“rb”);
t1=clock();
while(clock()-t1<18.2){
if(k<RateOfPlayBack){
fgetc(fp);
outp(0x37a,0);
if(feof(fp)) break;
t++;}
k++;}
i=k/(RateOfPlayBack+2000);
k=0;rewind(fp);
t1=clock();
while(clock()-t1<18.2){
if(k%i==0){
fgetc(fp);
outp(0x37a,0);
if(feof(fp)) break;
t++;
}
if(k>0) k=k;
k++;}
i=k/(RateOfPlayBack+2000);
k=0;t=0;rewind(fp);
while(feof(fp)==FALSE)
{
t1=clock();
if(k%i==0){
Sample=(unsigned char)fgetc(fp);
outp(DATA_OUT,Sample);
t++;}
k++;
}
fclose(fp);
outp(DATA_OUT,0);
}
////////////  Fade Common Function  ///////////////
void FadeCommon(char far InOrOut,char far Type)
{
FILE *fp, *fpt;
long double i;
long double step;
long double attn1;
fp=fopen(“test.aud”,“rb”);
fpt=fopen(“tmp.aud”,“wb”);
step=1.0/NoSamples;
if(InOrOut==FADEIN)
attn1=0;
else
{
attn1=1;
step=-step;
}
if(Type==LINEAR)
for(i=0.0;i<NoSamples;i++)
{
attn1+=step;
fputc(128+(unsigned char)((long double)(fgetc(fp)-
                                  128)*attn1),fpt);
}
else
for(i=0.0;i<NoSamples;i++)
{
attn1=exp(i*step);
fputc(128+(unsigned char)((long double)(fgetc(fp)-
                                  128)*attn1),fpt);
}
fclose(fpt);
fclose(fp);
unlink(“test.aud”);
rename(“tmp.aud”,”test.aud”);
}
////////////// Reverse Wave File //////////////
void ReverseWave(void)
{
FILE *fp, *fpt;
long double i;
fp=fopen(“test.aud”,“rb”);
fpt=fopen(“tmp.aud”,“wb”);
for(i=0.0;i<NoSamples;i++)
{
fseek(fp,-(long)i,SEEK_END);
fputc(fgetc(fp),fpt);
}
fclose(fpt);
fclose(fp);
unlink(“test.aud”);
rename(“tmp.aud”,”test.aud”);
}
////////////// Set Playback rate //////////////
void SetPlayBackRate(long rate)
{
if(rate<65535)
{
if(rate!=0)
{
rate=atol(sPlayBackRate);
RateOfPlayBack=rate;
}
ultoa(RateOfPlayBack,sPlayBackRate,10);
}
return;
}
/////// Open a wav file and set parameters ///////
BOOL mOpen(void)
{
void DisplayTip(char *);
int TYPE_OF_OUTPUT=MONO_OUTPUT;
FILE *fsource, *fdest;
fsource=fopen(sFileName,“rb”);
if(fsource!=NULL)
{
fdest=fopen(“test.aud”,“wb”);
RIFF riff;
WAVE wave;
DATA data;
fread(&riff,sizeof(riff),1,fsource);
fread(&wave,sizeof(wave),1,fsource);
fseek(fsource,20+wave.fmt.fLen,SEEK_SET);
fread(&data,sizeof(data),1,fsource);
if(strncmpi(data.dID,“FACT”,4)==0){
fseek(fsource,data.dLen,SEEK_CUR);
fread(&data,sizeof(data),1,fsource);
}
if(!(strncmpi(riff.rID,“RIFF”,4)==0  &&  strncmpi
(wave.wID,“WAVE”,4)==0 && strncmpi(data.dID,
“DATA”,4)==0  &&  strncmpi(wave.fmt.fID,“fmt
”,4)==0  &&  wave.fmt.wFormatTag==PCM  &&
                     wave.fmt.nChannels<=6))
{
printf(“\a”);
DisplayTip(“Unrecognizable  Format  -Not  PCM
                                       8-bit.”);
return FALSE;
}
unsigned long dlen=data.dLen;
char array[6];int arrayi[6];
int nChannels=wave.fmt.nChannels;
SamplingFrequency=PBR=RateOfPlayBack=
                     wave.fmt.nSamplesPerSec;
ultoa(RateOfPlayBack,sPlayBackRate,10);
NoSamples=(dlen/nChannels)*TYPE_OF_
                   OUTPUT;dlen=NoSamples;
BOOL bits16=FALSE;
if(wave.fmt.FormatSpecific==BITS16)  bits16=
                                       TRUE;
if(bits16==FALSE)
while(dlen>0)
{
fread(array,1,nChannels,fsource);
switch(nChannels)
{
case 1: fputc((int)array[0],fdest);
if(TYPE_OF_OUTPUT==STEREO_OUTPUT)
fputc((int)array[0],fdest);
break;
case 2:     fputc((int)array[0],fdest);
if(TYPE_OF_OUTPUT==STEREO_OUTPUT)
fputc((int)array[1],fdest);
break;
case 3:     fputc((int)array[0],fdest);
if(TYPE_OF_OUTPUT==STEREO_OUTPUT)
fputc((int)array[1],fdest);
break;
case 4:     fputc((int)array[0],fdest);
if(TYPE_OF_OUTPUT==STEREO_OUTPUT)
fputc((int)array[2],fdest);
break;
case 6:     fputc((int)array[1],fdest);
if(TYPE_OF_OUTPUT==STEREO_OUTPUT)
fputc((int)array[4],fdest);
break;
}
dlen—;
}
else
{
NoSamples/=2;
dlen=NoSamples;
while(dlen>0)
{
fread(arrayi,2,nChannels,fsource);
switch(nChannels)
{
case 1: array[0]=(char)((long)(arrayi[0]+32768)*255/65535);
fputc((int)array[0],fdest);
if(TYPE_OF_OUTPUT==STEREO_OUTPUT)
fputc((int)array[0],fdest);
break;
case 2:     array[0]=(char)((long)(arrayi[0]+32768)*255/65535);
fputc((int)array[0],fdest);
if(TYPE_OF_OUTPUT==STEREO_OUTPUT)
{
array[1]=(char)((long)(arrayi[1]+32768)*255/65535);
fputc((int)array[1],fdest);
}
break;
case 3:     array[0]=(char)((long)(arrayi[0]+32768)*255/65535);
fputc((int)array[0],fdest);
if(TYPE_OF_OUTPUT==STEREO_OUTPUT)
{
array[1]=(char)((long)(arrayi[1]+32768)*255/65535);
fputc((int)array[1],fdest);
}
break;
case 4:     array[0]=(char)((long)(arrayi[0]+32768)*255/65535);
fputc((int)array[0],fdest);
if(TYPE_OF_OUTPUT==STEREO_OUTPUT)
{
array[2]=(char)((long)(arrayi[2]+32768)*255/65535);
fputc((int)array[2],fdest);
}
break;
case 6: array[1]=(char)((long)(arrayi[1]+32768)*255/65535);
fputc((int)array[1],fdest);
if(TYPE_OF_OUTPUT==STEREO_OUTPUT)
{
array[4]=(char)((long)(arrayi[4]+32768)*255/65535);
fputc((int)array[4],fdest);
}
break;
}
dlen—;
}
}
fclose(fsource);
fclose(fdest);
return TRUE;
}
else
{
printf(“\a”);
DisplayTip(“The file is not available!”);
return FALSE;
}
}
```

GLOBALS.H

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <dos.h>
#include <process.h>
#include <conio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <math.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <time.h>
#define FALSE 0
#define TRUE 1
#define ENABLE_ACTIVE 1
#define ENABLE_NOTACTIVE 2
#define DISABLE 0
#define NONE -1
#define MNU_FILE 0
#define MNU_EFFECT 1
#define MNU_OPERATION 2
#define MNU_FADEIN 3
#define MNU_FADEOUT 4
#define FILE_OPEN 1
#define FILE_SAVE 2
#define FILE_EXIT 4
#define FADEIN_LINEAR 31
#define FADEIN_EXP 32
#define FADEOUT_LINEAR 41
#define FADEOUT_EXP 42
#define REVERSE 14
#define PLAYBACK_RATE 15
#define PLAY 21
#define RECORD 22
#define AltE 318
#define AltF 333
#define AltO 324
#define AltX 345
#define LEFT_ARROW 375
#define RIGHT_ARROW 377
#define UP_ARROW 372
#define DOWN_ARROW 380
#define ESCAPE 327
#define ENTER 313
#define SPACE 332
#define BACK_SPACE 308
#define TAB 309
#define PCM 1
#define IN 0
#define OUT 1
#define LINEAR 0
#define EXPONENTIAL 1
#define FADEIN 0
#define FADEOUT 1
#define DATA_OUT  0x378
#define BITS16 16
#define BITS8 8
#define STEREO_OUTPUT 2
#define MONO_OUTPUT 1
typedef char BOOL;
typedef struct{
char rID[4];
unsigned long rLen;
}RIFF;
typedef struct{
char fID[4];
unsigned long fLen;
unsigned int wFormatTag;
unsigned int nChannels;
unsigned long nSamplesPerSec;
unsigned long nAvgBytesPerSec;
unsigned int nBlockAlign;
unsigned int FormatSpecific;
}FORMATCHUNK;
typedef struct{
char wID[4];
FORMATCHUNK fmt;
}WAVE;
typedef struct{
char dID[4];
unsigned long dLen;
}DATA;
struct MENU
{           int subMenu[10];
char *Tip[10];
char *String[10];
int OptionID[10];
BOOL Enabled[10];
int num_items;
char Child;
int AtX,AtY;
int nextMenu;
int prevMenu;
} Menu[5];
long RateOfPlayBack=15000,PBR;
long double NoSamples=76455;
double SamplingFrequency=44000;
char sFileName[40];
char sPlayBackRate[6];
```

❑

PORTABLE OZONE GENERATOR

K PADMANABHAN, S ANANTHI AND KIRIT PATEL

This article is dedicated to the good health of EFY readers in the year 2000 and beyond. It describes an ozone generator for portable (and portable!) use.

Ozone gas is now-a-days used for treatment of drinking water, disinfection, and air-purification. What one requires is a small and handy unit to be plugged into mains to get ozonated air at suitable pressure flowing out from a tube It can then be let into environment or bubbled through water or any other polluted liquid. But the gadget must be completely safe to work with.

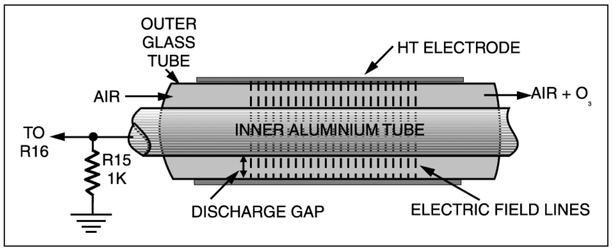

OUTER GLASS TUBE
HT ELECTRODE
AIR
AIR + O_3
TO R16
INNER ALUMINIUM TUBE
R15 1K
DISCHARGE GAP
ELECTRIC FIELD LINES

Fig. 1: Airflow through cylindrical space of discharge tube

Ozone generators invariably make use of a discharge tube to which a high electric field is applied so as to break down the oxygen present in the air. This phenomenon occurs at or near a field strength of 25 kV/cm, and the resulting discharge that takes place is known as corona. The corona has a light bluish glow. It is in this corona field that oxygen becomes ozone (O3).

Ozone has tendency to revert back to its original form in about 10-20 minutes, in the atmosphere. Therefore, it is necessary in any ozone application to generate ozone as and when requied for use since it cannot be kept stored the way chlorine is stored (in cylinders). Chlorine is used in our cities to disinfect drinking water supply. It is highly carcinogenic because when it comes into contact with remnants of pesticides in our foodstuff

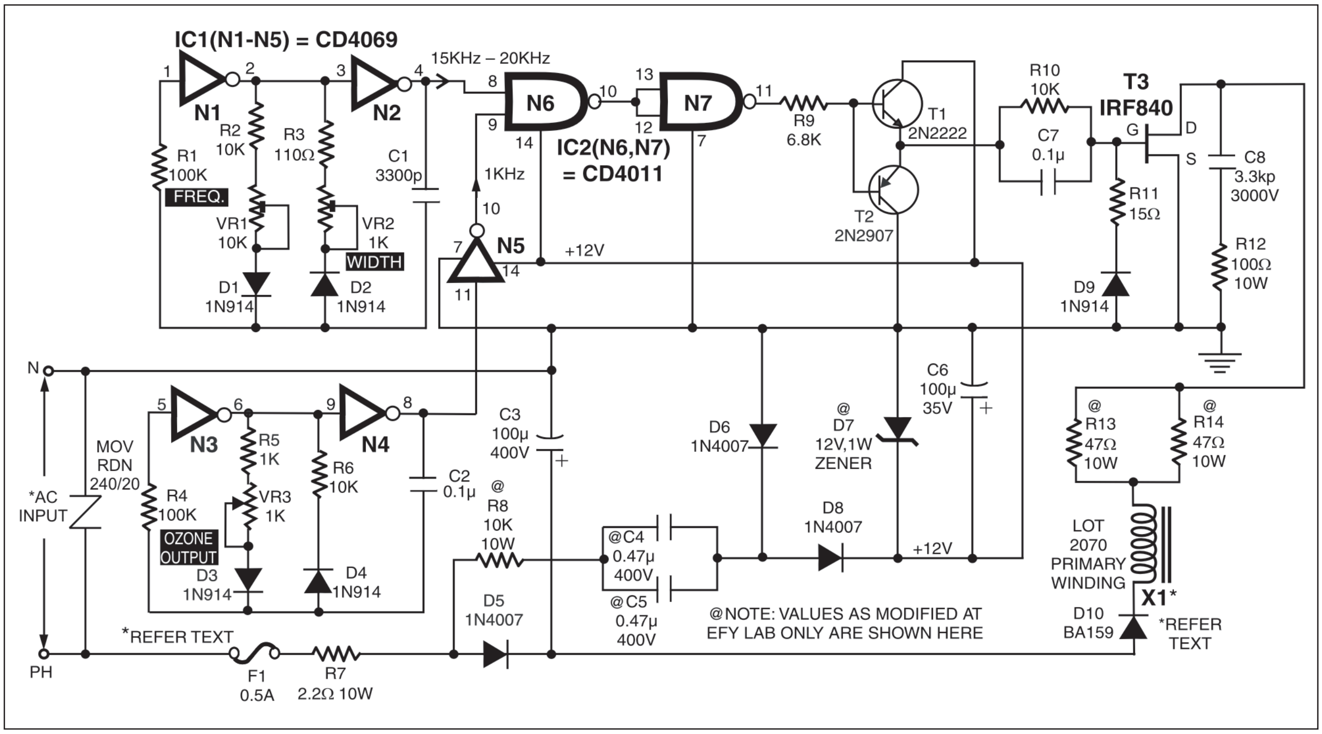

IC1(N1-N5) = CD4069
N1
N2
R1 100K
FREQ.
R2 10K
R3 110Ω
VR1 10K
VR2 1K
WIDTH
D1 1N914
D2 1N914
C1 3300p
15KHz – 20KHz
N6
N7
IC2(N6,N7) = CD4011
1KHz
N5
+12V
R9 6.8K
T1 2N2222
T2 2N2907
R10 10K
C7 0.1µ
T3 IRF840
G
D
S
R11 15Ω
D9 1N914
C8 3.3kp 3000V
R12 100Ω 10W
N
PH
*AC INPUT
MOV RDN 240/20
N3
N4
R4 100K
OZONE OUTPUT
R5 1K
VR3 1K
R6 10K
D3 1N914
D4 1N914
C2 0.1µ
C3 100µ 400V
@ R8 10K 10W
D5 1N4007
@C4 0.47µ 400V
@C5 0.47µ 400V
D6 1N4007
@ D7 12V,1W ZENER
D8 1N4007
C6 100µ 35V
+12V
@ R13 47Ω 10W
@ R14 47Ω 10W
LOT 2070 PRIMARY WINDING
X1*
D10 BA159
*REFER TEXT
*REFER TEXT
F1 0.5A
R7 2.2Ω 10W
@NOTE: VALUES AS MODIFIED AT EFY LAB ONLY ARE SHOWN HERE

Fig. 2: Schematic diagram of portable ozone generator

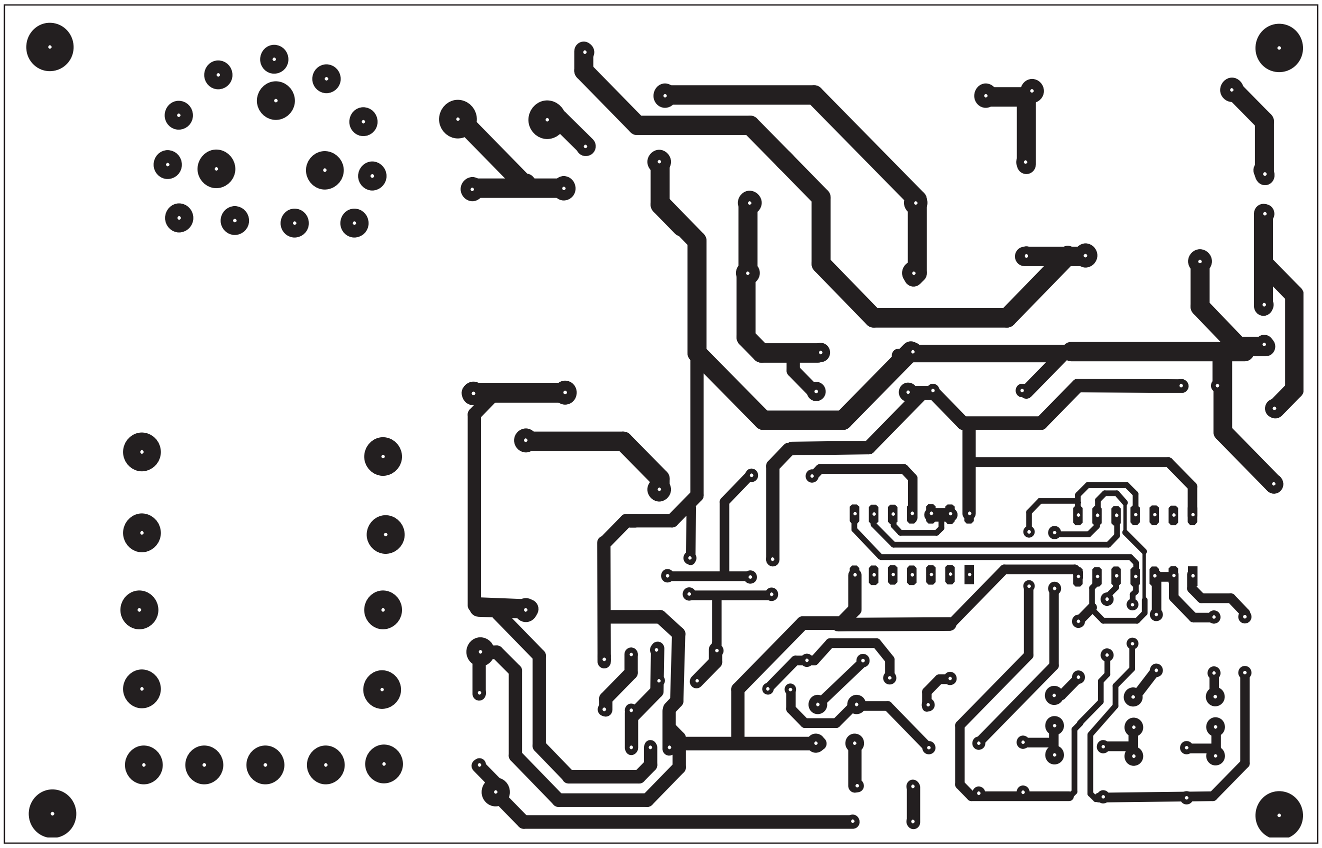


Fig. 3: Actual-size, single-sided PCB layout

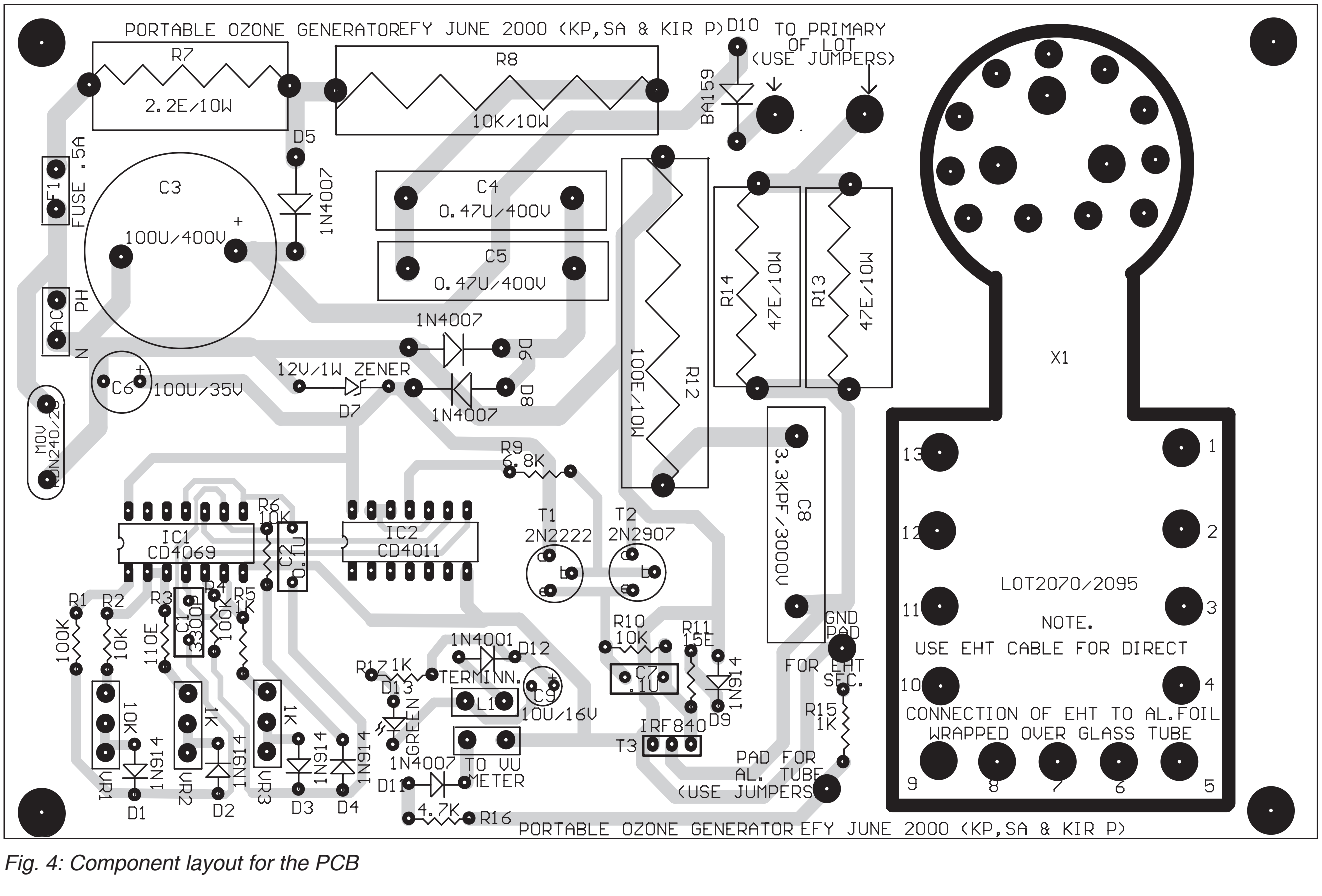

PORTABLE OZONE GENERATOR EFY JUNE 2000 (KP, SA & KIR P)
R7
2.2E/10W
R8
10K/10W
D10
BA159
TO PRIMARY OF LOT (USE JUMPERS)
D5
1N4007
F1
FUSE .5A
C3
100U/400V
C4
0.47U/400V
C5
0.47U/400V
AC
PH
N
1N4007
D6
C6
100U/35V
12V/1W ZENER
D7
D8
1N4007
MOV RDN240/20
R12
100E/10W
R14
47E/10W
R13
47E/10W
X1
R9
6.8K
C8
3.3KPF/3000V
IC1
CD4069
R6
10K
C2
0.1U
IC2
CD4011
T1
2N2222
T2
2N2907
R1
100K
R2
10K
R3
110E
C1
330P
R4
100K
R5
1K
VR1
10K
VR2
1K
VR3
1K
1N914
D1
1N914
D2
1N914
D3
1N914
D4
R17 1K
D13
GREEN
1N4001
D12
TERMINN.
L1
C9
10U/16V
1N4007
D11
TO VU METER
4.7K
R16
R10
10K
R11
15E
C7
.1U
1N914
D9
IRF840
T3
GND PAD
FOR EHT SEC.
R15
1K
PAD FOR AL. TUBE (USE JUMPERS)
LOT2070/2095
NOTE.
USE EHT CABLE FOR DIRECT
CONNECTION OF EHT TO AL.FOIL
WRAPPED OVER GLASS TUBE
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
PORTABLE OZONE GENERATOR EFY JUNE 2000 (KP, SA & KIR P)

Fig. 4: Component layout for the PCB

(vegetables), it generate halomethanes, which are carcinogenic. That is why, ozone is used today in preference to chlorine.

Complete disinfection of water, in any impure form, is realised with an ozone content of 4 mg/litre. Ozone generator presented here has a capacity of producing 10 mg/minute of ozone combined with atmospheric air. This unit can treat five litres of impure water in just two minutes.

The discharge tube is supplied air from an air-group, which is built into the unit. The unit produces ozonated air at a pressure head of 15-20 cm of water via its outlet. So the exit tube can be let into water containers with water up to a level of 10-15 cm.

Another advantage of this unit is that it is light in weight (less than a kilogram) and carries a very simple control and a microammeter showing the ozone concentration. It employs a high voltage of over 5 kV at a high frequency of 15 kHz to 20 kHz, which would not cause a lethal shock. Shock voltages are not cause a lethal shock. Shock voltages are not dangerous at these high frequencies, while at 50 Hz these high voltages are quite dangerous.

Commercial ozone generators make use of mains 50Hz frequency and are thus very dangerous while assembling. Extreme care is required to be exercised by the user while diagnosing any problem with such apparatus. Ozone generator at the higher frequencies used here is more efficient and silent in its discharge. One can easily assemble this portable ozone generator in a plastic breadbox (used for storing one full bread), which is all insulated(with no exposed metal parts).

The air pump used in this project is an aquarium pump. This pump works on mains and has a 50Hz vibrator attached to a rubber bellows that provides a pulsating airflows. This air flows through the cylindrical space of discharge tube as shown in Fig.1. The discharge tube outlet gives ozonated air.

The circuit as shown in Fig.2 generates a controlled high-frequency AC voltage of above 5 kV. The circuit has been designed such that all components used in the circuit are economical and freely available from TV spares shops.

The single-sided, actual-size PCB layout for the complete circuit and its component layout are shown in Figs 3 and 4 respectively. The entire assembly of the unit-including the air pump, discharge tube, circuit board, and the fuse-can be comfortably fitted within the breadbox, as shown in Fig.8. Because of this compact packaging, no mains transformer (which is generally heavy) is employed. The unit should not be touched after its assembly in the breadbox, nor should its lid be opened after plugging into the mains.

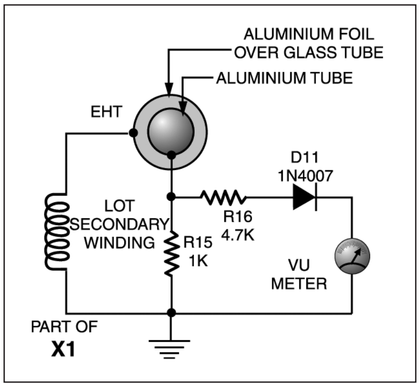


Fig. 5: Metering circuit

Lab note: During practical testing of the circuit at EFY Lab, an autotransformer for stepping down the mains voltage to about 120V AC had to be used to avoid build-up of excessively high voltage—greater than 30 kV peak. At AC input voltage greater than 160V (RMS), overheating of resistors (parallel combination of resistors R13 and R14) in series with the primary of EHT winding was also noticed.

The circuit

Pulse generator. A simple pulse generator is realised using two CMOS integrated circuits. The CD4069 is a hex buffer, while CD4011 is a quad NAND gate. Two of the 4069 gates are used to generate 15-20 kHz pulses. The frequency of this oscillator can be varied by 10-Kilo-ohm preset VR1 on the board. The width of the pulse can also be adjusted using preset VR2, but it is left at 33 per cent duty cycle. The circuit uses an RC (resistance-capacitance) feedback for generation of the square-wave oscillations. The 330pF capacitor C1 used here charges during one-half cycle through the 110-ohm resistor R3 and the 1-kilo-ohm width-setting variable resistor VR2. During the other half, capacitor C1 discharges through 10k resistor R2 and the adjustable-frequency preset VR1. Diodes D1 and D2 differentiate between the two half cycles.

Note: In Fig. 2, the line joining resistor R1 to D1, D2, and the 3,300pF capacitor C1 represents a joint only and is not ground.

The second oscillator, shown in Fig. 2, also uses the gates from same IC CD4069. It is, however, wired using 0.1uF capacitor C2, instead of the 330pF used in the former oscillator. The 1k potmeter VR3 in the circuit is for ozone output control. This control is brought out, as shown in Fig. 8, for slightly varying the ozone output. This second oscillator works at around 2 kHz. Therefore when the outputs of the two oscillators are combined using the NAND gate N6 of CD4011 (IC2) and inverted by gate N7, one gets a modulated output of high and low frequencies. Such an excitation of the discharge tube has been found to be very efficient and less heat-producing as compared to a plain high-frequency or a plain low-frequency excitation.

The output pulse train from pin 11 of the CD4011 gate N7, which is of the same polarity after the second inversion (first inversion takes place in gate N6), is sent through the pair of complementary transistors T1 and T2 (2N2222 and 2N2907, respectively). These two buffer the signal for giving adequate charging current to drive the gate capacitance of MOSFETs during the leading edges of the square wave.

The 15-ohm resistor R11 and switching diode D9 (1N914) are needed to prevent any negative signal input to the power MOSFET IRF840 gate. The power MOSFET is a boon to switch-mode circuit operation. It looks like the 5V regulator 7805 in TO-220 package, with which everyone is familiar. It needs a small aluminium heat-sink

The drain of the MOSFET is connected in series with a 33-ohm, 10-watt wirewound resistor (replaced by EFY Lab with 2 x 47-ohm, 10W resistors R13 and R14, in parallel). It is then connected to EHT primary winding of the ferrite core line output transformer (LOT)—also referred to as EHT transformer. Switching diode BA159 is also placed in series with the primary, as shown in Fig. 2. The supply is the rectified DC voltage, which is derived form the mains voltage directly. During testing at EFY Lab, the mains voltage was stepped down to 120V AC as mentioned earlier.) An RC series network comprising 33kpF (3000V rating) capacitor C8 and 100-ohm (10W) resistor R12 is placed across drain-source terminal of the MOSFET. The source terminal of the MOSFET is directly grounded.

Low-voltage supply. The ICs 4069 and 4011, and transistors T1 and T2, require a low voltage of around 12V. A separate 12V, 250mA transformer could also be used with a rectifier bridge and filter capacitor to derive the necessary voltage. But, in this compact design, the same is derived from mains using a capacitor and diode pair. The mains supply, through the series limiting resistor of 82-ohm, 1W (replaced at EFY Lab, with a 10-kilo-ohm, 10W resistor R8) sends a current via 0.47uF, 400V polyester capacitor replaced at EFY Lab with two such capacitors C4 and C5 in parallel) and diode D8 to change 100uF capacitor C6 during positive half cycle. Zener diode D7, with breakdown voltage of 12V, limits the voltage across capacitor C6 to 12V. Diode D6 provides an easy path during negative half cycle of the AC input. The stable 12V DC supply developed across capacitor C6 is used for the ICs and transistors 2N2222 and 2N2907.

Ferrite-core transformer. The ferrite core transformer used here is the commonly available B&W television transformer, known as LOT (line output transformer). AT2070 type used in the circuit has a high-voltage winding for the EHT of the picture tube. This EHT is connected to the electrode (aluminium foil) of the ozone discharge tube.

The LOT used should be two-limb type, i.e, the low-voltage windings should be on the left limb of the ferrite core, and the EHT winding (primary and secondary), which is generally epoxy potted, on the right limb. The LOT should have an external EHT diode and not an internally wired EHT diode, as is common in colour television LOTs. The reason being that only AC voltage is needed here.

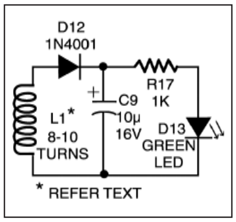


Fig. 6: LED indicator circuit

Further, it is necessary to remove any coupling between the two limbs, which may be present in the LOT windings. A connection from the left limb to the right limb is used to increase the mutual coupling. In the circuit presented here that coupling leads to over-currents in the event of any discharge tube sparking, thereby damaging the IRF840 instantly. It is therefore necessary to cut off the connection linking the two limb windings before installation. Preferably, a 1,00-ohm, 2W resistor may be wired in the place of this cut, if an improved performance of ozone generation is desired.

Lab. note. During testing of EFY Lab, transformer stamped as LOT 2070 obtained from the market was found to be single limbed and could generate about 34kV peak voltage at 120V AC input. Therefore a double-limbed Leader brand transformer 2095 was procured and used after removal of the encased TV20 rectifier diode, in a manner exactly as described by the authors. This transformer could produce about 30kV peak with AC input of 120V. The corona discharge across EHT secondary was prominent with an air-gap of up to 125 cm. At only 80V AC input to the circuit, 100pA space current was measured using the metering circuit described below.

The metering circuit (Fig. 5). This employs a simple low-cost 100uA meter used as VU-meter in audio amplifiers and is freely available. Either the edge-mounting type or the plain type may be used. It has a clear front plastic case of 25 sq. cm which is easily mounted on the front side of the plastic box, with a suitable small cut made in the box with drill and fret saw.

The meter has a top which can be easily removed and replaced, as it is snug fit. Removal of the meter top exposes the meter scale, which can be redrawn in per cent of 0-1 gm/hour O3.

The meter shows the discharge current through the ozone-generating tube The earth side of the discharge tube (aluminium tube) is connected through a 1-kilo-ohm, 1W resistor to ground. The EHT wire is connected to the electrode (aluminium foil) on top of the glass tube The 1-kilo-ohm resistor develops a voltage in approximate proportion to the ozone that would have been generated. A series combination of 4.7-kilo0-ohm resistor and a diode (1N4001) supply current to the meter coil.

LED indicator (Fig. 6). The indicator LED on panel gets its current through a single turn wound on the top limb of the ferrite transformer. The current is rectified by a 1N4003 diode and filtered by a 10uF, 16V capacitor which supplies the current through 1-kilo-ohm series resistor to the LED. The glowing of the LED indicates that the circuit is working.

Lab. Note: At EFY Lab, about eight turns of insulated wire around top limb of LOT were used.

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:	
IC1 (N1-N5)	CD4069 hex inverter
IC2 (N6-N7)	CD4011 quad 2-input Nand gate
T1	2N2222 np transistor
T2	2N2907 pnp transistor
T3	IRF840 n-channel MOSFET
D1-D4, D9	1N914 detector diode
D5-D6, D8, D11	1N4007 rectifier diode
D10	BA159 switching diode
D7	12V, 1W zener
D12	1N4001 rectifier diode
D13	Green LED
Resistors (all ¼watt, ±5% carbon film, unless stated otherwise)	
R1, R4	100-kilo-ohm
R2, R6, R10	10-kilo-ohm
R3	110-ohm
R5, R15, R17	1-kilo-ohm
R7	2.2-ohm, 10 watt fusible resistor
R8	10-kilo-ohm, 10-watt
R9	6.8-kilo-ohm
R11	15-ohm
R12	100-ohm, 10-watt
R13, R14	47-ohm, 10-watt fusible resistor
R16	4.7-kilo-ohm
VR1	10-kilo-ohm preset
VR2	1-kilo-ohm preset
VR3	1-kilo-ohm potmeter
Capacitors:	
C1	3300pF ceramic disk
C2, C7	0.1uF ceramic disk
C3	100p, 400V electrolytic
C4, C5	0.47uF, 400V polyster
C6	100uF, 35V electrolytic
C8	3.3 kpF, 300V polyster/mica
C9	10u, 16V electrolytic
Miscellaneous:	
X1	LOT 2070 EHT transformer (without EHT diode) or Leader brand LOT 2095 (diode to be removed)
	Al tube, length=20cm, diameter=1cm
	Glass tube, length = 17cm, diameter=1.2cm
	HT electrode - Aluminium full
	M-seal, small packet
	Teflon tape, two rols
	Cork, two numbers
	VU meter
	Short glass tube
	1.5cm length, dia=5 mm, 2 numbers
	Flexible polythene pipe 5mm diameterm, one metre length
	Aquarium pump
F1	Fuse, 500mA

AC input. The AC mains supply is at 230V AC and has a fuse of 500 mA in series. A switch can be wired in series with the same, though the same is not shown in the circuit here. (Please note that at EFY, 120V AC input was used as mentioned earlier.)

Testing

Prior to operation of the circuit board for ozone generation, it is required to test the circuit properly. This can be done as follows:

1. The low-voltage pulse generation part has to be tested first. For this, in place of the mains-derived 12-volt supply, a separate 12V supply, derived using an external 12-0-12 volts, 1-amp transformer, and a 7812 voltage regulator, can be used. The two oscillators should have frequencies in the specified range and the presets should be able to adjust them over the range mentioned. Otherwise, slight alteration of resistor values may be needed. The 3300pF capacitor used should be of good ceramic or polyester type, with a rating of 100V or more.

2. Then, using a CRO, the pulse train should be observed at the junction of two bipolar transistors. Next, MOSFET IRF 840 is connected in the circuit.

3. Now apply 12V supply to the end of the LOT winding, in place of the mains rectified 200V DC, as shown in Fig. 2. For testing, one is not required to use 230V directly at all. The same 12V, or the unregulated 12V prior to the 7812 regulator, can be connected. In Fig. 2, the BA159 anode is shown connected to the mains rectified supply at the positive terminal of the 100uF, 400V electrolytic capacitor. But, for the present, connect the unregulated 12V (may be 16V or slightly more) to the circuit at the anode of BA159.

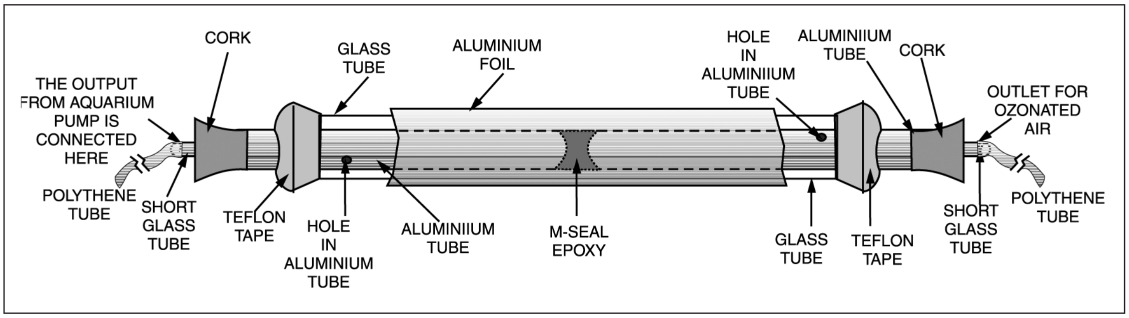


Fig. 7: Construction details of discharge tube

4. After switching 'on' the supply, observe the voltage on the EHT winding, which comes from the LOT, on a DC multimeter kept at its maximum range (say, 500 or 1,000V DC). The meter should show a deflection of above 500V.

5. The presets in the circuit can be adjusted to tune the ferrite transformer, for this voltage to be a maximum. Then, adjust the 1-kilo-ohm potentiometer VR3 so that it shows the possibility of varying the voltage over a limited range, above a threshold value.

6. Now, the 12V transformer supply can be disconnected. The 12V low-voltage generation part has to be separately tested. For this, remove the connection to the LOT from the MOSFET. Also remove the CMOS ICs from sockets. Then, on the PCB, one can easily check for zener voltage of 12V. If this voltage is less than 12 volts, adjust the value of 82-ohm series resistor to a lesser value, say, 68-ohm.

Lab. note. At EFY, this part of the circuit has been modified, and it is possible to get correct 12V output at AC input voltage of 120 volts. Only the modified circuit is included in Fig. 2.

The circuit will ordinarily work even at 200-volt mains, but not below that. The mains input can go up to 240V, but not more.

Lab note. During testing it was observed that fusible resistors R13 and R14, rated 10W, got red-hot if voltage was increased beyond 160 V AC.

Construction of the discharge tube *(Fig. 7).* A simple method for constructing the discharge tube is presented here, which is suitable for any hobbyist.An aluminium tube of 20cm length and about 1cm diameter is taken. Antenna scrap tube can be used, provided the same does not have kinks, bends, or burrs. Fig. 7 shows the construction of the discharge tube. This aluminium tube is blocked on the inside with a small amount of M-seal compound, so that no air can pass directly through its middle hole.

M-seal comes in a pack of two parts. The sealing compound is prepared as and when required, by taking equal quantities of the two and mixing them together throughly. One of the compounds is black and the other is of cream colour. The two are taken, each about 1 cc, and then mixed well. This mixture is inserted into the tube with a pencil and spread to attach to the inside wall of the aluminium tube, blocking any air path. Then, two side holes of 2mm diameter are made on the tube at the two ends, about 3 cm from each end. These holes can be on the opposite faces of the aluminium tube.

To provide the discharge gap, a thin walled glass tube, commonly used as chemistry test tube, is required. It should have an inner diameter about 1.2-1.5 mm greater than that of the aluminium tube, i.e., if a 10mm outer dia aluminium tube is taken, a glass tube of 11.5 mm inner diameter should be used. This will ensure the best performance with an air gap of 0.75 mm all around. If the gap is 0.6 mm, it is still better, but then the metal tube should be extremely perfect.

The glass tube is cut such that it covers the length of the aluminium tube, except for about 1.5 cm at each end. Thus, if a 20cm long aluminium tube is taken, the glass tube will be 17 cm long. The metal tube should be able to go freely in it. Now, the glass tube may be rotated over a gas burner to soften the ends of the tube. It should now be made chamfered on to the metal tube, such that, at the edges, the glass tube fits the metal tube with no gap. Still, the glass tube should be able to slide over the aluminium tube.

After the glass tube is so positioned over the metal tube, the ends of the glass tube are taped using Teflon tape. The tube assembly, with the glass envelope taped, is held at its edge, leaving about 15 cm free at either end, and clamped to the wall of the plastic box, as shown in Fig. 8. Clamps meant for TV antennae, which are made of plastic mouldings, can be used for this purpose.

Preparation of the hot electrode. The hot electrode, to which a voltage greater than 6,000 volts is applied at high frequency, is made by closely wrapping plain aluminium foil around the outer side of the glass tube. The foil is wrapped leaving 1 cm uncovered area on either ends of the tube. The foil is to be taped for tightness on the outer glass, using cellulose tape, and a piece of Teflon-insulated wire connected to the aluminium foil brought out. This wire is connected to the EHT lead from the LOT on the circuit board.

Assembling the unit. The unit is easy to assemble. First, the circuit board is fixed on the bottom of the box with plastic bushes and screws. If screws are not needed externally, the bushes can be pasted on to the box. Then, clamps are fixed for discharge tube. Polythene tubes (transparent plastic) are fitted to the glass tube ends.

At the bottom of box, the air pump, with its outer plastic casing removed, is fixed to the bottom with a screw. The inside of the diaphragm pump is shown in Fig. 8. The casing of the pump is not needed for two reasons: to save space needed for fixing it within the bread box, and the vibrator part is now accessible. A small plastic sheet is fixed by applying glue (Araldite) to the vibrating armature, so that it serves as a simple fan for the inside. The mains supply is connected to the PCB in parallel with the supply to the air-pump. But now this connection is removed and only the pump is made to work.

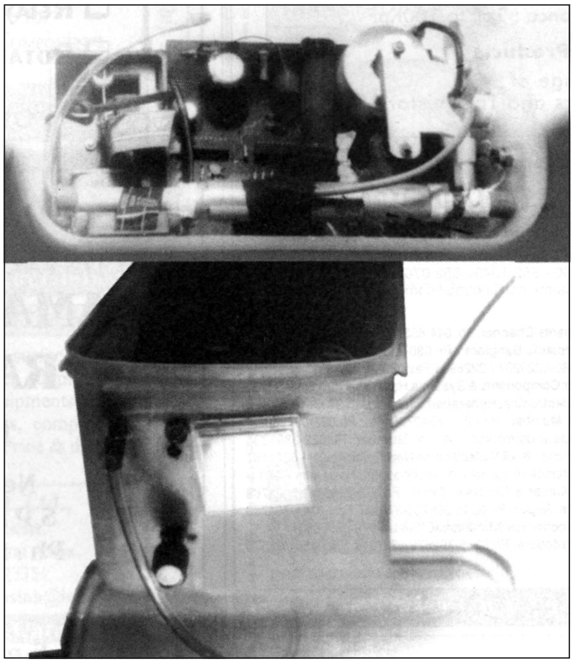


Fig. 8: Photograph of author's prototype

The end of the aquarium air-pump, which produces air under pressure, is connected by a s short length of tube to the corked glass tube of the discharge tube assembly. The other end of the tube is fixed to another similar polythene tube of adequate length (say, one metre).

Now, after allowing the air-pump to work, one must check whether there is adequate draft of air through the tube connected to the air-pump, without any leakage. Any air leakage prior to tube entry or through the Teflon tape seals, or through the inner metal tube, can be easily detected with figers or soap bubble test. The leaks have to be plugged and all air that comes out of the pump should go through the annular gap of the discharge path and exit through the outlet tube.

After this check, the meter connection is made from the board's 1-kilo-ohm shunt discharge resistor R15, with series diode D11 and current limiting resistor R16. The meter is fixed, as stated earlier, to the front small edge of the box, which also accommodates the LED and ozone output control potmeter. The LED is wired along with diode D12, resistor R17, and capacitor C9 as shown in Fig. 6.

The lid, on the outside, may be pasted with the warning label: "DANGER—DO NOT OPEN WHEN IN USE".

After the whole assembly is checked and mains supply is given, one can watch the meter reading and green LED on the panel. The glowing LED indicates that the circuit, along with LOT, is working and the meter shows that there is a discharge. The sound of the air-pump will be heard of course, but one can also hear the hissing corona sound distinctly. If lights are 'off', a blue glow may also be seen on watching from the end of the glass. A smell like that of rotten fish from the tube indicates presence of ozone. The meter reading needs calibration now.

Calibration

There are two ways to do the calibration. One is by using an ozone gas analyser, which is an expensive instrument. So, the other method, which is economical, is described here.

Potassium iodide (KI) solution is converted to iodine gas by ozone. Taken a known quantity of KI solution and bubble the ozonated air from ozone generator through it, for a definite time (one minute). The free liberated iodine can be estimated by titration experiment with thiosulphate. Thus, by knowing how much iodine has been liberated, one can find how much ozone has been absorbed in the solution by quantitative analysis. This gives the gas output form the tube in mg/litre. The gas output can be found by finding the time taken to replace the 1 litre of water by the bubbling gas. After estimating the output of the unit, marks are made on the meter. This is a prototype marking which can be followed in other units of similar design.

Usage

The unit can be used where a 230V AC mains supply outlet is available. The ozone generated can be let into air or bubbled through the solution or water being treated using ceramic diffusers (available from aquarium equipment shops). The time rating of this unit is very short. Sine there is no fan employed for cooling, both the discharge tube and circuit board transistor may quickly heat up. The tested rating at ambient temperature of 25°C is 5 minutes.. This time is sufficient for all the applications described below.

Lab note: *The circuit could be continuously kept 'on' with reduced AC input input of 120V AC after changing some of the component values, including LOT, at EFY Lab. The changed components/values have been incorporated into the final circuit shown in Fig. 2. Since higher AC voltage (greater than 20 kV) was available, we could increase the separation between the aluminium and glass tubes appreciably.*

1. Water disinfection. The impure water can be disinfected by bubbling ozone through it for a time so that estimated 4 mg/litre is dissolved.

2. Air purification. You can purify the air of your room by letting out ozonated air upward into it for five minutes, with a fan running.

3. Mosquito repulsion. Same as above, but please shut the windows soon after switching 'off' the ozone generator. This operation is to be done in the morning to drive away the mosquitoes and in the early evening at around 5 pm to prevent them from coming in. The operation may be repeated at midnight when malaria mosquitoes normally attack.

4. Bleaching. The stains of ink on clothes can be bleached by applying ozone gas. On bubbling ozone into the diluted ink contained in a test tube, the water becomes clear within a short time.

5. Pollutant treatment. Ozone in large quantities can be used for treating polluted water in industry, along with bacterial treatment. The BOD (biological oxygen demand) can be brought down to 30 with ozone only.

6. Mouth washing. You may ozonate 200 cc of water and use it for gargling.

7. Vegetable cleaning. Only ozonated water should be used for cleaning vegetables like cabbage, tomatoes, and carrot. Chlorinated water is harmful.

8. Skin wound healing. An exposure to the ozone gas quickly heals skin wounds and rashes. You may apply ozonated olive oil to speed up healing.

There are may other uses of ozone which one can try. The gas should not, however, be inhaled directly, continuously. □

Readers queries:

□ I would like the authors to clarify the following points, which are not covered in the article:

1. On which terminal of the LOT (2070/2095) are the primary wires terminated by jumpers, i.e. which pins are connected to D10 and R13/R14 (parallel combination)?

2. Though EHT pin of the secondary is connected to the outer aluminium foil on discharge tube, what is the EHT pin number and where is the ground pad for aluminium tube to be connected (using the jumpers)?

3. What is the total power consumption of the unit at full capacity?

4. What is the air-pump capacity in litres/minute to get the ozone output of 4 mg/litre, as stated in the article?

5. Since I will be using the ozone unit of the project from 230V AC mains, what changes are required in the circuit (Fig.2), like in the values of R7, R8, C4, C5, etc. Using 120V-150V source is not possible, as the use of 120V AC will require a separate auto-transformer.

6. There is likely to be heavy electrical interference with TV and even a PC (since the main supply is same) when the corona discharge takes place. Is it possible to suppress it effectively? EHT capacitors are available up to 20kV rating, but they cost Rs 750 to Rs 800 and hence are uneconomical to use. Kindly suggest some alternative method to reduce interference.

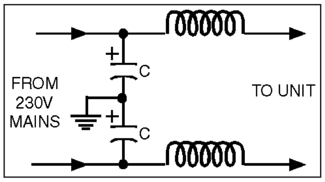


Fig. 1: Simple LC circuit for mains feed

P.P. Damkevala
Industrial Electrical & Electronics
Mumbai

□ I need a few clarifications regarding the ozone generator:

1. What is the AC voltage to be connected to the circuit? Is it 230V AC or 120V AC?

2. Can I use a stainless steel pipe instead of an aluminium pipe?

3. What should be the thickness of the glass?

M. Selwyn
Doha (Qatar)

□ 1. Please explain how to remove EHT diode from the EHT transformer supplied by Kits'n'Spares.

2. As per the text, the portable ozonator can work at 120V continuously for four hours, but during trial we observed that it is not working at 120V, and needs 220V to work. However, within 5 to 10 minutes of operation, resistances R8, R14, R15 get heated. Please clarify.

3. The ozone control potentiometer (VR3) is not found to be working. When we increased VR3 for ozone control, some smoke came out from the kit and the circuit stopped working.

We want the ozonator to work continuously for 4-6 hours as per the text.

EFY

The author, Prof. K. Padmanabhan, replies:

1. In my (original) circuit using LOT 2070, pins 2 and 6 were wired to the resistor (substituted in Fig. 2 by a parallel combination of R13 and R14) and diode (BA159) respectively. For 2095 LOT, EFY may offer its comments.

2. The EHT cable comes out of the LOT as a red high-voltage wire. The aluminium tube is grounded to pin 6 of LOT 2070.

3. The full power may be 10W to 15W.

4. The air pump gives 3-4 litres of flow per minute. We used aquarium air pump.

5. With 230V mains, the rating of the unit is just below 3 minutes. R8 was 82-ohm/1W (in original circuit); R7 is the same 2.2-ohm; for R13 and R14 we employed a single 33-ohm/20W wire-wound resistor. Our original circuit was meant for 220V operation.

6. Interference was not noticed in the colour TV kept in the same room. If interference is noticed, one may use a simple LC circuit for mains feed, as shown in Fig. 1 here. Inductor L is wired on a small ferrite core with 8 turns of 22SWG wire, and each capacitor (C) can be rated 0.01µF, 600V.

Regarding M. Selwyn's query:

1. Power is 230V only.

2. Yes, stainless steel is better.

3. Glass thickness should be small, say 2mm.

EFY: *We had to modify the original circuit slightly as the components (wire-wound resistors) were getting overheated. The modified circuit was tested at EFY Lab for four hours continuously without any such sign and proper ozone output was observed as indicated by the space current. The transformer stamped '2070' procured by us from local market did not have a separate EHT (only) potted limb. We could get a Leader brand dual-limb EHT transformer (No. 2095) which gave the rated EHT at about 160V AC itself and not at 230V AC. Please note that in most CTVs the horizontal output section feeding the EHT primary employs a supply voltage of 110 to 165V DC. It is therefore obvious that in most EHT transformers the peak primary voltage is limited to 160V (at line frequency of 15,625 Hz).*

In Leader brand transformer '2095' used by us, the EHT section (potted) had 3 wires (red, blue and white) going to some of the pins on the base, which we desoldered from the base and used them as explained below, after checking the resistance amongst them:

(a) Blue and red (EHT primary, 25 to 30 ohm). This primary pair was connected to cathode of D10 (BA159) and R13/R14 (loose-end in Fig. 4 in the article, i.e. component layout) respectively.

(b) White and the EHT diode bottom end (EHT secondary - resistance measured was a few kilo-ohms). White wire is meant to be connected to EHT ground pad, i.e. one end of R15 (1 kilo-ohm) marked EHT SEC/GND PAD in Fig. 4. Junction of R15

and R16 goes to inner aluminum tube in Fig. 1. EHT diode bottom end is the EHT (AC). It is connected directly to aluminium foil (HT electrode in Fig. 1). Please note that to gain access to bottom end of EHT diode one has to carefully remove it after cutting insulation with hacksaw blade.

If you want to use a ready-made EHT transformer with 230V AC, you have to use a step-down auto-transformer to get 110V to 160V AC. Else you may have to approach a willing manufacturer to double the EHT primary turns to operate it with 230V AC.

EFY: *The EHT transformer has been supplied (by the manufacturer to Kits'n'Spares without EHT diode, at our behest) after doubling the primary (tunable) windings. Since the primary windings have been doubled in this EHT transformer, the circuit is capable of working with 230V AC primary directly.*

Earlier we had tested the assembled kit for just about an hour without any problem. However, when we tested the circuit again, after receipt of your letter, the same worked satisfactorily for half an hour and then suddenly resistors R13 and R14 started smoking. The problem was analysed and it was concluded that the reflected noise spikes from EHT secondary to primary due to higher level of corona discharge, was reaching the MOSFET via the AC mains line, which eventually damaged the MOSFET (shorting its drain and source) with consequent burning of the mentioned components.

This problem was solved by connecting a MOV (metal oxide varistor RDN 240/20 of ELPRO make) across the input AC 230V terminals. We are forwarding the required quantity of varistors @one per kit to help you rectify the problem. With this modification we have run the ozone generator for over five hours with improved performance and no problem whatever.

As regards the ozone control potmeter, it varies the low frequency modulating stage duty cycle and does have a limited effect. If you want to have a higher span, you may replace VR3 (1k) with a 2-kilo-ohm multiturn wirewound potmeter (cermet for smoother control). The damage, in your case, could have occurred due to make-break of the wiper contact during its manipulation.

Kindly note that the projects published in EFY do not necessarily mean that the circuits can be straightaway adopted for production/commercial use without further improvement or development. These are in fact meant for hobbyists/electronic enthusiasts. If these are to be commercially exploited, some amount of development effort may be necessary.

CONFERENCE TIMER

K. UDHAYA KUMARAN VU3GTH

During a conference where speakers are allotted different time slots for completing their speech, it is essential to use a suitable conference timer which could be programmed for the given time slot. It should not only provide indication as to when the allotted time slot. It should not only provide indication as to when the allotted time is over, but also about the leftover time at any given instant.

The conference timer presented here is designed to incorporate all such facilities and is expected to prove quite useful. This conference timer is just a 2-digit (minutes) countdown timer which can be preset from 01 minute to 99 minutes. The time duration is preset using tactile switches S2 and S3, with slide switch S1 in 'set' position. Once the time duration is preset, the same is displayed in 7-segment LED displays (DIS.1 and DIS.2).

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:		
IC1, IC2	-	CD4511B, BCD-to-7-segment latch/decoder/driver
IC3, IC4	-	CD4510 BCD up/down counter
IC5	-	4060B 14-stage counter/ divider/oscillator
T1-T4	-	BC547 npn transistor
T5	-	SL100 npn transistor
D1-D8	-	1N4007 rectifier diode
D9	-	5.1V zener
LED1	-	Red LED
DIS1, DIS2	-	LTS543 common-cathode display
Resistors (all ¼watt, ±5% carbon film, unless stated otherwise)		
R1-R14	-	470-ohm
R15	-	22-kilo-ohm
R16-R18 R24, R28, R31	-	100-kilo-ohm
R19	-	100 ohm
R20, R27	-	33-kilo-ohm
R21	-	470-kilo-ohm
R22, R23	-	10-kilo-ohm
R25, R30	-	2.2-kilo-ohm
R26	-	470-ohm
R29	-	22-kilo-ohm
VR1	-	50-kilo-ohm preset
VR2	-	1-mega-ohm preset
Capacitors:		
C1	-	180pF ceramic disk
C2	-	47pF, 25V electrolytic
C3	-	0.01uF ceramic disk
C4	-	0.047uF ceramic disk
Miscellaneous:		
RL1	-	Relay 6V, 100-ohm
S1	-	DPDT slide switch
S2, S3	-	Tactile switch
S4	-	SPDT slide switch PB
PB	-	Piezo buzzer

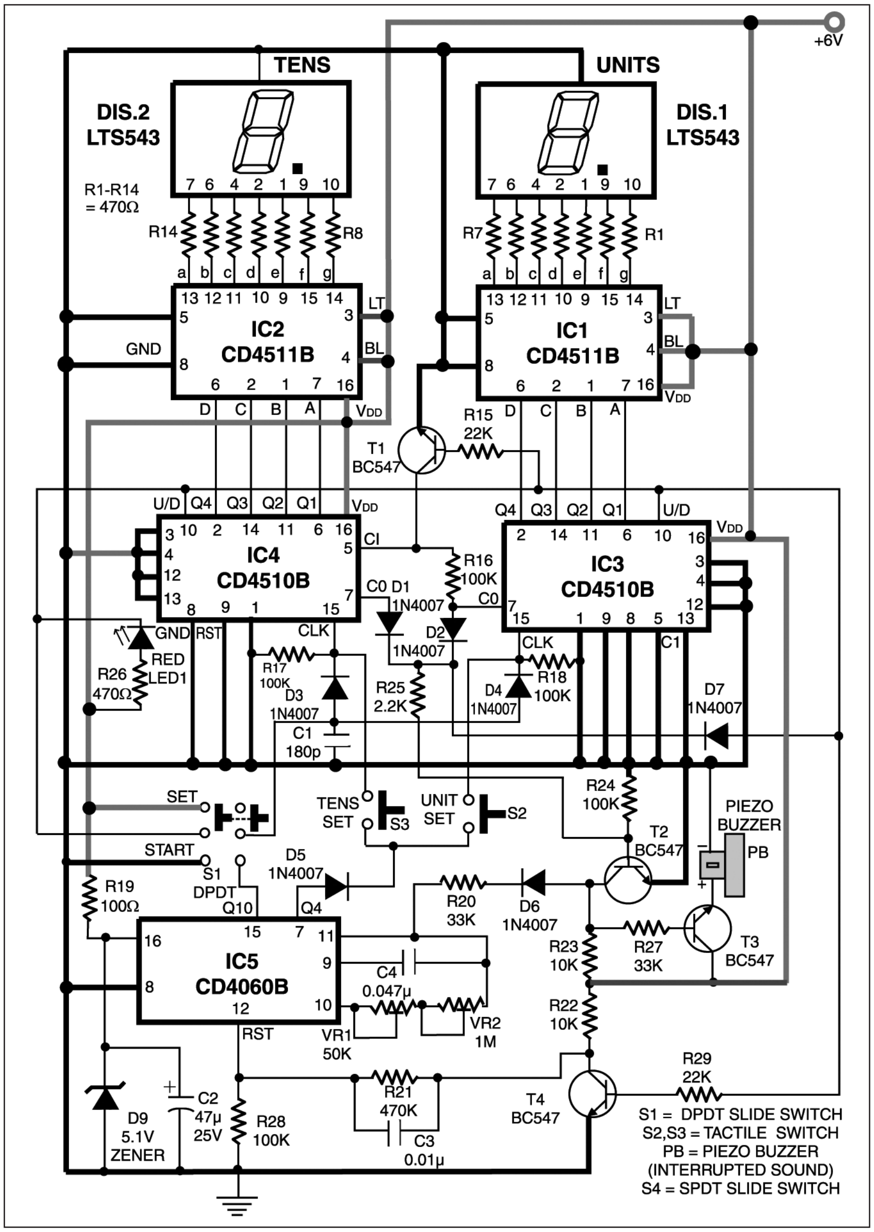

+6V
TENS
UNITS
DIS.2
LTS543
DIS.1
LTS543
R1-R14
= 470Ω
R14
R8
R7
R1
IC2
CD4511B
IC1
CD4511B
GND
LT
BL
VDD
R15
22K
T1
BC547
IC4
CD4510B
IC3
CD4510B
U/D
Q4
Q3
Q2
Q1
CI
C0
D1
1N4007
D2
1N4007
R16
100K
RST
CLK
R17
100K
D3
1N4007
C1
180p
R18
100K
D4
1N4007
R25
2.2K
D7
1N4007
R26
470Ω
RED
LED1
R24
100K
SET
START
S1
DPDT
TENS
SET
S3
UNIT
SET
S2
PIEZO
BUZZER
PB
T2
BC547
D5
1N4007
R19
100Ω
Q10
Q4
R20
33K
D6
1N4007
R27
33K
T3
BC547
R23
10K
IC5
CD4060B
C4
0.047μ
VR1
50K
VR2
1M
R22
10K
R29
22K
R21
470K
C3
0.01μ
T4
BC547
D9
5.1V
ZENER
C2
47μ
25V
R28
100K
S1 = DPDT SLIDE SWITCH
S2,S3 = TACTILE SWITCH
PB = PIEZO BUZZER
(INTERRUPTED SOUND)
S4 = SPDT SLIDE SWITCH

Fig. 1: Circuit diagram of conference timer

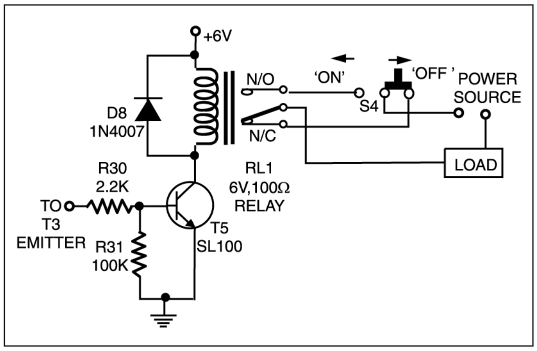

+6V
D8
1N4007
N/O
N/C
'ON'
'OFF'
S4
POWER
SOURCE
LOAD
R30
2.2K
RL1
6V,100Ω
RELAY
TO
T3
EMITTER
R31
100K
T5
SL100

Fig. 2: Appliance 'on/off' switching application for timer

As soon as the designated speaker starts speaking, switch S1 is flipped from 'set' position to 'start' position. The displayed time will start decrementing once a minute until it becomes 00, i.e the unit digit (DIS.1) and tens digit (DIS.2) both become zero. At this juncture, the timer stops decrementing further and an interrupted beep sound is heard from the buzzer, indicating that the time allotted to the particular speaker is over.

In this circuit, IC5 (CD4060B, a 14-stage binary counter with internal oscillator) is used for generation of the basic timing pulses. Presets VR1 and VR2 are required to be adjusted for obtaining approximately 1 Hz (1.0666 Hz, to be more precise) pulses from pin 7 (Q4) of IC5, while the pulses from pin 15 (Q10) are available at the rate of one pulse per minute. For countdown timer operation, this pulse (one-per-minute) is simultaneously applied to pin 15 of IC3 and IC4 through switch S1 (in start position), and diodes D3 and D4. For presetting this timer, bounceless pulses are required at clock pin 15 of both IC3 and IC4. For this reason 1Hz (bounceless) pulses available from pin 7 of IC5 are used to preset the timer.

IC1 and IC2 (CD4511B), 7-segment latch and driver, accept BCD input code from up/down counters IC3 and IC4 (CD4510B). They convert the BCD code to 7-segment positive logic output code to display the equivalent decimal digits. While displaying decimal digits 9 and 6, their tails are not displayed. The store function available in these ICs is not used in this circuit and hence the store pin 5 of IC1 and IC2 is made permanently low.

CD4510B is a divided-by-10 BCD up/down counter. This counter increments or decrements by one count for every low-to-high transition of the clock pulse pplied to its clock pin15, depending on the logic level at its pin 10. Thus, when pin 10 of IC3 and IC4 are held high, the counters increment by one count for every clock pulse, and when they are held low, the counters decrement by one count for every clock pulse. The up counting mode is used to preset the conference timer while its down counting mode is used for normal timer operation.

When presetting, the carry 'out' pin 7 of IC3 and carry 'in' pin 5 of IC4 are not cascaded, to permit presetting of tens and units digits independently (using push-to-on tactile switches S2 and S3, respectively). In countdown mode carry 'out' pin 7 of IC3 and carry 'in' pin 5 of IC4 are cascaded for 2-digit countdown timer operation. For presetting function, 1Hz (approx.) pulses are used, while for normal cascaded countdown operation of the timer, pulse rate of one-pulse-perminute is used. As stated earlier, these two types of pulses are available from pins 7 and 15, respectively, of IC5.

Transistor T2 is used to stop or activate the IC5 binary counter. When transistor T2 is in 'cut-off" state, its collector voltage goes 'high'. As a result, the positive supply rail is extended to pin 11 of IC5 via resistor R23 and diode D6 to stop IC5 from counting further. When transistor T2 conducts, its collector voltage goes low and counter IC5 becomes active. The stop and run functions of IC5 binary counter are used during countdown operation only. While presetting, the IC5 binary counter will be in running condition.

When slide switch S1 is slid to 'set' position, pin 10 of both IC3 and IC4 is taken

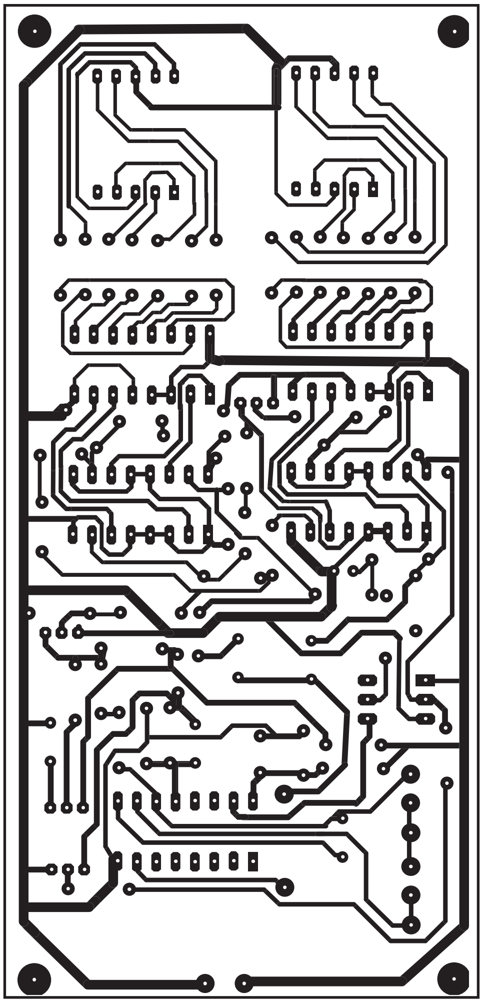


Fig. 4: Component layout for the PCB

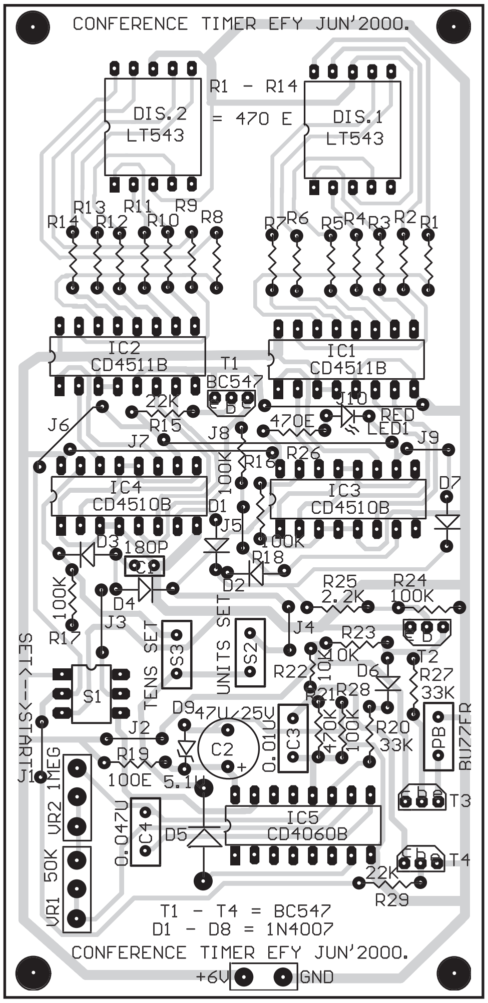

CONFERENCE TIMER EFY JUN'2000.
DIS.2
LT543
DIS.1
LT543
R1 - R14
= 470 E
R13 R11 R9
R14 R12 R10 R8
R7 R6 R5 R4 R3 R2 R1
IC2
CD4511B
T1
BC547
IC1
CD4511B
22K
R15
J10
RED
LED1
470E
J6
J7
J8
J9
100K
R16
R26
IC4
CD4510B
IC3
CD4510B
D1
J5
D7
D3
180P
C1
100K
R18
D4
D2
R25
2.2K
R24
100K
100K
R17
J3
TENS SET
S3
UNITS SET
S2
J4
R23
10K
T2
R22
D6
R27
33K
SET<-->START
S1
R21
R28
D9
47U 25V
C2
0.01U
C3
470K
100K
R20
33K
PB
BUZZER
J2
J1
R19
100E
5.1V
1MEG
VR2
T3
0.047U
C4
D5
IC5
CD4060B
50K
VR1
T4
22K
R29
T1 - T4 = BC547
D1 - D8 = 1N4007
CONFERENCE TIMER EFY JUN'2000.
+6V
GND

Fig. 3: Actual-size, single-sided PCB layout

'high' to select the countup mode for presetting the timer. At the same time, transistor T12 gets forward biased and conducts. As a result, its collector as well as pin 5 of IC4 go 'low'. Pin 5 of IC3 is permanently low and both these ICs are not cascaded. The one-pulse-per-minute (from pin 15 of IC5) is no longer available to diode D3-D4 junction, while 1Hz pulse (available from pin 7 of IC5) may be applied to the clock input in 15 of IC3 or IC4 by pressing the respective tactile switches S2 and S3. For presetting the timer, depress tactile switch S2 and S3 until desired count is displayed in unit and tens digits (DIS.1 and DIS.2). When desired digit has been displayed in DIS.1 or DIS.2, immediately release switch S2 and S3, as the case may be. Due to conduction of diode D7, transistor T2 will be in 'on' state and thus binary counter (IC5) is in runing condingion. At the same time, 'auto reset' transistor T4 will also be in 'on' state, with its collector pulled low. Thus, IC5 will continue to operate normally.

When slide switch S1 is slid from 'set' position to 'start' position, the red LED1 immediately glows. Transistor T4 goes to 'cut-off' and its collector transits from 'low' to 'high' state. The high-going spike is coupled through capacitor C3 to reset pin 12 of IC5. Thus, IC5 is reset and starts counting from beginning. During this operation, pin 10 of both IC3 and IC4 are held low to select countdown mode of operation. Transistor T1 goes to 'cut-off' state. Thus carry 'out' pin 7 of IC3 and carry 'in' pin 5 of IC4 are cascaded through resistor R16. The one-pulse-per-minute is applied to pin 15 of both ICs (IC3 and IC4) through diodes D3 and D4. Now the digits displayed in DIS.1-DIS.2 combination start decrementing once every minute. When digits displayed in DIS.1-DIS.2 become '00', carry 'out' pin 7 of both IC3 and IC4 goes 'low' and transistor T2 does not conduct. As a result, collector of transistor T2 goes 'high' and the binary counter stops counting. Simultaneously, transistor T3 conducts and activates the buzzer (functioning in interrupted mode). Thus, interrupted beep sound is heard from the buzzer, indicating that preset time duration has ended. Pin 7 of both IC3 and IC4 goes 'low' during display of digits '00' in DIS.1 and DIS.2. During display of any digits other than '00', the carry 'out' pin 7 of either IC3 or IC4 will be high or both may be 'high'. When the timer is in countdown mode, do not press switch S2 or S3 to avoid disturbance in timer setting.

This circuit, apart from using as a conference timer, may be converted into programmable 2-digit 'on' or 'off' timer to switch 'on'/'off' any electrical or electronic appliance after 1 minute to 99 minutes duration by incorporating additional add-on circuit shown in Fig.2. During 'on'/'off' timer operation, the digits displayed in DIS.1-DIS.2 help one to know the exact leftover time to switch 'on'/'off' the appliance. When using this circuit as 'off' timer, slide switch S4 to 'off' position and, for 'on' timer operation, slide switch S4 to 'on' position. When displayed digits become '00', the relay will be energised to turn 'on'/'off' the load.

The actual-size, single-sided PCB for the circuit in Fig.1 is shown in Fig. 3, while its component layout is given in Fig. 4. □

BUILD YOUR OWN C-BAND SATELLITE TV RECEIVER

S. DAS GUPTA

Satellite TV reception has gained much popularity in India over the last three decades, specially after the live telecasting of the Gulfwar by CNN. Both the S-band and C-band satellite signals are available to India. C-band signals are beamed from various satellites like Asiasat, Aralisat, and Insat 2B.

In India, the C-band reception is much more popular compared to the S-band. The popular satellite programmes which can be received on C-band include Star TV, Zee TV, PTV2, CNN, ATN, Sun TV, and Doordarshan. Besides, programmes from Russia, China, France, and Saudi Arabia are also available on C-band channels, although their language is a barrier.

(***EFY Note.*** After introduction of cable TV and DTH the TV reception has undergone a seachange. However, the article is useful for understanding the principles of C Band reception.)

Fundamentals of C-band reception

You may be aware that to receive any satellite signals, a dish antenna is required. The mechanical aspects and the dish-orientation principles to receive satellite signals in S-band and C-band remain basically the same. The C-band downlink frequencies range from 3.7 GHz to 4.2 GHz The direct reception system comprises:

(i) Dish antenna

(ii) LNB (low-noise block converter) and feed horn assembly.

(iii) Satellite receiver.

Dish antenna: There are different types of dish antennae (e.g. fibre and mesh) available in various sizes ranging from 1.8 metres to 4.8 metres. The size of the dish is dependent on the size of the distribution network and the strength of the signal.

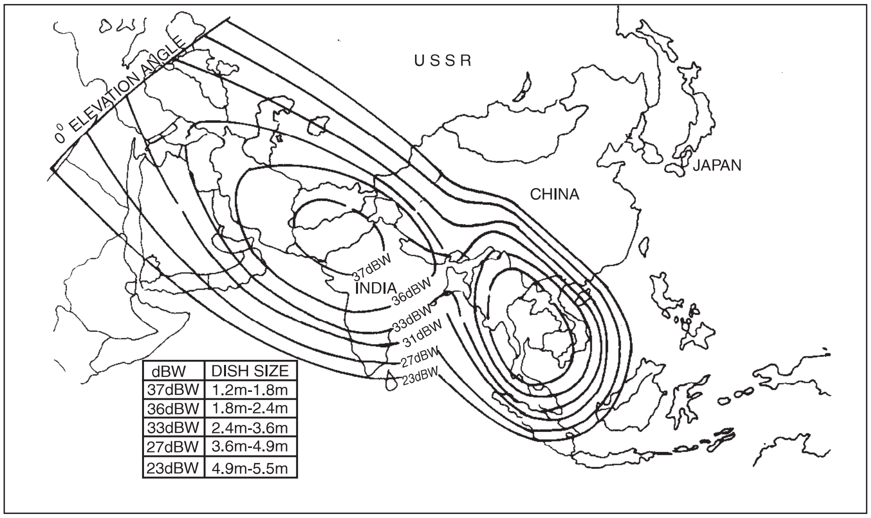


Fig. 1: Footprint of Star TV (Southern)

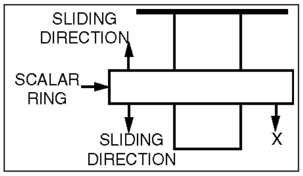


Fig. 2: Feed horn

The area where the signal is weak requires a large dish, and vice-versa. The strength of the signal can also be recognised from the footprints of different satellites. As an example, the footprint (i.e the geographic area on ground covered by a satellite downlink antenna) measured in terms of effective isotropic radiated power (EIRP) in dBW (decibels w.r.t. one watt) of Asiasat satellite (transmitting Star TV programmes) over India

	Personal receiving system	Cable distribution system
Delhi	1.8 mtr	3.0 mtr
Mumbai	2.0 mtr	3.0 mtr
Calcutta	3.0 mtr	4.8 mtr
Chennai	3.7 mtr	6.0 mtr

TABLE I

Relationship between F/d and X

F/d	X (mm)
0.42	0
0.40	5
0.38	10
0.36	15
0.34	20

TABLE II

Specification of the DBS tuner with FM demodulator

Receiving frequency	950 MHz to 1750 MHz
Input impedance	75-ohm
IF	479-5 MHz
Channel select (SY)	By electronic tuning
ODU supply in-and-out	18-25V DC
Tuning voltage	0.6V to 20V DC
IF bandwidth	27 MHz (3 dB down)
Output impedance	75-ohm
Demodulation (SY)	PLL

is given in Fig.1. Star TV recommends the following sizes of dish antennae for various regions:

In order to maintain optimum carrier-to-noise ratio (C/N ratio), a larger size of dish is required for the larger cable distribution network. A dish consists of the following parts:

(a) The stand or the base structure which supports the entire dish.

(b) The parabolic reflector.

(c) The electromechanical arrangement to move the dish in the horizontal and vertical planes to track the satellite. (This arrangement is generally used in a dish of 3.7 metre and above sizes.)

(d) LNB mounting arrangement.

Base structure should be strong enough to withstand the entire load of the dish. To withstand the wind load during heavy wind or storms, the base structure should be firmly grounded in concrete.

The parabolic reflector. It is the most important part of the dish. The reflector receives the signals from the satellite and focuses them to the focal point where the feed horn is positioned. The focused signal picked up by the feed horn is fed into the LNB, which is mounted on feed horn itself. The dish antenna kits are now-a-days readily available and can be easily assembled.

LNB assembly. The LNB assembly consists of the following three parts: the scalar ring, polarator, and LNB.

(a) *The scaler ring*: There are two types of scalar rings, namely, adjustable and fixed.

(i) Adjustale scalar ring: In this, the scalar ring slides on the feed horn and can be positioned to suit the focal distance to diameter ratio (F/d) of the dish (refer Fig. 2). The focal distance 'X' is related to the F/d ratio, as shown in Table I.

ii) Fixed scalar ring: Here, the scalar ring is an integral part of the feed horn and the distance 'X' is fixed. It may not always suit the F/d ratio of the dish being used. Hence it is not preferred.

(b) *Polarator*: Inside the feed horn, there is a probe, which is required to move according to the polarisation of the satellite signals.

For large dish assemblies, a motorised polarator is prefered. The motor used in a polarator has three terminals: +5V, ground, and pulse.

The motor responds to the width of the pulse supplied by the receiver. The pulsewidth can be varied from 0.8 to 2.8 ms with the help of the 'trim' controls in the receiver and the position of the V/H (vertical/horizontal polarisation) switch. In 'H' position, the probe can rotate by almost 140°. For a stream of pulses with fixed width, the probe position will be fixed. The probe will move only when the pulsewidth is changed. Keeping the 'trim' control in mean position and changing the V/H switch from V to H or H to V results in pulsewidth changes in one step, enabling the probe to rotate through 90°. To know as to why the probe movement is required, we have to know about the 'polarisation'.

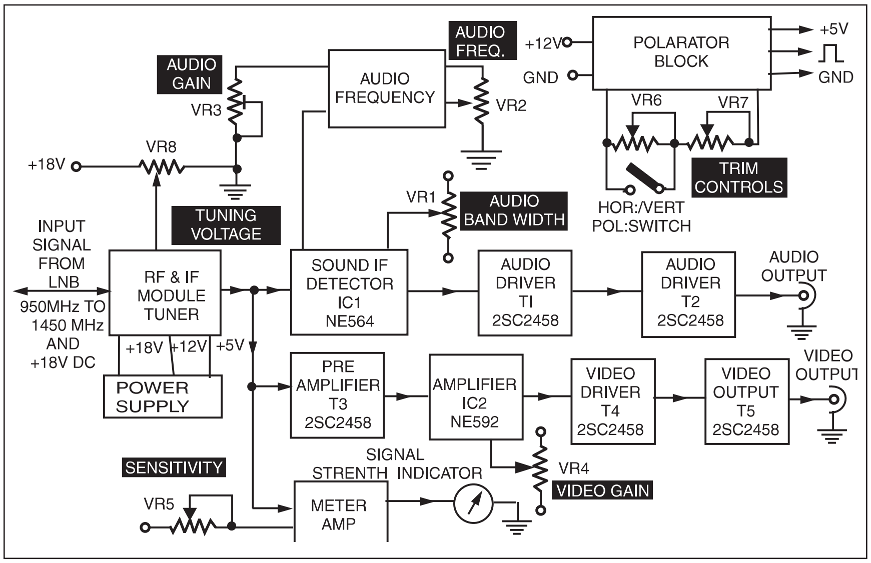

AUDIO FREQ.
+12V
GND
POLARATOR BLOCK
+5V
GND
AUDIO GAIN
VR3
AUDIO FREQUENCY
VR2
VR6
VR7
VR8
+18V
TRIM CONTROLS
TUNING VOLTAGE
VR1
AUDIO BAND WIDTH
HOR:/VERT POL:SWITCH
INPUT SIGNAL FROM LNB
950MHz TO 1450 MHz AND +18V DC
RF & IF MODULE TUNER
+18V
+12V
+5V
POWER SUPPLY
SOUND IF DETECTOR IC1 NE564
AUDIO DRIVER TI 2SC2458
AUDIO DRIVER T2 2SC2458
AUDIO OUTPUT
PRE AMPLIFIER T3 2SC2458
AMPLIFIER IC2 NE592
VIDEO DRIVER T4 2SC2458
VIDEO OUTPUT T5 2SC2458
VIDEO OUTPUT
SENSITIVITY
VR5
SIGNAL STRENTH INDICATOR
METER AMP
VR4
VIDEO GAIN

Fig. 3(a): Block diagram of C-band satellite receiver

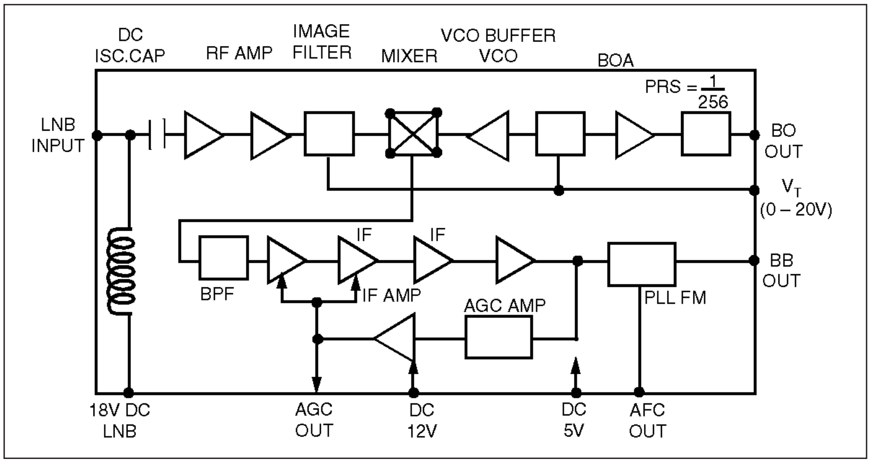

DC ISC.CAP
RF AMP
IMAGE FILTER
MIXER
VCO BUFFER VCO
BOA
PRS = 1/256
LNB INPUT
BO OUT
V_T (0 – 20V)
IF
IF
BPF
IF AMP
AGC AMP
PLL FM
BB OUT
18V DC LNB
AGC OUT
DC 12V
DC 5V
AFC OUT

Fig. 3(b): Pin out of DBS timer with FM demodulator

There are three types of polarisations: (a) vertical, (b) horizontal, and (c) circular. Electromagnetic waves have two fields—electric field and magnetic field—which are mutually at right angle to each other and also at right angle to the direction of motion.

In vertical polarisation, the electric field is along the North-South axis of the satellite.

In horizontal polarisation, the electric field is at 90° to the North-South axis of the satellite.

In circular polarisation the electric field advances like a cork screw. It can be either left-hand circular (LHC) or right-hand circular (RHC).

To convert this circularly polarised waves into linearly polarised waves (vertical or horizontal), a 6.4mm thick fibre glass piece is fixed in the feed horn along its diameter. For example, CNN transmission has circular polarisation, and therefore the fibre glass piece is essential to get maximum signal pick-up. On the other hand, Star TV signal is vertically polarised, and hence the fibre glass piece is not required. It should in fact be removed to avoid 3dB loss.

For maximum signal pick-up, the probe should be in line with the polarisation of the signal it is receiving. Probe movement is therefore required for alignment purpose. If the probe is aligned to receive a horizontally polarised signal and the signal being received is vertically polarised, the probe has to be moved through 90° for maximum signal pick-up. This will give a crystal-clear picture. This can be done either by trim control or with the help of V/H switch, with the trim control in its centre position.

(c) *LNB*. The LNB stands for low-noise block converter. LNB comprises an amplifier and a frequency converter. The signals in C-band (3.7 GHz to 4.7 GHz), which are received and reflected by the dish, are fed to the amplifier inside LNB via the feed horn probe, as mentioned earlier. The signal-to-noise ratio of the amplifier has to be rather good because the received signals are very weak. The lower the noise, the better will be picture quality.

The converter inside the LNB comprises a fixed frequency oscillator running at 5150 MHz, which beats with the incoming signal frequency. The difference frequencies obtained range from 5150 - 4200 = 950 MHz, to 5150 – 3700 = 1450 MHz, i.e. the input frequency range of 4.2 GHz to 3.7 GHz is converted to 950 to 1450 MHz range. The gain of LNB is typically around 50 dB.

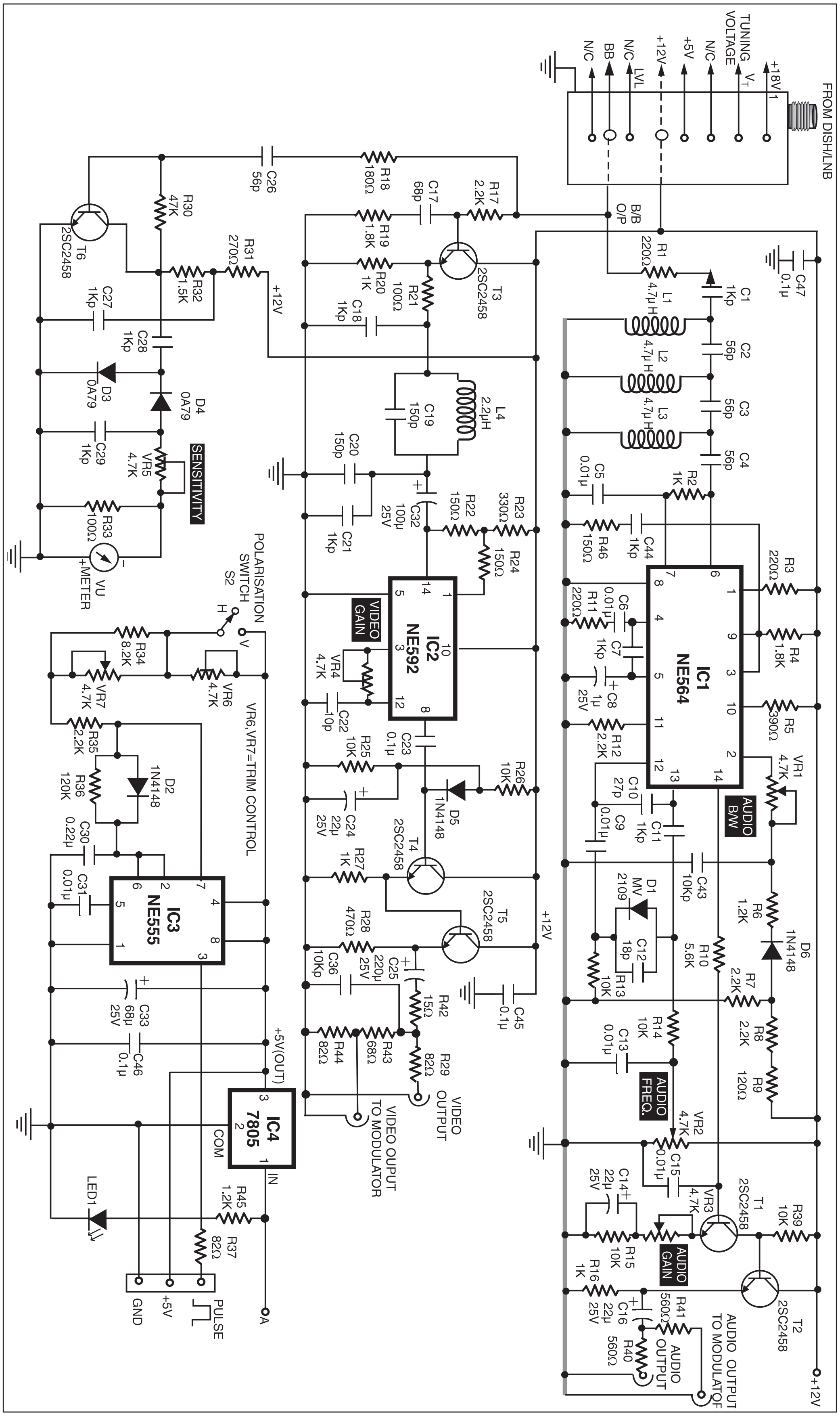

FROM DISH/LNB
+18V
TUNING VOLTAGE
N/C
+5V
+12V
LVL
BB
B/B O/P
IC1 NE564
IC2 NE592
IC3 NE555
IC4 7805
T1 2SC2458
T2 2SC2458
T3 2SC2458
T4 2SC2458
T5 2SC2458
T6 2SC2458
AUDIO B/W
AUDIO FREQ.
AUDIO GAIN
VIDEO GAIN
SENSITIVITY
VU METER
POLARISATION SWITCH S2
VR6, VR7=TRIM CONTROL
VIDEO OUTPUT
VIDEO OUPUT TO MODULATOR
AUDIO OUTPUT
AUDIO OUTPUT TO MODULATOR
+5V(OUT)
IN
COM
LED1
PULSE
+5V
GND
A

Fig. 4: Circuit diagram of C-band satellite receiver

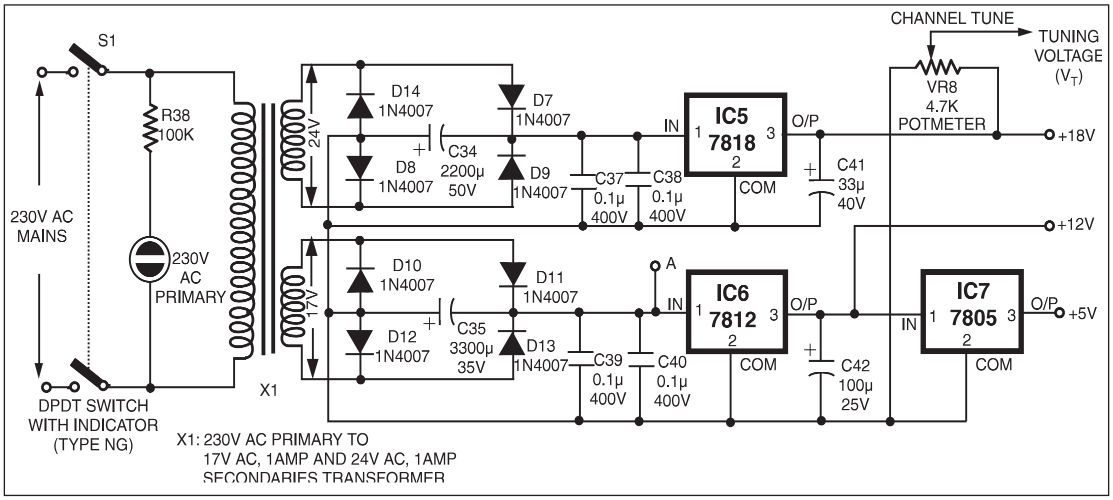

S1
230V AC
MAINS
DPDT SWITCH
WITH INDICATOR
(TYPE NG)
R38
100K
230V
AC
PRIMARY
X1
24V
17V
D14
1N4007
D8
1N4007
C34
2200µ
50V
D7
1N4007
D9
1N4007
D10
1N4007
D12
1N4007
C35
3300µ
35V
D11
1N4007
D13
1N4007
C37
0.1µ
400V
C38
0.1µ
400V
C39
0.1µ
400V
C40
0.1µ
400V
IN
1
IC5
7818
3
2
COM
O/P
C41
33µ
40V
A
IC6
7812
C42
100µ
25V
IC7
7805
CHANNEL TUNE
TUNING
VOLTAGE
(V_T)
VR8
4.7K
POTMETER
+18V
+12V
+5V
X1: 230V AC PRIMARY TO
17V AC, 1AMP AND 24V AC, 1AMP
SECONDARIES TRANSFORMER

Fig. 5: Power supply unit

Another important parameter of the LNB is its noise temperature. The noise equivalent temperature of most of the good-quality LNBs ranges from 26°K to 40°K (K stands for kelvin). The picture on a 26°K LNB will show less noise compared to that of a 40°K LNB, especially when the received signal is weak. Theoretically, the noise power is related to the temperature as follows:

Noise power = KTB watts

where K is the Boltsman's constant = 1.381 x 10^{-23} T is temperature in Kelvins; and B is the system bandwidth in Hz.

A coaxial cable connected between the LNB and receiver serves two purposes: (i) it feeds +18V DC to the LNB, to power the amplifier and converter circuits inside LNB, and (ii) the converted frequency (950 MHz to 1,450 MHz) is fed from LNB to 'C-band' receiver.

C-band receiver. The main function of the receiver is to select a particular channel from the converted block of frequencies (between 950 and 1450 MHz) and retrieve the audio and video signal information. The audio and video output signals are finally fed to the TV monitor's audio and video-input terminals, respectively. If the TV does not have separate audio and video input points, then feed the audio and video output signals from receiver to an RF modulator which modulates the RF and provides a modulated VHF RF output (corresponding to anyone of the channels in the VHF band from channel 2 to channel 12) to operate the domestic receiver directly.

The block diagram of a satellite receiver is shown in Fig. 3(a).

The coaxial cable from LNB is connected to the tuner (which contains RF and IF modules) through 'F' socket. To simplify the design for an average constructor, the Mitsumi TSU2-EOIP tuner is used in the circuit. Pinout of the tuner are shown in Fig. 3(b) while its specifications are given in Table II. It is a readymade tuner with tunable range from 950 MHz to 1450 MHz, giving baseband output directly with audio sub-carrier.

The tuner module is tuned with a voltage (V_T) between 0 and 20V and requires no high/low band switch. It

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:	
IC1	- NE564 phase locked loop
IC2	- NE592 video amplifier
IC3	- NE555 timer
IC4, IC7	- 7805, 5V regulator
IC5	- 7818, 18V regulator
IC6	- 7812, 12V regulator
T1 - T6	- 2SC2458 npn transistor
D1	- MV2109 varicap diode
D2, D5, D6	- 1N4148 switching diode
D3, D4	- OA79 detector diode
D7 - D14	- 1N4007, 1-amp silicon diode
LED	- Red LED
Resistors (all 1/4W, ± 5% carbon, unless stated otherwise)	
R1, R3, R11	- 220 ohm
R2, R16, R20	
R27	- 1 kilo-ohm
R4, R19	- 1.8 kilo-ohm
R5	- 390 ohm
R6	- 1.2 kilo-ohm
R7, R8, R12	
R17, R35	- 2.2 kilo-ohm
R9	- 120 ohm
R10	- 5.6 kilo-ohm
R13, R14, R15	
R25,R26, R39	- 10 kilo-ohm
R18	- 180 ohm
R21, R33	- 100 ohm
R22, R24	- 150 ohm
R23	- 330 ohm
R28	- 470 ohm
R29	- 82 ohm
R30	- 47 kilo-ohm
R31	- 270 ohm
R32	- 1.5 kilo-ohm
R34	- 8.2 kilo-ohm
R36	- 120 kilo-ohm
R37, R44	- 82 ohm
R38	- 100 kilo-ohm
R40, R41	- 560 ohm
R42	- 15 ohm
R43	- 68 ohm
VR1, VR2,	
VR7, VR8	- 4.7 kilo-ohm linear potentiometer
VR3, VR4,	
VR5, VR6	- 4.7 kilo-ohm presets

Capacitors:	
C1, C7, C11, C18	
C21, C27	- 1kpF ceramic disc
C28, C29, C44	
C2, C3, C4,26	- 56pF ceramic disc
C5, C6, C9, C13	
C15, C31	- 0.01µF ceramic
C8	- 1µF, 25V electrolytic
C10	- 27pF ceramic disk
C12	- 18pF ceramic disk
C14, C16,C24	- 22µF, 25V electrolytic
C17	- 68pF ceramic disk
C19, C20	- 150pF ceramic disk
C22	- 10pF ceramic disk
C23	- 0.1µF ceramic disk
C25	- 220µ/25V electrolytic
C30	- 0.22µF ceramic disk
C32	- 100µF, 25V electrolytic
C33	- 68µF, 25V electrolytic
C34	- 2200µF, 50V electrolytic
C35	- 3300µF, 50V electrolytic
C43	- 10 kpF ceramic disk
C37-C40, C45	
C46, C36	- 0.1µF, 400V, ceramic disk
C41	- 33 µF, 40V electrolytic
C42	- 100 µF, 25V electrolytic
Miscellaneous:	
	- VU meter (250µA)
	- Mitsumi tuner (TSU2-EOIP)
	- PCB
	- Chassis, knobs, on/off switch
	- Heat-sink for regulators
L1, L2, L3	- 4.7µH inductor (fixed)
L4	- 2.2µH inductor (fixed)
	- 3-pin screw type connector for motorised feed horn pulse
X1	- 230V AC primary to 17V AC, 1-amp and 24V AC, 1-amp secondary transformer
S1	- DPDT rocker switch
S2	- On/off switch

has a terminal for applying the supply voltage for LNB, which is carried to the LNB via the down lead, coaxial cable type RG-8 or RG-11. The module itself is fed +12V and +5V DC for its operation. The complete circuit diagram of the receiver is shown in Fig. 4.

The baseband output from the tuner module is fed to the audio stage, video stage, and signal-strength indication circuit.

Audio section. It consists of three stages: sound intermediate frequency (SIF) stage, sound driver stage, and sound output stage.

The audio signal from the baseband output of tuner module is separated with the help of an LC (inductance-capacitance) tuned wave-trap circuit comprising capacitors C1 through C4 and inductors L1 through L3. SIF signal is fed to pin 6 (limiter section) of IC1 (NE564). The positive DC voltage is fed to pins 1, 3, 9, and 10 of IC1.

Audio IF frequency can be varied by varying the voltage of VCO (voltage-controlled oscillator) of the IC. The VCO voltage is controlled with the help of potmeter VR2, which is connected to pin 13 of IC1 and acts as an audio IF frequency-controller. Varactor diode D1 (MV2109) is connected across pins 12 and 13 through capacitors C9 and C11.

Audio bandwidth can also be adjusted with the help of potmeter VR1 (audio B/W control) by changing the voltage at pin 2 (phase comparator section) of IC. Potmeter VR1 generally changes the phase of the audio signal.

After processing of the audio IF signal, including its amplification and rectification, an AF output is available at pin 14. The audio output is further amplified by transistor amplifiers built around transistors T1 and T2 (2SC2458), which develop 1-volt peak-to-peak audio output across resistor R16.

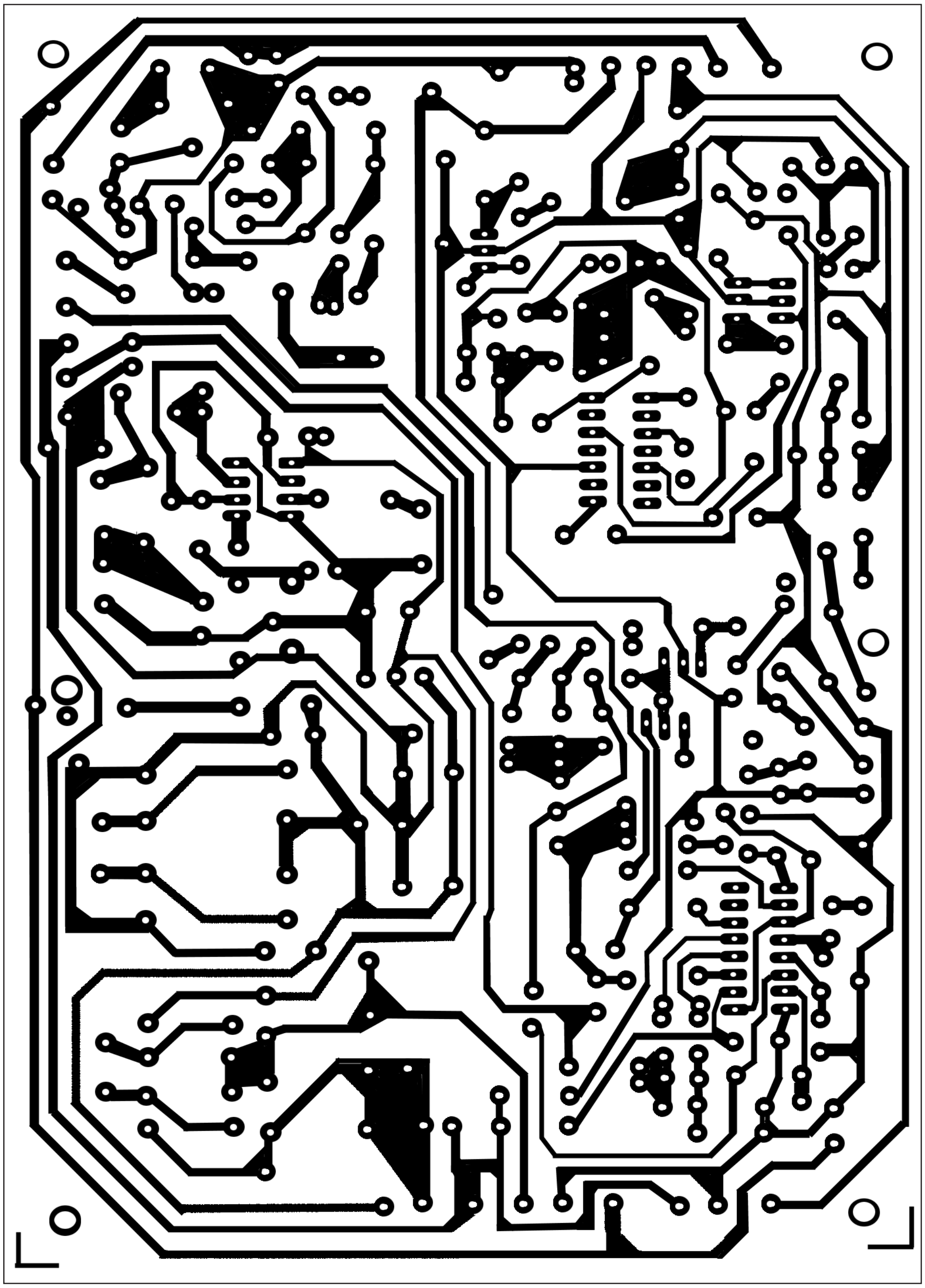


Fig. 6: PCB layout for the circuits in Figs 4 and 5 (track-side)

Potmeter VR3 acts as an audio gain control.

Video section: This is divided into four stages, namely, video amplifier, video detector, video driver, and video-output stage.

Signal from baseband output of tuner module is fed via resistor R17 (2.2 kilo-ohm) to the base of video amplifier comprising transistor T3 (2SC2458). Capacitor C17 and resistor R19 are used to suppress the interference. R20 (1k) is used for emitter bias.

Video signal is taken from the emitter of transistor T3 and fed to video detector IC2 (NE592) through an LC network comprising capacitors C18 through C20 and inductor L4 (a video take-off coil). Pin 1 of IC is taken as reference input and pin 14 is taken as signal input. A suitable positive bias is given to pin 1 and pin 14 through

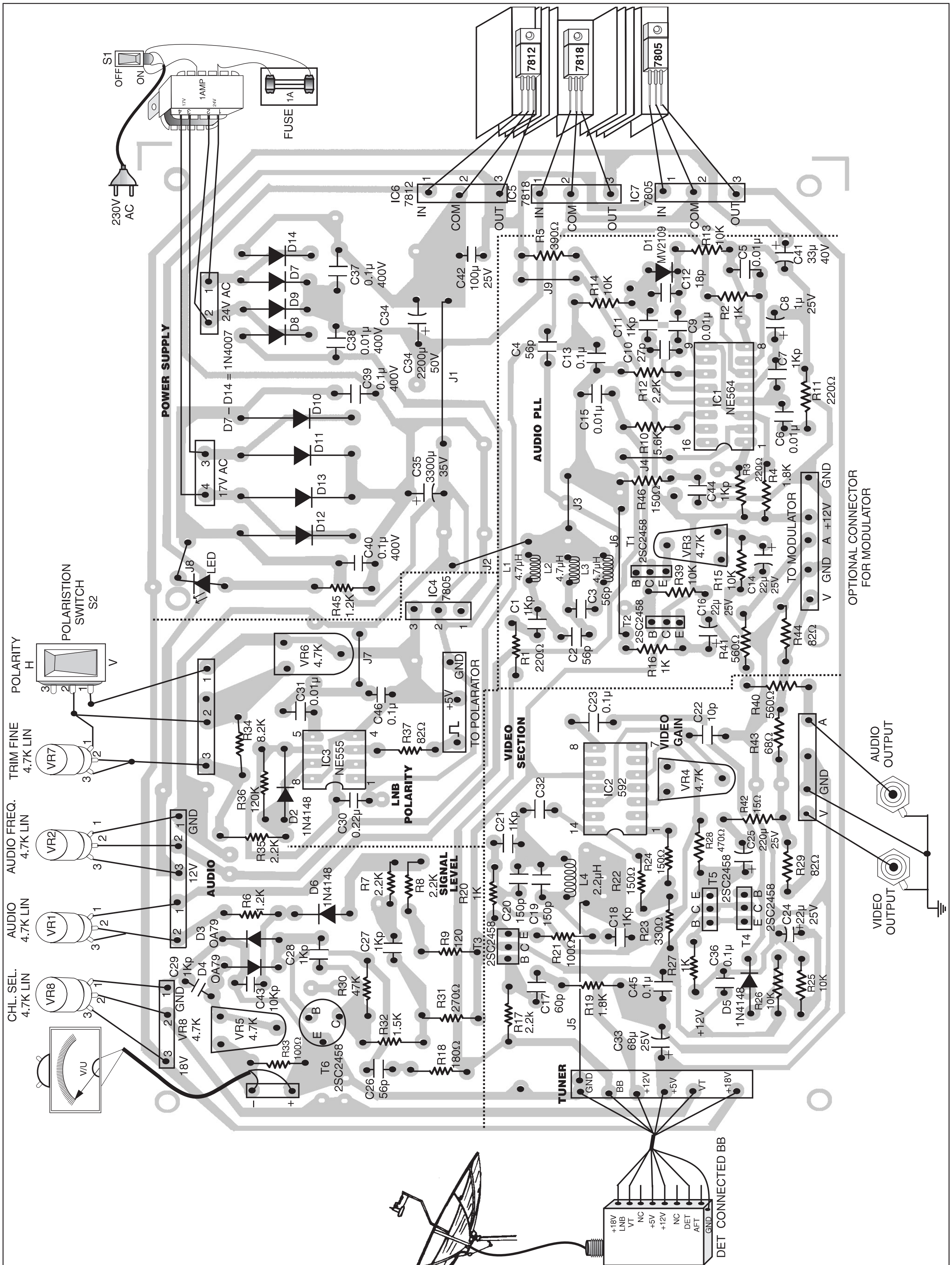
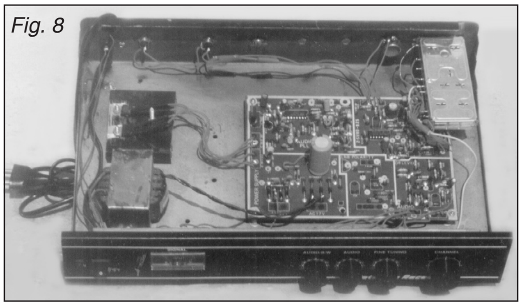

POWER SUPPLY
AUDIO PLL
VIDEO SECTION
VIDEO GAIN
LNB POLARITY
SIGNAL LEVEL
AUDIO
TUNER
230V AC
S1
OFF
ON
1AMP
FUSE 1A
IC6 7812
IC5 7818
IC7 7805
IN
COM
OUT
D7 – D14 = 1N4007
24V AC
17V AC
C34 2200μ 50V
C35 3300μ 35V
C42 100μ 25V
C37 0.1μ 400V
C38 0.01μ 400V
C39 0.1μ 400V
C40 0.1μ 400V
R45 1.2K
LED
J8
IC4 7805
POLARITY H V
POLARISTION SWITCH S2
TRIM FINE 4.7K LIN
AUDIO FREQ. 4.7K LIN
AUDIO 4.7K LIN
CHL. SEL. 4.7K LIN
VR7
VR2
VR1
VR8
VR6 4.7K
VR5 4.7K
VR3 4.7K
VR4 4.7K
IC3 NE555
IC1 NE564
IC2 592
TO POLARATOR
+5V
GND
R34 8.2K
R36 120K
R35 2.2K
R37 82Ω
C31 0.01μ
C46 0.1μ
C30 0.22μ
D2 1N4148
D6 1N4148
D3 OA79
D4 OA79
R6 1.2K
R7 2.2K
R8 2.2K
R20 1K
R9 120
C27 1Kp
C28 1Kp
C29 1Kp
C43 10Kp
R30 47K
R32 1.5K
R31 270Ω
R33 100Ω
R18 180Ω
C26 56p
T6 2SC2458
V/U
12V
18V
R5 390Ω
R14 10K
R13 10K
D1 MV2109
C5 0.01μ
C41 33μ 40V
C12 18p
R2 1K
C8 1μ 25V
C11 1Kp
C9 0.01μ
C10 27p
R12 2.2K
C7 1Kp
R11 220Ω
C6 0.01μ
C4 56p
C13 0.1μ
C15 0.01μ
R10 5.6K
R46 150Ω
C44 1Kp
R3 220Ω
R4 1.8K
TO MODULATOR
OPTIONAL CONNECTOR FOR MODULATOR
V GND A +12V GND
T1 2SC2458
T2 2SC2458
R39 10K
R15 10K
C14 22μ 25V
C16 22μ 25V
R41 560Ω
R44 82Ω
R16 1K
L1 4.7μH
L2 4.7μH
L3 4.7μH
C3 56p
C2 56p
C1 1Kp
R1 220Ω
J1 J2 J3 J4 J5 J6 J7 J9
C23 0.1μ
C22 10p
R40 560Ω
R43 68Ω
AUDIO OUTPUT
VIDEO OUTPUT
C32
C21 1Kp
C20 150p
C19 150p
L4 2.2μH
R22 150Ω
R24 150Ω
C18 1Kp
R23 330Ω
R21 100Ω
R19 1.8K
C45 0.1μ
R17 2.2K
C17 60p
C33 68μ 25V
T3 2SC2458
T4 2SC2458
T5 2SC2458
R28 470Ω
R42 15Ω
C25 220μ 25V
R29 82Ω
C24 22μ 25V
R27 1K
C36 0.1μ
D5 1N4148
R26 10K
R25 10K
+12V
GND BB +12V +5V VT +18V
DET CONNECTED BB
+18V LNB VT NC +5V +12V NC DET AFT GND

Fig. 7: Component layout for the PCB of Fig. 6

TABLE III

IC1 (NE 564)										
Pin no:	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		
Voltage (V):	7.5	1.5	1	6.5	6.5	3	1	0		
Pin no:	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16		
Voltage (V):	1	4.5	1	2	2	4	1.5	0.5		
IC2 (NE592)										
Pin	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	8	10
Volt	9V	0V	9V	8.5V	0V	0V	9V	9V	0V	12V
Pin	11	12	13	14						
Volt	8.5V	8.5V	0V	9V						
Transistors										
	Base	Emitter	Collector							
T1	3.2V	3.2V	7V							
T2	7V	7V	12V							
T3	8.2V	8.2V	12V							
T4	7V	7V	12V							
T5	7V	7V	12V							
T6	2V	0V	2V							

Fig. 8



resistors R22 to R24.

The output is taken from pin 8 of IC (positive video) and fed to the video driver as well as the output stage comprising transistors T4 and T5. After amplification of video signal, 1V peak-to-peak video output is taken from the emitter of transistor T5 through capacitor C25 and resistor R29. Potmeter VR4 (4.7k) is a video gain control, which is used to adjust the contrast of picture.

Signal-strength indicator. To indicate the signal strength of the incoming signal, a 250µA ammeter (or VU meter used in stereo decks) is employed. To drive the meter, an amplifier comprising transistor T6 (2SC2458) is used. The signal from baseband output of tuner module is fed to the base of transistor T6 through resistor R18 and capacitor C26. Positive bias is given to the base of transistor through resistor R30 (47k). The high-frequency AC output is taken from the collector of transistor T6 through capacitor C28 and fed to the voltage doubler circuit comprising diodes D3 and D4 and capacitors C28 and C29. The output is fed to microammeter via potmeter VR5, which can be adjusted for convenient deflection.

A double-sided PCB has been used, with component side serving as a ground plane. From component side, copper foil has been etched from around all holes except those connected to ground. Actual-size solder-side track layout is shown in Fig. 6. Component layout for the PCB is shown in Fig. 7. The author's prototype is shown in Fig. 8.

Testing

After completion of assembly and construction, check the +12V and +18V DC from power-supply regulator, before connecting it to the PCB. Now connect both the supplies to PCB and check that +18V is available at the input 'F' socket of tuner module. Then connect the dish/LNB lead to the tuner and connect the audio and video output from receiver either to the modulator or to the audio- and video-input terminals of the TV set.

Switch 'on' the receiver and adjust channel-selection potentiometer VR1 to select the desired channel. Audio can be fine tuned using potmeters VR1 and VR2. Audio amplitude can be adjusted with the help of potmeter VR3. Picture contrast is to be adjusted using potmeter VR4.

In case the receiver does not work properly, refer to the circuit diagram and check its connections. Check thoroughly all the connections and resolder if you find any dry joints. Finally, check the voltages at the pins of IC5 and transistors, as given in Table III, for any major discrepencies. ❑

EPROM-BASED PROGRAMMABLE NUMBER LOCK

JUNOMON ABRAHAM

Most of the code lock/number lock circuits presented in EFY so far had been based on discrete TTL and/or CMOS ICs. This circuit is based on a familiar EPROM 27C32, wherein the required code is stored. It is a number lock, which can be programmed to any coded number. The length of the number can also vary.

To make a code-lock for a particular number (octal, decimal, or hexadecimal), that number is first converted to its binary equivalent. It is then entered bit-by-bit into consecutive memory locations of EPROM 2732 (IC3), starting with the MSB and ending with the LSB (D0). Assume that the required number is 12 (hex). Its equivalent binary number is 00010010. This binary number is entered into the EPROM at memory locations starting with 001(hex), as shown in Table I. The first memory location is always loaded with binary byte XXXXXXX0 (here, X means "do not care"). The data is stored in consecutive locations, starting with location 001H, as stated earlier.

Description

The circuit comprises six ICs, including the EPROM and the voltage regulator. IC1 is a timer NE555, which is configured as a monostable flip-flop. Please note that its reset pin 4 is connected to output A = B ($O_{A=B}$) pin 3 of comparator IC4 (CD4585). Thus, as long as 4-bit magnitude of input A to IC4 is equal to 4-bit magnitude of the other input B (to IC4), its output pin 3 is at logic 1 and thus monostable IC1 is enabled. When magnitude of input A is not equal to B, the output pin 3 of IC4 is at logic 0 and as a result IC1 is disabled.

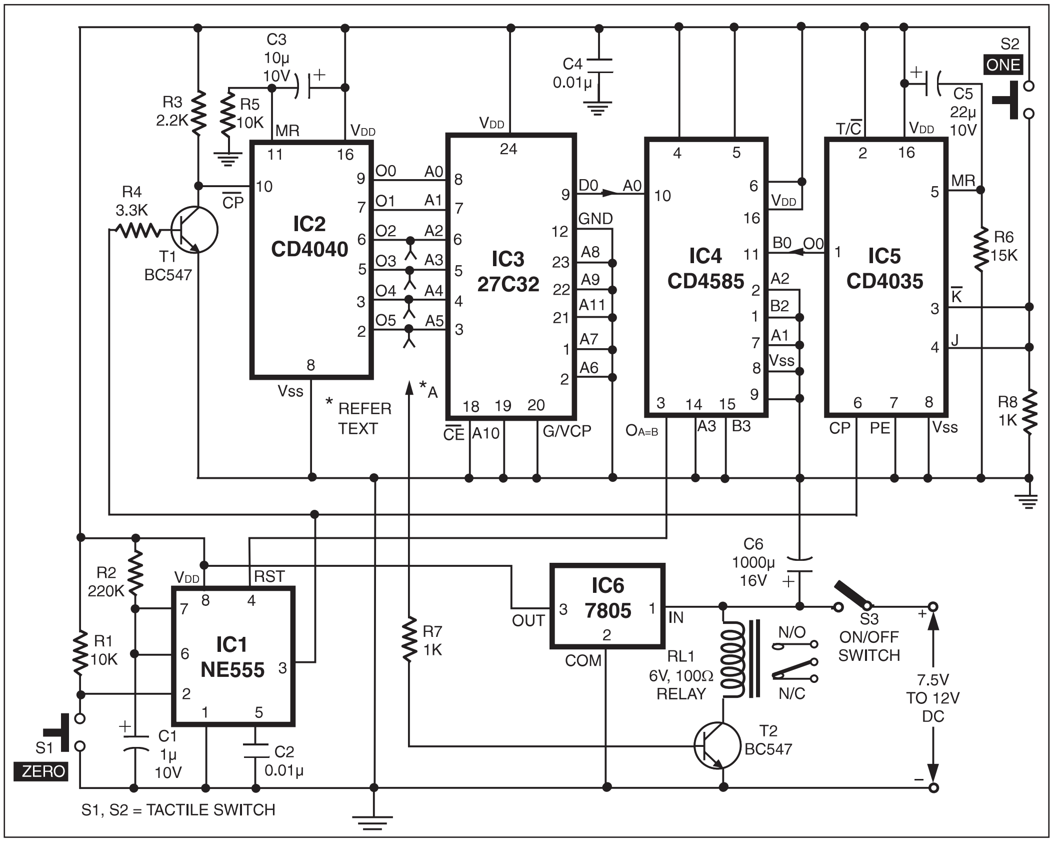

C3
10µ
10V
R3
2.2K
R5
10K
MR
VDD
11
16
10
CP
9
7
6
5
3
2
8
Vss
IC2
CD4040
O0
O1
O2
O3
O4
O5
A0
A1
A2
A3
A4
A5
R4
3.3K
T1
BC547
C4
0.01µ
VDD
24
IC3
27C32
D0
GND
A8
A9
A11
A7
A6
18
19
20
CE
A10
G/VCP
* REFER TEXT
*A
IC4
CD4585
4
5
10
6
16
11
VDD
B0
A2
B2
A1
Vss
3
14
15
OA=B
A3
B3
O0
IC5
CD4035
T/C
MR
K
J
CP
PE
Vss
C5
22µ
10V
S2
ONE
R6
15K
R8
1K
R2
220K
R1
10K
VDD
RST
IC1
NE555
C1
1µ
10V
C2
0.01µ
S1
ZERO
S1, S2 = TACTILE SWITCH
R7
1K
IC6
7805
OUT
IN
COM
C6
1000µ
16V
S3
ON/OFF SWITCH
RL1
6V, 100Ω
RELAY
N/O
N/C
T2
BC547
7.5V
TO 12V
DC

Fig. 1: Complete circuit diagram of number lock

In enabled state, the monostable IC1 generates an output pulse when switch S1 (marked zero) is momentarily pressed. This output pulse from IC1 is used as a clock pulse for counter IC2 and shift register IC5. While IC2 counts on high-to-low transition of the clock, IC5 shifts on low-to-high

TABLE I

Memory address (Hex)	Hex	Data Binary Equivalent
000	X0	XXXXXXX0
001	X0	XXXXXXX0
002	X0	XXXXXXX0
003	X0	XXXXXXX0
004	X1	XXXXXXX1
005	X0	XXXXXXX0
006	X0	XXXXXXX0
007	X1	XXXXXXX1
008	X0	XXXXXXX0

Note: X means do not care

going transition of the clock. Hence, to synchronise the operation of IC2 and IC5, the clock pulse to IC2 is inverted by the transistorised inverter stage around transistor T1.

At power on, IC2 is reset due to power-on-reset circuit built using capacitor C3 and resistor R5. Hence, all its outputs (including O0 through O5 connected to addresses A0 through A5 of EPROM IC3) are initially at logic 0. In other words, initial address selection for EPROM is 000H, since address lines A6 through A11 of EPROM 27C32 are permanently grounded in this circuit. With each clock pulse from IC1, the counter IC2 output increments by one and so also the address of EPROM. Since the clock pulses from IC1 are also being applied to clock pin 6 of 4-bit shift register IC5 (CD4035), let us examine how the data at its input pins 3, 4 (K, J) and output pin 1 (O0) changes. Please note that O1 through O3 (at pins 15, 14 and 13 respectively) of the shift register are not used in this circuit.

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:

IC1	-	NE 555 timer
IC2	-	CD 4040 12-bit binary counter
IC3	-	27C32 EPROM
IC4	-	CD 4585 4-bit magnitude comparator
IC5	-	CD 4035 4-bit shift register
IC6	-	7805 regulator
T1, T2	-	BC 547 npn transistor

Resistors (all ¼-watt, ±5% carbon, unless stated otherwise):

R1, R5	-	10-kilo-ohm
R2	-	220-kilo-ohm
R3	-	2.2-kilo-ohm
R4	-	3.3-kilo-ohm
R6	-	15-kilo-ohm
R7, R8	-	1-kilo-ohm

Capacitors:

C1	-	1µ/10V electrolytic
C2, C4	-	0.01µ ceramic disk
C3	-	10µ/10V electrolytic
C5	-	22µ/10V electrolytic
C6	-	1000µ/16V electrolytic

Miscellaneous:

RL1	-	6V/100-ohm relay
S1, S2	-	tactile switch
S3	-	On/off switch
	-	DC power supply (7.5V to 12V)

On initial switching 'on' of power supply to the circuit, IC5 is reset due to the power-on reset circuit comprising capacitor C5 and resistor R6, connected to its master reset pin 5. Thus, initially its output O0 at pin 1 is at logic 0. On receipt of first clock pulse from IC1, the data pin states of J and K pins (4 and 3) get shifted to output pin 1. The logic level at these two pins (3 and 4) is normally zero as they are pulled to ground via resistor R3, when push to 'on' switch is in its normal (off) position. However, if switch S2 is kept pressed when clock pulse is generated by IC1 (by pressing switch S1 momentarily), logic 1 is output to pin 1 of shift register IC5.

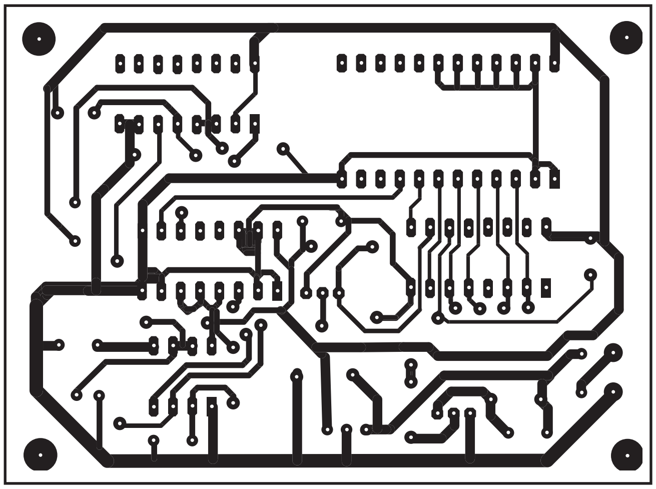


Fig. 2: Acutal-size, single-sided PCB layout

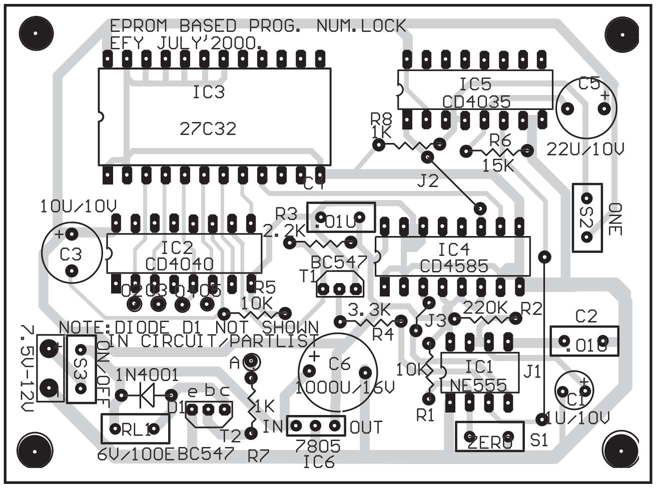


Fig. 3: Component layout for the PCB

In this circuit, the final opening or closing of lock is achieved through energisation of relay RL1 via relay-driver transistor T1, whose base is connected to either O2, O3, O4, or O5 outputs of IC2 via resistor R7. The selection of the position where point A is to be connected would depend on the binary digits in the code. If binary code is of 4-bit length (equivalent to one hex digit), then four clock pulses are needed for advancing the EPROM address by four locations. On fourth pulse, O2 will be at logic 1 (unless IC1 gets disabled due to non-matching of the code in comparator CD4585, earlier) to energise relay RL1. For 8-bit long code (equivalent to two hex digits), the tap A needs to be connected to O3. Similarly, for 16-bit code, point A is to be connected to O4, and so on.

Operation

When the power supply to the circuit is initially switched 'on', IC2 and IC5 are reset, as explained earlier. Both A0 and B0 inputs to IC4 are zero and thus its output at pin 3 is 'high' and hence IC1 is enabled. But, since pin 2 of IC1 is pulled 'high' via resistor R1, output of IC1 is initially 'low'. Initially, all ICs are in their reset positions because of the capacitors connected to their reset pins.

Assume that the required code number is lodged in the EPROM and point A is joined to appropriate output of IC2 depending on the length of lodged code, as discussed in the description of relay operation. Then, lock relay can be energised by inputting the correct binary code serially via IC5 with the help of switches S1 (marked zero) and S2 (marked one). A 'zero' is entered by momentarily depressing switch S1 alone, and a 'one' is entered by depressing switch S1 momentarily, after holding switch S2 in the pressed condition.

The 'D0' bit of EPROM and 'O0' bit of shift register (CD4035) are compared by magnitude comparator (CD4585). If the two data bits are equal, the output of comparator remains 'high' and it does not interrupt/inhibit the operation of monostable IC1 (NE555). However, if there is a mismatch, the output of comparator goes 'low' and it inhibits IC1. Thus, further data would not get entered in the absence of clock pulse from IC1. If data at each location of EPROM keeps matching with the data input via switches S1 and S2, the output of comparator (at pin 3) will continue to stay 'high' to keep IC1 enabled until all the bits of the code have thus been compared. At the end of the code, the tap A will be at logic 1, to energise relay RL1. If you have by mistake entered wrong code via switches S1 and S2, you can try again by switching 'off' and then switching 'on' the circuit once again, using 'on'/'off' switch S3.

Please note that for locking, the circuit need not play any role. The locking operation could be performed manually. Only for opening of the lock, this code lock may be used. However, you are at liberty to use the lock the other way around.

An actual-size, single-sided PCB for the circuit of Fig. 1 is shown in Fig. 2, while Fig. 3 shows its component layout. One may extend/modify the circuit by utilising other seven unused data bits of EPROM as well (presently only bit D0 has been used in this circuit). ■

DISPLAY SCHEMES FOR INDIAN LANGUAGES (HARDWARE AND SOFTWARE)

K. PADMANABHAN, S. ANANTHI, K. CHANDRASEKHARAN, AND P. SWAMINATHAN

For displaying text of Hindi, English, or any other Indian language on a TV-like screen, as may be required for public announcements or for educative programs etc, presently there are two possible ways:

1. Use a personal computer (PC), with all its hardware, such as the hard disk, monitor etc, and develop or buy a suitable software to display such text on its screen using its keyboard.
2. Develop a dedicated low-cost microprocessor based system employing a CRT controller circuit, with suitable firmware for each of the languages.

This article provides the software for use with a PC based system as well as use of a dedicated microprocessor based system, complete with circuitry and firmware programs. Incidentally, it introduces an important aspect concerning coding of text characters for Indian languages and provides an efficient solution. The software developed for both the above schemes of display is based on the proposed simplified coding solution.

ASCII codes and Indian languages

The typewriter for the English language, along with its mechanism, has been already adopted for almost all of our Indian languages with practically no change in its layout. The positions of keys and their operation remain unchanged. It has the same four rows of keys, including shift and space keys, with top row for numerals, and so on.

The combination vowels in Indian languages such as 'oo' are made as separate 'hook' characters, which upon stroke are non-space-moving. Persons involved in development and adoption of the English keyboard have cleverly tackled the problem of typing the large number of characters involved in most of the Indian languages, in contrast to a mere 52 (2 x 26) characters in English language. In spite of the fact that Hindi, or for that matter Tamil or Telugu etc, have to deal with a large number of basic consonants, which combine, singly or doubly, with a similarly large set of vowels, the four-row keyboard deals with all of them adequately to ensure fast typing. Our trained typists are able to make up to 40 strokes per minute (approximately 15 words per minute) in the most intricate of Indian languages.

There is both a concern and talk in several circles, e.g. computer, telecommunications, and other hi-tech industries, to develop a new type of keyboard layout for Indian languages, with the aim of making the software development task easy enough. In this context, phonetic keyboards have been proposed and are also in vogue already, with a great deal of software available commercially. These keyboards do not make use of hook characters, but then such a keyboard is not well suited for training.

Generally, typewriting is a process based on direct eye-to-limb reflex signal generation, with little thinking going on deep down in the brain. If the typist looks at a letter 'hu', he presses the 'ha' key first, and as he sees a hook 'oo' below it, he strikes the corresponding hook key, and so on. Thus the process can be speeded up with practice and is not easily forgotten. We know of language typists, who even after 30 years of work, continue to type as fast as they did when they were young. Some of them can even talk while typing without missing anything.

Now, consider the phonetic keyboard typist. He has to split each letter mentally into its vowel and consonant parts; find out the consonant key and the hook key, and then press them in proper sequence. Here, the direct eye-to-finger reflex does not take place, because there is a thinking process involved. For example, for typing 'hoom', he has to know the grammer to split that into a 'ha', a 'oo', and an 'mm'. Thus the typist does not pick up speed even after considerable practice, and as a result fatigue sets in quickly for him.

As mentioned earlier, the Indian languages have more characters than those in the English language. The well-known ASCII codes for English are just 128 in number, including several control characters and punctuation marks. Each code occupies one byte and hence the total code space is 7FH for the complete English set. With our Indian languages, we have varied sets of characters. Consonants are quite many, and therefore it is not easy to accommodate all characters within the same set space of 128. For this purpose, the author proposed a scheme of forming such ASCII-like codes for Hindi as well as other Indian languages, which occupy a space of 128 bytes only for each. Based on the standard typewriter format for English, Hindi, Tamil etc, a method

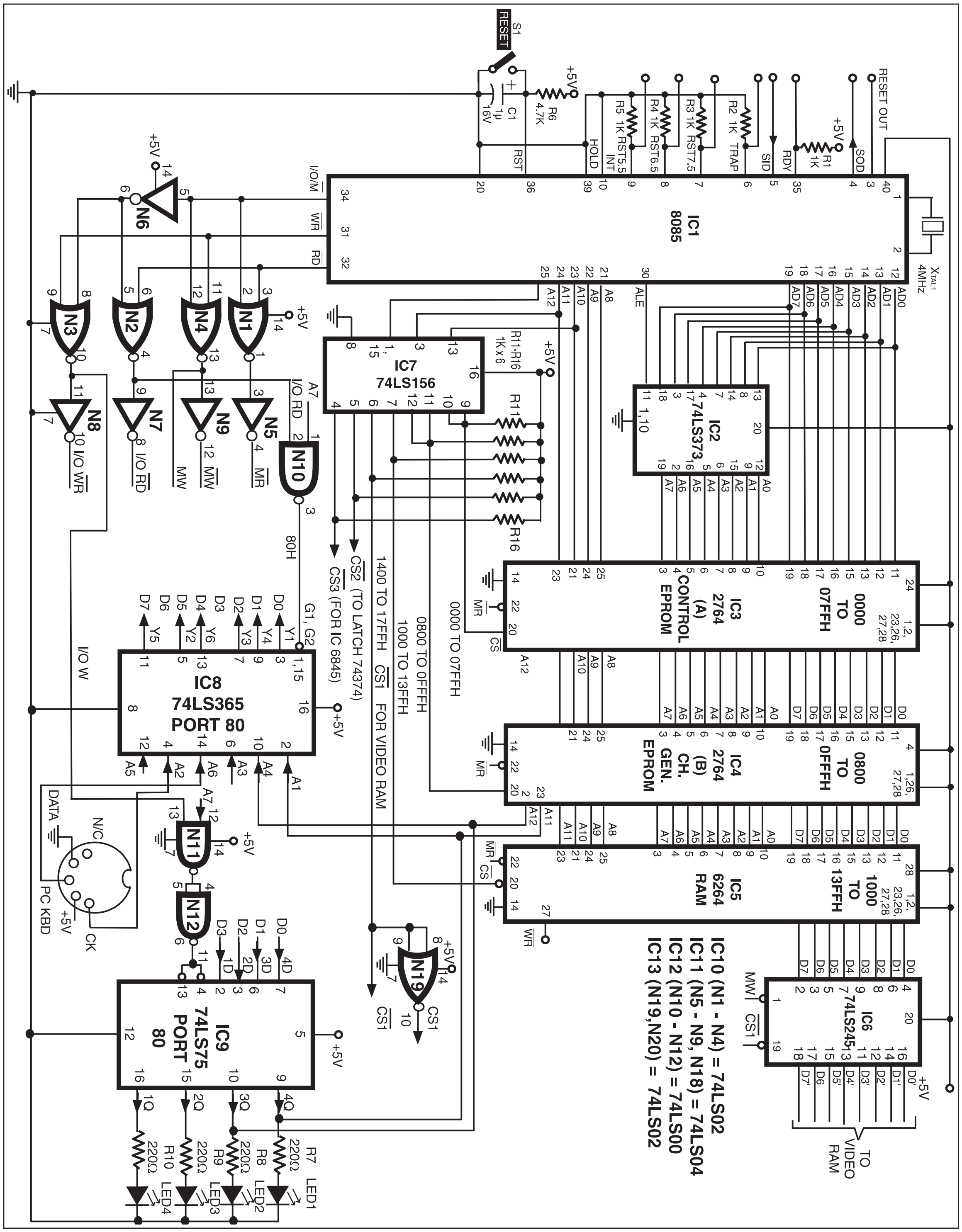

S1 RESET
C1 1µ 16V
R6 4.7K
+5V
R5 1K RST5.5
R4 1K RST6.5
R3 1K RST7.5
R2 1K TRAP
R1 1K
RESET OUT
SOD
RDY
SID
HOLD
INT
RST
IO/M̄
W̄R̄
R̄D̄
IC1 8085
XTAL1 4MHz
ALE
AD0–AD7
A8–A12
IC2 74LS373
A0–A7
IC7 74LS156
R11-R16 1K x 6
IC3 2764 (A) CONTROL EPROM
0000 TO 07FFH
IC4 2764 (B) CH. GEN. EPROM
0800 TO 0FFFH
IC5 6264 RAM
1000 TO 13FFH
M̄R̄
C̄S̄
W̄R̄
IC6 74LS245
MW
C̄S̄1
TO VIDEO RAM
0000 TO 07FFH
0800 TO 0FFFH
1000 TO 13FFH C̄S̄1 FOR VIDEO RAM
1400 TO 17FFH C̄S̄2 (TO LATCH 74374)
C̄S̄3 (FOR IC 6845)
N1
N2
N3
N4
N5
N6
N7
N8
N9
N10
N11
N12
N19
M̄R̄
M̄W̄
MW
IO RD
I/O W̄R̄
I/O RD
I/O W
80H
CS1
C̄S̄1
IC8 74LS365 PORT 80
G1, G2
IC9 74LS75 PORT 80
DATA
N/C
CK
+5V
PC KBD
R7 220Ω LED1
R8 220Ω LED2
R9 220Ω LED3
R10 220Ω LED4
IC10 (N1 - N4) = 74LS02
IC11 (N5 - N9, N18) = 74LS04
IC12 (N10 - N12) = 74LS00
IC13 (N19,N20) = 74LS02

Fig. 1(a): Schematic diagram of 8085 microprocessor based multilingual display system (memories and decoder portion)

for typing text of these and other languages, all simultaneously, is described in this article.

This proposed scheme of coding would not cause any disturbance to the present typists of these languages. They do not have to undergo fresh training for using the proposed keyboard.

The method of making the ASCII code set for any Indian language is based on the typist's existing keyboard. For example, in English, the letter 'd' has its code as 64H. So, the code for the Hindi letter 'ka' (क) is also 64 hex. For Tamil ASCII code 64 hex is used for 'na', and so on… for the other languages. A table of such codes for the three languages Hindi, English, and Tamil is shown in Table I.

Character generator for Indian languages. While characters of any language need a character generator, which puts dots in a rectangular matrix to depict the shape of the character on the screen, the English language, in its simplest form of display, manages to write all its characters within a 5 x 7 matrix. Therefore, within an 8 x 8 matrix, there is enough gap to allow for inter-character and inter-row space. But, in Hindi and our other Indian languages, we cannot manage to use even a simple font within this 8 x 8 matrix (which needs one byte per line or 8 bytes per character). The smallest size in Indian language requires a 12 x 12 matrix, and hence we need 1.5-byte space horizontally and a total of 12 x 1.5 = 18 bytes storage space for each letter. Further, if one wants better looking fonts, for instance like the standard Time Roman of English, more dots need to be shown, and hence the character slot size will be even greater than 12 x 12 dots.

In the proposed scheme a 12 x 12 dot font size is used, both for the dedicated microprocessor based display scheme as well as for the PC based scheme.

Since we have already specified codes

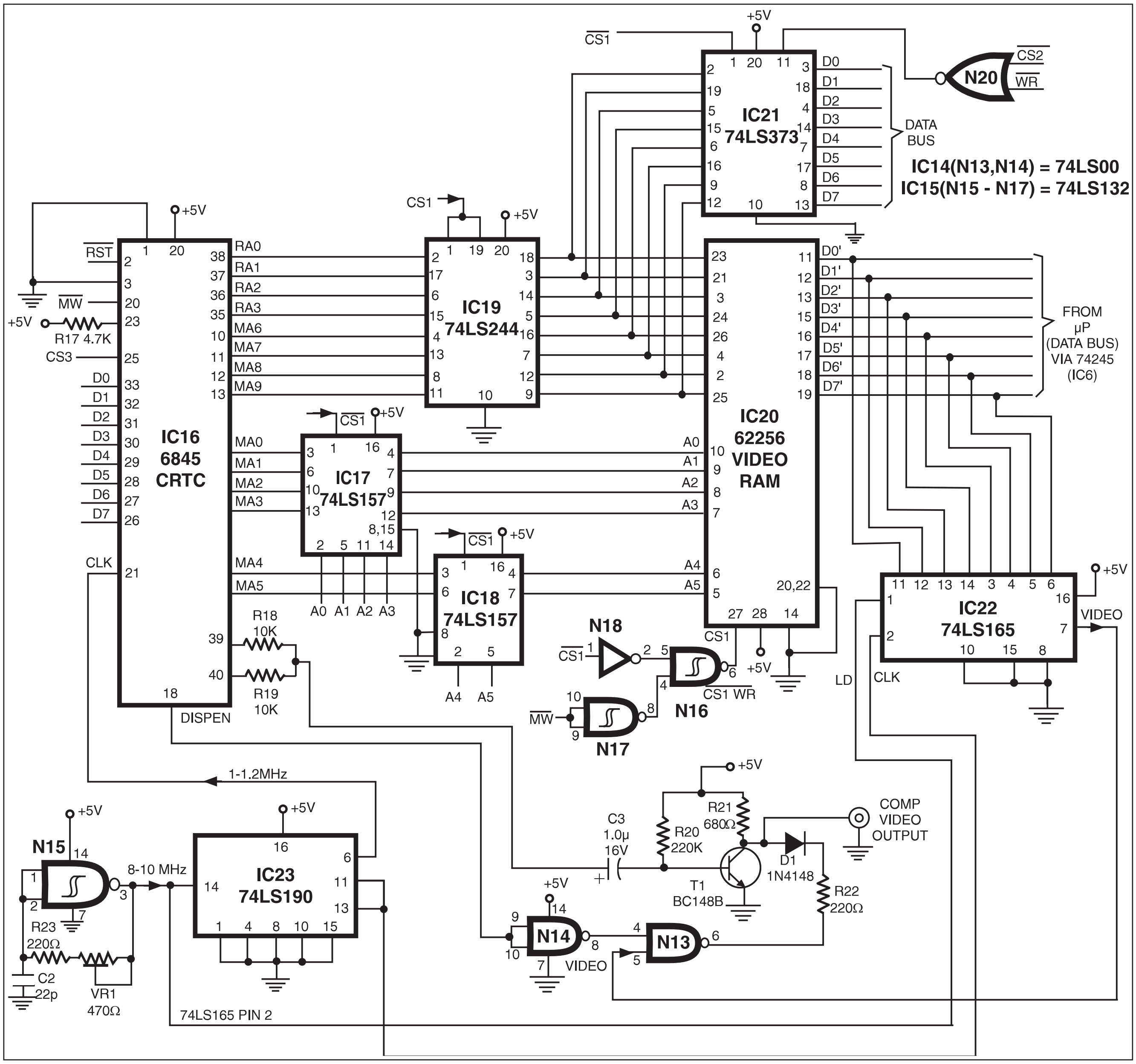

+5V
CS1
IC21
74LS373
D0
D1
D2
D3
D4
D5
D6
D7
DATA BUS
N20
CS2
WR
IC14(N13,N14) = 74LS00
IC15(N15 - N17) = 74LS132
CS1
+5V
IC19
74LS244
IC20
62256
VIDEO
RAM
D0'
D1'
D2'
D3'
D4'
D5'
D6'
D7'
FROM µP (DATA BUS) VIA 74245 (IC6)
RST
MW
R17 4.7K
CS3
IC16
6845
CRTC
RA0
RA1
RA2
RA3
MA6
MA7
MA8
MA9
MA0
MA1
MA2
MA3
MA4
MA5
CLK
DISPEN
IC17
74LS157
IC18
74LS157
A0 A1 A2 A3
A4 A5
R18 10K
R19 10K
N18
N16
N17
CS1 WR
IC22
74LS165
VIDEO
LD
CLK
1-1.2MHz
N15
8-10 MHz
IC23
74LS190
R23 220Ω
C2 22p
VR1 470Ω
74LS165 PIN 2
C3 1.0µ 16V
R20 220K
R21 680Ω
T1 BC148B
D1 1N4148
R22 220Ω
COMP VIDEO OUTPUT
N14
N13
VIDEO

Fig. 1(b): 6845 character and video generator portion of multilingual display system

for all the text characters in a manner as shown in Table I, it is now required to put the dots for each code into the character generator. Thus, we specify text only by its codes. For example, for English letter ADD, the code is 41, 44, 44. The actual dots are available within the character generator, and hence the space needed for storing text is just limited to the characters or strokes. But, in other schemes generally employed in other software, the text is stored as graphic patterns and hence quite a large amount of memory is needed.

Now take a look at the keyboard—row by row. The top row contains numerals. Next row starts with 'Q' and 'q' (in English) and is used for 'PHA' and 'u' hook in Hindi with and without shift key pressing, respectively. So, these have the same ASCII equivalent codes, i.e., 51 hex and 71 hex, respectively.

The character generator is just a list of dots for the characters in an order. It does not necessarily require any hardware. Though such a list of dots, if stored in this order in an EPROM, can be a hardware component. In the PC based design, this is just a file containing the dot patterns, while in the design using a dedicated CRT controller with a microprocessor, this is actually a hardware component, i.e. an EPROM.

Addressing mode for character generator file scheme. Let us take letter 'd' in Hindi, which has the ASCII-equivalent code of 64 hex. We need a high address and a low address as usual. Supposing the high address for Hindi starts at page 10 and it goes up to page17 (with each page comprising 256 bytes). In page 10, locations 00 through 7F are used for storing the low addresses while 80 through FF are used for storing high addresses for each character. Accordingly for 'd', the low address is stored at 1064 and the high address at 10 E4 (1064 + 80 = 10E4). If we have a look at the hex contents of these two locations, we shall find:

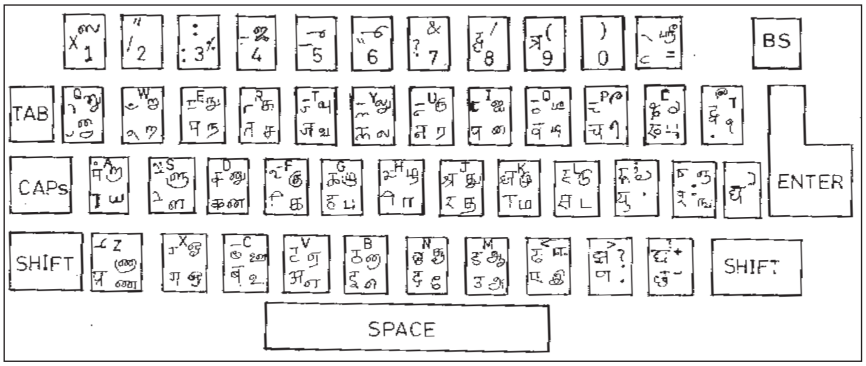


Fig. 2: Keyboard for English, Hindi, and Tamil languages

Address	Data	Comments
10 64	B4	LS Byte of Address
10 E4	04	MS Byte of Address

Note: The page/location-wise hex contents of file containing these indirect addresses and dot codes are given in EFY-CD accompanying this EP volume.

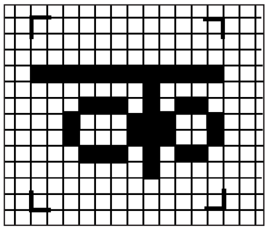


Fig. 3: Character code generation in 12x12 format

It means that the actual code is starting from the address 14 B4 (1000 + 04B4). So, this is indirect addressing mode. The actual hex values of the dots for each of the twelve lines (in 18 bytes) for 'd' are stored at consecutive locations, starting with address 14B4, as stated earlier.

This indirect addressing scheme is used because it enables us to use different types of fonts later, by just pointing to a different address table. Also, the address table corresponds to the ASCII code, just as in 'd', with 64 being the code. The table low-address is also 10 64 (hex) and the high address equals (10 64 + 80), and so on. Further, we need not even write these codes in any order, because we are at liberty to write any address in the look-up table! (That works really fine when we ask several persons to prepare the font codes and mix them together!)

How exactly does one prepare the table of dots? Take a graph sheet and make 12 x 12 rectangles. Paint the character in this slot, as it would appear when printed. The dots must be darkened to show up the character. Positioning is important; one has to make sure that hooks, if appended to this character, will fall within the space of 12 x 12 without cutting or merging. For example, 'kra' and 'ku' and 'koo' writing must be possible by adding these respective hooks to the character, if required. Then, looking at Fig. 3, for 'ka' (क), we read the dots (in nibbles) in complimentary form and write them down as under:

Line 1 … 000
Line 2 … 000
Line 3 … 000
Line 4 … FFF
Line 5 … 010
Line 6 … 1D6
Line 7 … 139
Line 8 … 139
Line 9 … 1D6
Line 10 … 010
Line 11 … 000
Line 12 … 000

The values are complemented and written as two nibbles at a location. Complementing is necessary to make FF appear as blank on the screen. The table thus obtained for 'ka' (क), occupying 18 bytes (36 nibbles), is shown below:

Address	**Code**
14 B4	FF FF FF FF F0 00 FE FE
14 BC	29 EC 6E EE F0 1E FE FF
14 C5	FF FF

The table for each language will not need more than 8 pages in an EPROM or 2k bytes in a file. Thus in one 2764, it is possible to dump the character generator codes for four languages, say English and three other Indian languages.

PC based design

In the PC based design, the software written in BASIC loads a table of codes from a file. This file is having the same data as the EPROM in the dedicated microprocessor based design.

The software for the computer based display is made simple enough to be used with any PC, without the need for large memory or disk space. It could work even with one floppy system, with just a 386 based PC even. The C++ or other languages are more library oriented and require a hard disk to work with. The C++ library already has different fonts and sizes for English and we use this library to write varied size of text on screen in English. But, until the library for Indian languages becomes similarly available, the C++ is of no use here. Software makers would have made fonts for several Indian languages, but they have not put them in a library form as the promoters of the 'C' language did for English language. No libraries for video display for Indian languages exploiting the compactness of the C++ are currently available. Until then, we need to write code as and when we want, and hence BASIC is better suited.

Hence this program has been developed in BASIC rather than C++ or other Windows based software, for the simple reason that it could be used for education by institutes possessing even simple PC-AT computers.

The program for a computer based Hindi, English, and Tamil display is given in BASIC language. This works on an IBM PC with no restrictions of memory, and can work directly from a single floppy. This minimises the cost of the computer system for the display. The program given is based on Turbo BASIC version 1.0, but the same is compatible with Quick BASIC or other similar BASIC interpreter-compilers working on the PC.

The program first loads the file for characters for four languages. Then the user is asked to enter F1 to F4 keys to select the language and S or L (capital) for selecting small or large-size font. Any time during typing text on screen, the function keys may be pressed to change the language, if desired.

F1 … Tamil
F2 … English
F3 … Tamil
F4 … Fourth language

The character generator here is a file. It contains the same set of codes that are used for the hardware based design that follows. This is stored as file 'chtamil2', which is read and saved in the array 'ad (lan%,I%)' that stores the dots. This array is used in the program throughout.

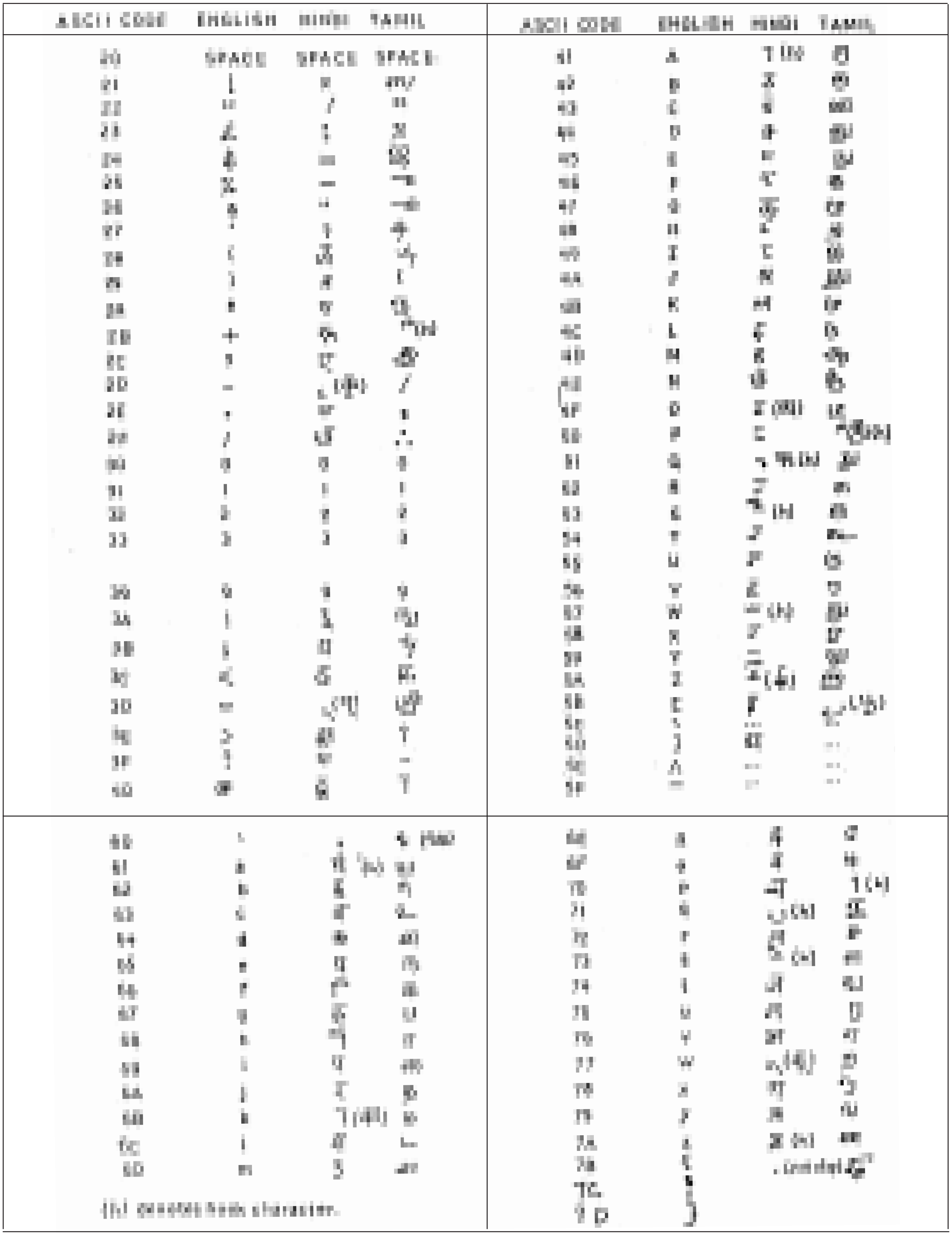
That makes it convenient to type several sentences, up to 30 in a VGA monitor screen on the computer, and then on the next screen. For example, on one screen, a Hindi poem could be typed together with its English and Tamil translations.

Printing a page is simply done using the 'Graphics.com' program, which comes with DOS. This must be run prior to running BASIC as:

```
A>    Graphics
```

Then

TABLE I: ASCII Key Codes for English, Hindi, and Tamil languages



(h) denotes hindi character.

Program in BASIC for Computer Based Display for English, Hindi, Tamil, etc Languages

```
dim C(3,2048),ad(3,257),d(12),q(8)
open “chtamil2” for random as #1 len=1
field #1, 1 as A$
cls
total%= LOf(1)
for lan%=1 to 3
for i%= 0 to 255 ‘total%
get #1  ‘get one byte
rem pick and store the address for all 256 codes
a= asc(a$)
‘ print a;
ad(lan%,i%) = a
rem low address in 00-7F and high add. in 80 -FF
n=n+1
next
for i%= 3 to 1024*2 -254’total% -256
get #1
‘? i%-3,asc(a$)
c(lan%,i%-3)= asc(a$)
next
next lan%
CLOSE #1
lang%=2
on key(1) gosub 500:key(1) on
on key(2) gosub 510:key(2) on
on key(3) gosub 520:key(3) on
ON KEY(11) GOSUB 540: KEY(11) ON
ON KEY(12) GOSUB 550: KEY(12) ON
ON KEY(13) GOSUB 560: KEY(13) ON
ON KEY(14) GOSUB 570: KEY(14) ON
690 CLS: locate 10,15: ?”Type  F1 key for Tamil, F2 for English and F3 Hindi”
? “Want small or large size font ? Press S or L”
ad$= input$(1)
if ad$=”S” then screen 12 : goto 700
if ad$=”L” then screen 2: goto 700
goto 690
700 cls:   s=0:row=0
i=0
s=1:R=1:L=0
hook=0
2 if lang%=2 then hook=0
if hook=1 then s=s-1
if s<0 then row=row-1: s=40
21 A$=inPUT$(1):   ‘got a key
N=  ASC(A$)
‘locate 20,51 :print n
‘goto 2
REM remove old cursor
x=s*12:y=row*16+11
for jj%=1 to 10
pset(x+jj%,y),0 :next
if S>40 then s=0 :Row=Row+1
if n=8 then s=s-1:gosub 300 ‘backspace
if N=32 then s=s+1:gosub cur: goto 2    ‘space
if N=10 then row = row + 1 :goto 2   ‘return
if N=13 then row=row +1:s=0: goto 2 ‘line feed
if lang%=1 then
REM This is for TAMIL HOOK characters
if N=80 then hook=1  :goto 23
if N=112 then hook=1 :goto 23
if N=91 then hook=1   :goto 23
if N= 123 then hook=1        :goto 23
if N=43 then hook =1:goto 23
if N= 59 then hook=1:goto 23
hook=0
end if
if lang%=3 then gosub 400
‘ if N= 8      then s=s-1 : goto 300: ‘hook=1: goto 23
‘if n=28 then s=s+1:goto 300
‘if n=30 then row=row+1:goto 2
hook =0
23 n1= ad(lang%,n) :n5=n1
n2=ad(lang%,n+128)
n3=(n2-1)*256 +n1
N1=(n3):
j=0:   for i1= 0 to 17 step 3
i=i1
d(j) = 16*c(lang%,n1+i) + C(lang%,n1+i+1)\ 16
d(j+1)  =256*(c(lang%,n1+i+1)  mod  16)  + c(lang%,n1+i+2)
j=j+2
next i1  :j=0
for i = 0 to 11
‘?i; hex$(d(i))
next :’ ?n,n5,n2
for l =0 to 11
n= d(l):i=0   :k%=15
gosub 10  ‘put pixels
next l
s=s+1
gosub cur
goto 2
‘put cursor
cur:
x=s*12:y=row*16+11
for jj%=1 to 10
pset(x+jj%,y),15 :next
return
end
rem given a number <256*8 put pixels
10  r =   n mod 2
‘? r ;
q(i)=r
x=S*12: y=Row*16+l
100 i=i+1
if i >= 12 then 200
n=n\2
goto 10
200 for j%=0 to 11
if q(11-j%)=0 then pset(x,y),15
x=x+1
next
return
300 for l =0 to 12
x=s*12: y =row *16+l
for j% = 1 to 12
‘ n= 4096 : i=0
pset (x+j%,y),0
‘gosub 40  ‘put pixels
next j%
next l
goto 2
40  r =   n mod 2
‘? r ;
q(i)=r
x=S*12: y=Row*16+l
101 i=i+1
if i >= 12 then 201
n=n\2
goto 10
201  s=s-1
for j%=0 to 11
‘pset(x,y),0
if q(11-j%)=1 then pset(x,y),0
x=x+1
next
‘t$=input$(1)
return
500 rem language selection
lang%=1
return
510 lang%=2:return
520 lang%=3:return
REM HINDI HOOKs
400 if n=45 then hook=1:goto 630
if n=61  then  hook=1:goto  23  ‘; The  sanskrit hook for word ends
if n=81 then hook=1: goto 23  ‘ ; The adjunct to “Pa” to make “PPa”
if n=113 then hook=1 :goto 610 ‘; The u hook as in Pushpa
if n=65 then hook=1 :goto 23   ‘; the “n” part of “Gend”
if n=83 then hook=1 : goto 23  ‘; the  Ttha part of kuttha
if n=87  then  hook=1:   goto  23   ‘; The  OOm symbol as in hoom
if n=90  then  hook=1:  goto  23    ‘;as  in  “rka”, the top “rr”
if n=119 then hook=1:goto 620  ‘; oo as in Koo
if n=97  then  hook=1:  goto  23  ‘;dot  top  as  in “mm”
if  n=115  then  hook=1:goto  23     ‘;  The  “Ey” hook as in “Gend”
if n=122  then  hook=1:  goto  23   ‘;  “Pna”  as  in APna
return
540 gosub remcur:ROW=ROW-1  :RETURN
550  GOSUB REMCUR :S=S+1:  RETURN
560 GOSUB REMCUR: S=S-1:RETURN
570  GOSUB  REMCUR:  ROW=ROW+1: RETURN
600 rem hindi 13th line hook points
610 x= s*12: y= row*16+12
i =3
pset(x+i,y),15: i=8:pset(x+i,y),15:goto 23
620 x=s*12: y=row*16+12
i =12
pset(x+i,y),15
goto 23
630 x=s*12: y=row*16+12
i=12:
pset(x+i,y),15:goto 23
REMCUR:
x=s*12:y=row*16+11
for jj%=1 to 10
pset(x+jj%,y),0 :next
RETURN
```

```
A>     BASIC
```

After entering text on one page, it can be printed using shift + print screen keys.

This program is a simple version, and other versions with file storage and printing facility can be prepared with extra statements.

For the use of the typist, it is necessary to write the character strokes of the respective language(s) on key tops of the IBM PC keyboard, at least during the initial typing stage.

Note: *The program in BASIC, together with its compiled .EXE file, are included in the accompanying CD. The 8 kilo-byte ‘chtamil2’ file containing the dot patterns for the four languages is required to be present in the working directory for the PC based program to work. This file is also included in the CD.*

Dedicated display unit design

A unit of this type is a low-cost solution for a public display. The circuits described in this section can be assembled on an integrated single board. The TV display of a 36cm (14-inch) monitor, and the same video signal can be used for multiple positions.

This involves a simple 8085 microprocessor and an additional CRT controller. The dedicated CRT controller chip 6845 has been popular ever since it was first used by the IBM in its display controller cards. The circuit of this board is shown in Figs 1(a) and 1(b). It comprises:

1. Video generation circuitry including dot and character clocks.
2. Pixel or video RAM.
3. Character dot pattern EPROM for four languages
4. 8085 firmware on EPROM for four languages
5. 6845 CRT controller IC.

Fig. 1(a) shows the 8085 microprocessor and its signals. Crystal of 4 MHz between its pins 1 and 2 provides the clock for the processor to tick and work. Reset pin 36 is connected to get itself reset upon power on. Manual resetting is also possible using reset switch S1. The address-cum-data signal lines AD0-AD7 are connected to a 74LS373 latch to separate the address signals A0-A7, using the ALE pulse from pin 30 of 8085. The data-bus connects to all devices such as EPROMs, RAM, and the 74245 bidirectional transceiver. Some of the data lines are also connected to output port (at I/O address 80) using a 7475 IC for providing four bits of outputs (D0' to D3'). The input port (also at I/O address 80) employing a 74365 caters to six bits of input. The PC keyboard data and clock signals are connected to data bus via two of its input lines.

The Address decoder is a 74156, which has open collector outputs. It enables one or two of the chip select decoded signals to be combined by just joining them (in wired-OR fashion). Using the address lines A12, A11, and A10, the decoder provides eight chip select signals for the address ranges as shown in the figure. Each output covers a 1k memory range. Thus pins 9 and 10 (shorted) serve as the chip select signal for EPROM1 covering a 2k memory address space. (Although we use 2764, an 8k EPROM actually since now-a-days only 8k EPROM ICs are easily available and easily programmable while 2k capacity EPROMs are almost obsolete and difficult to program—we need 25V programming pulse etc.) The address range for EPROM-1 is 0000-07FF. Similarly, pins 11 and 12 are joined together to provide address range from 0800-0FFF. This is the chip select signal for the second ERPOM, which stores the character dot patterns for the four languages. This too is a 2764, and the chip select signal ranges only 2k, but the total 8k range is for storing four language dot patterns, each in one of the 2k ranges. Thus the selection of the range/language is done by signals from the 7475-output port bits D0' and D1', which are wired to A11 and A12 address lines of the 2764 character generator EPROM, which can be selected using the function keys as explained below.

The input port 80H, using 74365, is for reading the language selection mode. The language is selected by pressing keys F1 through F4 on the PC's keyboard. This causes bits D0 and D1 to be output on the 7475 output ports to indicate the selection by two of the LEDs wired at its output. Two other bits, D4 and D5 of this input port, are connected to the data and clock pins of the IBM PC keyboard connector.

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:	
IC1	- 8085 8-bit microprocessor
IC2, IC21	- 74LS373 octal transparent latch
IC3, IC4	- 2764 8k byte EPROM
IC5	- 6264 8k byte RAM
IC6	- 74LS245 octal transceiver
IC7	- 74LS156 dual 2-line to 4-line decoder
IC8	- 74LS365 8-line to 1-line multiplexer
IC9	- 74LS75 4-bit latch
IC10, IC13	- 74LS02 quad NOR gate
IC11	- 74LS04 hex inverter
IC12, IC14	- 74LS00 quad NAND gate
IC15	- 74LS132 quad NAND Schmitt trigger
IC16	- 6845 CRT controller
IC17, IC18	- 74LS157 quad 2-line to 1-line data selector
IC19	- 74LS244 octal bus buffer/driver
IC20	- 62256, 32k byte static RAM
IC22	- 74LS165 parallel-in shift register
IC23	- 74LS190 synchronous decade counter
T1	- BC148B npn transistor
D1	- 1N4148 switching diode
LED1-LED4	- Red LEDs
Resistors (all ¼-watt, ±5% carbon, unless stated otherwise):	
R1-R5 R11-R16,	- 1-kilo-ohm
R6, R17	- 4.7-kilo-ohm
R7-R10, R22-R23	- 220-ohm
R18, R19	- 10-kilo-ohm
R20	- 220-kilo-ohm
R21	- 680-ohm
VR1	- 470-ohm preset
Capacitors:	
C1, C3	- 1 µF, 16V electrolytic
C2	- 22 pF ceramic disk
Miscellaneous:	
XTAL1	- 4 MHz crystal
PCKBD	- Keyboard interface connector

The RAM chip 6264 (8k memory) is used in the circuit. However, only 1k (1000-13FF) of its address space is utilised. So, its 'high' address pins A11 and A12 are permanently made 'high'.

A chip-select $\overline{1}$ (CS1) is obtained from pin 6 of the 74156 IC, which covers 1400-17FF address range. This goes to select the video RAM 62256. Though a 62256 of 32k memory space is used, only 16k memory is actually utilised. Its pin 1 is made permanent 'high'. This chip select uses the address lines A0 to A5 having an address range of just 64 bytes, just the low order memory of the video RAM.

A chip-select 2 ($\overline{CS2}$) signal is used to select a 74LS373 latch used with the video RAM circuit. This is used to supply the high order addresses (A6 through A13) to the video memory.

An additional chip-select $\overline{3}$ (CS3) signal is used for accessing the 6845 CRT controller to program its mode of operation, so as to get a raster of 312 lines and 50 Hz frame frequency.

In the earlier design by the authors, an ASCII keyboard had been used. This ASCII keyboard used a dedicated keyboard controller IC, and the keys were wired in the fashion of the typewriter keys, making use of switches fixed on to a plain PCB and wiring the contacts to the IC as per its data sheet. There are ICs for making such an ASCII keyboard. The AY3-5376 is one such IC. The ASCII code for the key pressed is output as a 7-bit code by this IC.

In this new design, the authors have used an IBM PC (AT) keyboard. The authors have given such a PC keyboard for their Home Computer Project (Refer EFY Electronics Projects, Vol. 11). This was a keyboard of the older type, the XT keyboard, but now the freely available AT keyboard has been employed for the current design.

The keyboard is labeled with English, Hindi, and Tamil characters, as per the standard typewriter format. The format for Hindi and Tamil characters are shown in Fig. 3.

The 8085 generates the control signals IO/$\overline{M}$, WR, RD (active low signals). These are used in conjunction with 74LS02 and 74LS00 gates shown in Fig. 2(a) to obtain separate read and write control signals for memory or input-output, i.e. $\overline{MR}$, $\overline{MW}$, $\overline{IOR}$, $\overline{IOW}$ for use in the circuit.

The 6845 is a programmable CRT controller, which can be programmed

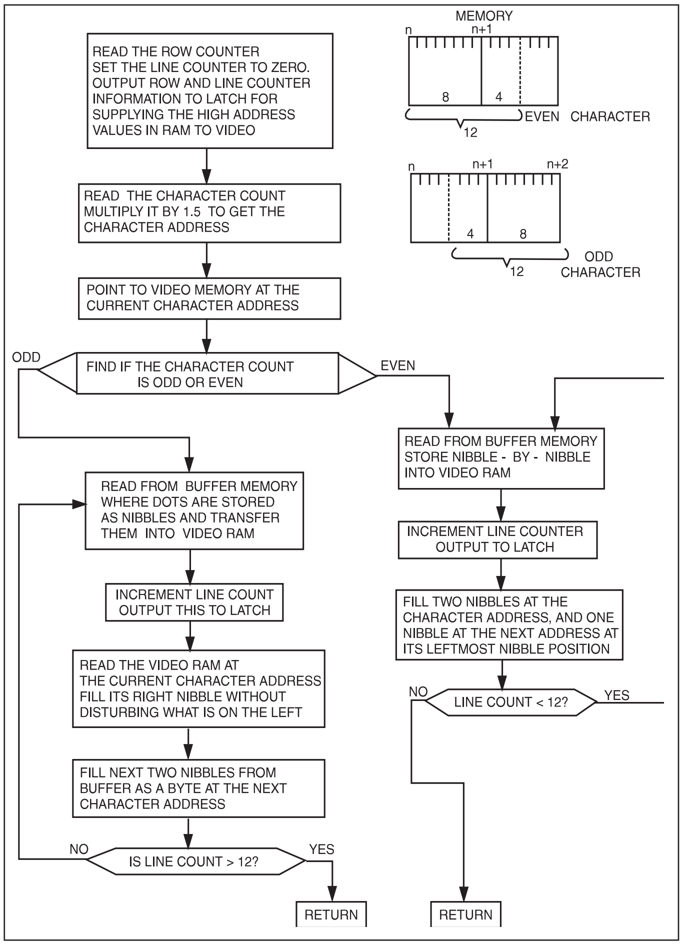

MEMORY
n
n+1
8
4
12
EVEN CHARACTER
n
n+1
n+2
4
8
12
ODD CHARACTER
READ THE ROW COUNTER SET THE LINE COUNTER TO ZERO. OUTPUT ROW AND LINE COUNTER INFORMATION TO LATCH FOR SUPPLYING THE HIGH ADDRESS VALUES IN RAM TO VIDEO
READ THE CHARACTER COUNT MULTIPLY IT BY 1.5 TO GET THE CHARACTER ADDRESS
POINT TO VIDEO MEMORY AT THE CURRENT CHARACTER ADDRESS
ODD
FIND IF THE CHARACTER COUNT IS ODD OR EVEN
EVEN
READ FROM BUFFER MEMORY STORE NIBBLE - BY - NIBBLE INTO VIDEO RAM
READ FROM BUFFER MEMORY WHERE DOTS ARE STORED AS NIBBLES AND TRANSFER THEM INTO VIDEO RAM
INCREMENT LINE COUNTER OUTPUT TO LATCH
INCREMENT LINE COUNT OUTPUT THIS TO LATCH
FILL TWO NIBBLES AT THE CHARACTER ADDRESS, AND ONE NIBBLE AT THE NEXT ADDRESS AT ITS LEFTMOST NIBBLE POSITION
READ THE VIDEO RAM AT THE CURRENT CHARACTER ADDRESS FILL ITS RIGHT NIBBLE WITHOUT DISTURBING WHAT IS ON THE LEFT
NO
LINE COUNT < 12?
YES
FILL NEXT TWO NIBBLES FROM BUFFER AS A BYTE AT THE NEXT CHARACTER ADDRESS
NO
IS LINE COUNT > 12?
YES
RETURN
RETURN

Fig. 4: Video RAM storage flowchart

so as to generate a raster with the desired number of horizontal and vertical raster lines [refer Fig. 1(b)]. For detailed explanation of its programming method for an application using 6845 CRTC, you can refer chapter 16 of the book 'Learn to Use Microprocessors' published by 'EFY.'

There are two registers in the 6845, which are selected with the help of address line A0. When A0 and CS3 are low (selected), the program code accesses the first register. If A0 is high and CS3 is low, the second of the two registers is accessed. In addition, the 6845 has 16 internal registers. The selection of the internal registers for writing is done via the first register while the second register is written with the data to be transferred into the selected register.

Here, we need 16 lines for a character slot. The width of each character slot is only 8, because that is what the shift register can handle. But our multilingual characters themselves are written in a font of size 12 x 16. Therefore the characters classification for the 6845 does not really mean the actual characters shown, because we have to use one-and-a-half character slots for each of the multilingual character.

This was the problem faced earlier while attempting use of CRT controller chip (6845). Therefore the authors went in to design a separate CRT controller circuit using discrete CMOS ICs, which was successfully tested. Later, at the behest of EFY (proposing use of dedicated chips to make it a standalone compact project), the authors developed the present modified circuit using the 6845 CRT controller itself.

Once programmed, the 6845 CRTC generates the vertical and horizontal sync signals for the raster at pins 39 and 40, respectively. The 6845 also provides MA0-MA13 signals for addressing the video memory. The video memory is used here to store the dot patterns for the data displayed on the TV screen. The video memory address lines and raster address lines have been used as under:

MA0-MA5 (6 lines) .. To choose one of 64 character slots in every character row.

RA0-RA3 (4 lines) .. To select one among the 16 lines on each such row.

MA6-MA9 (4 lines) .. To select one of the 16 character rows on screen.

During each character row, the 16 row lines are selected using RA0-RA3 signals, which are sequentially incremented from 0 to 15. This mode of wiring the CRT controller to the video memory is not the usual one. It is unlike the one referred to in chapter 16 of 'Learn to Use Microprocessors' book mentioned earlier. There, the MA0, MA1, … lines address the video RAM, but the video RAM data goes to the character generator. The character generator gets the RA0-RA3, to let it know which line of the character the data is to be output at any instant—because there are many lines of dots for each character. Here the character generator is not used, but the video RAM directly stores the dot points of the display text. They are written by the program into the video RAM. Here RA0-RA3 are the four line-count signals L1 to L4 for the 16 lines, which are the heights of each Indian language character (here it includes English as well).

The four row-count signals MA6-MA9 are used here for generating 16 rows of text per screen. At the end of the 64th character byte (representing 43rd character) display, the display enable signal is blanked. This is to cater to the horizontal flyback period. The sync signal for the video output is obtained by combining the H-sync and V-sync outputs from pins 39 and 40 of CRTC via two resistors (of 10k each) and then coupling it to the base of transistor BC148B to invert the sync signals at its collector.

The video signal is the dot pattern obtained from the shift register IC 74LS165. This register is loaded at each character-clock beginning. The shifting is accomplished by the dot clock. Pin 7 of IC 74LS165 outputs the dot pattern. This is combined with the sync signal at the collector of transistor BC148B using a diode and a series resistor. Composite video output is available for connection to the TV monitor from the collector of transistor BC148B.

Video RAM. The 62256 is a 32k x 8-bit static RAM; but only 16k address space has been used here, which makes for a raster of 512 x 256 pixels, or 128k pixels, or 128/8=16kB. The RAM 62256 has A0-A13 address lines for its 16k capacity. The MA0-MA5, the character-count outputs, are given to its first six address pins A0-A5. Either the 8085 or these character-count signals can select these low-order video memory addresses. A set of quad 2-line to 1-line data selector ICs 7 and 8 (74157) is used under control of CS1 (not $\overline{\text{CS1}}$) to switch between them. Normally, the MA0-MA5 lines have access so as to continuously display the video memory contents, but when the 8085 writes fresh data, it switches to A0-A5.

Memory access of the video RAM is done on the basis of a high-order address and a low-order address. The eight high-order address values are written into

74LS373 latch (IC21) by the 8085 using CS2. The output enable of this latch is under control of $\overline{CS1}$, so that the data previously written into this latch can be accessed when $\overline{CS1}$ is enabled (active low). The latched outputs of IC21 are for selecting the A6 to A13 pins of the video memory.

By this scheme of low-order and high-order addressing, the memory group of 16k of video RAM is conveniently accessed by just 2k space of the 8085's memory area. Further, it also facilitates software writing. The high address data is that of the row and line-select information. These are decided by the software based on what row of character and which line of that row is to be filled from the character code EPROM, as a specific key is depressed. The character slot information in any row is then written by a memory write into the low-order address of the RAM.

By using 74LS373, the data into the latch is written with its output in tri-state condition (pin 1 high). When pin 1 of 74LS373 is enabled (low), the RAM chip is written with the character slot data by the 8085 into its low-order address. Normally, the lines RA0-RA3 and MA6-MA9 are extended by buffer IC 74LS244 to the RAM high address lines if CS1 is low. If CS1 goes high, the buffer is tri-stated at its output, allowing the latch (74LS373) data to reach the address lines A6-A13 of the video RAM chip. In this way, the video RAM is addressable by both the CRTC 6845 circuitry as well as the 8085, when a new key is typed.

The data bus lines are likewise connected by a 74LS245 bidirectional buffer. The pixel data for the typed-in character must be written into the video RAM, after reading the table of dots stored in the character code EPROM and writing the same into the video RAM. The table of data (dots) for each language occupies a 2k memory area, and hence four languages can be selected by address lines A11 and A12 of the character generator EPROM. For each character currently being entered, the set of pixels are read byte-by-byte, stored as nibbles temporarily in buffer memory by the program, and then output into the video RAM nibble-by-nibble.

If desired, four languages may be typed on the same row using function keys F1-F4 under software control. The selected language is indicated by two of the LEDs (LED1 and LED2) at the output of 7475.

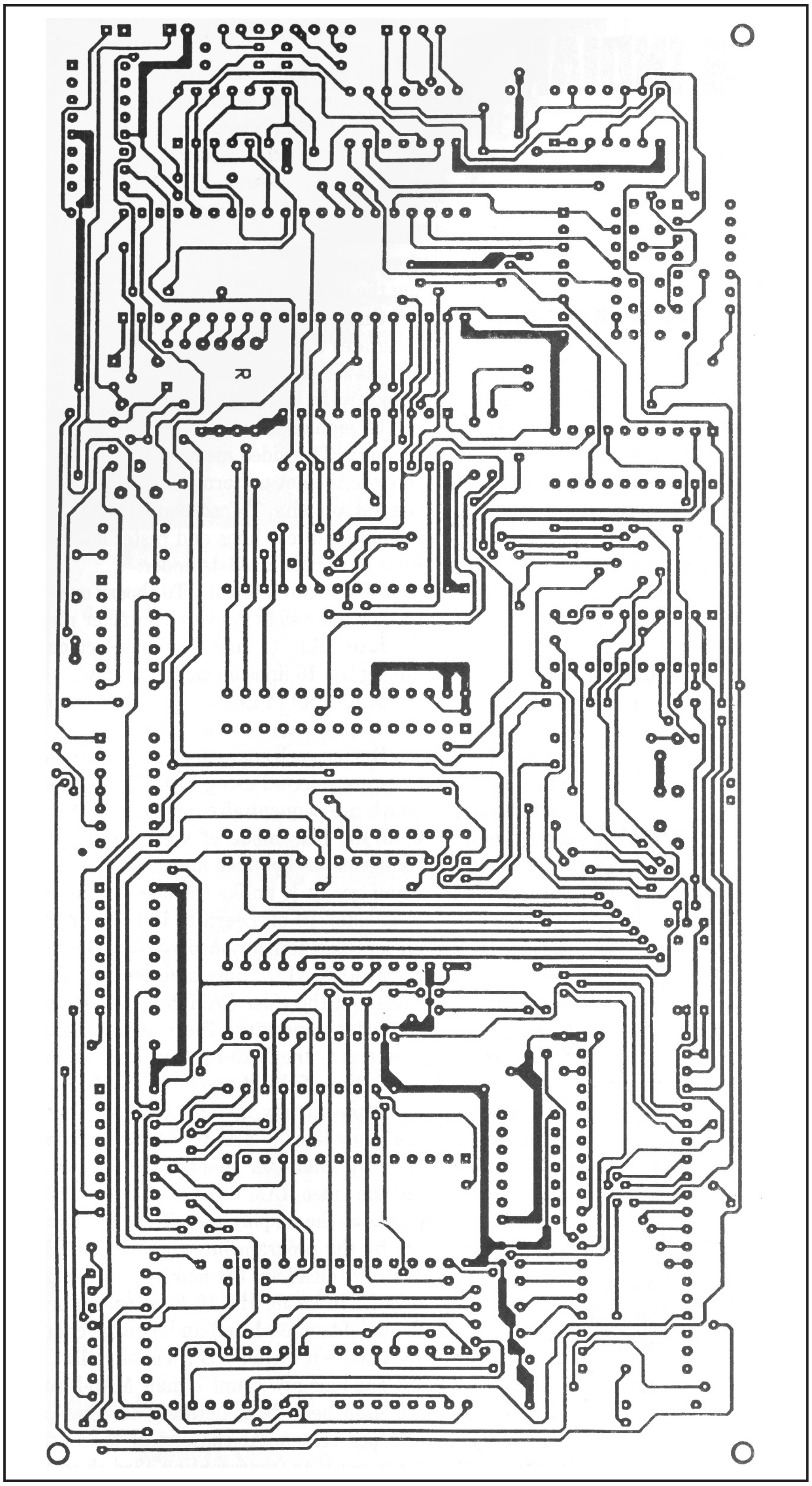


Fig. 5: Actual-size, component-side track layout for the schematic diagram of Fig. 1

The same outputs are also wired to the A11 and A12 address lines of the character EPROM. You may press F1 and start typing in English, then press F2 and start typing in Hindi, and so on.

The 74165 video shift register (commonly used with all CRT display-based circuits) is used to shift the dot signals loaded in parallel (8 bits) from the memory into a serial form to get the actual video

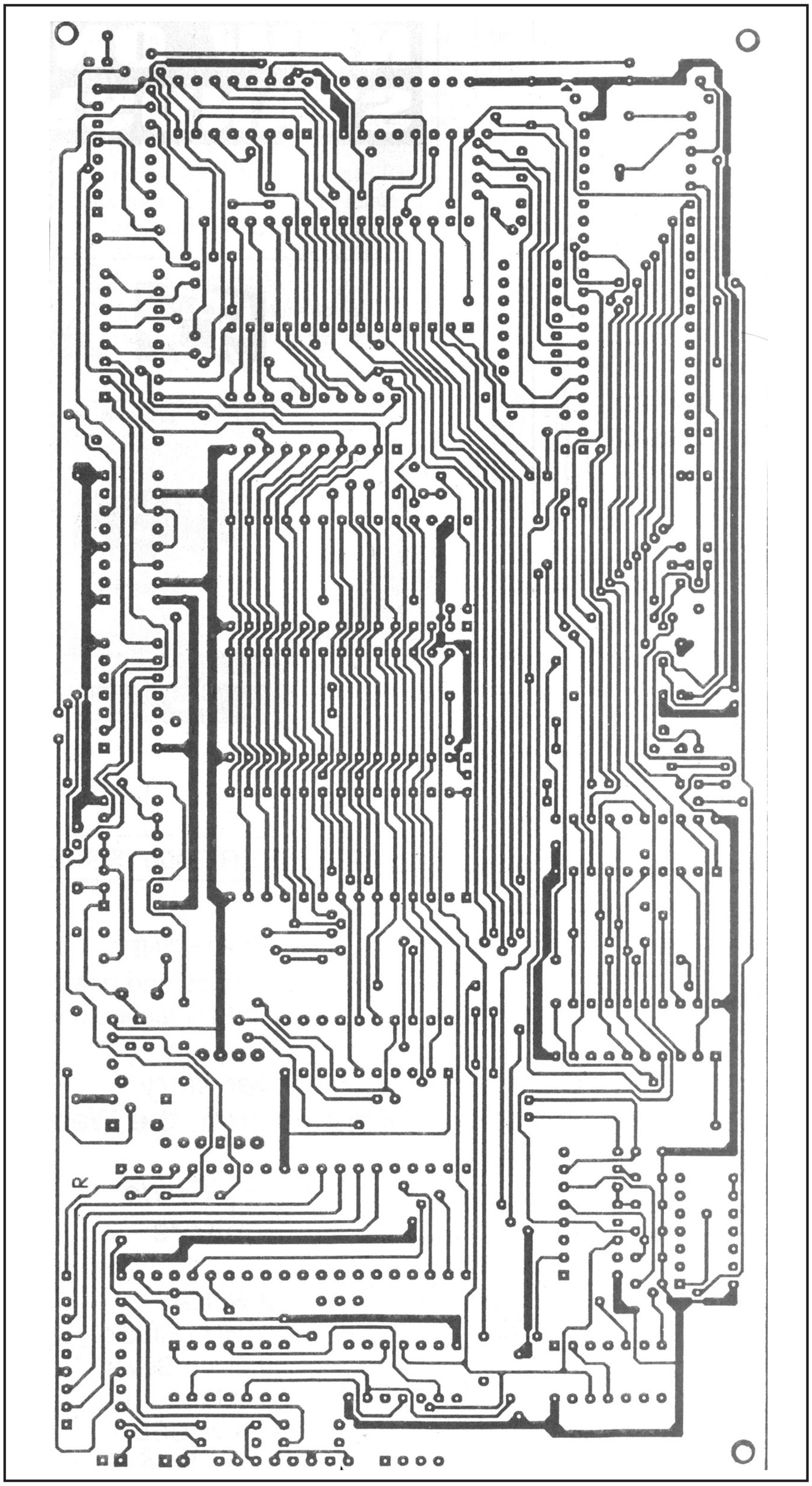


Fig. 6: Actual-size, solder-side track layout

line signal.

In Fig. 1(b), the dot clock is generated using a 74132 gate (N15) in conjunction with a capacitor-resistor combination of R23 (and preset VR1) and C2 to function as an oscillator. The frequency is about 10 MHz, which is divided by 8 in 74190 divider/counter. This gives the character-slot clock. The load command to the shift register is obtained from pin 11/13 (shorted) of the 74190 IC which goes to pin 2 of IC 74LS165. The 2764 EPROM is filled with control program at its highest address range of 2k (i.e. 1800-1FFF), because its pins A11 and A12 are pulled high.

Basic principles

The basic principles of Indian language display software are summarised below while a flowchart for storage of pixel data in the video RAM is given in Fig. 4.

1. Multiple language fonts are stored in an 8k or bigger memory space, if necessary. EPROM occupies 2k locations for each font of a language. Thus, four language fonts can be stored using 8k EPROM.

2. Since 12 horizontal dots per character are insufficient for an Indian language, a 12 x 12 matrix is chosen, though English appears as an expanded font. The hook characters in Hindi like 'Hu' and 'hoo' need one more dot—the 13th dot—vertically. The hook characters are non-space-moving characters in the standard typewriters of the Indian languages. Particularly in Hindi, there are multiple hooks, such as in 'hoom'. In the typewriter, the hook characters do not advance (move space) after they are typed. The program checks the code, and if it is a hook code, it does not write immediately the dots corresponding to that hook into the video memory, but waits for the succeeding keyboard stroke(s) for a non-hook character to follow before shifting the cursor. Thereupon, the program combines the dot pattern of the hook characters with that of the following main character, and then places the net dot pattern into the video memory.

3. Since memory contains only 8 bits per location, one-and-a-half memory locations are assigned for each character shown on screen, thus providing 12 dots per horizontal row in TV format. (This is more like the computer format.) In this way, even characters start at a memory byte and extend up to the next byte (its higher order nibble). Odd numbered characters start at the right nibble (lower order nibble) of a byte and extend to the next complete byte (refer Fig. 4). With 64 bytes on each horizontal row, up to 43 characters can be shown per row. The hardware caters to a 64 x 16 character display comprising 512 x 256 pixels.

The control software in the 8085 board

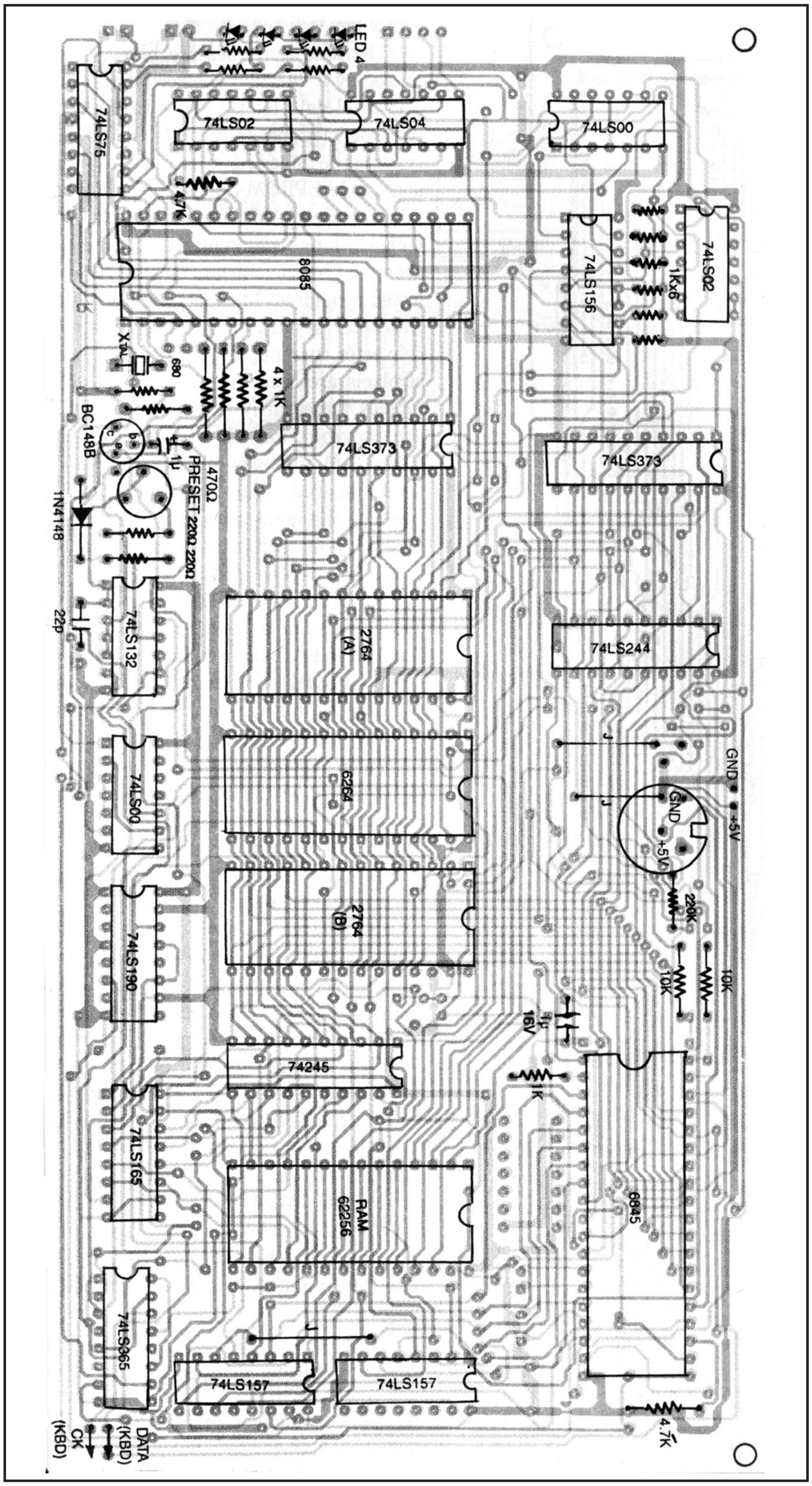

LED 4
74LS75
74LS02
74LS04
74LS00
4.7K
8085
74LS156
1Kx6
74LS02
X-tal
680
4 x 1K
BC148B
1µ
470Ω
PRESET 220Ω 220Ω
1N4148
74LS373
74LS373
22p
74LS132
2764 (A)
74LS244
6264
74LS00
J
J
GND
+5V
GND
+5V
2764 (B)
74LS190
220K
10K
10K
1µ 16V
74245
1K
74LS165
RAM 62256
6845
J
74LS365
74LS157
74LS157
4.7K
DATA (KBD)
CK (KBD)

Fig. 7: Component layout for PCB

for the entire unit does the job of reading the keyboard, selecting the language, writing the key code into video RAM, and doing minor editing as well.

A double-sided PTH PCB is required for assembling the circuit. The actual-size component-side and solder-side track layouts for the PCB are shown in Figs 5 and 6, respectively. Fig. 7 shows the component layout.

Testing the board

The board may be tested by a sequence of small programs written into the control EEROM. Verifications are done as per the guidelines given below:

1. The first thing to test is whether the data bus and address lines are functional and the output port 80H is also functional. Here is a simple program for the same:

```
MVI A,55H
OUT 80H
HLT
```

This can be written into an EEROM using any 8085 kit and is fixed into the board, and then the LEDs on the left bottom of the board wired at the 7475 (IC9) outputs would indicate the No. 5 as they glow.

If this is not observed, one has to check for proper connections from the data lines to the 7475, connections to the 74156 address decoder, and the gate signals to pins 4.13 of the 7475 as per Fig. 1.

Further, the connections to the video RAM 62256 through the buffer IC 74244 and 74157 (pair of ICs 17 and 18) should be checked for their correctness. When the CPU 8085 is writing to the video RAM, the 74157 (pair) connects A0-A5 address lines of the 8085 to those of the video RAM. Then, pin 1 of the 74157 ICs should be pulsing low.

Thus, the following program to write to 1800H in a loop would check for pulse at pin 1 of 74157 and a high pulse at pins 1 and 19 of 74244. When the IC 74244 is passing the 6845 signals, the IC 74373 is in tri-state condition because its pin 1 is then high.

```
P: MVI A,55
STA 1800H
LDA 1800H
OUT 80H
HLT
```

Or, in place of HLT, a loop may be executed as under:

```
JMP P
```

The above short programs will enable the checks to be made.

2. Another program to initialise the 6845 as per the routine given in the listing is to be entered in the EEROM and then tested for proper H sync and V sync signals from pins 39 and 40 of 6845.

3. The video clock signals and the video output should be checked for proper random display raster.

4. Another program for checking ERASE memory should be entered into the EEROM and then tested for the erasure of clear screen of the raster.

5. The keyboard program should be tested as per the KBD routine.

Only after successful testing of the board as per above-mentioned guidelines, the full program as per the listing given in Appendix 1 should be programmed into control EPROM at its highest 2k address range (1800-1FFF) and fixed on the board.

Conclusion

The two designs, the first one based on a simple PC and the second one based on dedicated hardware/software using computer keyboard, for display of Indian language text on a monitor and TV screen respectively are illustrative of the techniques of video display and software programming for Indian languages. The former is useful in an industrial or office environment, while the latter can be used in public display systems.

The main intention of this article is not merely to show the design of either the dedicated display unit or the program on PC for typing multilingual text, but to demonstrate the coding scheme for Indian languages with just 128 8-bit codes instead of the currently talked about 16-bit codes. Further, the coding scheme suggested here does not disturb existing typists of the 11 Indian languages, for which typewriters already exist.

The memory saving is a vital factor when one uses such codes for the Indian languages like English. Presently, all such Indian text is treated on a computer or on the Internet as graphic patterns only and consumes large memory space. If 1k of memory is taken for one page of screen with coding like this, it would take 8k in an ordinary graphics mode. When archives of text are to be kept in databases, the ASCII-like coding is the best.

With program PIXEL.bas or with the dedicated display unit using IBM PC-compatible keyboard, one can type in three languages using the ASCII-like codes.

Note: The following softwares pertaining to this project are included CD:

1. Pixel6.BAS
2. Pixel6.EXE
3. Chtamil2

(The above files pertain to computer based display scheme).

4. Tam.LST
5. Tam.EPR
6. Chtamil3

(The files at sl. no. 4 and 5 pertain to control program and its hex dump for control EPROM while file at sl. no. 6 contains hex code for character generator EPROM.

(Appendix I) CONTROL PROGRAM LISTING

```
Addr.   Code         Label      Mneumonics         Remarks
0000                            .ORG 0000H
        26 11                   LINE_NUMB: EQU  1126H
        28 11                   ROW_NUMB: EQU  1128H
        29 11                   CHAR_NUMB: EQU  1129H
        25 11                   NIB_FL: EQU  1125H
        00 11                   BUFFER_MEM: EQU 1100H
        00 11                   NIBLE_BUF: EQU 1100H
        29 11                   CHAR_NO:   EQU 1129H
        50 11                   AUX_STORE: EQU  1150H
        27 11                   CHAR_POS: EQU 1127H
        05 00                   F1KEY: EQU   05H
        D6 00                   F2KEY: EQU   D6H
        04 00                   F3KEY: EQU    04H
        DC 00                   F4KEY: EQU    DCH
0000    31 FF 13                LXI SP,13FFH
0003    F3                      DI
0004    C3 80 00                JMP 0080H
0080                            .ORG 80H
0080    CD E6 04                CALL CRTCON_INIT  ;initialise c.r.t.c.
0083    CD 0B 05                 CALL CLEAR        ;clear video memory
0086    3E 00                   MVI A,00
0088    D3 80                   OUT 80H
008A    CD 12 04                CALL KBD           ;CALL KEYBOARD
008D    4F           BEG:       MOV C,A
008E    DB 80                   IN 80H
0090    E6 03                   ANI 03H
0092    FE 01                   CPI 01
0094    CA CA 00                                   JZ HINDI
0097    FE 00                   CPI 0
0099    CA A9 00                                   JZ ENGLISH
009C    FE 02                   CPI 02H
009E    CA BE 00                                   JZ TAMIL
00A1    FE 03        FL:        CPI 03H
00A3    CA A6 00                                   JZ LANG3
00A6    C3 8D 00     LANG3:     JMP BEG            ;YET UNDEFINED.
00A9    79           ENGLISH:   MOV A,C
00AA    CD 98 01     E:         CALL CL_CH_CK      ;CONTROL CHARACTER CHECK
00AD    D2 B6 00                JNC CURSORA
00B0    CD E5 00                                   CALL NIBST  ;NIBBLE STORE
00B3    CD 1A 01                                   CALL VDUST                ; V  d  U
STORE MEANS WRITE VdRAM
00B6    CD 22 02     CURSORA:   CALL INC_SP        ;CURSOR NEXT
00B9    C3 8D 00                JMP BEG
00BC    00                      NOP
00BD    00                      NOP
00BE    79           TAMIL:     MOV A,C
00BF    CD B4 02     CALL CHOOKT ;COMPARE HOOK CHARACTERS IN TAMIL
00C2    DA D4 00                                   JC TAMHKFIL HOOK FILLING
00C5    C3 AA 00                                   JMP E
00C8    00                      NOP
00C9    00                      NOP
```

```
Addr.   Code         Label      Mneumonics         Remarks
00CA    79           HINDI:     MOV A,C
00CB    CD D2 02                                   CALL HIHOCK             ;COMPARE
HOOK CHARACTER                                     HINDI
00CE    DA DA 00                 JC HINHK          ;HINDI HOOK FILLING ROUTINE
00D1    C3 AA 00                                   JMP E
00D4    CD 13 03     TAMHKFIL: CALL HIHKFIL        ;CALL HOOK CHARACTER FILL
00D7    C3 B6 00                JMP CURSORA
00DA    F5           HINHK:     PUSH PSW
00DB    CD 8A 03                  CALL ROW13FIL    ;CALL 13TH ROW FILL
00DE    F1                      POP PSW
00DF    CD 48 03                CALL HI_HO_CHFIL ;CALL HINDI HOOK FILL
00E2    C3 B6 00                JMP CURSORA
;NIBBLE STORE ROUTINE (ASCI CODE IN ACC.for current character say $)
00E5    C5           NIBST:     PUSH B
00E6    D5                      PUSH D
00E7    E5                      PUSH H
00E8    5F                      MOV E,A
00E9    16 08                   MVI D,8            ;Start address of char.gen ROM
00EB    1A                      LDAX D             ;GET LOW ADDRES OF
                                                   CHARACTER TABLE
00EC    4F                      MOV C,A
00ED    3E 80                   MVI A,80H          ;ADD 80H TO A
00EF    83                      ADD E
00F0    5F                      MOV E,A
00F1    1A                      LDAX D             ;Get high address of cha. table
00F2    C6 08                   ADI 8
00F4    47                      MOV B,A
00F5    0A                      LDAX B             ;b-c contain start address of char.table
                                                   of “$”
00F6    16 00                   MVI D,00
00F8    21 00 11                LXI H,NIBLE_BUF ;BUFFER MEMORY STORING
                                                   NIBBLE BY NIBBLE
00FB    0A           B2:        LDAX B             ;Get pixel code, one byte
00FC    5F                      MOV E,A            ;move into E
00FD    1F                      RAR                ;Get first nibble of four dots
00FE    1F                      RAR
00FF    1F                      RAR
0100    1F                      RAR
0101    E6 0F                   ANI 0FH
0103    77                      MOV M,A            ;store first nibble, left
0104    23                      INX H              ;to store at next address
0105    14                       INR D             ;increment counter
0106    7B                      MOV A,E            ;mov a,e
0107    E6 0F                   ANI 0FH            ;NEXT FOUR DOTS
0109    77                      MOV M,A            ;Store it in buffer
010A    23                      INX H
010B    14                      INR D
010C    7A                      MOV A,D            ;check if all (12 lines x 3nibles =36)
010D    FE 24                   CPI 24H            ;compare if all 36 nibbles for $ saved
010F    CA 16 01                JZ EN
0112    03                      INX B
```

```
Addr.  Code      Label      Mneumonics         Remarks
0113   C3 FB 00                                JMP B2
0116   E1        EN:        POP H
0117   D1                   POP D
0118   C1                   POP B
0119   C9                   RET                ;Data storage in 100-1123 buffer
                                               memory over
;VIDEO RAM STORE ROUTINE
;ROW NO.AND CHARACTER NUMBER AT ENTRY, STORED IN 1128 AND 1127
011A   3A 27 11  VDUST:     LDA CHAR_POS       ;CHARACTER POSITION ON
                                               SCREEN
011D   CD 8A 01        CALL CH_NUMB            ;CALCULATES CHAR. SLOT FROM
                                               CHAR.NO.
0120   5F                   MOV E,A
0121   16 14                MVI D,14H
0123   3E FF                MVI A,FFH
0125   32 26 11             STA LINE_NUMB  ;LINE NO. STORED IN 1126
0128   21 00 11             LXI H,BUFFER_MEM ;POINT TO BUFFER MEMORY
012B   3A 26 11  NXTLIN:    LDA LINE_NUMB
012E   3C                   INR A
012F   32 26 11             STA LINE_NUMB      ;lines 0 -11 decimal
0132   3A 28 11             LDA ROW_NUMB       ;rows 0 -15 decimal
0135   17                   RAL
0136   17                   RAL
0137   17                   RAL
0138   17                   RAL
0139   E6 F0                ANI F0H
013B   47                   MOV B,A
013C   3A 26 11             LDA LINE_NUMB
013F   B0                   ORA B              ;GET HIGH ADDRESS
0140   32 00 18             STA 1800H          ;STORE IN VIDEO LATCH 74374
0143   3A 26 11             LDA LINE_NUMB
0146   FE 0C                CPI 0CH            ;CHECK FOR > 12 LINES
0148   C2 4C 01             JNZ STORE
014B   C9                   RET
014C   3A 25 11  STORE:     LDA NIB_FL         ;1125 H IS USED FOR STORING
                                               ODD/EVEN CHAR. IN D0 BIT
014F   1F                   RAR
0150   DA 73 01             JC LOAD_RT         ;RIGHT HALF IS TO BE LOADED
0153   7E        LEFT:      MOV A,M            ;TAKE BYTE (NIBBLE BUFFER)
0154   17                   RAL
0155   17                   RAL
0156   17                   RAL
0157   17                   RAL
0158   E6 F0                ANI F0H            ;move nibble left
015A   47                   MOV B,A            ;save in B
015B   23                   INX H              ;point to next nibble buffer
015C   7E                   MOV A,M
015D   B0                   ORA B              ;join with left nibble
015E   12                   STAX D             ;store in video ram
015F   13                   INX D
0160   23                   INX H              ;get address of next char.slot
0161   7E                   MOV A,M            ;Read from buffer
0162   07                   RLC                ;Move left
0163   07                   RLC
0164   07                   RLC
0165   07                   RLC
0166   E6 F0                ANI F0H
0168   47                   MOV B,A            ;Save in B
0169   1A                   LDAX D             ;Read video RAM
016A   E6 0F                ANI 0FH
016C   B0                   ORA B
016D   12                   STAX D             ;store in video RAM (only alter left
                                               nibble)
016E   23                   INX H
016F   1B                   DCX D
0170   C3 2B 01             JMP NXTLIN  ;JUMP TO NEXT LINE
0173   46        LOAD_RT:   MOV B,M            ;NIBBLE IN B
0174   1A                   LDAX D             ;Get from video ram
0175   E6 F0                ANI F0H            ;save left nibble
0177   B0                   ORA B
0178   12                   STAX D
0179   23                   INX H
017A   7E                   MOV A,M            ;get next nibble
017B   17                   RAL
017C   17                   RAL
017D   17                   RAL
017E   17                   RAL
017F   47                   MOV B,A            ;save in B, left part
0180   23                   INX H
0181   7E                   MOV A,M
0182   B0                   ORA B              ;now a fullbyte
0183   13                   INX D
0184   12                   STAX D
0185   1B                   DCX D
0186   23                   INX H
0187   C3 2B 01             JMP NXTLIN         ;NEXT LINE
;CHARACTER NO. SUBROUTINE
;A CONTAINS CHARACTER NUMBER IN THE ROW
;a RETURNS SLOT NUMBER. 1125H STORES 0 OR 1 FLAG
;ACCORDING AS CHARACTER NUMBER GIVES EVEN OR ODD.
018A   C5        CH_NUMB:PUSH B
```

```
Addr.  Code      Label      Mneumonics         Remarks
018B   47                   MOV B,A
018C   1F                   RAR                ;to divide by 2
018D   4F                   MOV C,A            ;store in C
018E   3E 00                MVI A,0
0190   17                   RAL
0191   32 25 11             STA NIB_FL         ;Store in nibble flag
0194   79                   MOV A,C
0195   80                   ADD B
0196   C1                   POP B
0197   C9                   RET
;CONTROL CHARACTERS CHECKING ROUTINE
0198   FE 20     CL_CH_CK: CPI 20H             ;space code?
019A   C2 A3 01             JNZ P1
019D   CD 22 02             CALL INC_SP ;
01A0   37                   STC                ;carry flag cleared to
01A1   3F                   CMC                ;indicate main program that it was
                                               control code
01A2   C9                   RET                ;ret
01A3   FE 08     P1:        CPI 08H            ;BACKSPACE CODE
01A5   C2 AE 01                                JNZ P2
01A8   CD 48 02             CALL DECR_SP ;
01AB   37                   STC
01AC   3F                   CMC
01AD   C9                   RET
01AE   FE 0A     P2:        CPI 0AH
01B0   C2 C2 01             JNZ P3
01B3   3A 28 11             LDA 1128H
01B6   3C                   INR A
01B7   FE 10                CPI 10H
01B9   D2 BF 01                                JNC P4
01BC   32 28 11             STA 1128H
01BF   C3 C9 01  P4:        JMP P5
01C2   FE 0C     P3:        CPI 0CH            ;(CTRL-L =CURSOR LINE LEFT)
01C4   C2 CF 01                                JNZ P6
01C7   3E 00                MVI A,0
01C9   32 27 11  P5:        STA 1127H
01CC   37                   STC
01CD   3F                   CMC
01CE   C9                   RET
01CF   FE 0B     P6:        CPI 0BH            (CURSOR UP control-K)
01D1   C2 E1 01             JNZ P7
01D4   3A 28 11             LDA 1128H
01D7   3D                   DCR A
01D8   DA DE 01                                JC P8
01DB   32 28 11             STA 1128H
01DE   37        P8:        STC
01DF   3F                   CMC
01E0   C9                   RET
01E1   FE 09     P7:        CPI 09H            ;Ctrl-I cursor goes down
01E3   C2 F5 01             JNZ P10
01E6   3A 28 11             LDA 1128H
01E9   3C                   INR A
01EA   FE 10                CPI 10H            ;not greater than 16 rows
01EC   D2 F2 01             JNC P9
01EF   32 28 11             STA 1128H          ;Stores 11, but the left L is not useful,
                                               so becomes 01
01F2   37        P9:        STC
01F3   3F                   CMC
01F4   C9                   RET
01F5   37        P10:       STC                ;Not any control code!
01F6   C9                   RET
;CURSOR ROUTINE
01F7   0E 00    CUR_ROUT:   MVI C,00
01F9   CD 07 02             CALL CUR_FILL
01FC   CD 12 04             CALL KBD
01FF   F5                   PUSH PSW
0200   0E FF                MVI C,FFH
0202   CD 07 02             CALL CUR_FILL      ;Erases cursor after key-entry
0205   F1                   POP PSW
0206   C9                   RET
;CURSOR FILL ROUTINE:
0207   3A 28 11  CUR_FILL: LDA ROW_NUMB
020A   17                   RAL
020B   17                   RAL
020C   17                   RAL
020D   E6 F0                ANI F0H
020F   47                   MOV B,A
0210   3E 0C                MVI A,0CH          ;UNDERLINE,13TH LINE
0212   B0                   ORA B
0213   32 00 18             STA 1800H          ;SAVE IN VIDEO LATCH
0216   16 14                MVI D,14H
0218   3A 27 11             LDA CHAR_POS ;
021B   CD 29 11             CALL CHAR_NO
021E   5F                   MOV E,A            ;SAVE CHAR. NO. IN e
021F   79                   MOV A,C            ;STORE UNDERLINE PIXELS
0220   12                   STAX D
0221   C9                   RET
;INCREMENT SPACE ROUTINE
0222   3A 27 11  INC_SP:    LDA 1127H          ;Character no.
0225   FE 2A                CPI 2AH            ;(42 characters/row)
0227   D2 34 02             JNC Q1
```

```
Addr.   Code        Label      Mneumonics       Remarks
022A    3C                     INR A            ;Increment char.no.
022B    32 27 11               STA 1127H        ;store it
022E    CD F7 01    S1:        CALL CUR_ROUT
0231    37                     STC              ;carry flag to indicate main program
0232    3F                     CMC              ;cleared and return
0233    C9                     RET
0234    3A 28 11    Q1:        LDA 1128H        ;to increment row number
0237    FE 0F                  CPI 0FH
0239    D2 40 02               JNC Q2
023C    3C                     INR A
023D    32 28 11               STA ROW_NUMB
0240    3E 00       Q2:        MVI A,00H
0242    32 27 11               STA 1127H        ;clear character number -
                                                ;first character, next row
0245    C3 2E 02               JMP S1
;DECREMENT  BACKSPACE
0248    3A 27 11    DECR_SP:   LDA 1127H        ;load char.no.
024B    3D                     DCR A            ;decrement
024C    DA 5E 02                JC Q4           ;check not first character
024F    32 27 11               STA 1127H        ;store one less
0252    CD 61 02               CALL ERASE       ;erase all 13 rows
0255    3A 27 11               LDA 1127H
0258    3D                     DCR A
0259    32 27 11               STA 1127H
025C    37                     STC
025D    C9                     RET
025E    37          Q4:        STC
025F    3F                     CMC
0260    C9                     RET
;ERASE CHARACTER:
0261    3A 29 11    ERASE:     LDA CHAR_NUMB ;find char.slot No.
0264    CD 29 11               CALL CHAR_NO
0267    5F                     MOV E,A
0268    16 14                  MVI D,14H        ;video RAM high addr.
026A    3E FF                  MVI A,FFH        ;ONE LESS THAN ZERO
026C    32 26 11               STA LINE_NUMB
026F    3A 26 11    NXTL:      LDA LINE_NUMB
0272    3C                     INR A            ;line no. increases from 0
0273    32 26 11               STA LINE_NUMB
0276    3A 28 11               LDA ROW_NUMB  ;row no. is output on left nibble
0279    17                     RAL
027A    17                     RAL
027B    17                     RAL
027C    17                     RAL
027D    E6 F0                  ANI F0H
027F    47                     MOV B,A
0280    3A 26 11               LDA LINE_NUMB
0283    B0                     ORA B            ;line no. is output on right nibble
0284    32 00 18               STA 1800H        ;IN VIDEO LATCH
0287    3A 26 11               LDA LINE_NUMB
028A    FE 0D                  CPI 0DH          ;is it the 14th line?
028C    C2 90 02               JNZ STORE1       ;if between 0 and 13, save
028F    C9                     RET
0290    3A 25 11    STORE1:    LDA NIB_FL       ;check for odd or even slot position
0293    1F                     RAR
0294    DA A5 02              JC RIG_NIB        ;if flag set go to start writing from right
                                                nible
;LEFT NIBBLE ROUTINE
0297    3E FF       LEFT_NIB:  MVI A,FFH
0299    13                     INX D
029A    1A                     LDAX D
029B    E6 0F                  ANI 0FH
029D    06 F0                  MVI B,F0H
029F    B0                     ORA B
02A0    12                     STAX D
02A1    1B                     DCX D
02A2    C3 6F 02               JMP NXTL
;RIGHT NIBBLE
02A5    1A          RIG_NIB:   LDAX D
02A6    E6 F0                  ANI F0H
02A8    06 0F                  MVI B,0FH
02AA    B0                     ORA B
02AB    12                     STAX D
02AC    13                     INX D
02AD    3E FF                  MVI A,FFH
02AF    12                     STAX D
02B0    1B                     DCX D
02B1    C3 6F 02               JMP NXTL
;COMPARE HOOK CHARACTER (TAMIL)
02B4    FE 50       CHOOKT:    CPI 50H          ;HOOK CHARACTER( )
02B6    CA D0 02                JZ NM           ;JUMP- NON-MOVING CHARC.
02B9    FE 70                  CPI 70H          ;HOOK CHAR ( )
02BB    CA D0 02                                JZ NM
02BE    FE 5B                  CPI 5BH
02C0    CA D0 02                                JZ NM
02C3    FE 7B                  CPI 7BH
02C5    CA D0 02                                JZ NM
02C8    FE 2B                  CPI 2BH
02CA    CA D0 02                                JZ NM
02CD    37                     STC
02CE    3F                     CMC
```

```
Addr.   Code        Label      Mneumonics       Remarks
02CF    C9                     RET
02D0    37          NM:        STC              ;CARRY SET FOR HOOK
                                                CHARACTER
02D1    C9                     RET
;COMPARE HOOK CHARACTER FOR HINDI
02D2    FE 2D       HIHOCK:    CPI 2DH
02D4    CA 11 03               JZ NH
02D7    FE 3D                  CPI 3DH
02D9    CA 11 03               JZ NH
02DC    FE 51                  CPI 51H
02DE    CA 11 03               JZ NH
02E1    FE 71                  CPI 71H
02E3    CA 11 03               JZ NH
02E6    FE 41                  CPI 41H
02E8    CA 11 03               JZ NH
02EB    FE 53                  CPI 53H
02ED    CA 11 03               JZ NH
02F0    FE 57                  CPI 57H
02F2    CA 11 03               JZ NH
02F5    FE 77                  CPI 77H
02F7    CA 11 03               JZ NH
02FA    FE 5A                  CPI 5AH
02FC    CA 11 03               JZ NH
02FF    FE 61                  CPI 61H
0301    CA 11 03               JZ NH
0304    FE 73                  CPI 73H
0306    CA 11 03               JZ NH
0309    FE 7A                  CPI 7AH
030B    CA 11 03               JZ NH
030E    37                     STC              ;NON-HOOK CHAR.
030F    3F                     CMC              ;CLEARS CARRY FLAG
0310    C9                     RET
0311    37          NH:        STC              ;SETS CARRY FLAG FOR
0312    C9                     RET              ; HOOK CHARACTER
;HOOK CHARACTER FILL ROUTINE(OTHER THAN HINDI)
0313    CD E5 00    HIHKFIL:   CALL NIBST       ;store nibbles of chra. code in
                                                ;1100h - 1124h
0316    21 50 11    QA:        LXI H,1150H
0319    11 50 11               LXI D,1150H      ;Aux. store
031C    7E          PA:        MOV A,M          ;store all data in aux. store
031D    12                     STAX D
031E    23                     INX H
031F    13                     INX D
0320    7D                     MOV A,L
0321    FE 24                  CPI 24H
0323    C2 1C 03               JNZ PA
0326    CD 12 04               CALL KBD
0329    CD E5 00               CALL NIBST       ;get pixel data in 1100h - 1124h
032C    21 00 11               LXI H,1100H
032F    11 50 11               LXI D,1150H
0332    7E          PB:        MOV A,M
0333    2F                     CMA              ;compliment it as data
0334    47                     MOV B,A          ;were entered like that
0335    1A                     LDAX D
0336    2F                     CMA
0337    B0                     ORA B            ;OR with ‘hook’ dots
0338    2F                     CMA
0339    77                     MOV M,A
033A    23                     INX H
033B    13                     INX D
033C    7D                     MOV A,L
033D    FE 24                  CPI 24H          ;36 nibbles
033F    C2 32 03               JNZ PB
0342    CD 1A 01                                CALL VDUST                ;store it
0345    37                     STC
0346    3F                     CMC              ;clear carry flag
0347    C9                     RET
;HINDI HOOK CHAR. FILL (MULTIPLE HOOKS)
0348    CD E5 00    HI_HO_
                    CHFI:      CALL NIBST
034B    21 00 11    PQ1:       LXI H,1100H
034E    11 50 11               LXI D,1150H
0351    7E          PP1:       MOV A,M
0352    12                     STAX D
0353    13                     INX D
0354    23                     INX H
0355    7D                     MOV A,L
0356    FE 24                  CPI 24H
0358    C2 51 03               JNZ PP1
035B    CD 12 04               CALL KBD
035E    F5                     PUSH PSW
035F    CD E5 00                CALL NIBST
0362    21 00 11               LXI H,1100H
0365    11 50 11               LXI D,1150H
0368    7E          PP2:       MOV A,M
0369    2F                     CMA
036A    47                     MOV B,A
036B    1A                     LDAX D
036C    2F                     CMA
036D    B0                     ORA B            ;OR WITH HOOK DATA
036E    2F                     CMA              ;OF PREVIOUS KEY
```

```
Addr.  Code       Label     Mneumonics       Remarks
036F   77                   MOV M,A
0370   23                   INX H
0371   13                   INX D
0372   7D                   MOV A,L
0373   FE 24                CPI 24H
0375   C2 68 03             JNZ PP2
0378   F1                   POP PSW
0379   CD D2 02             CALL HIHOCK      ;Hindi hook character check
037C   F5                   PUSH PSW
037D   CD 8A 03             CALL ROW13FIL    ;For some characters 13th line has a
                                             few dots
0380   F1                   POP PSW
0381   DA 4B 03                              JC PQ1
0384   CD 1A 01                              CALL VDUST
0387   37                   STC
0388   3F                   CMC
0389   C9                   RET
;13th LINE FILLING FOR SOME HINDI HOOKS
038A   F5         ROW13FIL:PUSH PSW
038B   FE 71                CPI 71H          ;HOOK CODE
038D   CA 9C 03                              JZ HOOKU
0390   FE 77                CPI 77H
0392   CA AA 03                              JZ HOOKV
0395   FE 2D                CPI 2DH
0397   CA B8 03                              JZ HOOKW
039A   F1                   POP PSW
039B   C9                   RET
039C   21 00 11   HOOKU:    LXI H,1100H      ;Fill hook data at 1100 -01
039F   3E E0                MVI A,E0H        ;Hook dot for 13th line
03A1   77                   MOV M,A
03A2   23                   INX H
03A3   3E 7F                MVI A,7FH
03A5   77                   MOV M,A
03A6   2B                   DCX H
03A7   C3 C6 03             JMP K
03AA   21 00 11   HOOKV:    LXI H,1100H
03AD   3E FF                MVI A,FFH        ;FFEF, one dot
03AF   77                   MOV M,A          ;for "Hoo"- hook
03B0   23                   INX H
03B1   3E EF                MVI A,EFH
03B3   77                   MOV M,A
03B4   2B                   DCX H
03B5   C3 C6 03             JMP K
03B8   21 00 11   HOOKW:    LXI H,1100H
03BB   3E FC                MVI A,FCH        ;FCFF, two dots
03BD   77                   MOV M,A
03BE   23                   INX H
03BF   3E FF                MVI A,FFH
03C1   77                   MOV M,A
03C2   2B                   DCX H
03C3   C3 C6 03             JMP K
03C6   CD CA 03   K:        CALL THIRL       ;call thirteenth line fill
03C9   F1                   POP PSW
03CA   3A 29 11   THIRL:    LDA CHAR_NUMB
03CD   CD 29 11             CALL CHAR_NUMB
03D0   5F                   MOV E,A
03D1   16 14                MVI D,14H
03D3   3A 28 11             LDA ROW_NUMB
03D6   17                   RAL
03D7   17                   RAL
03D8   17                   RAL
03D9   17                   RAL
03DA   E6 F0                ANI F0H
03DC   47                   MOV B,A
03DD   3E 0C                MVI A,0CH
03DF   B0                   ORA B
03E0   32 00 18             STA 1800H        ;STORE IN VIDEO LATCH
03E3   3A 25 11             LDA NIB_FL
03E6   1F                   RAR
03E7   DA F1 03                              JC R
03EA   7E                   MOV A,M          ;LOAD FIRST ONE BYTE
03EB   12                   STAX D
03EC   23                   INX H
03ED   7E                   MOV A,M
03EE   13                   INX D
03EF   12                   STAX D           ;THEN NEXT BYTE
03F0   C9                   RET
03F1   7E         R:        MOV A,M          ;fills as for right nible store
03F2   0F                   RRC
03F3   0F                   RRC
03F4   0F                   RRC
03F5   0F                   RRC
03F6   E6 0F                ANI 0FH
03F8   47                   MOV B,A
03F9   1A                   LDAX D           ;read video ram
03FA   E6 F0                ANI F0H          ;DO NOT DISTURB LEFT NIBBLE
03FC   B0                   ORA B
03FD   12                   STAX D           ;COMBINE AND STORE
03FE   13                   INX D
03FF   7E                   MOV A,M          ;NEXT BYTE NIBBLE BY NIBBLE
0400   07                   RLC
```

```
Addr.  Code       Label     Mneumonics       Remarks
0401   07                   RLC
0402   07                   RLC
0403   07                   RLC
0404   E6 F0                ANI F0H
0406   47                   MOV B,A
0407   23                   INX H
0408   7E                   MOV A,M
0409   0F                   RRC
040A   0F                   RRC
040B   0F                   RRC
040C   0F                   RRC
040D   E6 0F                ANI 0FH
040F   B0                   ORA B
0410   12                   STAX D           ;STORE IN VIDEO RAM
0411   C9                   RET
;KEYBOARD ROUTINE
0412   E5         KBD:      PUSH H
0413   D5                   PUSH D
0414   C5                   PUSH B
0415   CD AE 04                              CALL PULSE_READ
0418   79                   MOV A,C
0419   FE 12                CPI 12H
041B   CA 57 04             JZ SH_PRES
041E   FE 59                CPI 59H          ;IS IT SHIFTT RIGHT KEY?
0420   CA 57 04             JZ SH_PRES
0423   FE 2D                CPI 2DH          ;IS IT CONTROL KEY ?
0425   CA 5C 04                              JZ CONTROL
0428   CD AE 04   PK:       CALL PULSE_READ
042B   79                   MOV A,C
042C   FE F0                CPI F0H
042E   C2 28 04             JNZ PK
0431   CD AE 04                              CALL PULSE_READ
0434   FE 12                CPI 12H
0436   CC 4D 04                              CZ SH_REL
0439   FE 59                CPI 59H
043B   CC 4D 04                              CZ SH_REL
043E   FE 2D                CPI 2DH
0440   CC 52 04             CZ CONT_REL
0443   CD 61 04             CALL LANGCH      ;CHECK IF LANGUAGE CHANGING
                                             F1.. KEYS PRESS'D
0446   CD 8B 04                              CALL ASCII_CONV
0449   C1                   POP B
044A   D1                   POP D
044B   E1                   POP H
044C   C9                   RET
044D   7A         SH_REL:   MOV A,D
044E   E6 FE                ANI FEH
0450   57                   MOV D,A
0451   C9                   RET
0452   7A         CONT_REL: MOV A,D
0453   E6 FD                ANI FDH
0455   57                   MOV D,A
0456   C9                   RET
0457   16 01      SH_PRES:  MVI D,01H
0459   C3 28 04             JMP PK
045C   16 02      CONTROL:  MVI D,02H
045E   C3 28 04             JMP PK
0461   79         LANGCH:   MOV A,C
0462   FE 05                CPI F1KEY
0464   CA 77 04             JZ  L1
0467   FE D6                CPI F2KEY
0469   CA 7C 04                              JZ L2
046C   FE 04                CPI F3KEY
046E   CA 81 04             JZ L3
0471   FE DC                CPI F4KEY
0473   CA 86 04             JZ L4
0476   C9                   RET
0477   3E 00      L1:       MVI A,0          ;OUTPUT 0 ON leds
0479   D3 80                OUT 80H
047B   C9                   RET
047C   3E 01      L2:       MVI A,1     1
047E   D3 80                OUT 80H
0480   C9                   RET
0481   3E 02      L3:       MVI A,2     2
0483   D3 80                OUT 80H
0485   C9                   RET
0486   3E 03      L4:       MVI A,3     3
0488   D3 80                OUT 80H
048A   C9                   RET
048B   7A         ASCII_C
                  ONV:      MOV A,D
048C   E6 01                ANI 01H
048E   CA 9E 04                              JZ SHIFT_CODE
0491   E6 02                ANI 02H
0493   CA A4 04                              JZ CONT_CODE
0496   21 00 07             LXI H,TABLE1     ;TABLE1 FOR LOWER CASE
                                             NORMAL
0499   79         SA1:      MOV A,C
049A   85                   ADD L
049B   6F                   MOV L,A
049C   7E                   MOV A,M
```

```
Addr.  Code         Label      Mneumonics          Remarks
049D   C9                      RET
049E   21 80 07     SHIFT_
                    CODE:      LXI H,TABLE2        ;TABLE2 FOR SHIFT CODE
04A1   C3 99 04                JMP SA1
04A4   21 00 07     CONT_
                    CODE:      LXI H,TABLE1        ;TABLE3 FOR CONTROL CODE
04A7   79                      MOV A,C
04A8   85                      ADD L
04A9   6F                      MOV L,A
04AA   7E                      MOV A,M
04AB   E6 3F                   ANI 3FH
04AD   C9                      RET
04AE   06 08        PULSE_
                    READ:      MVI B,08H
04B0   0E 00                   MVI C,00
04B2   DB 80        PP:        IN 80H
04B4   E6 20                   ANI 20H
04B6   C2 B2 04                JNZ PP
04B9   DB 80        QQ:        IN 80H
04BB   E6 20                   ANI 20H
04BD   CA B9 04                                    JZ QQ
04C0   DB 80        PK1:       IN 80H
04C2   E6 20                   ANI 20H
04C4   C2 C0 04                JNZ PK1
04C7   DB 80                   IN 80H
04C9   17                      RAL
04CA   17                      RAL
04CB   17                      RAL
04CC   17                      RAL
04CD   79                      MOV A,C
04CE   1F                      RAR
04CF   4F                      MOV C,A
04D0   DB 80        QQ1:       IN 80H
04D2   E6 20                   ANI 20H
04D4   CA D0 04                                    JZ QQ1
04D7   05                      DCR B
04D8   C2 C0 04                JNZ PK1
04DB   CD DF 04                                    CALL DELAY
04DE   C9                      RET
04DF   1E 20        DELAY:     MVI E,20H
04E1   1D           D1:        DCR E
04E2   C2 E1 04                JNZ D1
04E5   C9                      RET
;6845 INITIALISE ROUTINE
04E6   11 FB 04     CRTCON_
                    INIT:      LXI D,TABLEINIT
04E9   06 00                   MVI B,0
04EB   21 00 1C     IP:        LXI H,1C00H
04EE   70                      MOV M,B
04EF   23                      INX H
04F0   1A                      LDAX D
04F1   77                      MOV M,A
04F2   04                      INR B
04F3   13                      INX D
04F4   78                      MOV A,B
04F5   FE 10                   CPI 10H
04F7   C2 EB 04                                    JNZ IP
04FA   C9                      RET
04FB   55 40 46 09  TABL       .DB 55H,40H,46H,09,12H,08H,10H,11H,0,10H,0,0BH,
                               EINIT:              0,0,0,0
04FF   12 08 10 11
0503   00 10 00 0B
0507   00 00 00 00
;CLEAR SCREEN ROUTINE
050B   C5           CLEAR:     PUSH B
050C   E5                      PUSH H
050D   0E 00                   MVI C,00
050F   0D           A1:        DCR C
0510   CA 28 05                JZ A2
0513   26 14                   MVI H,14H
0515   2E 00                   MVI L,00
0517   79                      MOV A,C
0518   32 00 18                STA 1800H
051B   3E FF        A3:        MVI A,FFH
051D   77                      MOV M,A
051E   2C                      INR L
051F   7D                      MOV A,L
0520   FE 80                   CPI 80H
0522   C2 1B 05                JNZ A3
0525   C3 0F 05                JMP A1
0528   E1           A2:        POP H
0529   C1                      POP B
052A   C9                      RET
```

```
Addr.  Code           Label      Mneumonics          Remarks
0700                                                 .ORG 700H
0700                  TABLE1:
0700   FF FF FF FF               DB FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH
0704   FF FF FF FF
0708   FF FF FF FF               DB FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH
070C   FF FF FF FF
0710   FF FF FF FF               .DB FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH, FFH,71H,31H,FFH,FFH,FFH,
                                 7AH,73H,61H,77H,32H,FFH
0714   FF 71 31 FF
0718   FF FF 7A 73
071C   61 77 32 FF
0720   FF 63 78 64               DB FFH,  63H, 78H, 64H,  65H, 34H, 33H, FFH, FFH,
                                 20H, 76H, 66H,7AH,72H,35H,FFH
0724   65 34 33 FF
0728   FF 20 76 66
072C   7A 72 35 FF
764    0730   FF 6E 62 68        .DB FFH,  6EH,  62H, 68H,  FFH, 79H, 36H, FFH, FFH,
                                 FFH, 6DH, 6AH, 75H, 37H, 38H,FFH
0734   FF 79 36 FF
0738   FF FF 6D 6A
073C   75 37 38 FF
0740   FF 3C 6B 69               .DB FFH, 3CH, 6BH, 69H,  6FH,30H,39H,FFH,  FFH,3EH,
                                 3FH,FFH,  3BH,70H,2DH,FFH
0744   6F 30 39 FF
0748   FF 3E 3F FF
074C   3B 70 2D FF
0750   FF FF 2C FF               .DB FFH, FFH, 2CH, FFH,  5BH,2BH,FFH,FFH,  FFH,
                                 FFH,0DH,5DH, FFH,21H,FFH,FFH
0754   5B 2B FF FF
0758   FF FF 0D 5D
075C   FF 21 FF FF
0760   FF FF FF FF               .DB FFH, FFH, FFH, FFH,  FFH,FFH,08H,FFH,  FFH,
                                 31H,FFH,34H,  37H,09H,FFH,FFH
0764   FF FF 08 FF
0768   FF 31 FF 34
076C   37 09 FF FF
0770   30 FF 32 35               .DB 30H, FFH, 32H, 35H,  36H,38H,FFH,FFH, FFH,
                                 FFH,33H,2DH, 2BH,39H,FFH,FFH
0774   36 38 FF FF
0778   FF FF 33 2D
077C   2B 39 FF FF
0780   TABLE2:
0780   FF FF FF FF               DB FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH
0784   FF FF FF FF
0788   FF FF FF FF               DB FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH,FFH
078C   FF FF FF FF
0790   FF FF FF FF              .DB FFH, FFH, FFH, FFH,  FFH, 51H, 21H, FFH,FFH,
                                 FFH,5AH,53H,41H,57H,40H,FFH
0794   FF 51 21 FF
0798   FF FF 5A 53
079C   41 57 40 FF
07A0   FF 43 58 44               .DB FFH,  43H, 58H, 44H,  45H, 24H, 33H, FFH, FFH,
                                 20H, 56H, 46H,   5AH, 52H, 25H, FFH
07A4   45 24 33 FF
07A8   FF 20 56 46
07AC   5A 52 25 FF
07B0   FF 4E 42 48               .DB FFH,  4EH,  42H, 48H,  FFH, 59H, 36H, FFH, FFH,
                                 FFH, 4DH, 4AH, 55H, 26H, 2AH,FFH
07B4   FF 59 36 FF
07B8   FF FF 4D 4A
07BC   55 26 2A FF
07C0   FF 2C 2B 49               .DB FFH, 2CH, 2BH, 49H,  4FH,29H,28H,FFH,  FFH,2EH,
                                 2FH,FFH,  2BH,50H,5FH,FFH
07C4   4F 29 28 FF
07C8   FF 2E 2F FF
07CC   2B 50 5F FF
07D0   FF FF 22 FF               .DB FFH, FFH, 22H, FFH,  7BH,2BH,FFH,FFH,  FFH,
                                 FFH,0D,5DH,  FFH,21H,FFH,FFH
07D4   7B 2B FF FF
07D8   FF FF 00 5D
07DC   FF 21 FF FF
07E0   FF FF FF FF               .DB FFH, FFH, FFH, FFH,  FFH,FFH,08H,FFH,  FFH,
                                 31H,FFH,34H, 37H,09H,FFH,FFH
07E4   FF FF 08 FF
07E8   FF 31 FF 34
07EC   37 09 FF FF
07F0   30 FF 32 35               .DB 30H, FFH, 32H, 35H,  36H,38H,FFH,FFH, FFH,FFH,
                                 33H,2DH, 2BH,39H,FFH,FFH
07F4   36 38 FF FF
07F8   FF FF 33 2D
07FC   2B 39 FF FF
0800
END                                                                            □
```

Readers queries:

□ It has been mentioned that the file named 'TAM.EPR' contains control EPROM program, while file 'CHTAMIL3' includes the hex code for character-generator EPROM program. But in the same project included in the EFY-CD of Oct. 2000 under 'Display' folder, files 'CHTAMIL3' and 'TAM.EPR' do not have the necessary information.

Subodh Khaire
Goa

EFY: It is true that the two files 'TAM. EPR' and 'CHTAMIL3' issued with the EFY-CD (Oct. 2000) contain the hex code for control program and character generator hex data, as provided by the author.

A number of readers have not been able to open/interpret the hex code given in the two files. To see the hex code in ASCII, one may use the debug utility provided in DOS as well as in Windows. To see the code in a file, proceed as follows:

1. Go to the MS DOS prompt.

2. Go to the directory in which 'TAM. EPR' and 'CHTAMIL3' are saved.

3. Type 'Debug' after the command prompt and press 'Enter'.

4. After debug prompt type and enter:

```
—N<filename>
—L100
—D100
```

You will see 128 bytes (half page) of hex dump starting at location 0100 and ending AT 017F.

Again type and Enter

```
—D
```

You will see the next half page from 0180 to 01FF. Again type and 'Enter'

```
—D
```

and you will see the subsequent half pages.

Interpretation:

1. ***Control program.*** *The hex code of the program starting at location 0100 (in debug) goes up to 08FF. Deduct 100 to get the actual address with respect to origin at 0000.*

2. ***Character generator code.*** *Locations shown below are after deducting 100 hex:*

(a) For Tamil: 0000 to 07FF, i.e. 8 pages

(b) For English: 0800 to OFFF, i.e. 8 pages

(c) For Hindi 1000 to 17FF, i.e. 8 pages

(Note: All unfilled locations contain FF hex.)

Locations 00 through 7F (of the starting page in each language) contain the 'low' address, while 80 to FF locations contain the 'high' address for each character as stated in the original article.

8085 µP-KIT BASED SIMPLE IC TESTER

S. RAJKUMAR

All electronic laboratories in engineering colleges and other institutions need a digital IC tester to verify the serviceability of frequently used digital ICs, e.g., ICs 7400 (NAND), 7408 (AND), 7432 (OR), 7486 (EXOR), 7404 (Hex Inverter), 7407 (Buffer) etc. The truth tables of all such ICs are available in digital IC data books. Based on their truth tables one can write suitable subroutines to test them using an 8085 microprocessor kit and a minimal of interface circuitry. An 8085 microprocessor kit, having requisite peripheral devices, is normally available in most electronic labs, and as such one does not have to buy costly IC testers for testing simple type of ICs, as mentioned above.

It is assumed that the kit has at least two 8255 PPI (programmable peripheral interface) ICs whose input/output ports have been extended via suitable connectors, for external usage. The configuration of the interface circuit required for testing of the digital 14-pin ICs using 8085 microprocessor kit is shown in Fig. 1. The interface circuit comprises simply a 14-pin ZIF socket and two hex buffer 7407 ICs. The +5V supply needed for the interface circuit (and ground) is obtained from the kit's power supply itself.

TABLE I

Control Words

S.No.	Port A	Port C (Upper)	Port B	Port C (Lower)	Control Word (Hex)
1	O	O	O	O	80
2	O	O	O	I	81
3	O	O	I	O	82
4	O	O	I	I	83
5	O	I	O	O	88
6	O	I	O	I	89
7	O	I	I	O	8A
8	O	I	I	I	8B
9	I	O	O	O	90
10	I	O	O	I	91
11	I	O	I	O	92
12	I	O	I	I	93
13	I	I	O	O	98
14	I	I	O	I	99
15	I	I	I	O	9A
16	I	I	I	I	9B

Note: O = Output; I = Input

Both the 8255s have been configured for mode '0' operation (which is a basic input/output mode) with registers A and B as output and register C (both upper and lower half) as input. The required control word for the mentioned configuration is 89 hex. The characteristics of mode '0' operation of 8255 are:

1. Two 8-bit ports referred to as registers A and B respectively.
2. Two 4-bit ports referred to as C register (lower-comprising bits C0 through C3) and C register (upper–comprising bits C4 through C7).
3. Ports configured as output have latched outputs while input ports are not latched.
4. Any port can be made input or output. There are 16 possible input/output configurations. (Please refer Table I for a summary of the configurations and the control word required to be used during initialisation of an 8255 for each configuration.) Control word can also be formed with the help of Fig. 2.

The hex buffer/driver IC 7407 has

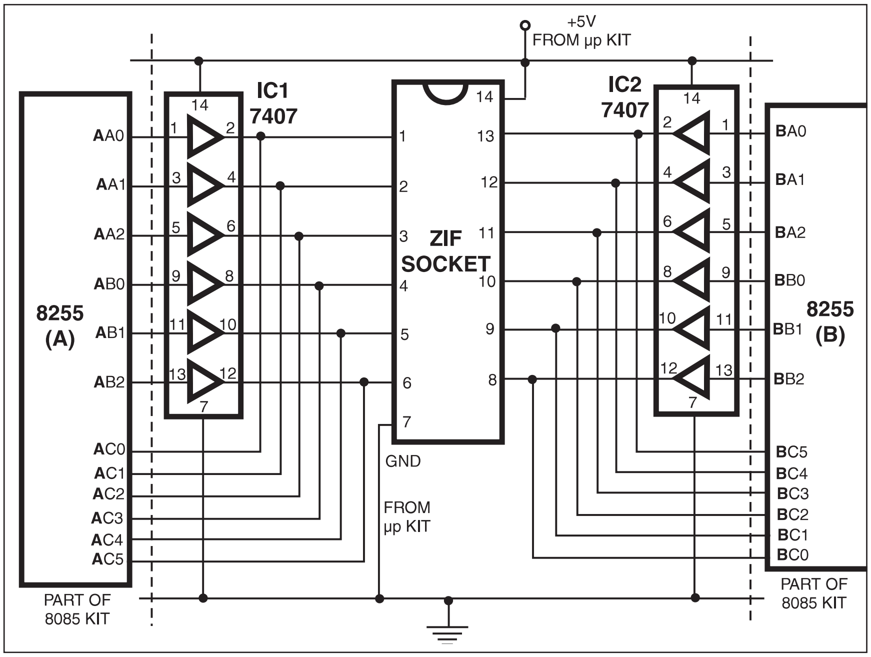


Fig. 1: Circuit for interfacing IC under test to 8255 PPIs on 8085 microprocessor kit

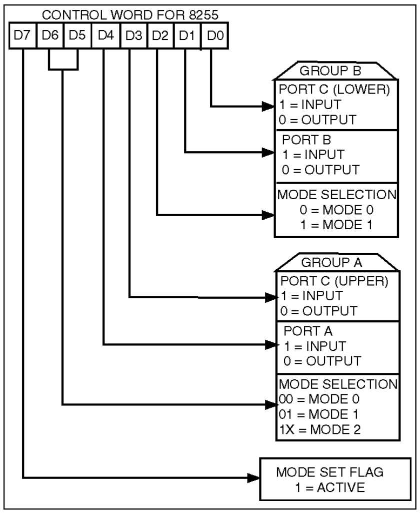


Fig. 2: Control word logic diagram for mode

open collector outputs. The outputs of ‘IC under test,’ which is placed in the ZIF socket, are combined with those of 7407 in a wired-OR (actually wired-AND) fashion. To realise this function, a logic 1 is always output on the 7407 gates connected to output pins of ‘IC under test.’ All possible logic input combinations are given to input pins of ‘IC under test’, while logic 1 is placed at all its output pins via 8255’s registers A and B, through IC 7407 buffers. For each input combination, the logic state of the ZIF socket pins (as modified by the ‘IC under test’) is read (after a short delay) via ‘C’ registers of the two 8255s. The expected results for each combination of inputs, for above-mentioned ICs, are shown in Table II in hex digits. These are stored in memory, in consecutive locations for each IC, for every combination of inputs. If actual data read tallies with the stored data for all combinations of inputs, message ‘GOOD’ is displayed on the kit’s display. If any of the result fails, i.e. if any of the gates is not working properly, message ‘BAD’ is displayed on the 8085 kit.

For convenience, the ICs having identical input/output pins and requiring identical input combinations, have been grouped under one type. (7400, 7408, 7432, and 7486 have been grouped as ‘Type 1’, while 7404 and 7407 have been grouped as ‘Type 2’, and 7402 as ‘Type 3’.)

When the software program (modified at EFY for working on Dynalog’s Micro Friend-ILC-V2 kit) is executed on the 8085 kit, the display shows ‘ICIC’. Now enter the last two digits of the IC number to be tested (the last but one followed by the last one, for instance, for IC 7404 enter 0 followed

ICTEST.LST

```
MEMORY MAP (MAY VARY FROM KIT TO KIT):
RAM LOCATIONS USED FOR PROGRAM                    : 9200H - 9450H
STACK POINTER INITIALISED                         : 9FFFH
PORTA (OUTPUT) OF A8255/B8255                     : 08/10
PORTB (OUTPUT) OF A8255/B8255                     : 09/11
PORTC (INPUT)  OF A8255/B8255                     : 0A/12
CONTROL WORD REGISTER OF A8255/B8255              : 0B/13
                         PROGRAM LISTING
Add.  Opcode    Label  Mnemonics                     Comments
9200  31FF9F           LXI SP,9FFFH
9203  21A093           LXI H,93A0H
9206  3E00             MVI A,00H
9208  0600             MVI B,00H
920A  CD160B*          CALL OUTPT      ;(UTILITY SUBROUTINE IN THE KIT
                                       ; TO DISPLAY ACC CONTENT)
920D  CD640A*          CALL RDKBD      ;(UTILITY SUBROUTINE IN THE KIT
                                      ; TO ACCEPT ONE HEX DIGIT FROM THE
                                         ; KEYBOARD AND STORE IN THE ACC)
9210  0E04             MVI C,04H
9212  07        A:     RLC             ; SHIFTED TO SECOND(TENS) PLACE
9213  0D               DCR C
9214  C21292           JNZ A
9217  325094           STA 9450H
921A  CD640A           CALL RDKBD        ; (UTILITY SUBROUTINE IN THE KIT
                                         ; TO ACCEPT ONE HEX DIGIT FROM
921D  215094           LXI  H,9450H        ;  THE  KEYBOARD  AND  STORE  IN
                                                     ; THE ACC)
9220  86               ADD M            ; COMBINE TWO KEYBOARD ENTRIES
9221  47               MOV B,A
9222  210093           LXI H,9300H
9225  FE00             CPI 00H            ; (NAND IC)
9227  CA5E92           JZ TYPE1
922A  211093           LXI H,9310H
922D  FE08             CPI 08H             ; (AND IC)
922F  CA5E92           JZ TYPE1
9232  212093           LXI H,9320H
9235  FE32             CPI 32H             ; (OR IC)
9237  CA5E92           JZ TYPE1
923A  213093           LXI H,9330H
923D  FE86             CPI 86H             ; (EXOR IC)
923F  CA5E92           JZ TYPE1
9242  214093           LXI H,9340H
9245  FE04             CPI 04H              ; (NOT IC)
9247  CA7592           JZ TYPE2
924A  215093           LXI H,9350H
924D  FE07             CPI 07H              ; (BUFFER IC)
924F  CA7592           JZ TYPE2
9252  216093           LXI H,9360H
9255  FE02             CPI 02H               ; (NOR IC)
9257  CA9092           JZ TYPE3
925A  76               HLT    ;IN SOME 8085 KITS SUCH AS THAT FROM DYNALOG
                        ; PROGRAM IS TERMINATED WITH ‘RST1’IN PLACE OF ‘HLT’
; NAND, AND, OR, EXOR GATE CHECK
925E  0E00      TYPE1: MVI C,00H           ; SET GATE INPUTS
9260  79        LP1:   MOV A,C
9261  F604             ORI 04H             ; SET GATE OUTPUT 1
9263  47               MOV B,A ;STORE GATE INPUTS FOR I/P & O/P PINS IN REG B
9264  CDB192           CALL PROCESS
9267  0C               INR C              ; NEXT INPUT COMBINATION
9268  79               MOV A,C
9269  FE04             CPI  04H    ;  CHECK  IF  ALL  INPUT  COMBINATIONS  ARE
OVER
926B  C26092           JNZ LP1
926E  C3EB92           JMP GOOD            ; OR JMP GOOD1
;BUFFER, INVERTER CHECK
9275  0E00      TYPE2: MVI C,00H           ; SET GATE INPUT
9277  79        LP2:   MOV A,C
9278  F602             ORI 02H             ; SET GATE OUTPUT 1
927A  47               MOV B,A      ; STORE GATE INPUT FOR I/P & O/P PINS IN B
927B  CDB192           CALL PROCESS
927E  0C               INR C               ; NEXT INPUT COMBINATION
```

```
927F  79                    MOV A,C
9280  FE02                  CPI 02H   ; CHECK IF ALL INPUT COMBINATIONS ARE
                                        OVER
9282  C27792                JNZ LP2
9285  C3EB92                JMP GOOD              ; OR JMP GOOD1
;NOR GATE CHECK
9290  0E00        TYPE3:    MVI C,00H             ; SET GATE INPUTS
9292  79          LP3:      MOV A,C
9293  07                    RLC
9294  F601                  ORI 01H               ; SET GATE OUTPUT 1
9296  47                    MOV B,A
9297  CDB192                CALL PROCESS
929A  0C                    INR C                 ; NEXT INPUT COMBINATION
929B  79                    MOV A,C
929C  FE04                  CPI 04H   ; CHECK IF ALL INPUT COMBINATION ARE OVER
929E  C29292                JNZ LP3
92A1  C3EB92                JMP GOOD              ; OR JMP GOOD1
92B1  3E89     PROCESS:     MVI A,89H ; (8255 CONTROL WORD FOR CONFIGURING REG.
                                       ; A & B AS O/P AND REG. C (LOWER 4 BITS &
92B3  D30B*                 OUT 0BH    ; UPPER 4 BITS) AS I/P)
92B5  D313*                 OUT 13H
92B7  78                    MOV A,B
92B8  D308*                 OUT 08H ;OUTPUT THE COMBINATION FROM PORT A(A8255)
92BA  D309*                 OUT 09H ;OUTPUT THE COMBINATION FROM PORT B(A8255)
92BC  D310*                 OUT 10H ;OUTPUT THE COMBINATION FROM PORT A(B8255)
92BE  D311*                 OUT 11H ;OUTPUT THE COMBINATION FROM PORT B(B8255)
92C0  16FF                  MVI D,FFH             ; DELAY
92C2  15          LP4:      DCR D
92C3  C2C292                JNZ LP4
92C6  DB0A*                 IN 0AH                ; READ DATA INTO PORT C OF A8255
92C8  E63F                  ANI 3FH               ; DON'T CARE FOR BIT 7 & 8
92CA  BE                    CMP M        ; COMPARE RESULT WITH DATA IN MEMORY
92CB  C2DA92                JNZ BAD               ; OR JMP BAD1
92CE  23                    INX H
92CF  DB12*                 IN 12H               ; READ DATA INTO PORT C OF B8255
92D1  E63F                  ANI 3FH              ; DON'T CARE FOR BIT 7 & 8
92D3  BE                    CMP M        ; COMPARE RESULT WITH DATA IN MEMORY
92D4  C2DA92                JNZ BAD          ; OR JMP BAD1
92D7  23                    INX H
92D8  C9                    RET
;RESULT DISPLAY USING 8279(BAD)
92DA  3E04*       BAD:      MVI A,04H
92DC  D301*                 OUT 01H
92DE  3E7F*                 MVI A,7FH            ; 7 SEG CODE-B
92E0  D300*                 OUT 00H
92E2  3E77*                 MVI A,77H            ; 7 SEG CODE-A
92E4  D300*                 OUT 00H
92E6  3E3F*                 MVI A,3FH            ; 7 SEG CODE-D
92E8  D300*                 OUT 00H
92EA  76                    HLT
;RESULT DISPLAY USING 8279(GOOD)
92EB  3E04*       GOOD:     MVI A,04H
92ED  D301*                 OUT 01H
92EF  3E3D*                 MVI A,3DH            ; 7 SEG CODE-G
92F1  D300*                 OUT 00H
92F3  3E5C*                 MVI A,5CH            ; 7 SEG CODE-O
92F5  D300*                 OUT 00H
92F7  3E5C*                 MVI A,5CH            ; 7 SEG CODE-O
92F9  D300*                 OUT 00H
92FB  3E3F*                 MVI A,3FH            ; 7 SEG CODE-D
92FD  D300*                 OUT 00H
92FE  76                    HLT
@;RESULT DISPLAY USING UTILITY SUBROUTINE OF KIT AT EFY(BAD)
9370  31FF9F      BAD1:     LXI SP,9FFFH
9373  210094                LXI H,9400H
9376  3E00                  MVI A,00H
9378  0600                  MVI B,00H
937A  CD160B                CALL OUTPT       ; (UTILITY SUBROUTINE IN THE KIT TO
                                             ; DISPLAY ACC CONTENT)
937D  76                    HLT
@;RESULT DISPLAY USING UTILITY SUBROUTINE OF KIT AT EFY(GOOD)
9380  31FF9F      GOOD1:    LXI SP,9FFFH
```

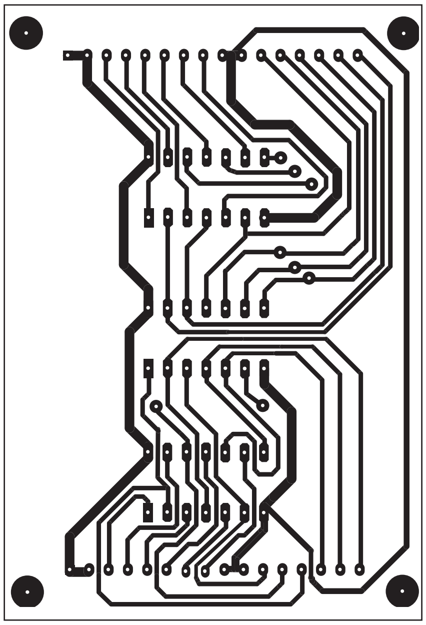


Fig. 3: PCB layout for interface

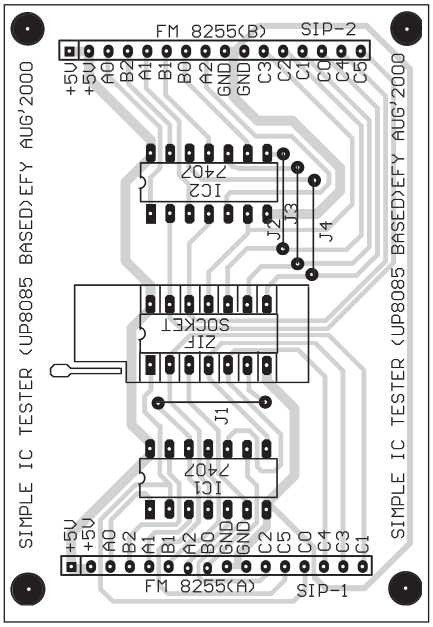


Fig. 4: Component layout for PCB

by 4). Please take care to place the IC in the ZIF socket with proper orientation and press 'Next'. Depending on performance of all the gates of 'IC under test', the message 'GOOD' or 'BAD' will appear on its display.

For addressing peripheral devices (8255, 8279), I/O mapped address scheme has been employed. At EFY, the addresses have been modified in accordance with the Dynalog kit used for the purpose. Other users would need to modify the program address space as well as input-output addresses for the peripherals suitably, in accordance with the specific kit used

```
9383  211094                LXI H,9410H
9386  3E00                  MVI A,00H
9388  0600                  MVI B,00H
938A  CD160B                CALL OUTPT        ; (UTILITY SUBROUTINE IN THE KIT TO
                                              ; DISPLAY ACC CONTENT)
938D  76                    HLT
;DATA TABLE
;NAND         ;AND          ;OR           ;EXOR         ;NOT          ;NOR
9300  24      9310 00       9320 00       9330 00       9340 2A       9360 09
9301  09      9311 00       9321 00       9331 00       9341 15       9361 24
9302  2D      9312 09       9322 2D       9332 2D       9342 15       9362 12
9303  2D      9313 24       9323 2D       9333 2D       9343 2A       9363 12
9304  36      9314 12       9324 36       9334 36                     9364 24
9305  1B      9315 12       9325 1B       9335 1B       ;BUFFER       9365 09
9306  1B      9316 3F       9326 3F       9336 1B       9350 00       9366 36
9307  36      9317 3F       9327 3F       9337 36       9351 00       9367 1B
                                                        9352 3F
;ICIC         ;BADD         ;GOOD                       9353 3F
93A0  0C      9400 0D   9410 0D
93A1  01      9401 0D   9411 00
93A2  0C      9402 0A   9412 00
93A3  01      9403 0B   9413 0C
SYMBOL TABLE :
A             9212          TYPE1 925E    LP1  9260     TYPE2   9275
LP2           9277          TYPE3 9290    LP3  9292     PROCESS 92B1
LP4           92C2          BAD   92E0    GOOD 92F5     BAD1    9370
GOOD1         9370
NOTE: 1. * INDICATES THAT OPCODE IS DEPENDENT ON I/O ADDRESS USED
           IN THE SPECIFIC KIT
2. @ INDICATES THE ROUTINE MODIFIED BY EFY FOR DYNALOG KIT
```

TABLE II: LOGIC STATES OF 8255 PORTS

	8255 (A)							8255 (B)						
ZIF Socket Pin No.	6	5	4	3	2	1		13	12	11	10	9	8	
Reg. C Ports	C5	C4	C3	C2	C1	C0	HEX Eq.	C5	C4	C3	C2	C1	C0	HEX Eq.
Reg. A/B Ports	B2	B1	B0	A2	A1	A0		A0	A1	A2	B0	B1	B2	
IC Description	O	I_2	I_1	O	I_2	I_1		I_1	I_2	O	I_1	I_2	O	
NAND (7400) (Type 1)	1	0	0	1	0	0	24	0	0	1	0	0	1	09
	1	0	1	1	0	1	2D	1	0	1	1	0	1	2D
	1	1	0	1	1	0	36	0	1	1	0	1	1	1B
	0	1	1	0	1	1	1B	1	1	0	1	1	0	36
AND (7408) (Type 1)	0	0	0	0	0	0	00	0	0	0	0	0	0	00
	0	0	1	0	0	1	09	1	0	0	1	0	0	24
	0	1	0	0	1	0	12	0	1	0	0	1	0	12
	1	1	1	1	1	1	3F	1	1	1	1	1	1	3F
OR (7432) (Type 1)	0	0	0	0	0	0	00	0	0	0	0	0	0	00
	1	0	1	1	0	1	2D	1	0	1	1	0	1	2D
	1	1	0	1	1	0	36	0	1	1	0	1	1	1B
	1	1	1	1	1	1	3F	1	1	1	1	1	1	3F
Ex-OR (7486) (Type 1)	0	0	0	0	0	0	00	0	0	0	0	0	0	00
	1	0	1	1	0	1	2D	1	0	1	1	0	1	2D
	1	1	0	1	1	0	36	0	1	1	0	1	1	1B
	0	1	1	0	1	1	1B	1	1	0	1	1	0	36
Invertor (7404) (Type 2)	O	I	O	I	O	I		I	O	I	O	I	O	
	1	0	1	0	1	0	2A	0	1	0	1	0	1	15
	0	1	0	1	0	1	15	1	0	1	0	1	0	2A
Buffer (7407) (Type 2)	0	0	0	0	0	0	00	0	0	0	0	0	0	00
	1	1	1	1	1	1	3F	1	1	1	1	1	1	3F
NOR (7402) (Type 3)	I_2	I_1	O	I_2	I_1	O		O	I_2	I_1	O	I_2	I_1	
	0	0	1	0	0	1	09	1	0	0	1	0	0	24
	0	1	0	0	1	0	12	0	1	0	0	1	0	12
	1	0	0	1	0	0	24	0	0	1	0	0	1	09
	1	1	0	1	1	0	36	0	1	1	0	1	1	1B

I = INPUT; O = OUTPUT; Hex Eq = Hex digits read via Reg. C

Note:- Pin 7 of ZIF socket is connected to ground and pin 14 is connected to +5V.

by them. Such opcodes which are input-output address dependent have been annotated with an asterisk mark. The alternate result-indicating subroutines specifically used at EFY lab during testing are also included for benefit of the readers. The complete details of address space used for the program and peripheral devices are given before the actual program. The program is self-explanatory, with suitable comments added wherever required.

Although hardware interface circuit can be assembled easily on a general-purpose PCB, nevertheless an actual-size single-sided PCB pattern for the same is shown in Fig. 3 and its component layout is given in Fig. 4. ❑

DIGITAL CODE LOCK

BISWAJIT GUPTA

A versatile digital code lock circuit is presented here, which can have up to 32-digit long secret code. The length of the secret code can be easily varied by changing the position of jumpers. The available options are to make the code 2-, 4-, 8-, 16-, or 32-hex digit long. When the keyed-in code matches with the stored secret code, a relay gets energised. The contacts of the relay may be used appropriately to operate, lock, or unlock any device or appliance, as desired by the user.

The circuit makes use of a RAM to store and output the stored code to enable in-situ coding and changing of the code easily. To retain the contents of RAM in case of power failure and to save power, a 4.5V battery backup arrangement is provided, so that the system may operate in power-down mode with the battery catering to the retention of only the RAM's contents. Thus, the power supply to the circuit can be switched off to minimise the power consumption to about 0.6 mA.

The Circuit

Memory organisation. A 6116 static RAM (2048 x 8-bit) IC5 is used in the circuit with A9 and A10 address pins connected to the ground. Thus, here we are effectively using an address space of 512 locations only. This address space of 512 locations is further divided into 16 pages of 32 locations each. Page selection is done using 4-way DIP switch S2 in the circuit. Thus, in each page, an address space of 32 is available for storing the secret code.

Each digit of the code comprises a hex digit, which is stored as a nibble, requiring only 4-bit data space. It is stored as data bits D4 through D7 in each location. Data bits D0 through D3 are not used and the corresponding pins are therefore pulled to ground via 10-kilo-ohm resistor R3. Thus, maximum length of a code can be up to 32 hex digits. One can, however, keep one's secret code spread over all the 16 pages randomly. For example, one can arrange to store an eight hex-digit secret code as first two digits in 1st page, next three digits in 8th page, next one digit in 3rd page, and the last two digits in 14th page.

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:	
IC1	- 74C922 hexadecimal keyboard encoder
IC2	- 74HC244 octal tri-state buffer
IC3	- 74HC688 8-bit comparator
IC4, IC7	- 74HC132 quad 2-input NAND gate with Schmitt trigger input
IC5	- 6116 2k x 8-bit SRAM
IC6, IC8	- 74HC4040 12-stage binary counter
IC9	- 74LS32 quad 2-input OR gate
IC10	- 74LS74 dual J-K Flip-Flop
IC11	- 7805 regulator 5V
T1	- BS170 n-channel MOSFET
T2	- BC548B npn transistor
D1, D2, D5	- 1N4148 switching diode
D3, D4	- 5.1V, 0.25W zener diode
D6	- 1N4001 rectifier diode
D7, D8	- 1N4007 rectifier diode
LED1	- Red LED
LED2	- Yellow LED
LED3	- Green LED
Capacitors:	
C1, C3	- 1µF, 10V tantalum
C2	- 100nF ceramic disk
C4	- 470nF ceramic disk
C5	- 10µF, 10V electrolytic
C6	- 2200µF, 25V electrolytic
C7	- 100nF, ceramic disk
Resistors (all ¼-watt, ±5% carbon, unless stated otherwise):	
R1	- 100-kilo-ohm
R2, R3, R5, R7, R10, R11	- 10-kilo-ohm
R4	- 1.5-kilo-ohm
R6, R8, R9	- 470-ohm
R12	- 27-ohm
R13	- 2.7-kilo-ohm
RN1	- 4x10-kilo-ohm resistor network (5-pin SIP)
Miscellaneous:	
RL1	- 12V, 500-ohm relay, PCB mountable
S1	- SPDT switch
S2	- 4-way DIP switch
S3	- Push-to-on switch
BZ1	- 12V DC buzzer with inbuilt oscillator
X1	- 230V AC primary to 12V-0-12V, 500 mA secondary transformer

SRAM 6116 is a volatile type memory. Therefore battery backup is required to retain data during power failures. The circuit around transistor T1, comprising diodes D1 through D4, resistors R4 and R5, capacitor C4, and a 4.5V battery pack connected to pins 24 and 18 of IC5 (SRAM 6116), allows the automatic changeover of the circuit to operate in power-down mode during power failures. In this mode, the static RAM chip retains data, while consuming very little power with as low a current as 0.03 mA to 0.6 mA—depending upon the chip used. For example, HM611L-5 will draw 0.03 mA at 2V V_{dd} (in power-down mode), as per databook. This gives a long life to the battery.

Address counter. IC8 (74HC4040) is a 12-stage binary counter, in which the five least significant address lines A0 through A4 (for addressing 32 locations) are sequentially selected on receipt of clock pulses. Selection for the required number of hex digits to be used as secret code can be made by jumpering one of the output pins (7, 6, 5, 3, or 2) of IC8 to pin 2 of IC9 (74LS32), using jumper JPN1 for obtaining 2-, 4-, 8-, 16-, or 32-hex digit long secret code, respectively.

Keyboard encoding. 16-key keyboard encoder IC1 74C922 is used in conjunction with a 16-digit keypad for encoding the pressed key data. It comprises an internal oscillator for clock generation for its own use and an inbuilt key debounce circuitry. Capacitors C2 and C3 connected to its pins 6 and 5 determine the key scanning frequency and debounce period, respectively.

This chip gives a 4-bit data output from pin 14 through 17, corresponding to

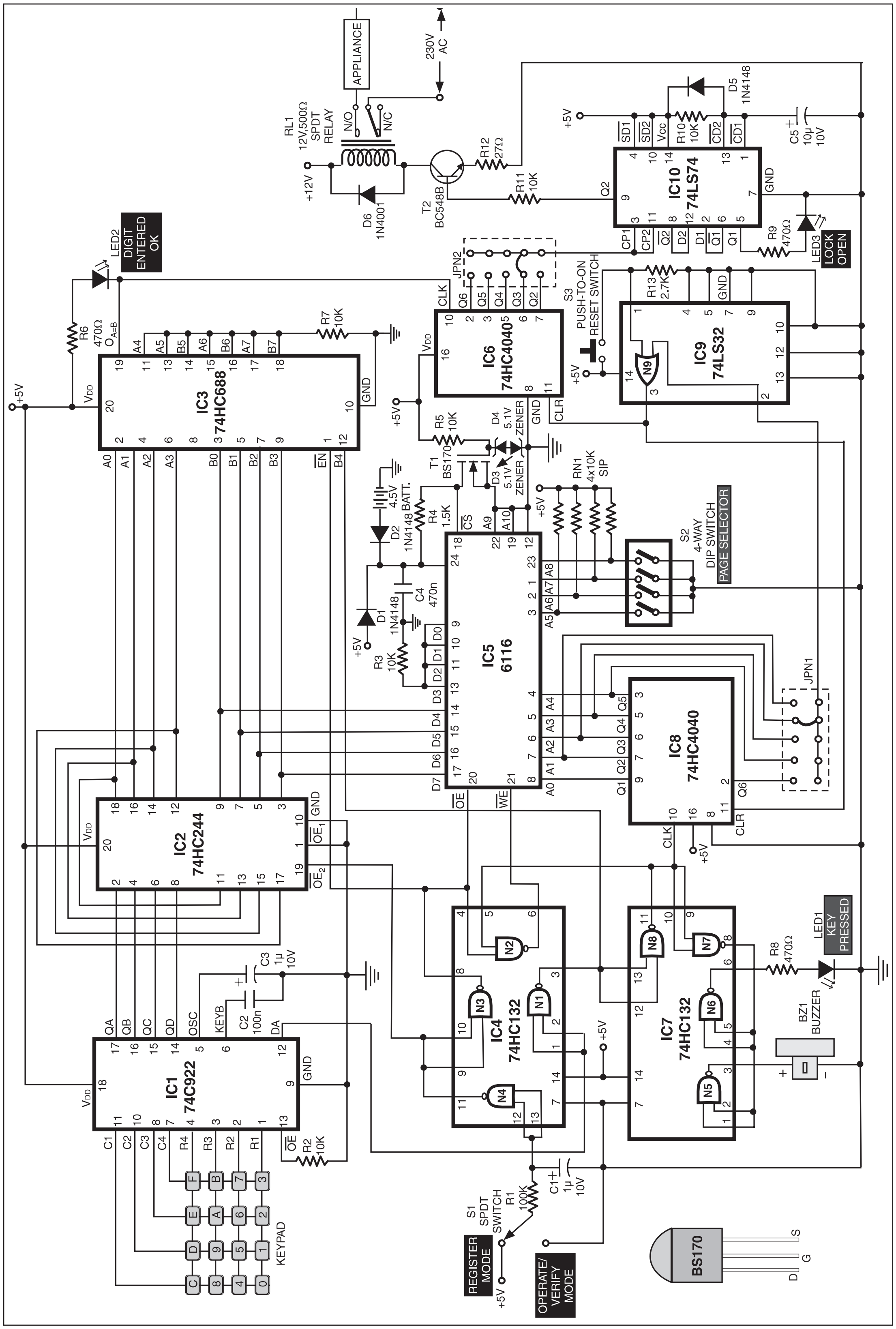

IC1 74C922
IC2 74HC244
IC3 74HC688
IC4 74HC132
IC5 6116
IC6 74HC4040
IC7 74HC132
IC8 74HC4040
IC9 74LS32
IC10 74LS74
KEYPAD
S1 SPDT SWITCH
REGISTER MODE
OPERATE/ VERIFY MODE
S2 4-WAY DIP SWITCH
PAGE SELECTOR
S3 PUSH-TO-ON RESET SWITCH
JPN1
JPN2
LED1 KEY PRESSED
LED2 DIGIT ENTERED OK
LED3 LOCK OPEN
BZ1 BUZZER
RL1 12V,500Ω SPDT RELAY
APPLIANCE
230V AC
T1 BS170
T2 BC548B
D1 1N4148
D2 1N4148
D3 5.1V ZENER
D4 5.1V ZENER
D5 1N4148
D6 1N4001
4.5V BATT.
RN1 4x10K SIP
R1 100K
R2 10K
R3 10K
R4 1.5K
R5 10K
R6 470Ω
R7 10K
R8 470Ω
R9 470Ω
R10 10K
R11 10K
R12 27Ω
R13 2.7K
C1 1µ 10V
C2 100n
C3 1µ 10V
C4 470n
C5 10µ 10V
+5V
+12V
BS170
D G S

Fig. 1: Schematic diagram of versatile digital code lock

a pressed key. Whenever a key is pressed, DA (data available) output pin 12 goes to logic 1, to indicate availability of fresh data at its output pins (14 through 17). This pin 12 reverts to its logic low state when the pressed key is released. The data outputs of IC1 are tri-state. Its output enable $(\overline{\text{OE}})$ pin 13 is grounded through resistor R2 to keep this chip in enabled state. The DA output signal at its pin 12 is used for the following functions via the gates of quad NAND Schmitt IC4 and IC7:

(a) As a clock for 12-stage binary counter IC8 (74HC4040) via Schmitt NAND gates N1 and N8, which advances the counter by one count for every clock.

(b) For sounding of buzzer BZ1 and lighting of LED1 via Schmitt NAND gates N7, N5, and N6 to provide audio-visual indication to the effect that the data corresponding to the pressed key has been generated for further processing.

Auto-reset circuit. IC9 (74LS32) is a quad 2-input OR- gate chip, of which only one gate is used here. This gate is wired as a reset circuit (both for auto and manual reset operation) for IC8 and IC6. One can reset both the counters (IC6 and IC8) manually, by pressing reset switch S3.

Auto-reset function will take place whenever preset number of digits of secret code has been entered, either for verification/ operation or for registration. In verification mode, the secret code would either be right or wrong. Basically, the auto-reset function keeps the secret code really secret, and is smart enough to confuse an intruder.

Operational mode control circuitry

The R1-C1 combination around mode switch S1 functions as a bounce eliminator. Switch S1 is a secret code verification and registration mode selector switch.

Register mode. When switch S1 is kept in register mode, logic '0' output of gate N4 enables second section of octal 3-state buffer IC2 (74HC244) via pin 19 ($\overline{OE2}$). At the same time, $\overline{OE}$ and $\overline{WE}$ pins of RAM are taken to logic 1 and logic 0 states, respectively, to enable writing of data into the RAM, while 8-bit comparator IC3 is disabled. Thus, the keyboard data (corresponding to a pressed key) at the output of IC1, buffered by IC2, is present at D4 through D7 pins of RAM (IC5). This data gets stored at an address corresponding to the selected page, via 4-way DIP switch S2, and its location is determined by outputs Q1 through Q5 of 12-bit counter IC8.

If the first key-press operation occurs soon after pressing reset switch S3, the first data gets entered at address '0' of the selected page. On release of the key, the counter (IC8) increments by one (address also increments by one), as a result of clock pulse applied to its pin 10. Hence, the next key-pressed data will get written at the incremented address. Thus, data corresponding to each depression of key is written into sequential locations of the selected page/pages

Operate/verify mode. In operate/verify mode position of switch S1, the state of $\overline{OE2}$ (pin 19) of IC2, and $\overline{OE}$ and $\overline{WE}$ signals (at pin 20 and 21 of RAM 6116) is reverse of that at register mode. Thus, RAM is selected for reading the data corresponding to the address selected via counter IC8. At the same time, IC3 (74HC688), an 8-bit comparator (configured here as a 5-bit comparator), is enabled. It will compare the entered digit of secret code with the SRAM contents at the location selected by counter IC8, assuming that before the start of verification operation, counter IC8 is reset with the help of reset switch S3 so that first address selected is '0'.

When data is entered via keypad for verification, i.e. to open or close the lock, address of SRAM (IC5) will be incremented automatically whenever a pressed key is released (as during register operation). If the data entered via keyboard is found equal on comparison with stored data, the output ($O_{A=B}$) pin 19 of magnitude comparator IC3 will go to logic low for the period the keypad key is kept pressed. On release of the key, pin 19 will come back to its previous state (logic 1), thus creating a pulse.

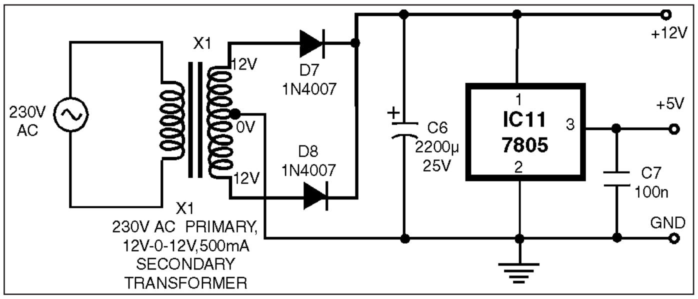


Fig. 2: Power supply for the code lock

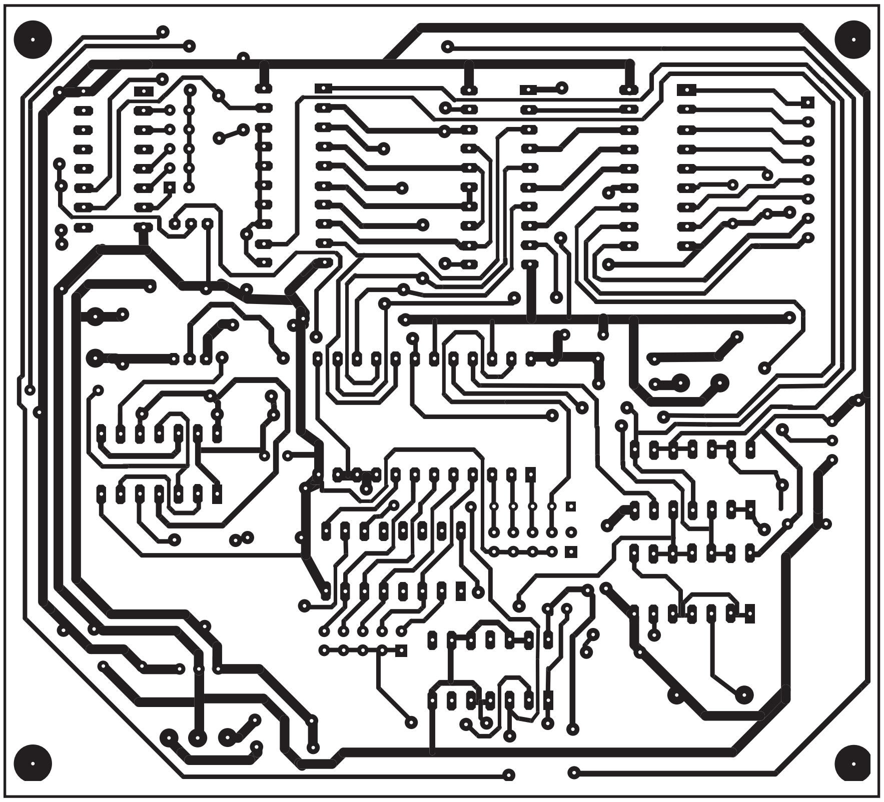


Fig. 3: Actual-size, single-sided PCB for circuits shown in Figs 1 and 2

During logic 0 state at pin 19 of IC3, LED2 will glow to indicate correctness of the code entered. When this LED goes 'off', you may enter the next digit of the secret code. If LED2 does not flash, it means that the digit you entered was not the right one. Now press reset switch S3, and start entering the secret code from the first digit onward again. This kind of error and reset operation will, however, not effect the lock status.

Pin 19 of IC3 is connected to clock input pin 10 of IC6 (74HC4040). In verification mode, whenever a correct digit of secret code is entered, LED2 will flash and IC3 will generate a pulse at its pin 19. This pulse will advance the counter IC6, until the auto-reset function (dependent on position of jumper JPN1) is invoked by current count value of IC8. If all the digits of secret code match the entered digits correctly, IC6 will provide a pulse at one of its output pins (i.e. 7, 6, 5, 3, or 2), depending upon the selected secret code length. Pin 7 will give this pulse for 2-digit length, pin 6 for 4-digit length, pin 5 for 8-digit length, pin 3 for 16-digit length, and pin 2 for 32-digit length of secret code. One of these outputs has to be jumpered to pins 3 and 11 of IC10 using jumper JPN2. In fact, the identical output pins of IC6 and

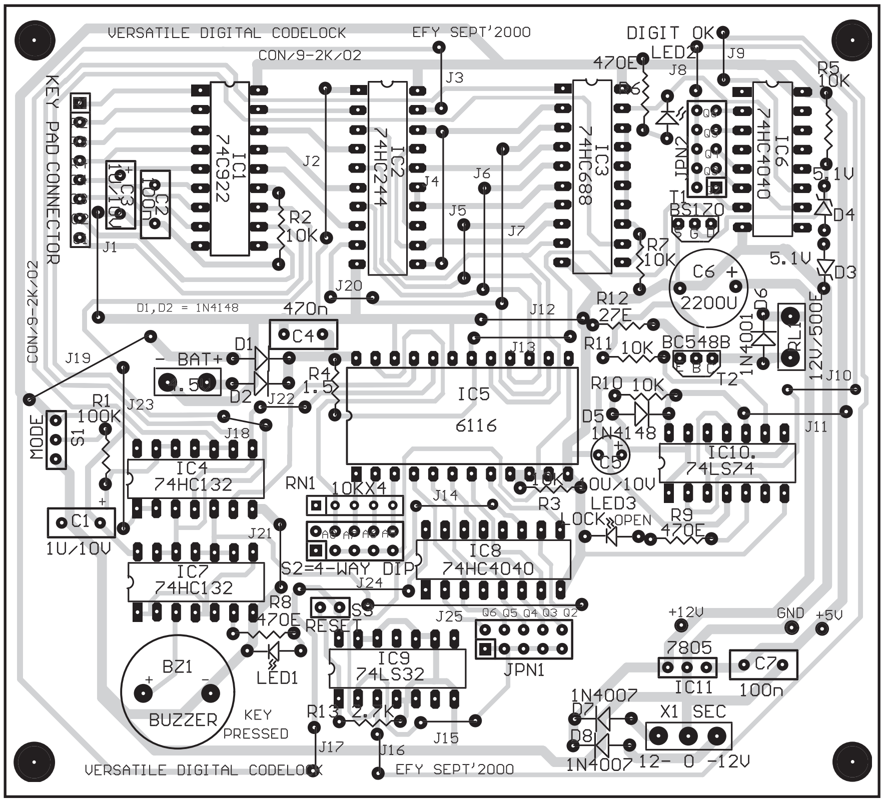

VERSATILE DIGITAL CODELOCK
EFY SEPT'2000
CON/9-2K/02
DIGIT OK
LED2
470E
J8
J9
R5
10K
J3
KEY PAD CONNECTOR
IC1
74C922
IC2
74HC244
IC3
74HC688
IC6
74HC4040
JPN2
T1
BS170
S G D
J2
J4
J6
J5
J7
C3
10/10V
C2
100n
R2
10K
J1
R7
10K
C6
2200U
5.1V
D4
D3
J20
R12
27E
D6
1N4001
RL1
12V/500E
CON/9-2K/02
D1,D2 = 1N4148
470n
C4
J12
J13
R11
10K
BC548B
E B C
T2
J19
BAT+
1.5
D1
D2
R4
1.5
IC5
6116
R10
10K
J10
J22
R1
100K
J23
J18
D5
1N4148
J11
MODE
S1
IC4
74HC132
RN1
10KX4
C5
10U/10V
IC10
74LS74
C1
1U/10V
J14
R3
10K
LED3
LOCK
OPEN
R9
470E
J21
IC7
74HC132
S2=4-WAY DIP
IC8
74HC4040
J24
R8
470E
RESET
S3
J25
Q6 Q5 Q4 Q3 Q2
+12V
GND
+5V
LED1
IC9
74LS32
JPN1
7805
IC11
C7
100n
BZ1
BUZZER
KEY PRESSED
R13
2.7K
J17
J16
J15
1N4007
D7
D8
1N4007
X1 SEC
12- 0 -12V
VERSATILE DIGITAL CODELOCK
EFY SEPT'2000

Fig. 4: Component layout for the PCB

IC8 have to be connected to pins 3/11 (shorted) of IC10 and pin 2 of IC9, respectively, through jumpers JPN2 and JPN1.

IC10 (74LS74) is a dual J-K flip-flop chip, in which both the flip-flops are configured to work in toggle mode. Both the flip-flops get same trigger input through pins 3 and 11 respectively. One of the flip-flops drives LED3 connected to Q1 (pin 5), while output Q2 at pin 9 connected to the base of transistor T2, through resistor R11, drives relay RL1, whose contacts may be used for switching 'on'/'off' supply to a lock or appliance. One could even use it for locking/unlocking of mains supply to any appliance. When the lock is in 'open' state (i.e. RL1 energised), LED3 will be 'on'. LED3, when 'off', will mean 'closed' state of the lock.

The whole circuit (excluding keypad) can be assembled on a 12x10 cm single-sided, general-purpose PCB, using a few wire jumpers. However, an actual-size, single-sided PCB for the complete circuit shown in Fig. 1, and that of power supply in Fig. 2, is shown in Fig. 3. The component layout for the PCB is shown in Fig. 4.

The use of IC bases for ICs will be a good practice. MOSFET BS170 used in the circuit is very sensitive to static electricity, so it needs to be handled with care. A 100nF bypass capacitor should be used with each chip.

Operation

1. After assembling the circuit, recheck all the connections and apply power without putting the ICs into their bases. Verify the supply and ground pin voltages at all the IC bases. Then plug-in all the chips into their bases, after turning 'off' the power.

2. Put switch S1 in 'register mode' position. Decide a secret code. Suppose it is a 4-digit long code; select a page using 4-way DIP switch S2.

3. Use jumper JPN1 to extend pin 6 of IC8 to pin 2 of IC9 and jumper JPN2 to extend pin 6 of IC6 to pins 3/pin 11 of IC10.

4. Turn 'on' power and press reset switch S3 momentarily. Now press the keypad key corresponding to the first digit of your secret code. LED1 will light up and buzzer will sound briefly. Then enter the rest of the three digits of your secret code one-by-one in a similar way.

5. Flip switch S1 to 'operate/verify' position, since secret code registration is over. You have to remember the switch S2 combination (i.e. page number) and the secret code. To open or close the lock, make sure that switch S2 is in the same position as used during secret code registration. Now press reset switch S3 momentarily and enter secret code digits one-by-one. On entry of each secret code digit correctly, you will get a confirmation signal through flashing of LED2. After entering all digits, the lock will respond (relay will energise). If the code entered was correct, then LED3 will light up. If secret code has not been entered correctly, re-enter the same after pressing reset switch S3. Switch S1, along with the whole circuit, must be kept hidden while in use, except for the keyboard and switches S2 and S3. ◻

MOSFET-BASED 50Hz UPS-CUM-EPS

R.V. DHEKALE AND S.D. PHADKE

Most of the UPS (uninterrupted power supplies) available in the market internally use a frequency ranging from 100 Hz to 50 kHz. The regulation of output voltage is done using the pulse width modulation technique, which produces a quasi-square waveform output from the inverter transformer. Such an output waveform produces lots of noise, which is not desirable for a computer and other sensitive equipment. This voltage waveform can drive a computer, but not the tubelight, fan, EPBAX, TV, VCR, etc properly. The advantage offered by a UPS is that its changeover period is quite low, so that the computer or any other sensitive load is not interrupted during the mains failure.

EPS (emergency power supply) of various brands, providing 50Hz squarewave output, can drive the computer, tubelight, TV, VCR, fan, etc, but considerable noise is produced from the EPS or the load. Another drawback of an EPS is that its changeover period is relatively high, so the computer may get reset or continuity of the play mode of the VCR may get interrupted on mains failure.

The circuit

A 50Hz sinewave offline UPS-cum-EPS circuit is presented here which produces a sinewave output with very low noise level. It drives the equipment/load (< 250 watts), which normally operates on 230V, 50Hz AC. Changeover period of this system is less than 1 millisecond so that no interruption in operation of a computer or continuity of the play mode of a VCR and TV is caused. The complete schematic diagram of the circuit is shown in Fig. 2.

When mains is present and is within the specified limits, the same is fed to the load. At the same time, battery is charged. If mains voltage goes below 170 volts (or mains power fails) or if it is above 270 volts, system changes over from mains to back-up mode. In the back-up mode, battery voltage of 12V DC is converted into 230V AC and applied to the load within 1 milli-second.

However, if battery voltage drops below 10V DC, or output voltage goes below 225V AC, there will be a visual and audible indication of low-battery state. During this warning period, one can save the data and switch off the computer safely. But during the low-battery indication, if the computer or load is not switched off, it remains on back-up mode. After the end of back-up time, system switches off automatically, due to activation of battery's deep discharge cut-out circuit, which reduces the power consumption from the battery to a negligible value (only 90 mA).

Inverter control circuit. It uses the basic squarewave (astable multivibrator) oscillator employing IC 555, with 5.1V supply voltage derived from 12V battery by using 5.1V zener ZD3 in series with a resistance. Astable multivibrator is designed for a frequency of 100 Hz, which can be varied above or below 100 Hz using preset PR1. The frequency 'f' of astable multivibrator is given by the relationship:

$$f=\frac{1.44}{(RA+2RB)C}\,\text{Hz}$$

where RB = In-circuit resistance of preset PR1.

If R_A=220 ohms and R_B=15 kilo-ohms, then f=100 Hz. Due to the tolarance of the component values, observed frequency may not be exactly equal to 100 Hz, and therefore preset PR1 may need to be suitably adjusted.

The output of the astable multivibrator is given to pin 5 of the bistable multivibrator wired around IC 7473, which produces the two 50Hz squarewave outputs at its pins 8 and 9 with a phase difference of 180 degrees between the two. One of the outputs is coupled to the base of transistor T1 through diode D1 and series current-limiting resistor R3, while the second output is coupled to the base of transistor T2 through diode D2 and series resistor R4. Transistors T1 and T2 act as MOSEFT drivers.

Power output stage. The collector of transistor T1 is connected to the gates of MOSFETs M1 through M3 (referred to as bank 1), while that of transistor T2 is connected to the gates of MOSFETs M4 through M6 (referred to as bank 2). MOSFETs M1 through M3 are connected in parallel—gates of MOSFETs M1 through M3 and those of MOSFETs M4 through M6 are made common. Similarly, drains and sources of MOSFETs in each bank are paralleled as shown in the circuit. Drains of MOSEFTs of one bank are connected to one extreme taping of 9-volt primary of the inverter transformer X1, and that of the MOSEFTs of the second bank are connected to the other extreme

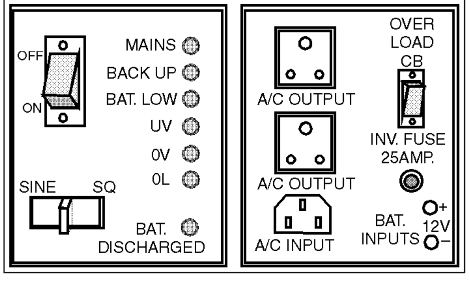


Fig. 1: Proposed front and rear panal layouts

9-volt taping of the same transformer. Centre tap of the primary is directly connected to the positive terminal of 12V, 7Ah battery. Capacitor C2 is connected across the secondary of the inverter transformer, either directly or via inductor L1 (wound on the same core as extension of secondary winding), using sine/square slide switch SW2.

When mains power fails, relay gets de-energised and 12V battery supply is fed to the control circuit through top contacts of the relay to produce squarewave outputs at pin Nos. 8 and 9 of IC 7473 with a frequency of 50 Hz. At any instant, if voltage at pin 8 of IC2 is +5V, the voltage at pin 9 of IC2 is 0V, and vice versa. Therefore, when transistor T1 conducts, transistor T2 is cut off, and vice versa. When transistor T1 conducts, the voltage at collector of transistor T1 drops to 0.7 V, and therefore MOSFETs of bank 1 remain cut off while collector of transistor T2 is at 5V. Thus,

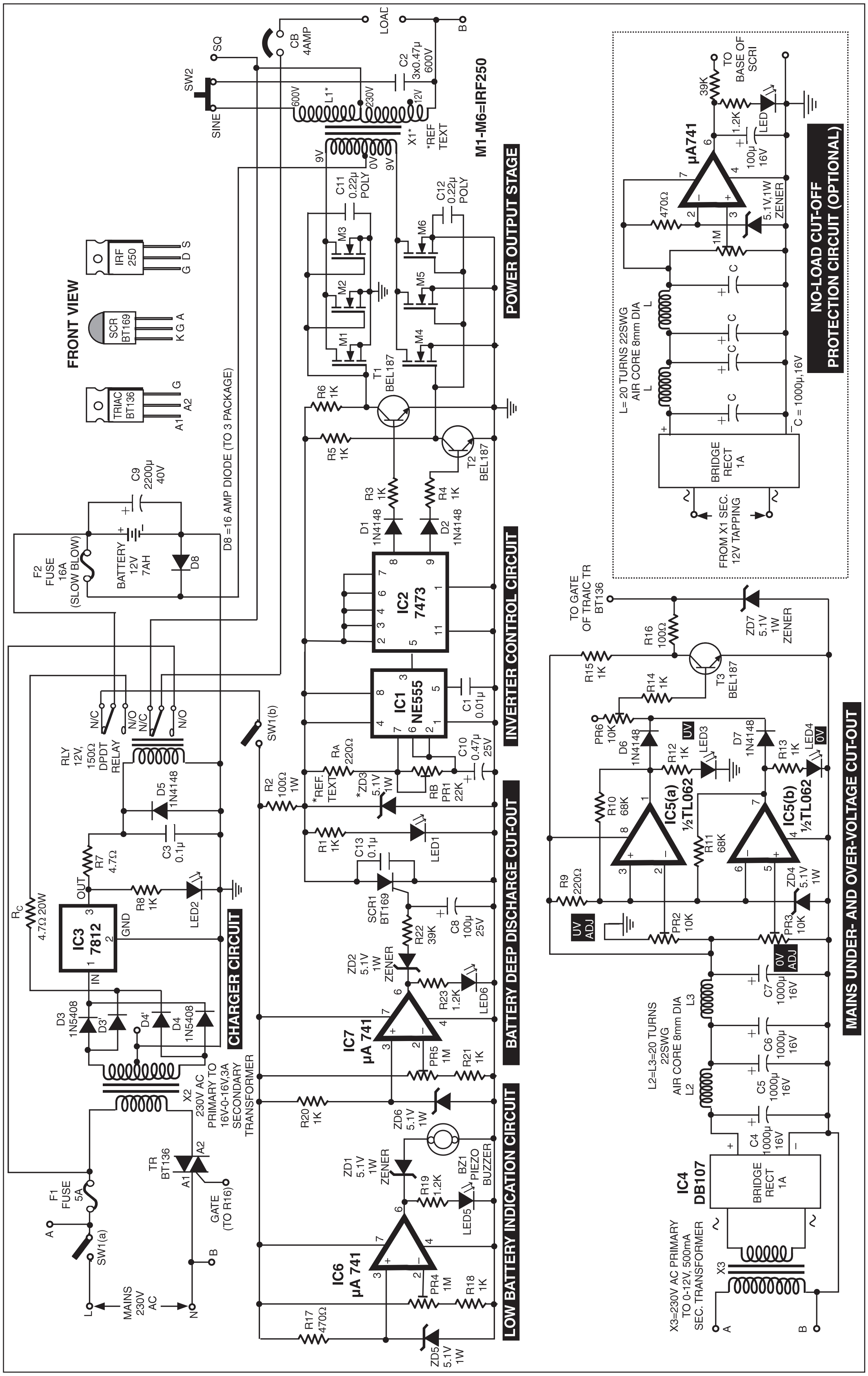

CHARGER CIRCUIT
LOW BATTERY INDICATION CIRCUIT
BATTERY DEEP DISCHARGE CUT-OUT
INVERTER CONTROL CIRCUIT
POWER OUTPUT STAGE
MAINS UNDER- AND OVER-VOLTAGE CUT-OUT
NO-LOAD CUT-OFF PROTECTION CIRCUIT (OPTIONAL)
FRONT VIEW
TRIAC BT136
SCR BT169
IRF 250
M1-M6=IRF250
IC1 NE555
IC2 7473
IC3 7812
IC4 DB107
IC5(a) ½TL062
IC5(b) ½TL062
IC6 μA 741
IC7 μA 741
μA741
MAINS 230V AC
X2 230V AC PRIMARY TO 16V-0-16V,3A SECONDARY TRANSFORMER
X3=230V AC PRIMARY TO 0-12V, 500mA SEC. TRANSFORMER
BATTERY 12V 7AH
F2 FUSE 16A (SLOW BLOW)
F1 FUSE 5A
D8 =16 AMP DIODE (TO 3 PACKAGE)
RLY 12V, 150Ω DPDT RELAY
CB 4AMP
LOAD
SW2
SINE
SQ
BZ1 PIEZO BUZZER
L2=L3=20 TURNS 22SWG AIR CORE 8mm DIA
L= 20 TURNS 22SWG AIR CORE 8mm DIA
C = 1000μ,16V
FROM X1 SEC. 12V TAPPING
TO BASE OF SCRI
TO GATE OF TRAIC TR BT136
UV ADJ
0V ADJ

Fig. 2: Schematic diagram of MOSFET-based sinewave inverter optional circuit of no-load/over-load protector (within dotted lines)

MOSFETs of bank 2 conduct and the current flows through one-half of inverter transformer X1 primary. During the next half cycle, the voltage at pin 8 of IC2 is 0V and that at pin 9 is +5V. As a result, the voltage at the collector of transistor T1 is +5V and that at the collector of transistor T2 is 0.7V. Hence, MOSFETs of bank 2 are cut-off while those of bank 1 conduct. This results in a large DC current swing through the other half of the inverter transformer X1 primary. In this way, two banks of the MOSFETs conduct alternately to produce 230V AC, 50 Hz across the secondary of the inverter transformer X1. Inductance L1 and capacitor C2 on the secondary side act as filter/resonant circuit (at 50 Hz) to produce a waveform approaching a sinewave. LED1, when 'on', indicates that the system is on back up.

Charger circuit. This circuit comprises step-down transformer X2, followed by rectifier, regulator, and double-changeover 12V relay RLY. Mains supply of 230V AC is applied across the primary of the transformer through triac BT136. The gate of the triac is connected to the output of over-/under-voltage cut-off circuit. As long as the mains voltage is between 170 and 270 volts, +5V is provided to the gate of the triac and hence it conducts. If AC mains voltage goes out of the above-mentioned limits, the gate voltage falls to 0.7 volt and the triac does not conduct.

When traic conducts, 16-0-16V AC voltage is developed across the secondary of X2. It is converted into DC voltage by the diodes D3 and D4, and the rectified output is given to the input of the 12V regulator 7812 (IC3). The output of the regulator is connected across the relay coil through series resistor R7, which ensures that the relay just operates when AC mains is at 170 volts (or more).

When mains voltage is within the range of 170-270 volts, relay activates. In this

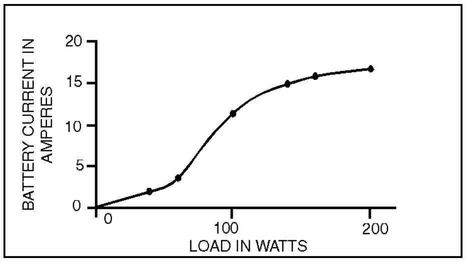


Fig. 3: Battery current vs load (squarewave O/P)

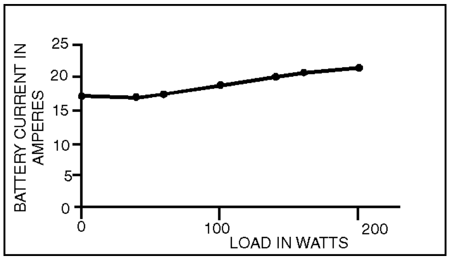


Fig. 4: Battery current vs load (sinewave O/P)

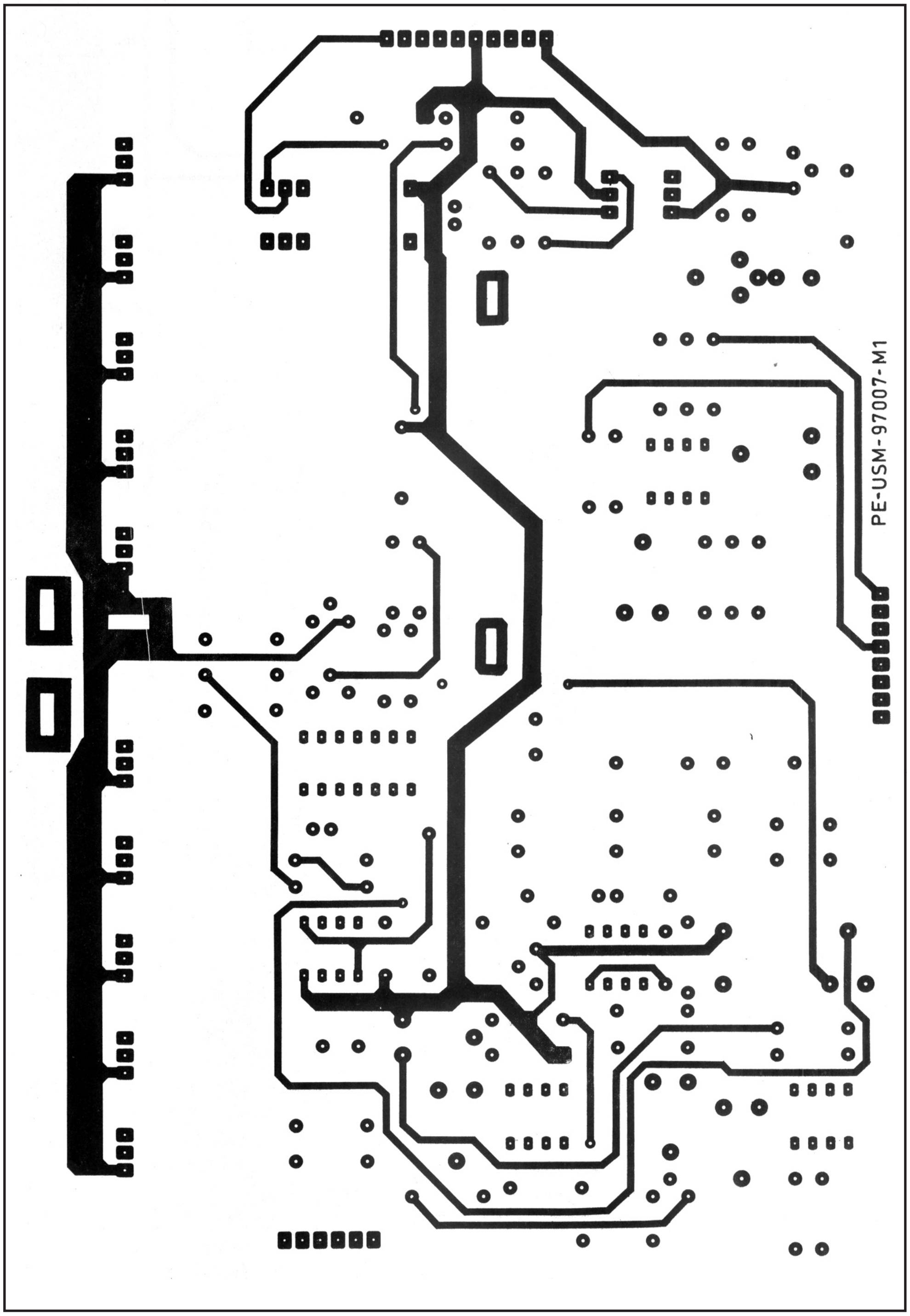


Fig. 5: Actual-size component-side track layout for the PCB

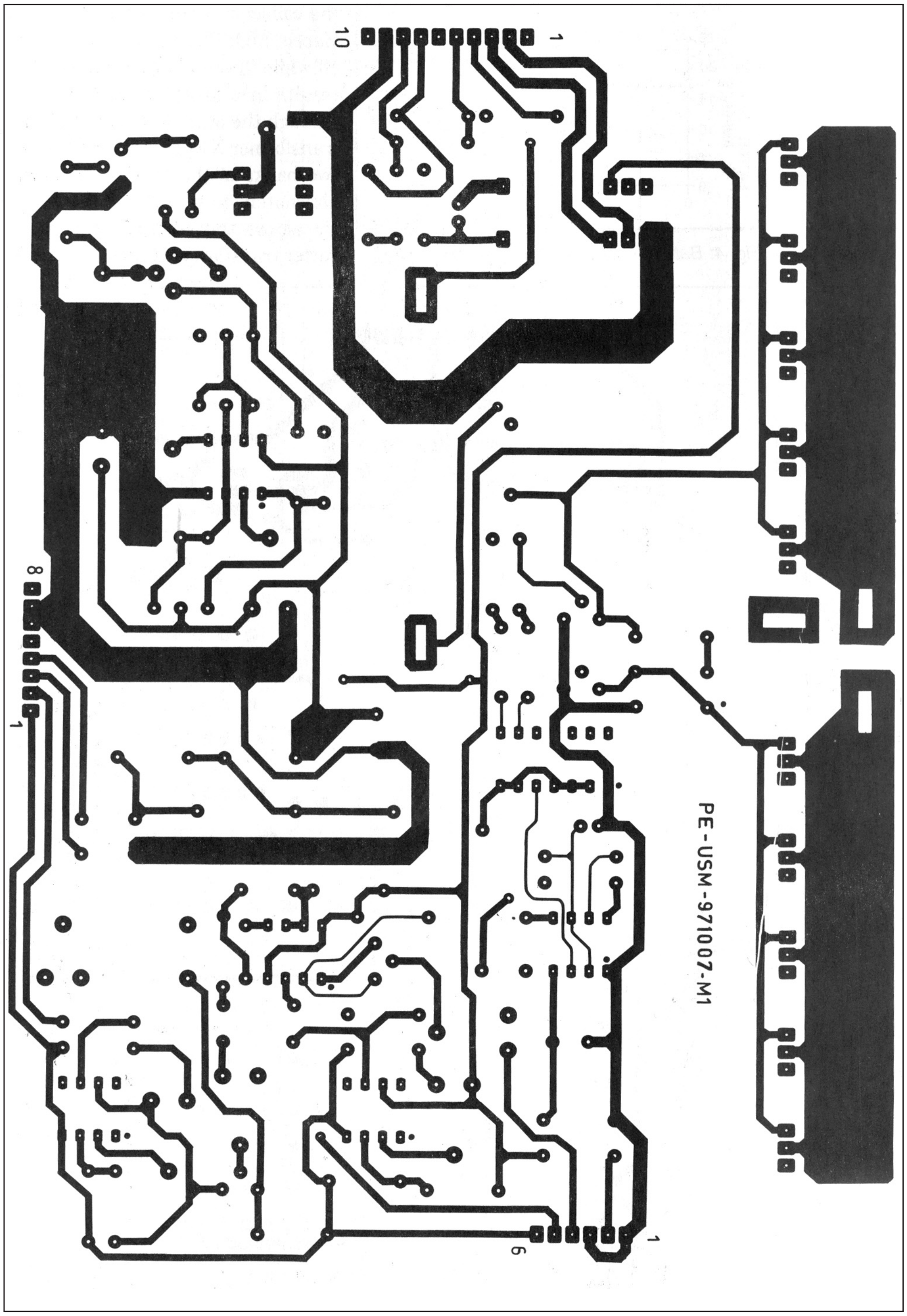


Fig. 6: Actual-size solder-side track layout for the PCB

mode, mains voltage is directly routed to the load through N/O contacts (lower) of relay RLY and 4-amp rated contact breaker (CB). LED2 indicates that the system is on mains. At the same time, the rectified voltage from diodes D3' and D4' is made available through N/O contacts (upper) of relay RLY for charging the battery via charging resistance R_C. If the mains supply fails or goes out of the range of 170-270 volts, relay de-energises and the battery supply of 12V is connected to the inverter circuit through N/C contacts (upper). The voltage developed by the inverter goes to the output socket of UPS through the N/C contacts (lower) via 4-amp CB.

Under-/over-voltage cut-out. The 230V AC mains is stepped down to 12V AC, using transformer X3. It is rectified by the bridge rectifier and filtered by two Pi (ϖ) section filters to reduce the level of ripple voltage. The filtered DC voltage is applied to dual op-amp IC5 (used as dual comparator). The reference voltage for the comparators is developed across zener diode ZD4, which is connected to the filtered DC positive rail via resistor R9. Even if the AC mains voltage varies between 170V and 270V, the voltage across zener ZD4 remains constant at 5.1 volts. The cathode of zener diode ZD4 is connected to the inverting input of the comparator IC5(b) and non-inverting input of the comparator IC5(a).

Preset PR2 can be used to vary the inverting terminal voltage of the comparator IC5(a) above and below the reference voltage of 5.1V. Similarly, non-inverting input of the comparator IC5(b) can also be varied above and below the 5.1V reference voltage applied to the inverting input of IC5(b), using preset PR3.

Preset PR2 is adjusted such that when AC mains voltage goes below 170 volts, the voltage at inverting input of comparator IC5(a) goes below 5.1 volts, so that its output goes high. As a result, transistor T3 conducts and its collector voltage (connected to the gate of triac TR) drops to 0.7 volt, and hence the triac cuts off. This causes relay RLY to de-energise and the system changes over to backup mode of operation. Glowing of LED3 indicates the under-voltage condition.

Similarly, preset PR3 is adjusted such that when mains voltage goes above 270V AC, the voltage at non-inverting input of the comparator IC5(b) goes above 5.1 volts, so that its output goes high to eventually cut-off the triac, and the system again operates in the backup mode. The over-voltage indication is shown by glowing of LED4.

This means that as long as the mains voltage is within the range of 170V AC to 270 V AC, the voltage at the collector of transistor T3 is 12 volts, and hence triac TR conducts fully and relay RLY activates. As a result, the system remains on mains mode. Diodes D6 and D7 act as 2-input wired-OR gate for combining the outputs from the two comparators and prevent the output of one comparator going into the output terminal of other comparator. Zener diode ZD6 is used to limit the gate voltage of the traic to 5.1 volts.

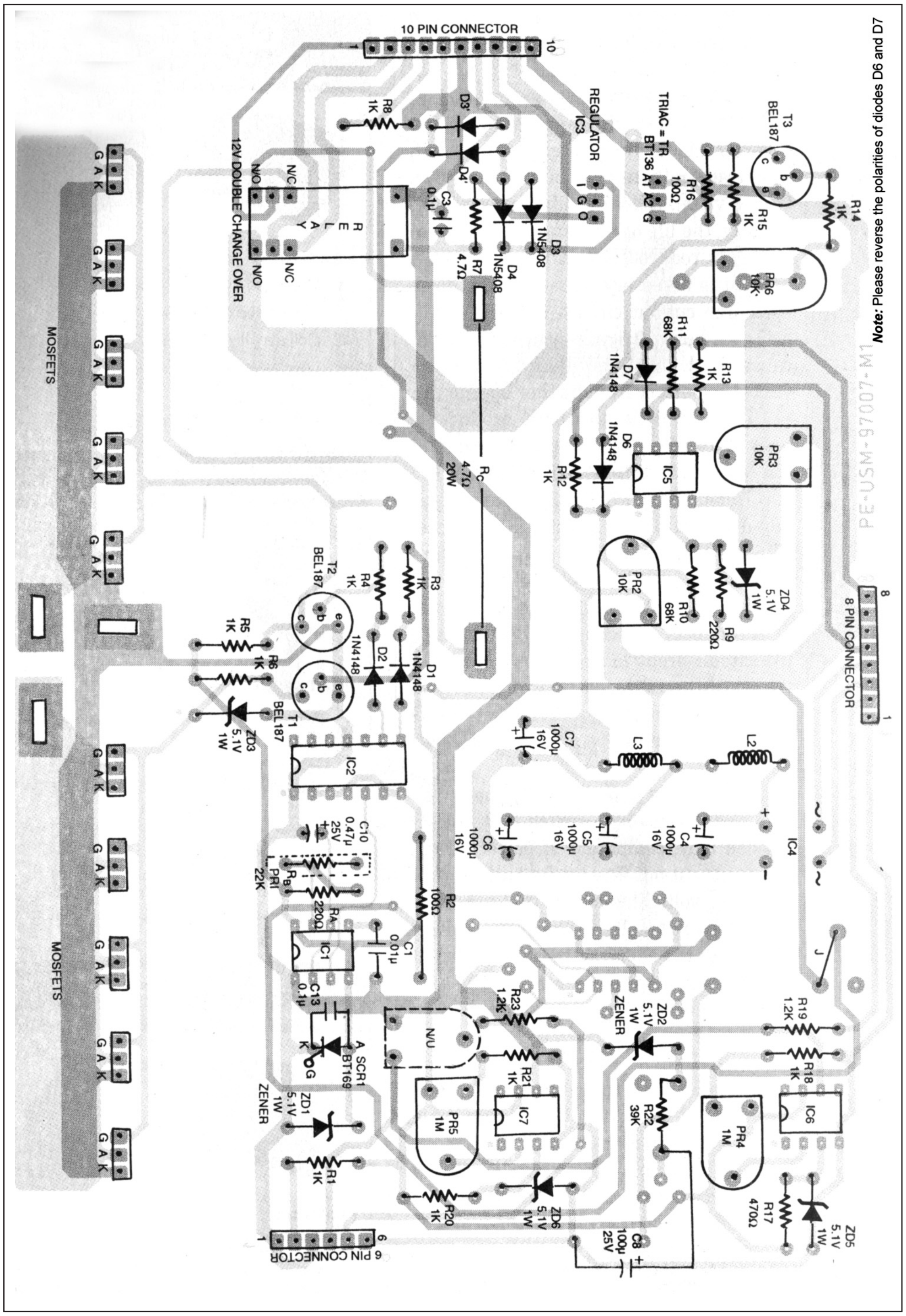

10 PIN CONNECTOR
Note: Please reverse the polarities of diodes D6 and D7
8 PIN CONNECTOR
6 PIN CONNECTOR
MOSFETS
MOSFETS
G A K
RELAY
12V DOUBLE CHANGE OVER
N/C
N/O
REGULATOR IC3
TRIAC = TR BT136
PE-USM-97007-M1
T1 BEL187
T2 BEL187
T3 BEL187
IC1
IC2
IC4
IC5
IC6
IC7
SCR1 BT169
ZD1 5.1V 1W ZENER
ZD2 5.1V 1W ZENER
ZD3 5.1V 1W
ZD4 5.1V 1W
ZD5 5.1V 1W
ZD6 5.1V 1W
D1 1N4148
D2 1N4148
D3 1N5408
D4 1N5408
D6 1N4148
D7 1N4148
PR2 10K
PR3 10K
PR4 1M
PR5 1M
PR6 10K
Rc 4.7Ω 20W
L2
L3
C1 0.01µ
C3 0.1µ
C4 1000µ 16V
C5 1000µ 16V
C6 1000µ 16V
C7 1000µ 16V
C8 100µ 25V
C10 0.47µ 25V
C13 0.1µ
R1 1K
R2 100Ω
R3 1K
R4 1K
R5 1K
R6 1K
R7 4.7Ω
R8 1K
R9 220Ω
R10 68K
R11 68K
R12 1K
R13 1K
R14 1K
R15 1K
R16 100Ω
R17 470Ω
R18 1K
R19 1.2K
R20 1K
R21 1K
R22 39K
R23 1.2K
RA 220Ω
RB
L PRI 22K
NU
J

Fig. 7: Component layout for the PCB

***Low-battery indicator*.** This circuit is wired around op-amp µA741 (IC6), which functions as a comparator here. Battery voltage is applied across pins 7 and 4. Voltage at non-inverting input of IC6 is maintained constant at 5.1 volts by zener diode ZD5 and series resistor R17. Voltage at the inverting input of IC6 can be varied above and below 5.1 volts using preset PR4. Preset PR4 is adjusted in such a way that if battery voltage goes below 10V, the voltage at inverting input goes below 5.1 volts, so that output voltage at pin 6 of IC6 goes high (about 10 V). Hence, LED5 glows and produces intermittent sound from the buzzer, indicating low-battery status.

At the beginning of the indication, the output voltage of inverter would be around 225V AC. This enables the user to take timely action such as saving data (in case load comprises a computer).

***Battery deep-discharge cut-out*.** If the UPS system keeps operating in the inverter mode, the battery voltage will drop eventually to prohibitively low level (say, 5 volts). If such condition occurs frequently, the life of the battery will be considerably reduced. To remove this drawback, it is necessary to use battery deep-discharge cut-out circuit. If battery voltage goes below 9.5 volts, this circuit will cause the UPS to shut down, which prevents the battery from further discharge.

This circuit is also built around op-amp µA741 (IC7) working as a comparator. Voltage at non-inverting input of IC7 is 5.1 volts, which is kept constant by zener diode ZD6 and resistor R20. Preset PR5 is adjusted in such a way that if battery voltage goes below 9.5 volts, IC7 output would go high to turn on SCR. Once SCR conducts, the supply voltage for control circuit drops to near 0V. As a result, the control circuit is unable to produce gate drive pulses for the two MOSFET banks and the inverter stops producing AC output.

Suppose the mains supply is not available and you want to switch on the UPS on load (say, computer). If battery deep-discharge cut-out is set for a battery voltage of 9.5 volts, this means that you want to 'cold' start the UPS. On initial switching 'on' of the UPS, the starting current requirement from the battery is quite high to cause a drop in battery voltage, due to which battery deep-discharge cut-out circuit would be activated and inverter is not

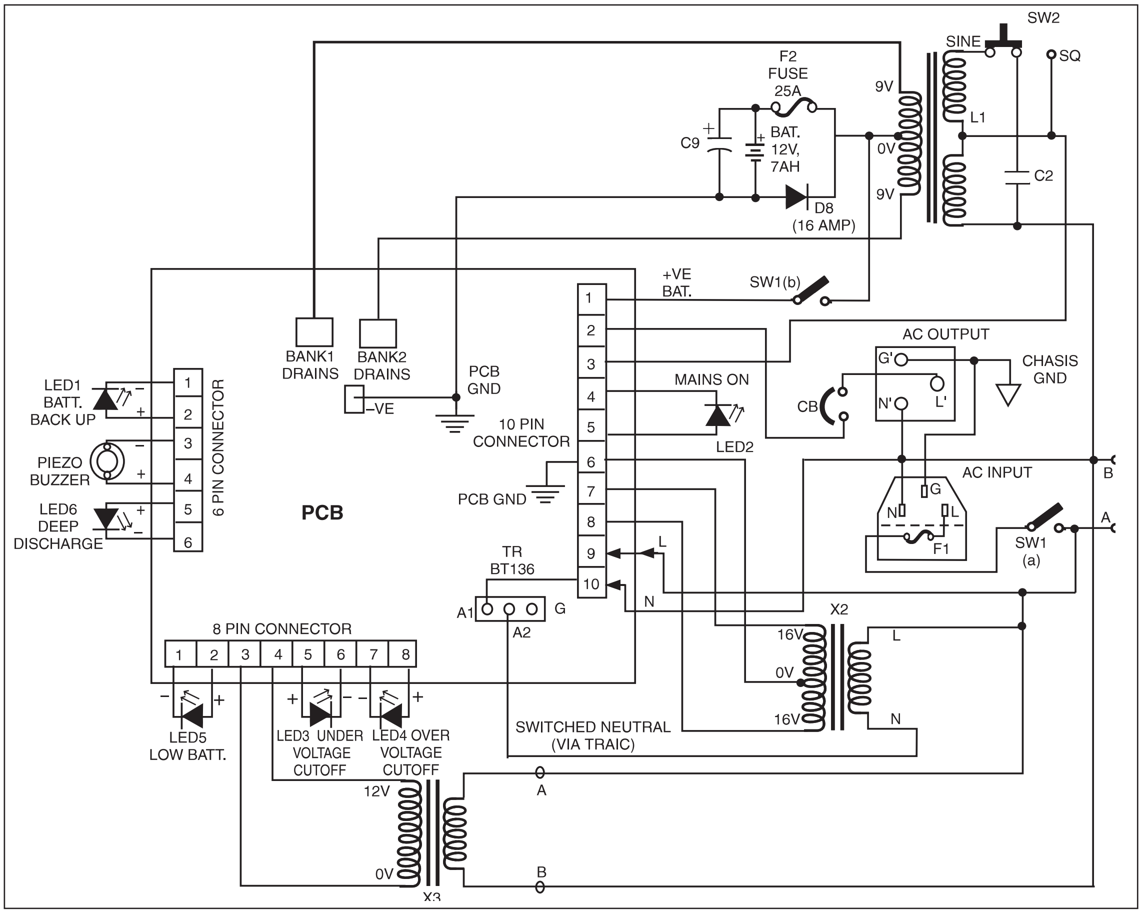

SW2
SINE
SQ
F2
FUSE
25A
9V
0V
9V
L1
C2
C9
BAT.
12V,
7AH
D8
(16 AMP)
+VE
BAT.
SW1(b)
AC OUTPUT
G'
L'
N'
CHASIS
GND
CB
MAINS ON
LED2
AC INPUT
N
G
L
F1
SW1
(a)
A
B
BANK1
DRAINS
BANK2
DRAINS
–VE
PCB
GND
10 PIN
CONNECTOR
PCB GND
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
LED1
BATT.
BACK UP
PIEZO
BUZZER
LED6
DEEP
DISCHARGE
6 PIN CONNECTOR
PCB
TR
BT136
A1
A2
G
X2
16V
0V
16V
L
N
8 PIN CONNECTOR
LED5
LOW BATT.
LED3 UNDER
VOLTAGE
CUTOFF
LED4 OVER
VOLTAGE
CUTOFF
SWITCHED NEUTRAL
(VIA TRAIC)
12V
0V
X3
A
B

Fig. 8: Wiring diagram of chasis/panel mounted components to the PCB

switched 'on'. To overcome this problem, 100µF capacitor C8 is connected across gate-source terminals of SCR. It provides necessary delay for the battery current/voltage to settle down to its stable value after switching on.

Reverse battery protection. A 16A to 20A diode (D8) in conjunction with fuse F2 provides reverse battery protection, in case battery is connected with reverse polarity. In case of reverse polarity, fuse F2 will blow and battery supply to the circuit will be immediately switched off.

Protection against no-load. An optional circuit for 'no load' condition, during which the output voltage may shoot up to 290V AC or more, is shown in Fig. 2. The rectifier and filter used are identical to that of under-voltage or over-voltage protection circuit, while the comparator circuit is identical to over-voltage comparator. And hence, no separate explanation is included. The output of the circuit is connected to the gate of SCR1 in Fig 2.

Spike suppression. Since triac TR is connected in series with the primary of charging transformer X2 and gate voltage is obtained from the under-/over-voltage cut-out, a spike is treated on par with the over-voltage (>270V) condition. If mains voltage spike goes above 270V AC, gate voltage of triac TR becomes 0.7 volt, and hence triac does not conduct. As voltage across the coil of relay RLY is zero, the relay is de-energised and system changes over to back-up mode during voltage spike period. Thus the load is protected from the voltage spikes in the mains.

Back-up time. Using a single battery of 12V, 7Ah with a load (100 to 120W) comprising computer along with colour monitor, the back-up time is 10 to 15 minutes with squarewave output (half with sinewave output). With a battery of 12V, 180Ah, the back-up time is 4 to 5 hours with squarewave output (2 to 2.5 hours with sinewave output).

Charging resistance. For 12V/7Ah battery, charging resistance R_C should be 10 ohms/20 watts so that the battery will not be heated during charging. Similarly, for 12V/90Ah battery, charging resistance Rc should be 4.7 ohms/25 watts, and for 12V/180Ah battery, 3.3 ohms/30 watts.

Square/sinewave output selection. The selection of sinewave or squarewave output is done using slide switch SW2. In squarewave position, capacitor C2 is directly shunted across 230V terminal of the secondary of transformer X1, while in sinewave position, coil L1 (extension of 230V secondary, marked 600V) is added in series with capacitor C2 to resonate at 50 Hz.The power consumption from the battery increases in sinewave output position of switch SW2. The graphs of supply (battery) current versus the load for each position of switch SW2, indicating the comparative values, are shown in Figs 3 and 4. (***Note.*** *The secondary winding current rating for 230V section for 200W output may be chosen as 1 amp, and that for 600V extension forming inductor L1, the current rating of the winding may be chosen as 300 mA.*)

Output power. Using six MOSFETs (three per bank) with proper heat sinks with inverter transformer of 16-ampere primary rating, the UPS-cum-EPS provides power up to 250 watts. With this power, two computers with B&W monitors, or one computer with colour monitor and a small printer can be driven. Using the same circuit, if you use ten MOSFETs (five per bank) and inverter transformer of 32-amp primary rating, the power of the UPS-cum-EPS can be increased to 500 watts or 625 VA.

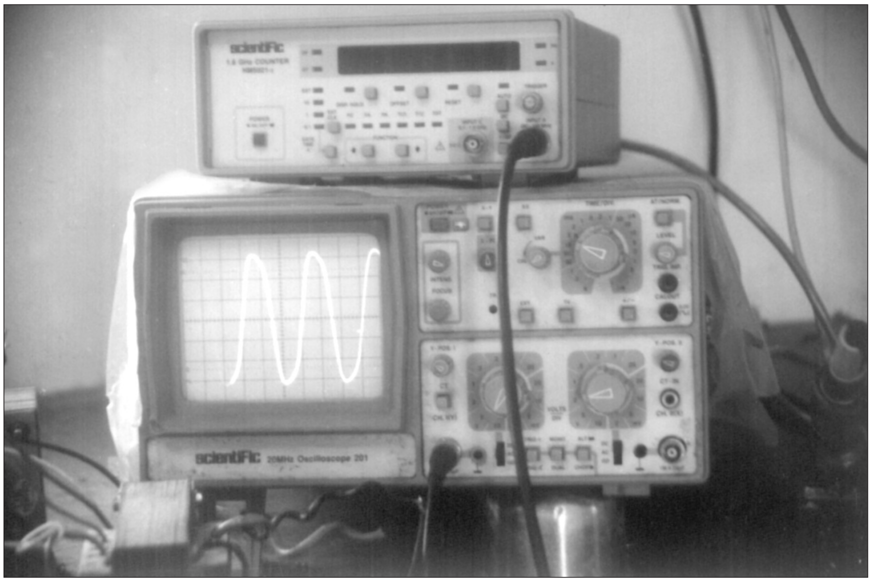
The transformer ratings as mentioned above are applicable for squarewave output. The transformer primary rating will be 25 per cent higher in case of sinewave output. Also the number of MOSFETs per bank should also be correspondingly

PARTS LIST

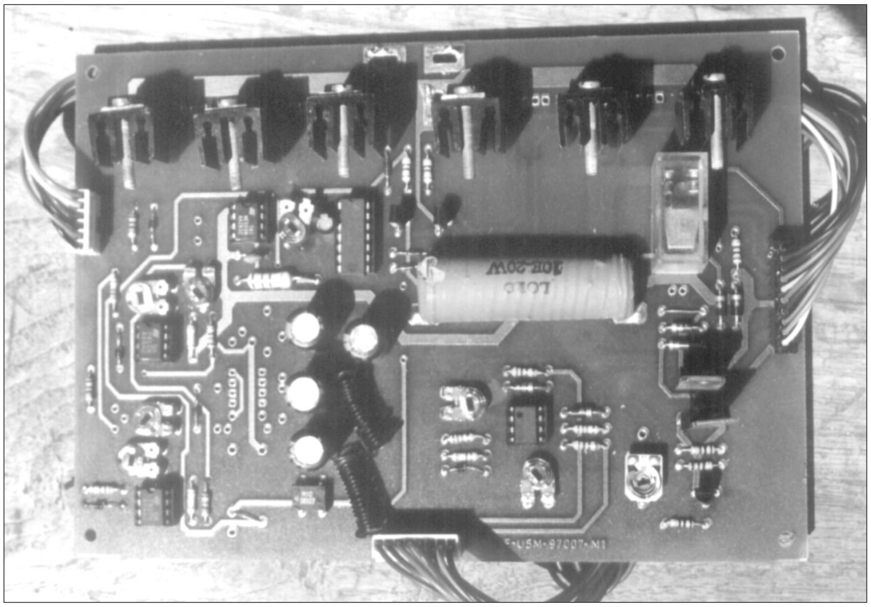
Semiconductors:		
IC1	-	NE555 timer
IC2	-	7473 dual JK-flip-flop
IC3	-	7812 regulator, 12V
IC4	-	DB107 bridge rectifier, 1A
IC5	-	TL062 dual op-amp
IC6, IC7	-	µA741 op-amp
D1,D2, D5, D6, D7	-	1N4148 switching diode
D3, D3', D4, D4'	-	1N5408 rectifier diode, 3A
D8	-	Rectifier diode, 16A–(TO3)
ZD1-ZD7	-	5.1V, 1W zener diode
T1-T3	-	BEL187 npn transistor
TR	-	BT136 triac
SCR1	-	BT169 SCR
M1-M6	-	IRF250 MOSFET
LED1-LED6	-	3mm LED
Resistors (all ¼-watt, ±5% carbon, unless stated otherwise):		
R_A	-	220-ohm
R_C	-	4.7-ohm, W/W 20W
R1, R3-R6, R8 R12-R15, R18 R20, R21	-	1-kilo-ohm
R2	-	100-ohm, 1W
	-	4.7-kilo-ohm
R7	-	4.7-ohm
R9	-	220-ohm
R10, R11	-	68-kilo-ohm
R16	-	100-ohm
R17	-	470-ohm
R19, R23	-	1.2-kilo-ohm
R22	-	39-kilo-ohm
PR1 (R_B)	-	22-kilo-ohm preset
PR2, PR3, PR6	-	10-kilo-ohm preset
PR4, PR5	-	1-Meg-ohm preset
Capacitors:		
C1	-	0.01µF ceramic disk
C2	-	3 x 0.47µF, 600V polyester
C3, C13	-	0.1µF ceramic disk
C4-C7	-	1000µF, 16V electrolytic
C8	-	100µF, 25V electrolytic
C9	-	2200µF, 40V electrolytic
C10	-	0.47µF, 25V electrolytic
C11, C12	-	0.22µF polyester
Miscellaneous:		
F1	-	5A cartridge fuse
F2	-	16A cartrige (slow-blow) fuse
X1	-	Primary 9-0-9V/20A Sec. 230V section (1A), Sec. 600V section (300mA used as L1) transformer
X2	-	230V AC primary to 16V-0-16V, 3A secondary transformer.
X3	-	230V AC primary to 0-12V, 500mA secondary transformer
SW1	-	DPDT switch, 5A
SW2	-	SPDT slide switch
CB	-	MCCB 4A
BZ1	-	Piezo buzzer
L1	-	1 Henry (part of X1, 600V tapping)
L2, L3	-	100 µH (20T, 22SWG, air-core, 8mm dia.)
RLY	-	12V 2 C/O contact rating 20-30 Amp

higher. Provision is made for mounting 5 MOSFETs in each bank.

PCB and component layout. A double-sided PCB is proposed for the circuit of Fig. 2. Except the optional circuit of



Sinewave output waveform as seen on the oscilloscope



Photograph of author's prototype

'no load protection', all switches, fuse, CB, LEDs, and transformers are required to be mounted inside the cabinet and front-/back-panels of the cabinet suitably (refer Fig. 1 for the proposed front- and back-panel layouts). Large battery terminals may be used for terminating the battery leads. The tracks connecting drains and sources of MOSFETs may be suitably strengthened by depositing solder over the same.

The actual-size component-side and solder-side track layouts for the PCB are shown in Figs 5 and 6, respectively. Fig. 7 shows the component layout scheme. The wiring diagram for the chassis and panel-mounted components connected to the PCB via connectors (and few directly to pads) is shown in Fig. 8.

In the PCB layout (supplied by the author), the pads for a few components are not existing in the PCB. Thus some components may have to be mounted externally using the available pads in accordance with the circuit diagram of Fig. 2. The affected components are: (a) C9—across battery terminals, (b) D8—reverse palarity battery protection diode, (c) C11 and C12—capacitors across source and gates of bank 1 and bank 2, (d) C2—across pole of SW2 and neutral of transformer X1 secodary, (e) C8—positive end to junction of R22 and gate of SCR1 and negative end to ground.

Readers queries:

❑ Please clarify the following doubts regarding the UPS circuit:

1. What is the maximum charging current available? In how many hours will 30Ah and 180Ah batteries be charged at 220V AC input. At 3A rate, will a 30Ah battery charge in ten hours?

2. How can we incorporate an AVR in the circuit?

3. Please give more details of the three transformers w.r.t. core size, wire gauge, core type, etc. Will these transformers sustain a long drain of a 180Ah battery without getting unduly heated?

4. Are coils L2 and L3 readily available?

5. Does the changeover time of 1 ms depend on the circuit design or on the quality of the relay? If it depends on the relay, please give more details in terms of the 'make' (brand) and availability of the type of relay to be used .

6. Can we connect an ampere meter in series with the battery to keep monitoring the battery's charging status?

7. What is the approximate internal current loss in this case?

8. Why the current drain is more in case of sine wave?

9. What is the purpose of having two separate transformers for charging and for inverting, respectively? Can we take 3-amp tapping from transformer X1 and feed it to the charger section, thus reducing cost?

10. What is the approximate cost of the three transformers?

11. How can we increase the charging current of transformer X2 to 10 and 15 amperes to charge a 180Ah battery in 18 and 14 hours, respectively.

12. Will transformer X1 be able to sustain a drain of 15 amperes from a 180Ah battery for a single PC, without getting heated up?

Ashok Joshi
Allahabad

❑ Please clarify my following doubts:

1. Why is the primary rating of output transformer very high (16-32 amp), and how do we arrive at the rating?

2. How is the value of inductance and capacitance for sinewave output calculated? Is there any formula?

3. How can we connect an overload protection circuit?

4. Why is the voltage rating of output transformer's primary 9V-0-9V, even though the input voltage is 12 volts?

A. Rahman
Udupi

❑ I have the following queries about the project:

1. Can MOSFET IRF250 be replaced with MOSFET Z44? If yes, what modifications should be done?

2. Can transistor 2N3055 be used in the output stage?

S. Kamal
Mathura

❑ I have a few comments and suggestions:

1. When switch SW1 is put off, the battereis would not be charged, Provision should be made to charge the battery whenever utility supply is present. To prevent overcharging, a charger regulator should be incorporated.

2. Dead time should be introduced between the gating signals of MOSFET bank #1 and #2 to prevent cross-conduction.

3. Due to 'low' battery condition, if the battery deep-discharge cutout gets activated, SCR1 is turned on, and it remains on until SW1 is turned off. If SW1 is turned off, the cutout gets reset, but the discharged batteries do not get charged when utility is restarted, as mentioned. Therefore an alternate cutout, for example, a 'push-to-off' switch in series with SCR1, should be used.

4. Regarding spike protection, the undervoltage and overvoltage protection unit may not be able to detect it in time due to large 1000µF filter capacitors used after the rectifier.

5. The parts count may be reduced by using a single R17-ZD5 combination as a reference for both the low-battery indicator and cutout. Also, the 741s can be replaced by dual op-amp packages, like LM358, which are single-supply op-amps.

6. Lastly, in sensitive loads like PCs, an open loop inverter may not be advisable. Some for of regulation, like PWM or preregulation, may be used without a significant increase in the price of the inverter.

Hari Balakrishna
Pune

❑ I wish to comment on some aspects of this construction project:

1. As mentioned by the authors, the changeover time of the UPS-cum-EPS is one millisecond, although they are using electromechanical relay for changeover. I am of the view that no electromechanical relay can changeover in one millisecond. Probably, by using solidstate circuitry, the same can be achieved.

2. Instead of using an SCR for switching off the system during battery deep-discharge, just pull down pin 4 (reset) of IC1 (NE555) using any low-cost npn transistor (like BC548) as a switch. This will stop IC1 from producing 100Hz frequency. Simultaneously, to disable the bistable, disconnect pin 6 (clear I/P) of IC2 (7473) and pull it down to ground using the same switch as used for pin 4 of IC1.

3. The gates of MOSFETs are very sensitive to the spurious transients, which may damage the MOSFETs permanently. So these must be clamped using zeners, so that transients do not exceed a defined voltage level.

4. An accidentally connected reverse battery, no doubt, will blow off the fuse, but it may also blow off 220µF, 40V capacitor C9 connected across the battery. I would suggest the use of bipolar capacitor instead of a unipolar capacitor.

5. The buzzer should stop sounding as soon as the unit is swtiched off due to the battery deep-discharging. But untill buzzer keeps sounding. Use of some solidstate means would overcome the problem.

6. Like battery deep-discharge protection, a battery overcharge protection is also needed to increase the life of the battery. This can be achieved by using an electromechanical relay of proper rating, and the same circuit as used for battery deep-discharge protection.

7. I suggest the use of regulator IC 7805 instead of R2-ZD3 arrangement to avoid unnecessary drain of battery.

K.P. Deshmukh
Solapur

The author, Prof. R.V. Dhekale, replies:

1. Since battery is cut-off if discharged from 12V to 9.5V, and the charging voltage is 16 volts, the initial charging current will be (16-9.5)/(4.7) =6.5/4.7=1.4 amperes. As the battery begins to charge, charging current goes on decreasing. Charging time is approximately double the backup time of the system with the load of one PC using colour monitor. A battery of 30-Ah rating gives back-up time of 1.5 hours. So, the battery will charge within three hours.

2. AVR action means that when mains voltage goes above 270V or below 170V, the system should come to back-up mode, and such a facility is provided.

3. A transformer manufacturer requires only voltage and current ratings of the transformer to manufacture the transformer. If you provide the back-up time (without over heating the transformer), the manufacturer can select the appropriate wire gauge.

4. Coils L2 and L3 are not readily available. One can make these coils by using the cylinder of a telescopic antenna.

5. Changeover time depends on the initial DC current level in the relay coil, reverse-biased diode across the relay coil, and 'make' of the relay. If unnecessarily more current is given to the relay coil, changeover time will be more. The diode across the relay coil discharges the EMF developed in the coil immediately, so relay is switched off in a short time. Use of OEN- or PLA-make relay is recommended.

6. Ammeter of 30A can be used in series with the battery supply to monitor the load current.

7. Internal eddy current for the particular transformer core can be obtained from any transformer manufacturer.

8. In order to obtain sine wave, tank circuit formation, which consists of a considerable value of capacitance across the secondary coil of the inverter transformer, is required. Therefore the same capacitor adds to the load and the current is more in case of sine wave.

9. In this circuit, if the charger and the inverter transformers are combined together, then during the presence of the mains, AC voltage will be induced on 9V-0-9V tapping of the transformer, which may damage the MOSFETs.

10. The approximate cost of the three transformers is Rs 1,150.

11. For higher charging current, external charger can be used because the given relay will not bear such a large current.

12. If sufficient ventilation is provided to the inverter transformer, while MOSFETs are mounted on heat sink, and a cooling fan is used, no problem arises. For longer back-up, one can use transformers with higher current rating.

In reply to A. Rahman:

1. For longer back-up of about 8 to 10 hours, a transformer with higher current rating is required. Otherwise the inverter transformer will get over-heated.

2. After designing the transformer, measure the inductance of 600V tapping with respect to 0V tapping. Then use the relationship:

$$f = \frac{1}{6.28\sqrt{LC}}$$

to calculate the value of C.

3. The overload protection circuit can be added by using the current transformer in series with the battery supply, along with a rectifier circuit followed by a comparator.

4. Since the battery discharges from 12V to 9.5V, it is necessary to use an inverter transformer of 9V-0-9V instead of 12V-0-12V to maintain the back-up time.

In reply to S. Kamal:

1. MOSFET IRF250 can be replaced with Z44, using sufficient heat sink without any modification.

In reply to Hari Balakrishna:

1. For charging the battery, keep switch SW1 continuously on, and switch off only the load, separately. Charging current depends on the difference between charging voltage and battery voltage. When battery is fully charged, charging current is minimum, so no overcharging occurs.

2. It is not necessary to introduce dead time between the gating signals of MOSFETs in the two banks because it is clear from the graph shown in Fig. 3 that current consumption with no load is negligible. If there is a cross-conduction of MOSFETs in the two banks, current consumption would not be zero.

3. During discharge of the battery, SCR will turn on. This disables the control circuit. But when utility power is restored, relay in the circuit gets activated, so that battery is automatically charged. Thus, it is not necessary to add push-to-off switch.

4. In spike protector, no relay is used. Solidstate switching is achieved by the use of a triac. The triac always switches off the mains voltage if it exceeds 270V AC, and thus any spike greater than 270V AC gets suppressed.

As 1000µF capacitor is always in charged condition, it requires little time to charge with increase in the mains voltage. Thus increase in mains voltage is detected immediately (since DC resistance of inductors L2 and L3 is almost zero).

5. I agree that resistor R20 and zener ZD6 can be eliminated if cathode of zenre ZD5 is directly connected to pin 3 of IC7, and IC 741 can be replaced by the dual op-amp package LM358.

6. Since no-load cut-off facility is there in the circuit, variation in the output voltage with load is greatly reduced. Therefore it can be used for the PC. I have been using my prototype for my PC for the four years without any problem.

In reply to K.P. Deshmukh:

1. The diode across the relay coil (in reverse bias) reduces the changeover time of the system considerably, because when relay is switched off, a large back emf is developed in the coil, and due to this voltage, relay is not switched off immediately. But due to the diode, back emf is bypassed. Changeover time also depends on the initial level of current. Higher the current, the more is the changeover time. Therefore minimum current required for the relay is adjusted by the use of series resistor R7.

2. I had used a transistor instead of an SCR, but the problem is that, if transistor is used, during the discharge of the battery with load, when battery voltage drops below a particular level, the transistor disables the control circuit. Thus no voltage is present across the load. Therefore battery level increases again. Hence, the control circuit resumes voltage across the load and the process repeats, switching the inverter on and off. This is not desirable for the computer. So the use of SCR is the best option.

3. It is clear from the inverter control circuit that gate voltage is limited to 5 volts by the use of zener diode ZD3.

4. Capacitor C9 will not be blown off if its voltage rating is as specified in Fig. 2.

5. Even if battery deep-discharg cut off occurs, a minor current consumption of 90 mA continues, and the buzzer warns you to switch off the system. If there is no buzzer after the battery deep-discharge cutout, the user may not switch off the system and the battery may discharge fully, which is not desirable, because this will shorten the battery life.

6. When the battery is fully charged, the charging current is limited to 470 mA only, which is negligible compared to current capacity of the battery.

7. Zeners ZD5, ZD6, and ZD4 can be replaced with regulator LM7805, but the cost of a zener is Re 1 and that of a regulator is Rs 10. Also, the space required for the regulator is more. Current drains of zeners ZD5, ZD6, and ZD3 are 25 mA, 50 mA, and 120 mA, respectively, which are very low when compared to the supply current with the load on.

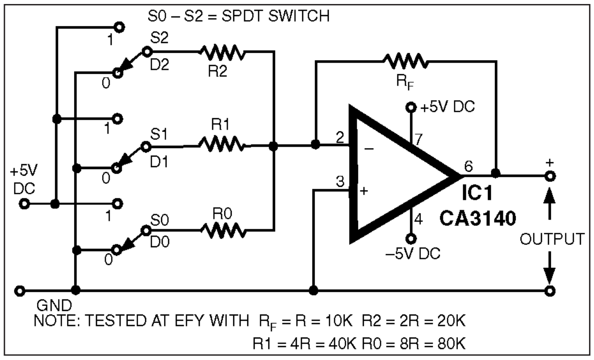
R-2R D/A CONVERTER-BASED FUNCTION GENERATOR USING PIC16C84 MICROCONTROLLER

PRASANNA WAICHAL

Digital to analogue conversion is a process wherein the analogue output voltage or current is a function of the digital input word (binary code). D to A converters (DACs) find extensive application in analogue input-output (I/O) systems, waveform generators, signal processors, motor-speed-controllers, voice synthesisers, attenuators, etc.

DACs are characterised by the following two main performance criteria:

1. Resolution. It is defined as the smallest incremental change in the output voltage that can be resolved by a linear DAC and is equal to $1/2^n$ (or 2^{-n}) of the full-scale span of the DAC. Here, 'n' represents the number of bits the DAC can process. Resolution can also be expressed in percentage of full-scale or in bits. Higher the number of bits that a DAC can process, the better will be its resolution.



NOTE: TESTED AT EFY WITH R_F = R = 10K R2 = 2R = 20K
R1 = 4R = 40K R0 = 8R = 80K

Fig. 1: Binary weighted resistance DAC

2. Settling time. It is the time required for the output to stabilise, or change from its previous value to the new value corresponding to fresh digital input word. For a given converter, the output does not change instantaneously when a change in the input occurs.

For an ideal linear DAC, the transfer curve is a linear function of input code which produces a single analogue discrete value and has a zero settling time

Basic classifications

A DAC can be classified into one of the following three types:

1. Current output. Here the output is a current proportional to the input digital word.

2. Voltage output. Here the output is a voltage proportional to the input digital word.

3. Multiplying output. In this type of DAC the output voltage or current is a function of input digital word multiplied by the reference input (i.e. the voltage applied or current fed into its reference terminal).

One of the basic DAC circuits, which uses precision binary weighted resistors and an op-amp for the conversion process, is shown in Fig. 1. The requirement of precision resistors (from R through 2^{n-1} x R values) is the main drawback of this design. It is overcome in the R-2R ladder network type DAC. Such a DAC, as shown in Fig. 2, uses only two values of resistors for any combination of bits.

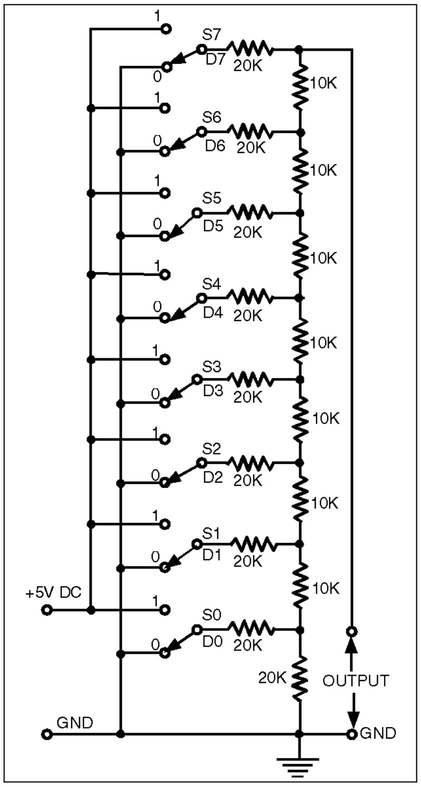


Fig. 2: 8-bit R-2R DAC

In either of the above two cases, the maximum output voltage V_{out}, with all input bits at logic 1, is given by the expression: $V_{out} = [(2^n-1)/2^n] \times V_{in}$, and the output voltage with only the LSB at logic 1 will be: $V_{out} = 1/2^n \times V_{in}$. Here, V_{out} is the output voltage, n are the number of bits, and V_{in} is the reference input voltage (usually, +5 volt in a logic system). For example, an 8-bit DAC, with a reference voltage level of 5V, will have a range from 19.53 mV (with only the LSB at logic 1) to 4.98V (with all eight bits at logic 1). Because of its simplicity, the R-2R ladder

PARTS LIST

Semiconductor:	
IC1	- PIC16C84, microcontroller
D1-D5	- 1N4148 switching diode
LED1-LED5	- 0.3-inch dia red LED
Resistors (all ¼-watt, ±5% carbon, unless stated otherwise):	
R1, R15-R23	- 10-kilo-ohm
R2-R6	- 560-ohm
R7-R14	- 20-kilo-ohm
Capacitors:	
C1, C2	- 27pF ceramic disk
Miscellaneous:	
X_{TAL}	- 3.575545MHz crystal
S1	- Push-to-on switch

network or its variants are used in most of the integrating type DACs. While using integrated-type DACs, the following knowledge will come handy:

(a) Power supply. Single +5V to +15V or double ±5V to ±15V

(b) Reference input. Varies from chip to chip.

(c) An operational amplifier is needed at the output to convert current into voltage.

(d) The cost increases drastically as the number of bits (resolution) and/or the speed increases.

(e) Sometimes it is not feasible to use a dual-supply converter for a single-polarity (usually positive) signal or in battery-powered systems.

The low-cost R-2R ladder-type DAC (Fig. 2) requires no power supply at all, nor any active components such as buffers, op-amps, and storage registers. Its linearity is very good. Just give the digital input and take the analogue output. It is incredible! At a cost of Rs 5 only for 8-bit resolution or Re 1 only per bit above 8 bits, you can practically implement any application, which may otherwise require an integrated circuit. You do not have to bother about control signals, memory, or I/O mapping of your micro-system. Just hook it up to your parallel port and start working.

Fig. 3 shows the transfer function or the linearity behaviour of the DAC of Fig. 2, while Table I compares the cost of a typical low-cost, 8-bit integrated chip (along with power supply and other parts) with that of R-2R, 8-bit DAC of Fig. 2. The R-2R DAC can be used for most of the applications. An R-2R network can also be used in conjunction with an op-amp. A 3-bit application circuit of the same is shown in Fig. 4.

Application

A waveform generator using R-2R and a low-power CMOS microcontroller PIC16C84 (by Microchip Technology Inc., USA) is presented here. All standard waveforms such as sine, square, tri-wave, forward and reverse ramp are successfully generated using the R-2R DAC, in conjunction with the above-mentioned microcontroller. Waveforms other than sine are generated quite easily. The sine wave, however, needs a different approach, which makes use of lookup-table technique.

The circuit of the function generator is shown in Fig. 5. The 8-bit data is sent to the DAC by the microcontroller, through one of its ports. The desired function/waveform is selected with the help of a push-to-on

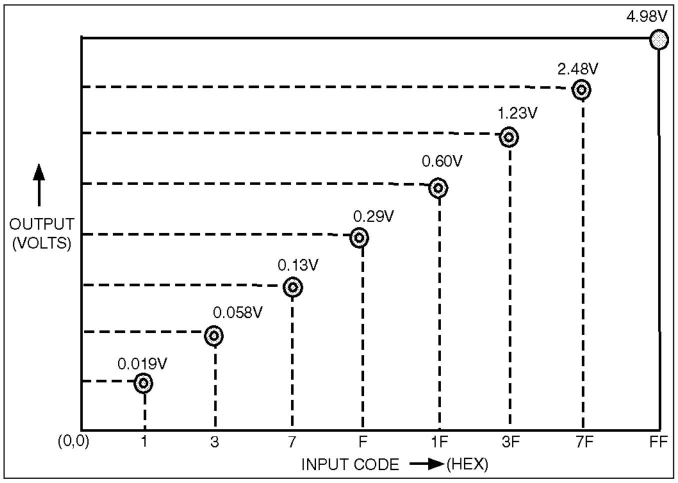
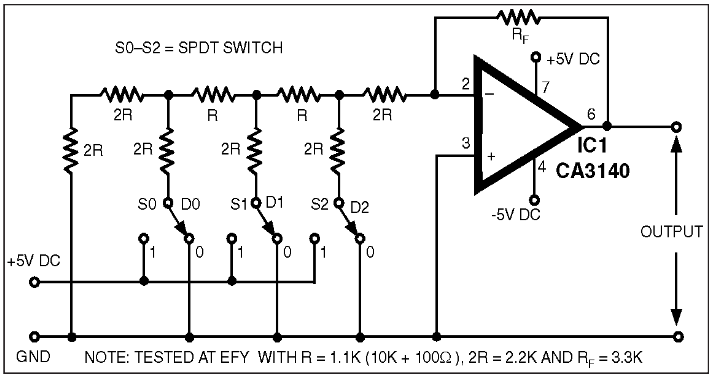
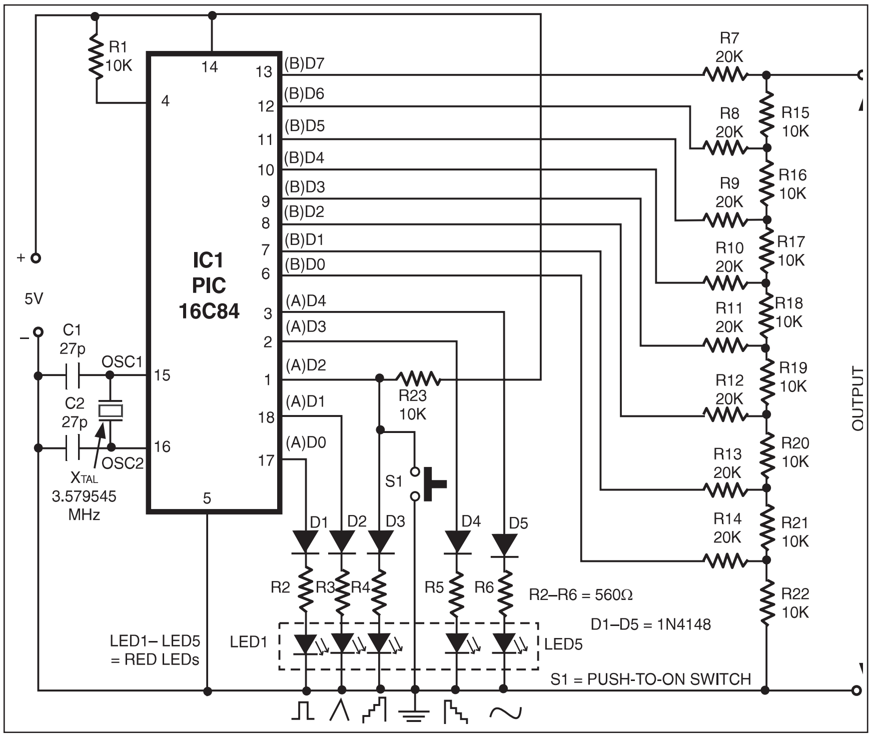


Fig. 3: Input code versus output voltage transfer function of R-2R DAC



S0–S2 = SPDT SWITCH
R_F
+5V DC
2R
R
R
2R
2R
2R
2R
2R
2
3
7
6
4
IC1
CA3140
S0
D0
S1
D1
S2
D2
1
0
1
0
1
0
-5V DC
OUTPUT
+5V DC
GND
NOTE: TESTED AT EFY WITH R = 1.1K (10K + 100Ω), 2R = 2.2K AND R_F = 3.3K

Fig. 4: R-2R network used in conjunction with an op-amp for 3-bit application



R1
10K
14
4
IC1
PIC
16C84
(B)D7
(B)D6
(B)D5
(B)D4
(B)D3
(B)D2
(B)D1
(B)D0
(A)D4
(A)D3
(A)D2
(A)D1
(A)D0
13
12
11
10
9
8
7
6
3
2
1
18
17
15
16
5
+
5V
–
C1
27p
C2
27p
OSC1
OSC2
X_{TAL}
3.579545
MHz
R7
20K
R8
20K
R9
20K
R10
20K
R11
20K
R12
20K
R13
20K
R14
20K
R15
10K
R16
10K
R17
10K
R18
10K
R19
10K
R20
10K
R21
10K
R22
10K
R23
10K
S1
D1
D2
D3
D4
D5
R2
R3
R4
R5
R6
R2–R6 = 560Ω
D1–D5 = 1N4148
LED1
LED5
LED1– LED5
= RED LEDs
S1 = PUSH-TO-ON SWITCH
OUTPUT

Fig. 5: PIC16C84-based R-2R DAC

TABLE I
Cost comparison between a dedicated 8-bit IC DAC and an 8-bit R-2R DAC

Sl. No.	Item	*Cost (Rs.) Dedicated IC DAC	*Cost (Rs.) R-2R (Fig.2) DAC
1.	Supplies ±5V and +10V (ref.)	78.00	NIL
2.	IC (DAC)	55.00	NIL
3.	IC (opamp)	7.00	NIL
4.	Cermet (for reference adjustment)	16.00	NIL
5.	Resistors	2.00	5.00
Total cost		158.00	5.00

*__Note:__ Costs indicated are typical retail prices.

TABLE II
Important features of PIC16C84

Architecture:	RISC CPU
Clock:	10MHz, 400ns instruction cycle
Instructions:	14-bit wide
Program memory:	1k x 14-bit (EEPROM).
RAM:	36 x 8-bit (SRAM)
Data memory:	64 x 8-bit for user data
Supply voltages:	2.7V to 5.5V with very low current consumption
I/O ports:	13 I/O lines with individual control having 25mA current sinking and 20mA current-sourcing capability
Timer:	8-bit timer/counter with 8-bit pre-scaler
Watchdog timer with on-chip RC oscillator, and 8-level deep hardware lock.	

TABLE III
Look-up table of sine values in decimal and equivalent Hex values (within parenthesis) at 10 degree interval

100(64)	187(BB)	19(13)
117(75)	177(B1)	6(6)
134(86)	164(A4)	2(2)
150(96)	150(96)	0(0)
164(A4)	134(86)	2(2)
177(B1)	117(75)	6(6)
187(BB)	100(64)	19(13)
194(C2)	88(58)	29(1D)
198(C6)	71(47)	41(29)
208(D0)	55(37)	55(37)
198(C6)	41(29)	71(47)
194(C2)	29(1D)	88(58)

TABLE IV

Address (Hex)	Bank 0 registers	Bank 1 registers	Address (Hex)
00	Indirect	Indirect	80
01	TMR0	Option	81
02	PCL	PCL	82
03	Status	Status	83
04	FSR	FSR	84
05	Port	Tris	85
06	Port	Tris	86
07	— Not implemented —		87
08	EEdata	Eecon1	88
09	Eeaddr	Eecon2	89
0A	Pclath	Pclath	8A
0B	Intcon	Intcon	8B
0C	General-purpose RAM area starts		8C
	Bank 1 RAM not implemented		
2F	RAM ends		AF

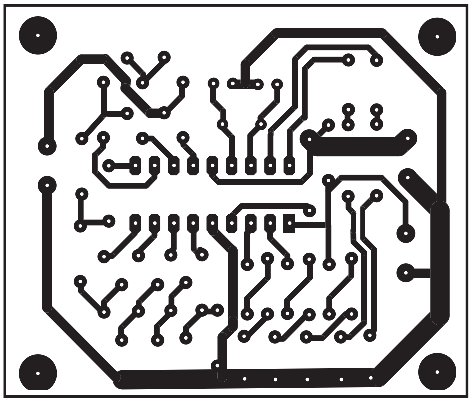


Fig. 6: Actual-size single-sided PCB layout for the schematic diagram of Fig. 5

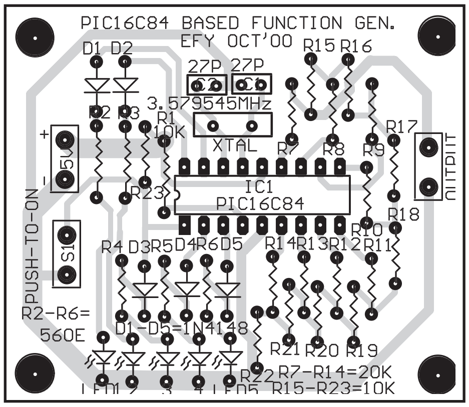


Fig. 7: Component layout for PCB of Fig. 6

switch. The selection is also indicated by a corresponding LED. To keep the application as simple as possible, only fixed-frequency waveform generation is described in this article.

PIC16C84 microcontroller is a CMOS device from Microchip, which is used here in conjunction with an R-2R DAC to realise a function generator, as stated earlier. The important features of this device are reproduced in Table II.

Besides this, the device has some code protection bits which, once enabled, will not allow access to the program memory. These bits are actually programmed into the program memory, but user access to it is not available. (*Note. For more information on EEPROM programming of PIC16C84, datasheet DS30189D in PDF format, available on Microchip Website, can be used.*)

The 8-bit port-B of this device has been used as an output port, which is directly connected to the DAC. The 5-bit port-A has been used both to input keypress data and to output display data to the LEDs. Actually, the I/O pins on this port are time-shared/multiplexed between the keys and the LEDs. This means the same lines are used at one time for reading the keys and at another time for outputting data to drive the LEDs directly. The time-sharing is so fast that the display through LEDs appears to be stable, or any key closure is detected error-free.

The circuit works on 5V power supply, which can be derived from a 9V PP3 battery (or any other source capable of supplying 7. 5V to 9V DC) by using commonly available 7805 regulator. The current drain of the circuit is less than 10 mA.

Although the circuit of Fig. 5 can be easily assembled using a general-purpose PCB, a proper actual-size single-sided PCB for the same is given in Fig. 6 along with its component layout in Fig. 7.

Software

The waveform generation technique is pretty easy and one can implement it with any other microprocesor or microcontroller system (e.g. 8085, 8032, Z80, 6800, etc). The program flowcharts for generation of various waveforms are shown in Fig. 8. One can write one's software for the purpose. However, source program FUNCGEN.ASM for generation of various waveforms using the circuit of Fig. 5, employing PIC16C84 microcontroller, is given in Appendix 'A'.

For programming PIC microcontroller, including the complete development of a system, Microchip offers an integrated development environment (IDE) software called Mplab. It is available on Technical Library CD-ROM offered (free, on request) from its India Liaison Office, Bangalore. The latest version of this software can also be downloaded from the Microchip Website 'microchip.com'.

The Mplab IDE comes with editor, assembler, and programmer software to

FUNCGEN.ASM

Assembly language program for implementation of function generator using PIC16C84

```
ERRORLEVEL –302
INCLUEDE <P16C84.INC>

PCL             equ     0x02        ;
STATUS          equ     0x03        ;
FSR             equ     0x04        ;
PORT_A          equ     0x05        ;
PORT_B          equ     0x06        ;
EEDATA          equ     0x08        ;
EEADDR          equ     0x09        ;
PCLATH          equ     0x0A        ;
INTCON          equ     0x0B        ;
INDF            equ     0x00        ;
OPTION_REG      equ     0x81        ;
TRISA           equ     0x85        ;
TRISB           equ     0x86        ;
EECON1          equ     0x88        ;
EECON2          equ     0x89        ;
;
; RAM 0x0C TO 0x2F (36 BYTES)
;
RP0             equ     0x05        ;
FN_KEY          equ     0x18        ;
SQR             equ     0x01        ;
TRI             equ     0x02        ;
P_RAMP          equ     0x04        ;
N_RAMP          equ     0x08        ;
FN_STATUS       equ     0x0C        ;
KEY             equ     0x0D        ;
TEMP1           equ     0x0E        ;
TEMP2           equ     0x0F        ;
FN_VAL          equ     0x10        ;
ON_DELAY        equ     0x11        ;
OFF_DELAY       equ     0x12        ;
;
;——————————————————————————————-    ;
;           ORG       0x00          ;
START
          CLRF      STATUS          ;
          CLRF      INTCON          ;
          BSF       STATUS, RP0     ;
          MOVLW     B’10000000’     ;
          MOVWF     OPTION_REG      ;
          CLRF      TRISB           ;
          BCF       STATUS, RP0     ;
          CLRF      PORT_B          ;
          CLRF      PORT_A          ;
          CLRF      EEDATA          ;
          CLRF      EEADDR          ;
          INCF      FN_STATUS       ;
          CLRF      FN_VAL          ;
          MOVLW     0Xff            ;
;
;——————————————————————————————-    ;
;
NORMAL
          CALL KEY_SEEK             ;
                                    ;
SHOW_FN
          BSF       STATUS, RP0     ;
          CLRF      TRISA           ;
          BCF       STATUS, RP0     ;
          MOVF      FN_STATUS,W     ;
          MOVWF     PORT_A          ;
;
          MOVF      FN_STATUS,W     ;
          XORLW     SQR             ;
          BTFSC     STATUS,Z        ;
          GOTO      SQR_WAVE        ;
;
          MOVF      FN_STATUS,W     ;
          XORLW     TRI             ;
          BTFSC     STATUS,Z        ;
          GOTO      TRI_WAVE        ;
;
          MOVF      FN_STATUS,W     ;
          XORLW     P_RAMP          ;
          BTFSC     STATUS,Z        ;
          GOTO      PRAMP           ;
;
          MOVF      FN_STATUS,W     ;
          XORLW     N_RAMP          ;
          BTFSC     STATUS,Z        ;
          GOTO      NRAMP           ;
;
          GOTO      NORMAL          ;
;
SQR_WAVE
          MOVLW     0XFF            ;
          MOVWF     PORT_B          ;
          CALL      DELAY_ON        ;
          CLRF      PORT_B          ;
          CALL      DELAY_OFF       ;
          GOTO      NORMAL          ;
;
TRI_WAVE
HI
          MOVF      FN_VAL,W        ;
          MOVWF     PORT_B          ;
          XORLW     0xFF            ;
          BTFSC     STATUS,Z        ;
          GOTO      LO              ;
          INCF      FN_VAL,F        ;
          GOTO      HI              ;
LO                                  ;
          MOVF      FN_VAL,W        ;
          MOVWF     PORT_B          ;
          XORLW     0               ;
          BTFSC     STATUS,Z        ;
          GOTO      NORMAL          ;
          DECF      FN_VAL,F        ;
          GOTO      LO              ;
;
PRAMP
          MOVF      FN_VAL,W        ;
          MOVWF     PORT_B          ;
          INCF      FN_VAL,F        ;
          GOTO      NORMAL          ;
;
NRAMP
          MOVF      FN_VAL,W        ;
          MOVWF     PORT_B          ;
          DECF      FN_VAL,F        ;
          GOTO      NORMAL          ;
;
;——————————————————————————————- ;
;
KEY_SEEK
          BSF       STATUS,RP0      ;
          MOVLW     0x1F            ;
          MOVWF     TRISA           ;
          BCF       STATUS,RP0      ;
          MOVF      PORT_A,W        ;
          ANDLW     0x1C            ;
          XORLW     0x1C            ;
          BTFSC     STATUS,Z        ;
          RETLW     0               ;
;
          MOVF      PORT_A,W        ;
          ANDLW     0x1C            ;
          MOVWF     KEY             ;
;
KEY_LUP
          MOVF      PORT_A,W        ;
          ANDLW     0x1C            ;
          XORLW     0x1C            ;
          BTFSS     STATUS,Z        ;
          GOTO      KEY_LUP         ;
;
CHK_FN
          MOVF      KEY,W           ;
          XORLW     FN_KEY          ;
          BTFSC     STATUS,Z        ;
          GOTO      FN_CHANGE       ;
;
          RETLW     0               ;
                                    ;
FN_CHANGE
          RLF       FN_STATUS,F     ;
          MOVF      FN_STATUS,W     ;
          BTFSS     FN_STATUS,4     ;
          RETLW     0               ;
          CLRF      FN_STATUS       ;
          INCF      FN_STATUS,F     ;
          RETLW     0               ;
;
;——————————————————————————————- ;
;
DELAY_ON
          BCF       STATUS,RP0      ;
          MOVLW     0x1F            ;
          MOVWF     0N_DELAY        ;
DL1
          DECF      ON_DELAY,F      ;
          MOVF      ON_DELAY,W      ;
          BTFSC     STATUS,Z        ;
          RETLW 0
          GOTO      DL1             ;
;
DELAY_OFF
          BCF       STATUS,RP0      ;
          MOVLW     0x1F            ;
          MOVWF     OFF_DELAY       ;
DL2
          DECF      OFF_DELAY,F     ;
          MOVF      OFF_DELAY,W     ;
          BTFSC     STATUS,Z        ;
          RETLW     0               ;
          GOTO      DL2             ;
;
;——————————————————————————————- ;
;
                    END             ;
;
;**************************************** ;
```

support Microchip’s device programmers and a software simulator. It also supports programs written in ‘C’ language.

For the present device (PIC 16C84), the author has used Microchip PICSTART PLUS development programmer. The software for the same, in PDF format, is also available on the Internet.

Operation

As stated earlier, the present circuit can produce all standard waveforms. After power-up, by default the circuit produces squarewave signal. The LED marked ‘square’ also lights up to indicate that function. When the ‘select’ key is pressed once, the output changes to tri-wave. The waveforms are selected sequentially on every depression of the ‘select’ switch and then repeated. Tested frequency range is 1 Hz to 100 Hz (all waveforms).

Sinewave generation. For waveforms other than sinewave, the data to the DAC changes in binary ascending or descending order. But since sine function is not a linear function, each data is predefined and a value table is used in this case. The value for each step of the sinewave is read and sent to the output port. The resolution depends upon the number of steps. The higher the step-count, the greater is the resolution, or vice-a-versa. A simple look-up table (values at 10° intervals), comprising 36 values covering complete 360°, is shown for this purpose. The look-up table (Table III) is to be implemented as per the flowchart for sinewave generation as shown in Fig. 8.

Various registers implemented in the internal RAM area of microcontroller, along with their addresses, are shown in Table IV.

EFY Note. PIC16C84 is compatible with PIC16F84 and hence one may replace it with 16F84.

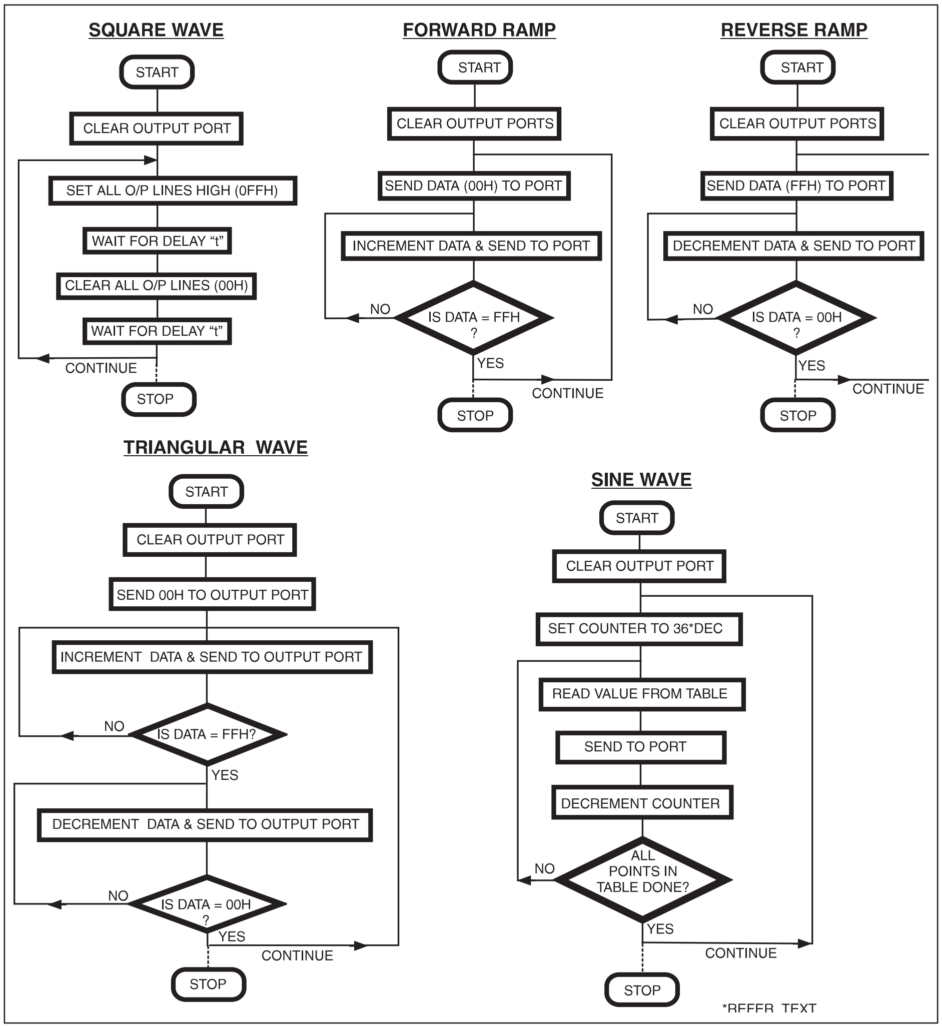

SQUARE WAVE
START
CLEAR OUTPUT PORT
SET ALL O/P LINES HIGH (0FFH)
WAIT FOR DELAY “t”
CLEAR ALL O/P LINES (00H)
WAIT FOR DELAY “t”
CONTINUE
STOP
FORWARD RAMP
START
CLEAR OUTPUT PORTS
SEND DATA (00H) TO PORT
INCREMENT DATA & SEND TO PORT
NO
IS DATA = FFH ?
YES
CONTINUE
STOP
REVERSE RAMP
START
CLEAR OUTPUT PORTS
SEND DATA (FFH) TO PORT
DECREMENT DATA & SEND TO PORT
NO
IS DATA = 00H ?
YES
CONTINUE
STOP
TRIANGULAR WAVE
START
CLEAR OUTPUT PORT
SEND 00H TO OUTPUT PORT
INCREMENT DATA & SEND TO OUTPUT PORT
NO
IS DATA = FFH?
YES
DECREMENT DATA & SEND TO OUTPUT PORT
NO
IS DATA = 00H ?
YES
CONTINUE
STOP
SINE WAVE
START
CLEAR OUTPUT PORT
SET COUNTER TO 36*DEC
READ VALUE FROM TABLE
SEND TO PORT
DECREMENT COUNTER
NO
ALL POINTS IN TABLE DONE?
YES
CONTINUE
STOP
*REFER TEXT

Fig. 8: Software flowcharts for generation of various waveforms

---

Readers queries:

Q1. How do the switch and LED work in conjunction with the program? Are they controlled by the program or the hardware? In the keyseek part of the program showing an infinite loop, what modifications are feasible?

 Could you please explain me how single switch S1 controls the sequential change in waveform generation and how exactly the input port works? How are the LEDs controlled?

Pallavi Shetti and Pallavi Bhat

The author, Prasanna Waichal, replies:

Basically, the port of the controller is multiplexed between the keyboard (here single key) and the display (LEDs). This means that for some time the port acts as input port, reading the keys, and then for some time as output port, controlling the LEDs. Since this switching takes place at a very fast rate, the display appears flicker-free.

When in the input mode, the controller configures the port as input and then checks the keys for a closure and release. If such an event is found, a flag is set in the RAM to indicate that a valid key was found. The flag can be anything like setting a single bit (e.g. 0x01) or all the eight bits (0xFF) of the memory location. The program control then returns to normal functioning/flow.

In this case, the main line program checks the flag. If a key event is detected, it changes another flag or code data to indicate which function is to be executed as a main line routine. This can be further explained as follows:

Suppose the function code is 0x00 on power up. The main line program reads this code and calls the function (subroutine) associated with this code. The program remains in continuous loop. If any key closure is found, the function code is updated to 0x01. So in the next loop iteration, the subroutine associated with that code (0x01) is executed in the main loop. When the code reaches 3 (since four functions are used), any further increase to 4 is checked in the main flow and instead of 4 the code is reset to 0, to start with the first function.

During the display mode, the port is changed as output port. Any data to be displayed (bit status in this case for each LED) is reflected in a RAM area as ‘display-data’. These contents are then simply copied to the output port. LEDs glow when a ‘logic 1’ is written to the port.

Since the key routine is a part of the main line program, it is always in the loop. That is to say that the main line program is in loop and checks the key for any function code update as explained above.

Q2. The circuit ‘R-2R Based Function Generator Using PIC16C84’ gives no output and only the LED connected to pin 1 of the

IC glows. I am using PIC16F84 in place of 16C84. Also, no program is included for sine wave.

P. Siva Kumar
Sanar Nagar, Tirunelveli

EFY: The prototype of the function generator sent by the author had been thoroughly tested and its operation, as described in the project, had been verified by us. The prototype is still with us.

As far as we know, both 16C84 and 16F84 are pin-compatibles. The former has normal EEPROM structure, while the latter is flash-based, and hence its access time is less and it is capable of in-system programming. The datasheets and programming specifications in .pdf format (DS30262E) are available from Microchip's Website 'http://www.microchip.com'.

Confirm whether you have a suitable development board and software (available free from Microchip site), since for assembly and code generation (in appropriate format) and programming, you would need a development board. We don't know whether you already possess one and have programmed a chip using the published source program. Well, in case you need one, you may contact Buildmet Technologies (P) Ltd, Bangalore, over the telephone by dialling 080-2261927. If you wish to learn more about these MCUs, get a copy of µPIC book from Chip Technologies, Bangalore (chiptech@vsnl.com). If still you have specific doubts regarding the project, the author may be contacted through us.

For generation of sinewave, a table of amplitude values at 10° interval (36 values for complete 360°) has been included. You can store these values at sequential locations and output these (in digital format from a port of the PIC MCU, followed by digital-to-analogue converter) in the same order with a delay (which would determine its period/frequency). End the subroutine with a 'return' statement. Call this subroutine using start address (or Label for the start address) for sine function. You will get a sinewave output.

PC-TO-PC COMMUNICATION USING INFRARED/LASER BEAM

K.S. SANKAR

Serial communication between two PCs has been covered earlier too in EFY. However, two separate ICs (1488 and 1489) were used in those projects (for TTL to RS-232C and vice- versa level conversion), using wireless radio wave technology. This level conversion required use of three different voltages, i.e. +12V, -12V and +5V.

Here is a novel circuit using MAXIM Corporation's IC MAX232, which needs only a single power supply of 5V for level conversion. Fig. 1 shows the internal functional diagram of MAX232 IC. The communication over the short distance of 2 to 3 metres is established using infrared diodes, as shown in Fig. 2. The range could be increased up to hundred metres, using a laser diode module in place of infrared LEDs.

The laser module used is easily available as laser pointer (having about 5 mW power output). It is to be used with its three battery cells removed and positive supply terminal soldered to the casing and 0V point to the contact inside the laser module.

Assemble the two prototypes on PCBs or breadboards and connect them to COM-1 (or COM-2) port of each PC. Point the laser beam of one module to fall on the photodiode of the module connected to the other PC, and vice versa.

Load PROCOMM or TELIX serial communication software and set the port parameters to 9600 n 8 1 (here, 9600 refers to the baud rate, n stands for parity-none, 8 represents bits per character, and 1 indicates number of stop bits) to establish the communication. File transfer is also possible. The prototype was tested (by the author) between speeds of 1200 and 9600 bauds, including file transfer between the two PCs. The software program for the purpose was written in 'C' language. The source code of the program PCTOPC.C is given at the end for COM-1 port.

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:	
IC1	- MAX232A +5V powered multichannel RS232 driver/receiver
IC2	- NE555 timer
IC3	- IR RXR module; Siemens SFH-506-38 or Telefunken TS0P-1838
T1	- BC547 npn transistor
T2	- BC548 npn transistor
D1	- 1N4148 diode
LED1-LED3	- Red LED
IRLED1, IRLED2	- Infrared light emitting diode
Resistors (all ¼-watt, ±5% carbon, unless stated otherwise):	
R1,R2	- 47-ohm
R3,R4	- 4.7-kilo-ohm
R5,R9	- 1-kilo-ohm
R6	- 1.2-kilo-ohm
R7	- 10-ohm
R8	- 330-ohm
R10	- 2.2-kilo-ohm
R11	- 10-kilo-ohm
VR1	- 4.7-kilo-ohm preset
Capacitors:	
C1-C5	- 1µ, 25V electrolytic
C6	- 470µ, 25V electrolytic
C7,C8	- 0.01µ ceramic disk
Miscellaneous:	
	- 9/25-pin 'D' connector (male/female)

Note: Parts List pertains to circuit in Fig. 3.

TABLE I

Max 232 Conversion Levels

TTL +5V	to	-9V RS 232
TTL 0V	to	+9V RS 232
RS 232 +9V	to	0V TTL
RS 232 -9V	to	5V TTL

Circuit

Transmitter. Data signals transmitted through pin 3 of 9-pin (or pin 2 of 25-pin) 'D' connector of RS232 COM port are sent to pin 8 of MAX232 and it converts these EIA (Electronic Industry Association) RS232C compatible levels of $\underline{+}$9V to 0/5V TTL levels, as given in Table I. The

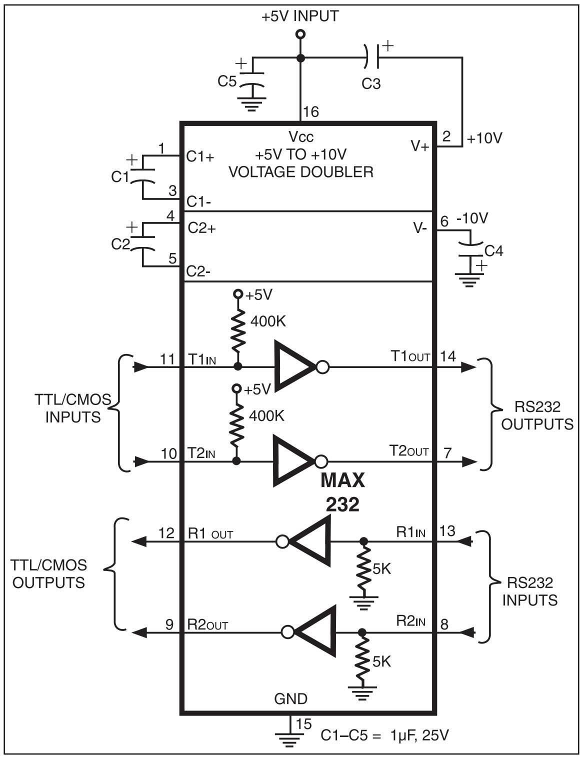


Fig. 1: Internal functional diagram of IC MAX232

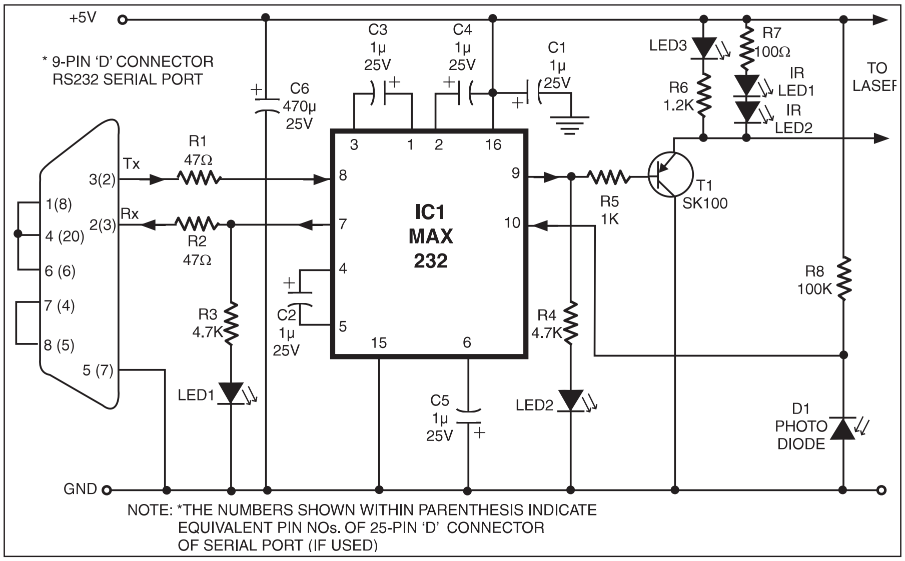

+5V
* 9-PIN 'D' CONNECTOR
RS232 SERIAL PORT
C6
470µ
25V
C3
1µ
25V
C4
1µ
25V
C1
1µ
25V
LED3
R7
100Ω
R6
1.2K
IR
LED1
IR
LED2
TO
LASER
R1
47Ω
Tx
3(2)
1(8)
4 (20)
2(3)
Rx
R2
47Ω
6 (6)
7 (4)
8 (5)
5 (7)
3
1
2
16
8
9
7
10
4
5
15
6
IC1
MAX
232
R5
1K
T1
SK100
R8
100K
R3
4.7K
C2
1µ
25V
R4
4.7K
LED1
C5
1µ
25V
LED2
D1
PHOTO
DIODE
GND
NOTE: *THE NUMBERS SHOWN WITHIN PARENTHESIS INDICATE
EQUIVALENT PIN NOs. OF 25-PIN 'D' CONNECTOR
OF SERIAL PORT (IF USED)

Fig. 2: Communication between two PCs for a short range using IR diodes, or longer distance using laser

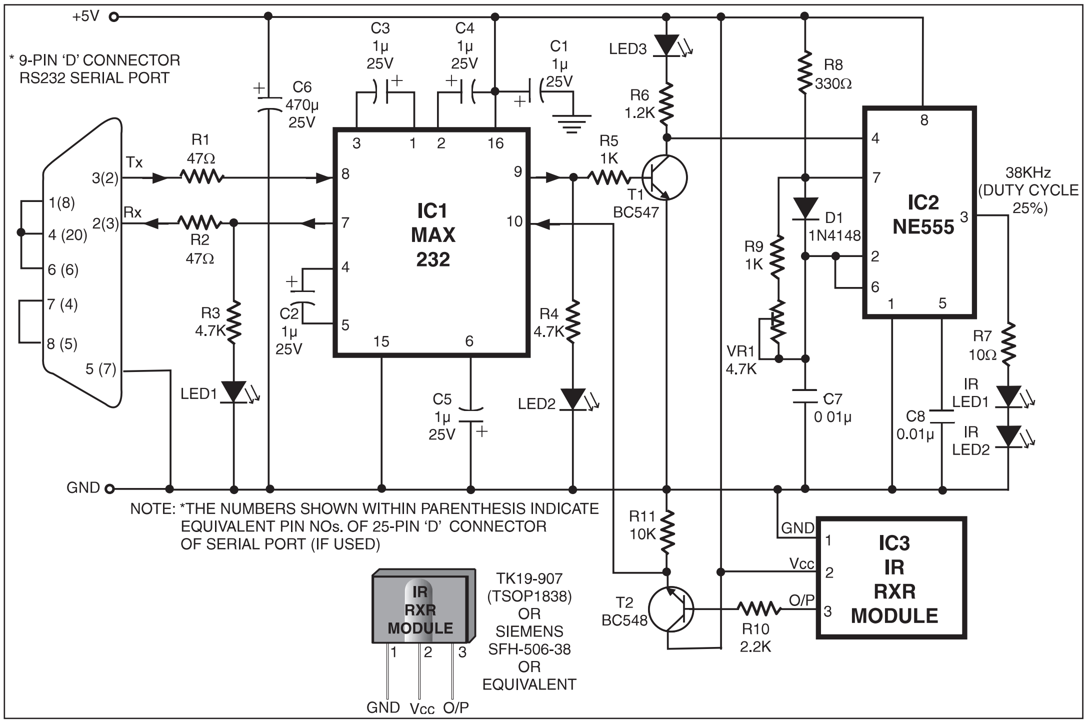

+5V
* 9-PIN 'D' CONNECTOR
RS232 SERIAL PORT
C6
470µ
25V
C3
1µ
25V
C4
1µ
25V
C1
1µ
25V
LED3
R6
1.2K
R8
330Ω
R1
47Ω
Tx
3(2)
1(8)
4 (20)
2(3)
Rx
R2
47Ω
6 (6)
7 (4)
8 (5)
5 (7)
3
1
2
16
8
9
7
10
4
5
15
6
IC1
MAX
232
R5
1K
T1
BC547
8
4
7
2
6
1
5
3
IC2
NE555
D1
1N4148
R9
1K
VR1
4.7K
C7
0 01µ
38KHz
(DUTY CYCLE
25%)
R7
10Ω
IR
LED1
IR
LED2
C8
0.01µ
R3
4.7K
C2
1µ
25V
R4
4.7K
LED1
C5
1µ
25V
LED2
GND
NOTE: *THE NUMBERS SHOWN WITHIN PARENTHESIS INDICATE
EQUIVALENT PIN NOs. OF 25-PIN 'D' CONNECTOR
OF SERIAL PORT (IF USED)
R11
10K
GND
Vcc
O/P
1
2
3
IC3
IR
RXR
MODULE
T2
BC548
R10
2.2K
IR
RXR
MODULE
1
2
3
GND
Vcc
O/P
TK19-907
(TSOP1838)
OR
SIEMENS
SFH-506-38
OR
EQUIVALENT

Fig. 3: Modified circuit diagram for PC-to-PC communication using 38kHz modulated pulses

TABLE II

DB 9 Pin	DB25 Pin	Signal Direction	Description
1	8	In	DCD (data carrier detect)
2	3	In	RX (receiver data)
3	2	Out	TX (transmit data)
4	20	Out	DTR (data terminal ready)
5	7	—	GND (signal ground)
6	6	In	DSR (data set ready)
7	4	Out	RTS (request to sent)
8	5	In	CTS (clear to send)
9	22	In	RI (ring indicator)

TABLE III

Base Address for the Communication Ports

Communication	Base address port
COM1	03F8H
COM2	02F8H
COM3	03F8H
COM4	02F8H

output pin 9 of MAX232 IC drives the pnp transistor SK100 and powers the IR LEDs.

Output pin 9 also drives an LED indicator (LED2) during the positive output at its pin 9. At logic '0' output at pin 9, LED2 goes 'off', but drives the pnp transistor through a bias resistor of 1 kilo-ohm (R5), to switch 'on' IRLED1 and IRLED2 and also a visible LED3. Since very low drive current is used, use of high-efficiency visible LEDs, which light up at 1 mA, is needed. The electrical pulses sent by the COM port are now converted into corresponding modulated pulses of IR light.

Receiver. The IR signals are detected by a photodiode (D1). (A photodiode is reverse biased and breaks down when IR light falls on its junction.) The detected TTL level (0/5V) signals are coupled to pin 10 of MAX 232 IC. These TTL levels are converted to ±9V levels internally (as per Table 1) and output at pin 7.

A visible LED1 at pin 7 of MAX232 IC indicates that the signals are being received. Pin 7 is also connected to pin 2 (receiver pin) of 9-pin (or pin 3 of 25-pin) 'D' connector used for the serial port in the PC, so that the data may be read. The optical signals received by the photodiodes are in fact converted to electrical pulses and both PCs 'think' that there is a null modem cable connected between them. Table II shows the correspondence between the various pins of a 9-pin (or 25-pin) 'D' connector of serial port of PC. In some PCs, the serial port is terminated into a 9-pin 'D' connector and in some others into a 25-pin 'D' connector.

Testing

Assemble two transceiver modules and connect each of them, using 3-core cables, to Com-1 ports of the two PCs. Place them 15 to 20 cms apart so that the IR LEDs of each module face the photodiode detector of the other.

Power 'on' both the circuits to operate at stabilised 5V DC. You may alternatively use a 7805 regulator IC with a

TABLE V
AL Register Bits

Bit								
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	Use
X	X	X	Ž	Ž	Ž	Ž	Ž	Baud-rate code
Ž	Ž	Ž	X	X	Ž	Ž	Ž	Parity code
Ž	Ž	Ž	Ž	Ž	X	Ž	Ž	Stop-bit code
Ž	Ž	Ž	Ž	Ž	Ž	X	X	Character-size code

TABLE VI
Baud Rate

Bit				Bits per
7	6	5	Value	second
0	0	0	0	110
0	0	1	1	150
0	1	0	2	300
0	1	1	3	600
1	0	0	4	1200
1	0	1	5	2400
1	1	0	6	4800
1	1	1	7	9600

TABLE VII
Parity

Bit			
4	3	Value	Meaning
0	0	0	None
0	1	1	Odd Parity
1	0	2	None
1	1	3	Even Parity

TABLE VIII
Stop Bits

Bit		
2	Value	Meaning
0	0	One
0	1	Two

TABLE IX
Character Size

Bit			
1 0	Value	Meaning
0 0	0	Not used
0 1	1	Not used
1 0	2	7-bit*
1 1	3	8-bit

9V DC source to obtain regulated 5V supply.

Check if the MAX232 IC is working properly by testing pin 2 for 9 to 10V positive supply and pin 6 for -9V supply. MAX232 (refer Fig. 1) uses 1μF, 25V capacitors C1-C5 as a charge pump to internally generate ±9V from 5V supply. Generally, defective MAX232 ICs will not show a voltage generation of +9V and -9V at pins 2 and 6, respectively. Replace ICs, if required. Although 1μF, 25V capacitors are recommended in the datasheet, the circuit works well even with 10μF, 25V capacitors, which are easily available.

With both the PCs and supply to the transceiver modules 'on', throw some IR light with a TV remote on the Photodiode. LED1 should flicker at the burst frequency rate of the transmitter. This proves that the IR signals are being detected by photodiodes and converted into RS232-compatible levels by the MAX232 and output at pin 7 of MAX232 ICs is available for the PC to read the pulses.

To test the transmitter side, disconnect the module from COM-1 (or COM-2) port of the PC, and with the device powered 'on', use a short jumper wire from +5V and touch it at pin 8 of MAX232 IC to simulate a positive pulse. LED2 should turn 'off' and IRLEDs and LED3 should turn 'on' if the wiring is correct. IRLEDs would also be on, although one cannot see them on. Remove the link wire from +5V to pin 8 of MAX232 IC and connect back the 'D' connector to PC's COM-1 (or COM-2) port.

Run a simple communication software like PROCOM or TELIX. Set the baud rate, parity, bits per character, and stop bits to 9600, n, 8, 1, respectively, and send a few characters from the keyboard through COM-1 (or COM-2) port. You should be able to see LED3 flickering for a few seconds, indicating data transmission.

Connect both PCs to the circuits and set the software to chat mode. You should be able to transfer data between the PCs, as if a cable was connected.

TABLE IV
8250 Registers: Offset from Base Address

Offset	LCR Bit 7	Meaning	Read/write
0	0	Transmitter holding register (THR) [when written to port]	Write
0	0	Receiver data register (RDR) [when read from port]	Read
0	1	Baud rate divisor--low byte (BRDL)	Read/write
1	0	Interrupt enable register (IER)	Read/write
1	1	Baud rate divsior--high byte (BRDL)	Read/write
2	x	Interrupt identification register (IIR)	Read only
3	x	Line control register (LCR)	Read/write
4	x	Modem control register (MCR)	Read/write
5	x	Line status register (LSR)	Read only
6	x	Modem status register (MSR)	Read only

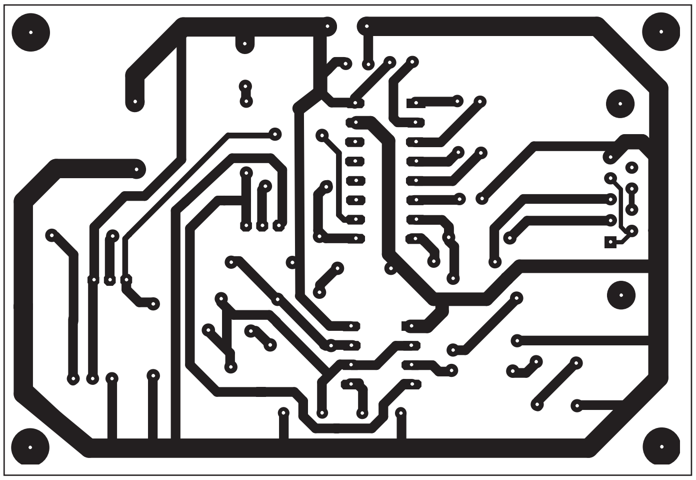


Fig. 4: Actual-size, single-sided PCB for the circuit in Fig. 3

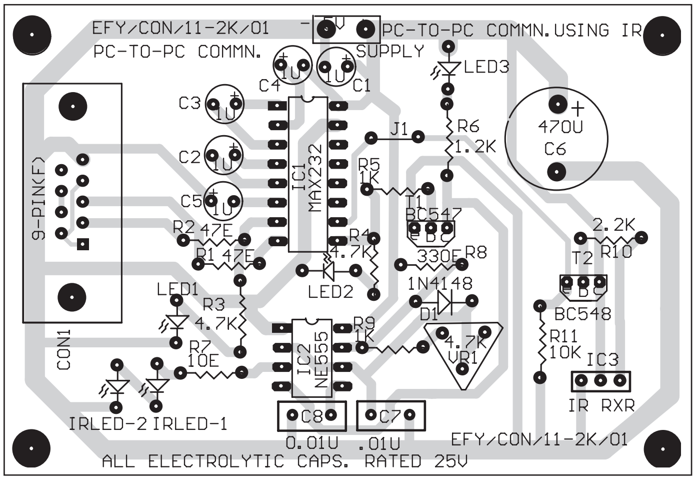


Fig. 5: Component layout for the PCB

Depending on the sensitivity setting and power/angle of IRLEDs, increase the distance to about 35 cms (12 inches) and try again for better distance.

For more power, use metal-can type IRLEDs and reduce the value of resistor R7 for more drive current. If you use a laser beam, as explained earlier, remove the IRLEDs and the device will track up to 10 metres without any data loss.

TABLE X
Line Status Register Bits

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	2FD, 3FD LINE STATUS REGISTER
							1 = DATA READY	
						1 = OVERRUN ERROR (OE)		
					1 = PARITY ERROR (PE)			
				1 = FRAMING ERROR (FE)				
			1 = BREAK INTERRUPT (BI)					
		1 = TRANSMITTER HOLDING REGISTER EMPTY (THRE)						
	1 = TRANSMITTER SHIFT REGISTER EMPTY (TSRE)							
1 = 16550 PE/FE/BREAK IN FIFO QUEUE, 0 FOR 8250 AND 16450								

Hints

1. Aligning the laser beam is a problem, but once it is aligned carefully and fixed, the data transmission and reception would be error-free. Transmitter and receiver alignment routines have been included in this software program to aid in the alignment process.

2. Ordinary clear photodiodes should be used for detector. If you use dark-red plastic-encapsulated diodes, you may have problems, as these react only to very bright natural light or infrared light.

EFY Lab Note. *While testing, we did face problems with red plastic-encapsulated diodes as well as clear Darlington detectors (GE's L14F1), probably because of various light sources in the room causing corruption of the data. Finally, we succeeded, after modification of the circuit as shown in Fig. 3. We were able to flawlessly transfer files, from about 5-metre distance, between two 386-based PCs. We included a 38kHz modulator in the transmitter section and used IR receiver module, which includes a bandpass filter and demodulator for 38kHz carrier. Please refer to the author's circuit idea captioned 'Proximity Detector' in this volume for the working principle etc. For better understanding of the software program given by the author, we have included certain additional information in the succeeding paragraphs.*

The base addresses for the serial communication ports in a PC are shown in Table III. The offset address of the registers used in serial communication is given in Table IV.

For serial port initialisation, the program makes use of BIOS interrupt 14H service 00H. It initialises the serial port pointed to by the contents of dx register (0 for Com-1 and 1 for Com-2 port). The contents of 'al' register initialise the specific communication port for baud rate, parity, stop-bit code, and character-size code as per Table V (and expanded in Tables VI through IX respectively).

The transmitter holding register (THR) and receiver data register (RDR) both at address Base+0 (the former being write(only) and latter being read (only)) act as buffers during transmission and reception, respectively, of a character. The other most important register, which is referred to in the software program frequently, is the line status register (LSR) at Base+5 (i.e. 03FDH for COM-1 port or 02FDH for COM-2 port). Meaning of each of the bits of line status register is given in Table X. Its bit 0 is set when a byte is logged in the receiver buffer register and cleared when the byte is read by the CPU. Its bit 6 is set when both the transmitter holding register and the transmitter shift register are empty.

Presently, the software program is meant for COM-1 port initialised for 600 bauds. It can be changed for 1200, or 2400, or 4800, etc by changing the contents of 'al' register in the initialisation function to 83H, or A3H, or C3H, etc in place of 63H. Similarly, for using COM-2 port, change all register addresses starting with OX3f.. to OX2f.. etc in the program.

With the information included in the tables and some knowledge of 'C' programming, the readers would be able to understand the program with the help of comments already included at various places in the program. The executable file as well as the source code will also be included in the CD. One can use either Teleix or the given program for testing the circuit.

The source code as well as executable files are proposed to be included in the CD.

PCTOPC.C

```
/*  PROGRAM FOR LASER / IR COMMUNICA-
TION BETWEEN TWO PCs */

/* by K.S.Sankar for EFY Nov/Dec'2000 */

#include <stdio.h>   /* Header Files */
#include <dos.h>
#include <conio.h>
#include<graphics.h>
#include<stdlib.h>
#define DEL 25  /* Preprocessor - Delay Vari-
able */
#define  COM  0X03f8   /*0x02f8 -com2,0x03f8-
com1 */
char gra='Y';          /* Global Variables */
int flag=0;
union REGS inregs,outregs; /* Union declara-
tion for registers */
FILE *fp;  /* File declaration */
int status;
char temp='\n',t2;
int t1=10;
  /* The Main Function */
void main(void)
{
char ch,chr,chs; /* Local Variable */
clrscr();
if(flag==0)
/* splash();*/ /* Calling Splash routine */
flag++;
textcolor(4);gotoxy(26,6);
cprintf(“INFRARED/LASER  COMMUNICA-
TION”);
gotoxy(34,9);textcolor(10);
cprintf(“R”);textcolor(7);cprintf(“eceive mode”);
textcolor(14);gotoxy(35,12);
cprintf(“S”);textcolor(7);cprintf(“end mode”);
textcolor(6);gotoxy(37,15);
cprintf(“E”);textcolor(7);cprintf(“xit”);
ch = getch(); /* Select Mode */
switch(toupper(ch))
 {
  case ‘R’:  R:clrscr();
     textcolor(4);gotoxy(26,6);
       cprintf(“INFRARED/LASER COMMUNI-
CATION”);
     textcolor(138);gotoxy(33,9);
     cprintf(“RECEIVE MODE”);
     textcolor(9);gotoxy(33,12);
         cprintf(“A”);textcolor(7);cprintf(“lign  de-
vice”);
     textcolor(11);gotoxy(33,15);
     cprintf(“F”);textcolor(7);cprintf(“ile receive”);
     textcolor(6);gotoxy(36,18);
     cprintf(“Q”);textcolor(7);cprintf(“uit”);
     chr = getch();
     switch(toupper(chr))
    {
     case ‘A’: ralgn();break;
     case ‘F’: f_rcv();break;
     case ‘Q’: main();
     default : clrscr();
             printf(“Wrong Key Pressed”);
             goto R;
    }
   break;
  case ‘S’: S:clrscr();
    textcolor(4);gotoxy(26,6);
      cprintf(“INFRARED/LASER COMMUNI-
CATION”);
    textcolor(142);gotoxy(36,9);
    cprintf(“SEND MODE”);
    textcolor(9);gotoxy(34,12);
        cprintf(“A”);textcolor(7);cprintf(“lign  de-
vice”);
    textcolor(11);gotoxy(34,15);
        cprintf(“T”);textcolor(7);cprintf(“ransfe
r file”);
    textcolor(6);gotoxy(38,18);
    cprintf(“Q”);textcolor(7);cprintf(“uit”);
    chs = getch();
    switch(toupper(chs))
    {
     case ‘A’: salgn();break;
     case ‘T’: f_snd();break;
     case ‘Q’: main();
     default : clrscr();
              printf(“Wrong Key Pressed”);
              goto S;
    }
    break;
  case ‘E’: clrscr();
    textcolor(143);
```

```
     gotoxy(35,13);
     cprintf(“GOOD BYE”);
     exit(1);
   default : clrscr();
     printf(“Wrong Key Pressed”);
     main();
     return ;

}
}

     /* Function for receive (For Device Align-
ment) */

ralgn(void)
{
 char st = ‘ ‘;    /* Local variables */
 clrscr();
 gotoxy(30,2);
 textcolor(10);
 cprintf(“RECEIVE MODE :”);
 textcolor(9);cprintf(“ ALIGN DEVICE”);
 printf(“\n”);
 initial(); /* Call Initialisation routine */
 loop:if(!kbhit())
       {
       if(st==0x04) /* Check for end of Transmis-
sion */
 {
  clrscr();
  textcolor(140);
  gotoxy(30,12);
  cprintf(“ALIGNED PROPERLY”);
  gotoxy(48,24);
  printf(“ Press any key to quit .”);
  getch();
  main(); /* Got to main function after aligning
properly */
 }
        status = inp(0X3fd); /*Checking status at
com1 port */
          if((status & 0x01)==0x00) /* Check for
Data Ready */
    goto loop;
       else if(!kbhit())
       {
              st = inp(COM); /*Get  character from
com1 port till */

              printf(“%c”,st); /* key hit or end of
transmission */
              goto loop;
       }
       else
      main(); /*Call main function if key hit */
    }
    return;
    }

  /*Function for File Receive */

f_rcv()
{
 int flag=0,bytecount=0,count;   /* Local Vari-
ables */
 float ot = 0.00,nt = 0.00;
 char ch,st[55000],fnm[30];
 clrscr();
 initial(); /*Calling Initialisation Routine */
 ot = clock() / 18.2; /*Calculate exec time in secs
from start of program */

 gotoxy(2,2);
 printf(“ FILE NAME ?  : “);
 fp=fopen(gets(fnm),”wb”);  /*Get file name in
write mode */
 gotoxy(26,10);
 printf(“(Ready for) RECEIVING DATA ....”);
 gotoxy(50,24);
 textcolor(138);
 cprintf(“Don’t KEY IN may loss data”);
 loop: nt = clock()/18.2; /*Calculate exec time in
secs from start of
program */
       status = inp(0X3FD);/*Get character from
com1 port */
          if((status & 0x01)==0x00) /* Check for
Data Ready */
   {
 /* Check for no data reception for five seconds
after
     start of reception if  no data is received con-
tinue other process */
     if((bytecount>0) && (nt-ot)>5.0)
       {
              clrscr();
              for(count=0;count<flag;count++)
    {
     gotoxy(26,10);
     textcolor(11);
     cprintf(“ Saving data in”);
     gotoxy(43,10);
     textcolor(12);
     cprintf(“ %s”,fnm);
     /*Dump the data received in a File */
     fprintf(fp,”%c”,st[count]);
    }
   fclose(fp);
   gotoxy(26,13);
   textcolor(11);
    cprintf(“  File  %s  of  %d  bytes  created
“,fnm,count);
   gotoxy(50,24);
   textcolor(7);
   cprintf(“ Press any key to quit .”);
   getch();
   main();
              }
     goto loop;
    }
      else if(!kbhit())
    {
      st[flag] = inp(COM);/*Get   character from
Com1 port */
     flag++;
     bytecount++;
      ot = clock()/18.2; /*Calculate exec time dur-
ing receiving */
     goto loop;
    }
      else
   {
    /*  If  transmission  is  cut  terminate  abnor-
mally */
    clrscr();
    for(count=0;count<flag;count++)
       {
              gotoxy(26,3);
              textcolor(140);
              cprintf(“  TERMINATED  ABNOR-
MALLY “);
              gotoxy(26,10);
              textcolor(11);
              cprintf(“ Saving data in”);
              textcolor(12);
              cprintf(“ %s”,fnm);
              fprintf(fp,”%c”,st[count]);
       }
    fclose(fp);
    gotoxy(26,13);
    textcolor(11);
       cprintf(“  File  %s  of  %d  bytes  created
“,fnm,count);
    sleep(5);
    main();/*Go to main after dumping in file */
   }
   return;
}

 /*  Function  for  send  align  (  for  device  align-
ment) */

salgn(void)
{
 int flag=0; /* Local Variables */
 char st[127];
 clrscr();
 initial();
 textcolor(14);
 cprintf(“Type the sentence ( < 127 chars)”);
 puts(“\n”);
 gets(st);    /* Get string to send */
 loop:status  =  inp(0X3FD);  /*  Get  com1  port
status */
     if((status & 0x20)==0x00) /* Check Transfer
holding register empty */
   goto loop;
     else
  do
   {
    if(!kbhit())     /* Check for key hit */
     {
          outport(COM,0X0D);  /*  Send  carriage
return */
      outport(COM,0X0A); /* Send line feed */
        if(flag==strlen(st)) /* Check for length of
string*/
  {
   printf(“\n”);
   flag=0;
   outport(COM,0X0D);
    /* Send carriage return */
   delay(5);
   outport(COM,0X0A); /* Send carriage return
*/
   delay(5);
  }
      else
  {
    outport(COM,st[flag]); /* Send character to
com1 port*/
   printf(“%c”,st[flag]);
   flag++;
   delay(DEL);
  }


     }
    if(kbhit()) /* Check key hit */
     {
              delay(1);
              outport(COM,0x04);/*Send  End  of
transmission */
              main();
     }
    }
    while(!kbhit());
}

 /*Function for file transfer*/
f_snd()
{
 int flag=0,count=0,fl;     /* Local Variables */
 char ch,st[55000],fnm[20];
 clrscr();
 initial(); /* Calling Initialisation Routine */
 gotoxy(2,2);
 printf(“FILE NAME ? : “);
 fp = fopen(gets(fnm),”rb”); /* Get file name to
be sent */
 if(fp==NULL)
   {
    clrscr();
    gotoxy(35,13);
    printf(“ FILE NOT FOUND !”);
   delay(1000);
   main();
  }
 else
  {
   fl = filelength(5); /* Calculate file length */
   gotoxy(23,20);
      printf("File being transferred has %u
bytes",fl);
   do
    {
     ch = fgetc(fp);
     st[count] = ch;
     count++;
    }
   while(count<=fl);
  }
 fclose(fp);

 loop: status = inp(0X3FD); /*Check com1 port
status */
     if((status & 0x20)==0x00)/* Check Transfer
holding register empty */
   goto loop;
     else
  do
   {
    if(flag==fl) /*Check for file length */
     {
              gotoxy(50,24);
              printf(" Press any key to exit !");
              getch();
              main(); /*Call main function */
     }
     else
   {
    outport(COM,st[flag]);/*Send each character
in the file*/
   printf("\t%004x",st[flag]);
   flag++;
   delay(DEL);
   }
    }
  while(!kbhit()); /* Check for key hit */
}

  /*Initiialisation Function */
initial()
 {
 inregs.h.ah = 0; /*Initialisation of port */
 inregs.h.al = 0X63; /* Baudrate , Parity , Data-
bits , Stopbit(s) */
 inregs.x.dx = 0;  /*Select port COM1 */
  int86(0x14,&inregs,&outregs);/*Complete
Communication service Interrupt*/
 }

   /*Function for Splash screen*/
splash(void)
{
int d=DETECT,m,j,i;
struct palettetype pal; /* Structure for palette
colours */
initgraph(&d,&m,""); /*Initialisation for splash
screen */
getpalette(&pal);    /*Get palette colours*/
 for(i=0;i<=pal.size;i++)
  setrgbpalette(pal.colors[i],i*5,i*4,i*4);/*Combination of RGB colours*/
 setfillstyle(8,8);
 setcolor(15);
 settextstyle(1,0,4);
 setbkcolor(4);
 for(i=0;i<17;i++)     /* Writing text with RGB
palette colors */
 {
  setcolor(i);
  outtextxy(45+i,200+i,"PC to PC Laser/IR Com-
munication");
 }
 sleep(1);
 cleardevice();
for(i=0;i<17;i++)      /* Writing text with RGB
palette colors */
 {
  setcolor(i);
  outtextxy(175+i,200+i,"Mostek Electronics");
 }
 sleep(1);
cleardevice();
for(i=0;i<17;i++)      /* Writing text with RGB
palette colors */
 {
  setcolor(i);
  outtextxy(160+i,175+i,"K.S.Sankar");
 }
sleep(1);
cleardevice();
closegraph();
}
/*——end———*/
```

Readers queries:

A. Please clarify the following:

1. What changes are to be made for using the laser module?
2. How can we increase the range further?
3. Specify pin connection of laser sensor module.
4. Which IC is equivalent to MAX232?
5. Installation of the hardware.
6. Give details of port addresses and all the tables in the project.

EFY: Seriatim replies to the queries are given below:

1. No changes are to be made in the circuit for using the laser module.
2. For increasing the range further, a higher-power laser can be used, but avoid looking directly into it.
3. A laser pointer (torch) is available in the market. You can use it in the transmitter (Fig. 2 of the article). Take out its three button cells and connect +5V from the circuit to the body of the torch. Connect the emitter of transistor T1 to the spring protruding from inside the torch body after disconnecting resistor R7 and the two IR LEDs.
4. IC HIN232CP is equivalent to MAX232. Some other ICs may also be equivalent to MAX232.
5. Serial port addresses in hex for the four serial ports are given in Table III. Table II defines the signals that are available at each pin of the 9-pin (or 25-pin) 'D' connector, whichever is provided for the serial port used by you, and is common for all serial port addresses.
6. Connect 'D' connector of the transmitter (Fig. 2) to that serial port of the PC from where data is to be sent (transmitted) and 'D' connector of Fig. 3 to that serial port of the PC where data is to be received.

B. For file transfer, I want to use FM mode of communication. Please tell me how can I achieve it and what changes are to be made in the circuit and the PCB?

Abhishek Gupta
Bareilly

***The author, K.S. Sankar, replies*:** Two designs are given in the article. One is the original (Fig. 2) by me, wherein there is no carrier employed and it uses a direct beam on/off principle, i.e. when a high (logic 1) signal is detected, the IR laser switches on. When logic 0 is detected, the IR laser switches off. The data is transmitted as flashes of light representing logic 0 and 1. In this method, data speed of up to 9600 bauds can be achieved easily but the distance between the transmitter and the receiver should be less than 30.5 cm (12 inches) when using IR. The distance can be increased to over 6 metres (20 feet) with a laser beam. But using a laser beam has its own problems; particularly, the alignment is very difficult.

The modified version (Fig. 3) by EFY has a carrier of 38 kHz using IR and a 3-pin demodulating IR receiver module like the one used in TV sets with remote control. The advantage of this design is that alignment is not much of a problem and the distance can go up to 3 metres (10 feet). But the speed in excess of 1200 bauds is not possible because of limitations in the IR receiver. The concept of sending logic 0 and logic 1 as flashes of optical energy remains the same, except that during 'on' time a modulated IR beam of 38 kHz is sent instead of a steady IR beam.

In case you plan to use wireless FM audio signals instead of the optical technology, you will have to send two different frequencies to represent '0' and '1'. The best option is to go for the FSK method using 1200 Hz and 2400 Hz with a baud rate of 300. It is slow but an interesting concept. The audio can be input to a small FM transmitter, and on the receiving side, a pocket FM radio can be used to detect the signals.

My circuit cannot be used for this method—you will have to build an FSK transmitter and an FSK receiver.

MULTI-EFFECT CHASER LIGHTS USING 8051 MICROCONTROLLER

ADITYA U. RANE

The 8051 microcontroller, first developed by Intel, finds many applications in small development systems such as speed control of DC motors, timers, process-control applications, and temperature controllers. One of its simple applications as multi-effect chaser lights is described in this project.

Here the microcontroller 8051 controls the switching sequence of eight triacs (TR1 through TR8) via the buffer transistors T1 through T8, as shown in the schematic diagram of Fig. 1. Each triac, in turn, may be used to control a series of bulbs (with a total voltage drop of 230V AC and the current drawn through BT136 triacs not exceeding 4 amp).

Features of 8051 micro-controller. The heart of the circuit is the 8051 microcontroller. Some of the important features of the controller are as follows:

— 8-bit CPU with register A (accumulator) and register B.

— 16-bit program counter (PC).

— 16-bit data pointer (DPTR).

— 8-bit program status word (PSW).

— 8-bit stack pointer.

— 128 bytes of internal RAM.

— No ROM for 8031, 4k ROM for 8051, and 4k EPROM for 8751.

— Two external and three internal interrupt sources.

— Four programmable input-output ports/registers.

One of the important parts of the 8051 CPU is its oscillator section. The oscillator section is present on the chip itself, only quartz crystal has to be connected externally between pins 18 and 19. The crystal frequency should range between 1 MHz and 16 MHz for proper functioning of the controller. If this frequency is taken below 1 MHz, there is a chance of losing data of its internal RAM.

Pin 31 happens to be the external access pin for the controller. If this particular pin is grounded, 8051 fetches program from the externally connected ROM/EPROM. And if it is connected to Vcc, it starts executing the program from the internal ROM that has 4k address space (0000H-0FFFH). For 8031, there is no internal ROM present, and hence this pin has to be grounded for its proper operation.

When internal ROM is used, and if the program exceeds the 4k internal ROM address space, then after the last address 0FFFH, it starts executing the program from externally connected ROM/EPROM. The externally connected ROM/EPROM can be increased up to 64k, i.e. 0000H-FFFFH. In the case of RAM, the same can be extended up to 64k.

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:	
IC1	8051 microcontroller
IC2	74373 octal ‘D’ type latches
IC3	2764 EPROM 8-kbytes
IC4	7805 regulator +5V
T1-T8	BC547 npn transistors
TR1-TR8	BT 136, triac
LED1-LED8	Red LED
Resistors (all ¼-watt, ±5% carbon, unless stated otherwise):	
R1-R16	560-ohm
R17	47-ohm
R18	10-kilo-ohm
Capacitors:	
C1, C2	30pF ceramic disk
C3	100µF, 16V electrolytic
C4, C5	10µF, 25V electrolytic
Miscellaneous:	
X_{TAL}	12MHz quartz crystal
L1-L8	L1 through L8 could each be a series of bulbs with total voltage-drop of 230V AC
	Heat-sink
S1	Push-to-on switch

It should be noted that the 8051 is organised such that data memory and program memory can be two entirely different physical memory entities. Another important aspect to be discussed relates to its input-output (I/O) ports. The 8051 has a total of four 8-bit ports, namely, P0, P1, P2, and P3.

P0. The P0 port may be used as input, output, or as combined low-order address and a bidirectional data bus for external memory, which is an alternate function.

P1. Port P1 does not have any alternate function. It means that these pins are used for interfacing input-output devices like ADC, DAC, 7-segment displays, LCD, keyboard, etc.

P2. Port P2 happens to be the high-order address lines, i.e. A8-A15. This port can be used for interfacing I/O devices. It should be noted that port 2 is changed momentarily by the address signals when supplying the byte of a 16-bit address.

P3. Port 3 functions in a fashion similar to that of port 1. Each pin of port P3 performs different operations as shown in Table I.

Hardware

The controller is interfaced with the external memory (EPROM) via the octal ‘D’ latch 74LS373. The purpose of using 74LS373 is to de-multiplex the address lines and the data lines. Hence, after de-

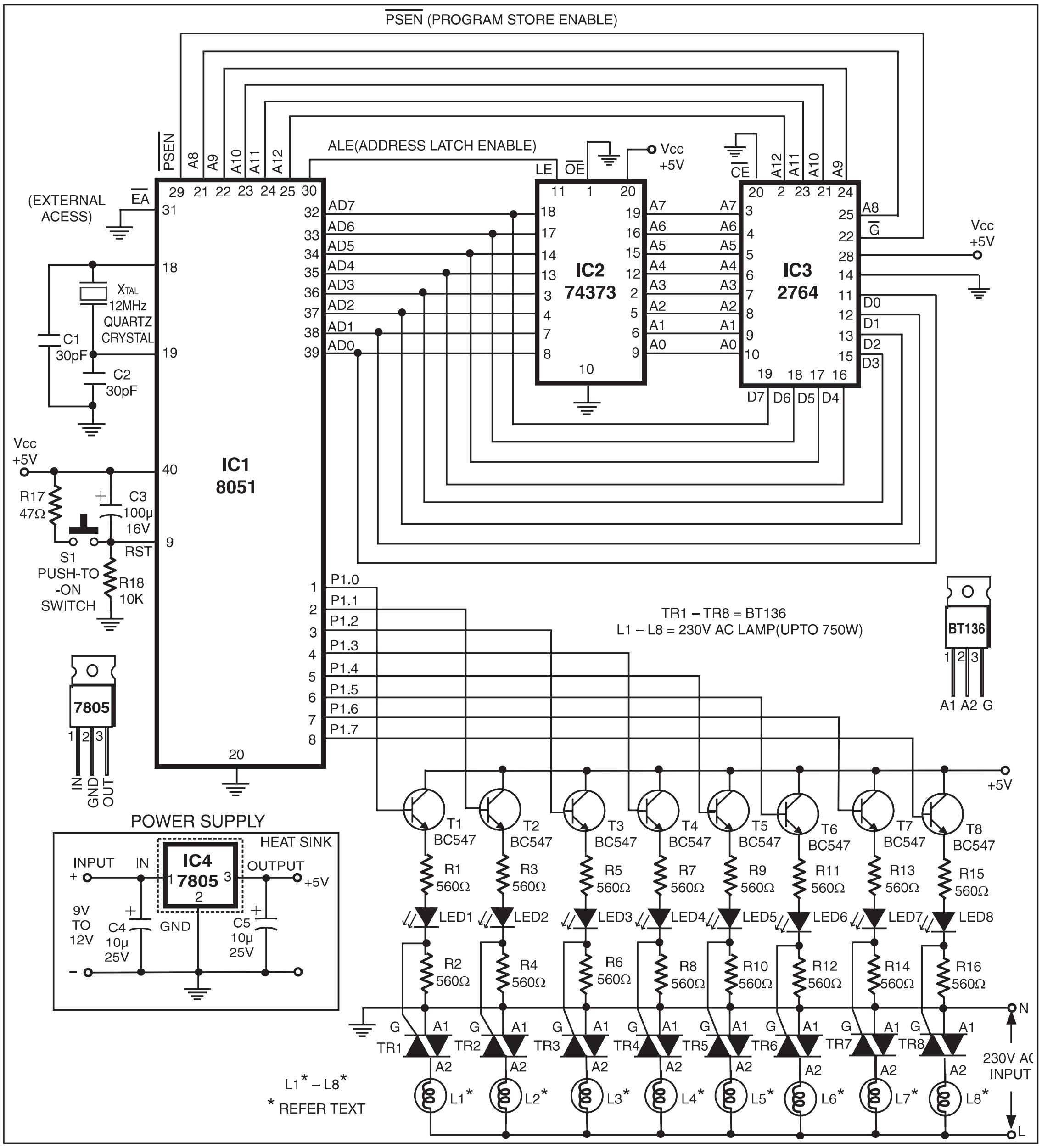

PSEN (PROGRAM STORE ENABLE)
ALE(ADDRESS LATCH ENABLE)
PSEN
A8
A9
A10
A11
A12
(EXTERNAL ACESS)
EA
XTAL 12MHz QUARTZ CRYSTAL
C1 30pF
C2 30pF
Vcc +5V
R17 47Ω
C3 100µ 16V
S1 PUSH-TO -ON SWITCH
R18 10K
RST
IC1 8051
AD7
AD6
AD5
AD4
AD3
AD2
AD1
AD0
IC2 74373
LE
OE
IC3 2764
CE
G
D0
D1
D2
D3
D7
D6
D5
D4
P1.0
P1.1
P1.2
P1.3
P1.4
P1.5
P1.6
P1.7
TR1 – TR8 = BT136
L1 – L8 = 230V AC LAMP(UPTO 750W)
BT136
A1 A2 G
7805
IN GND OUT
POWER SUPPLY
HEAT SINK
INPUT
IN
OUTPUT
IC4 7805
+5V
9V TO 12V
C4 10µ 25V
GND
C5 10µ 25V
T1 BC547
T2 BC547
T3 BC547
T4 BC547
T5 BC547
T6 BC547
T7 BC547
T8 BC547
R1 560Ω
R3 560Ω
R5 560Ω
R7 560Ω
R9 560Ω
R11 560Ω
R13 560Ω
R15 560Ω
LED1
LED2
LED3
LED4
LED5
LED6
LED7
LED8
R2 560Ω
R4 560Ω
R6 560Ω
R8 560Ω
R10 560Ω
R12 560Ω
R14 560Ω
R16 560Ω
TR1
TR2
TR3
TR4
TR5
TR6
TR7
TR8
N
230V AC INPUT
L
L1* – L8*
* REFER TEXT
L1*
L2*
L3*
L4*
L5*
L6*
L7*
L8*

Fig. 1: Schematic diagram of multi-effect chaser lights

TABLE I	
Pins	**Use**
P3.0 (RXD)	Receive data serially
P3.1 (TXD)	Transmit data serially
P3.2 ($\overline{\text{INT0}}$)	External interrupt zero
P3.3 ($\overline{\text{INT1}}$)	External interrupt one
P3.4 (T0)	I/P pin for timer 0
P3.5 (T1)	I/P pin for timer1
P3.6 ($\overline{\text{WR}}$)	External memory write pulse
P3.7 ($\overline{\text{RD}}$)	External memory read pulse

multiplexing, AD0-AD7 forms two sets of lines—address lines A0-A7 and data lines D0-D7. The higher-order address lines A8 to A15 are directly available from 8051 pins.

During the memory access cycle, port P0 first outputs lower bytes of 16-bit memory address and then the same port acts as bidirectional data bus to read a byte of memory, whereas port P2 provides the higher byte of memory address during the read cycle. It is further seen that the lower-order address byte of port P0 gets latched into external register of 74373 (IC2) to save the particular byte. The ALE (Address latch enable) pulse provides the precise timing to the 74LS373 for latching the low-order address.

If the memory access is meant for the program memory, the PSEN signal goes low and enables the EPROM to output the code on the data bus. The purpose of using PSEN (program store enable) is that it provides the output signal for the program memory/code memory. When this signal goes low, controller can read instruction byte from the program memory.

Under the program control, 8051 provides the output to port P1, which is further coupled to the base of driver transistors T1 through T8 (BC547). A logic 1 at any of the output pins of port P1 will drive the corresponding LED as well as the gate of the triac. The corresponding triac therefore fires to drive the lamp/lamps connected between its terminal A2 and the neutral line (N). If you use, say, 12V lamps, you may connect about 20 lamps in series. If each lamp is of 25-watt (passes about 2A current) rating, you may connect two rows of 20 such bulbs across A2 terminal of each triac and neutral line. The software program determines the triggering sequence of the triacs to provide the lighting effects.

Software

As mentioned earlier, lighting of bulbs is controlled by port P1 output code format. During the execution of the program, the code stored from memory location 0023H up 007CH (total locations are thus 59H or 89 decimal) will get loaded into the accumulator one by one and will get transferred to port P1. If the format of these codes or their sequence is changed, the output too will get altered in same manner. Please note that outputting logic 1 from any pin (equivalent to setting a specific bit) will switch 'on' the corresponding triac (and the series of bulbs connected across its terminals A2 and N), whereas outputting logic 0 from the same pin of port P1 (equivalent to clearing/resetting the specific bit) will switch it 'off'. The output code format from port P1 is shown in Fig. 4.

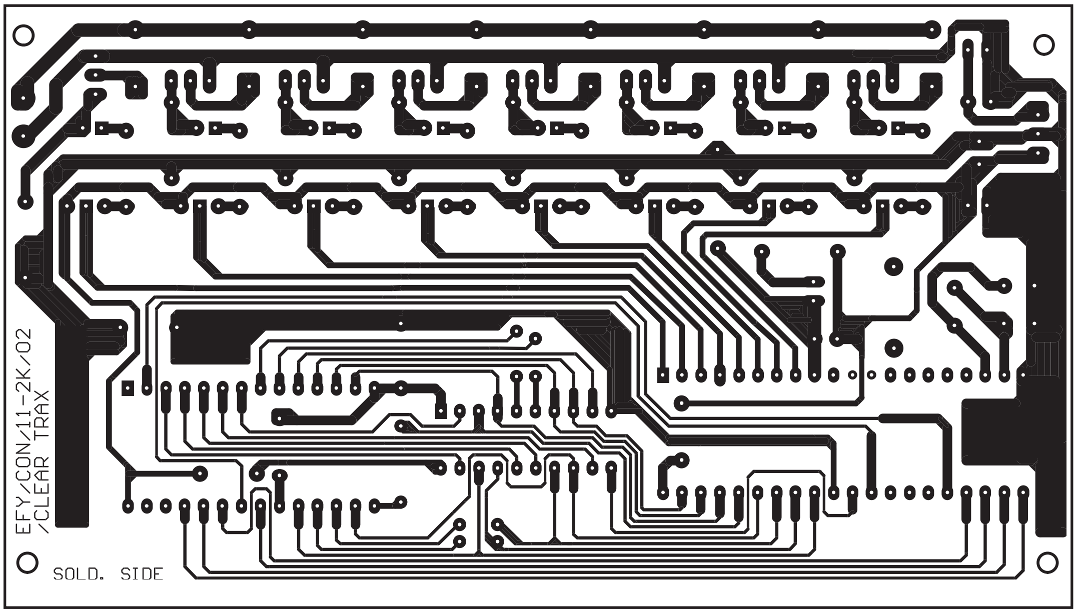

EFY/CON/11-2K/02
/CLEAR TRAX
SOLD. SIDE

Fig. 2: PCB layout for the circuit

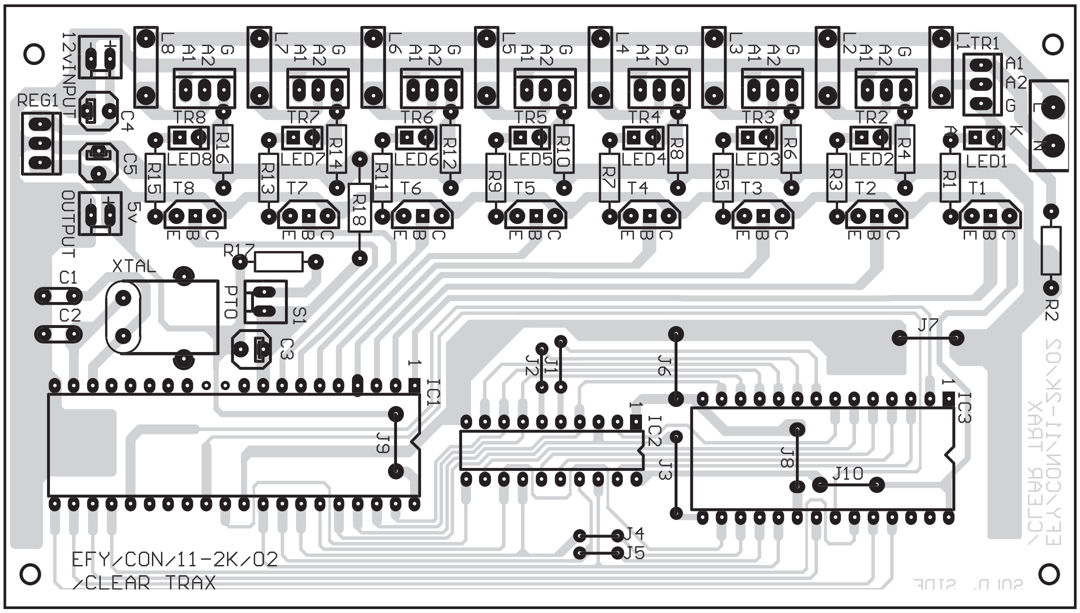

12V INPUT
REG1
C4
C5
5V
OUTPUT
L8
L7
L6
L5
L4
L3
L2
L1
A1
A2
G
TR1
TR2
TR3
TR4
TR5
TR6
TR7
TR8
K
A
L
N
LED1
LED2
LED3
LED4
LED5
LED6
LED7
LED8
R1
R2
R3
R4
R5
R6
R7
R8
R9
R10
R11
R12
R13
R14
R15
R16
R17
R18
T1
T2
T3
T4
T5
T6
T7
T8
E
B
C
XTAL
C1
C2
C3
PTO
S1
IC1
IC2
IC3
J1
J2
J3
J4
J5
J6
J7
J8
J9
J10
EFY/CON/11-2K/02
/CLEAR TRAX

Fig. 3: Component layout for the PCB

Example 1: If there is a requirement to set only P1.0 bit, the output format from port P1 will be as shown in Fig. 5.

For converting the above format to normal hex level, you have to apply 8421 logic (Fig. 6) and you get 01H.

Example 2: To set P1.0 and P1.7, you have to output 81H from port P1 (Fig. 7).

In the software program, total codes to be displayed are 007CH–0023H = 0059H, as mentioned earlier, and hence 59H is loaded in the main program at memory location 0012H. Further, register R3 being an 8-bit register, the maximum count is restricted to FFH (255 decimal). Since we are comparing the contents of register R3 with 59H, when register R3 reaches that count, the compare instruction gets satisfied and it jumps to label 2 (in the program). In case you wish to extend the codes to be output from port P1, the loaded count at memory location 0012H has to be altered correspondingly. The program, when run, produces an eye-catching lighting effect. The complete program listing (CHASER.LST) is given in the box ahead.

P1.7	P1.6	P1.5	P1.4	P1.3	P1.2	P1.1	P1.0
1/0	1/0	1/0	1/0	1/0	1/0	1/0	1/0

1 = SET BIT
0 = RESET / CLEAR BIT

Fig. 4: Output code format from port P1

P1.7	P1.6	P1.5	P1.4	P1.3	P1.2	P1.1	P1.0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

Fig. 5: Output code format for setting only P1.0

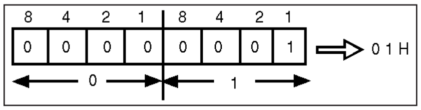

8 4 2 1 8 4 2 1
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1
01H
0
1

Fig. 6: Hex code for Fig. 3

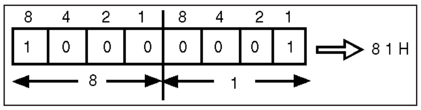

8 4 2 1 8 4 2 1
1 0 0 0 0 0 0 1
81H
8
1

Fig. 7: Hex code for setting P1.0 and P1.7 bit

An actual-size, single-sided PCB for the circuit in Fig. 1 is shown in Fig. 2 and its component layout is shown in Fig. 3. It is important that neutral and phase (live) lines of 230V AC are not interchanged, because only the neutral line is required to be grounded to PCB common ground and not the live line.

CHASER.LST

```
Add.  Code     Label    Mnemonics         Comments
                        ORG 0000H         ;ROM starting address
0000  E4                CLR A             ;Clear contents of accumulator
0001  759000            MOV P1,#00H       ;Clear port 1 (off all LEDs)
0004  900023            MOV DPTR,#0023H   ;Moving immediate DPTR
                                          ;with 0023 (starting address of
                                          ;O/P codes)
0007  7B00     LABEL2:  MOV R3,#00H       ;Clearing the contents of
                                          register R3
0009  E4       LABEL1:  CLR A             ;Clear accumulator
000A  2B                ADD A,R3          ;Adding the contents of
                                          ;accumulator and register R3
000B  0B                INC R3            ;Incrementing the contents of
                                          ;register R3 by 1
000C  93                MOVC A,@A+DPTR    ;Copy the code byte, found at
                                          ;ROM address formed by add-
                                          ing ;A dn the DPTR, to A
000D  F590              MOV P1,A          ;Move the content the contents
                                          ;of accumulator to port 1
000F  1116              ACALL DELAY       ;Calling delay
0011  BB59F5            CJNE R3,#59H,     ;compare the contents of regis-
                        LABEL1            ;ter R3 with 59H and jump
                                          to ;labell if not equal else
                                          continue
0014  80F1              SJMP LABEL2       ;Short jump to label2
0016  7801     DELAY:   MOV R0,#01H       ;Move immediate register R0
                                          ;with 01H
0018  7900     LABEL5:MOV R1,#00H         ;Move immediate register R1
                                          ;with 00H
001A  7A00     LABEL4:MOV R2,#00          ;Move immediate register R2
                                          ;with 00H
001C  DAFE     LABEL3:DJNZ R2,LABEL3      ;Decrement the content of
                                          ;register R2 till it becomes zero
001E  D9FA              DJNZ R1,LABEL4    ;Decrement R1 till zero
0020  D8F6              DJNZ R0,LABEL5    ;Decrement R0 till zero
0022  22                RET               ;Return
0023  01       DB 01H ;DB(Define Byte) is
0024  02       DB 02H ;the assembler directive
0025  04                DB 04H
0026  08                DB 08H
0027  10                DB 10H
0028  20                DB 20H
0029  40                DB 40H
002A  80                DB 80H
002B  40                DB 40H
002C  20                DB 20H
002D  10                DB 10H
002E  08                DB 08H
002F  04                DB 04H
0030  02                DB 02H
0031  01                DB 01H
0032  03                DB 03H
0033  07                DB 07H
0034  0F                DB 0FH
0035  1F                DB 1FH
0036  3F                DB 3FH
0037  7F                DB 7FH
0038  FF                DB FFH
0039  7F                DB 7FH
003A  3F                DB 3FH
003B  1F                DB 1FH
003C  0F                DB 0FH
003D  07                DB 07H
003E  03                DB 03H

Add.  Code     Label    Mnemonics         Comments
003F  01                DB 01H
0040  11                DB 11H
0041  22                DB 22H
0042  44                DB 44H
0043  88                DB 88H
0044  44                DB 44H
0045  22                DB 22H
0046  11                DB 11H
0047  33                DB 33H
0048  77                DB 77H
0049  FF                DB FFH
004A  77                DB 77H
004B  33                DB 33H
004C  11                DB 11H
004D  81                DB 81H
004E  42                DB 42H
004F  24                DB 24H
0050  18                DB 18H
0051  24                DB 24H
0052  42                DB 42H
0053  81                DB 81H
0054  C3                DB C3H
0055  E7                DB E7H
0056  FF                DB FFH
0057  E7                DB E7H
0058  C3                DB C3H
0059  81                DB 81H
005A  01                DB 01H
005B  02                DB 02H
005C  04                DB 04H
005D  08                DB 08H
005E  10                DB 10H
005F  20                DB 20H
0060  40                DB 40H
0061  80                DB 80H
0062  40                DB 40H
0063  20                DB 20H
0064  10                DB 10H
0065  08                DB 08H
0066  04                DB 04H
0067  02                DB 02H
0068  01                DB 01H
0069  03                DB 03H
006A  0C                DB 0CH
006B  30                DB 30H
006C  C0                DB C0H
006D  30                DB 30H
006E  0C                DB 0CH
006F  03                DB 03H
0070  0F                DB 0FH
0071  F0                DB F0H
0072  FF                DB FFH
0073  00                DB 00H
0074  FF                DB FFH
0075  00                DB 00H
0076  FF                DB FFH
0077  AA                DB AAH
0078  55                DB 55H
0079  AA                DB AAH
007A  55                DB 55H
007B  AA                DB AAH
007C  55                DB 55H
```

ELECTRONIC BELL SYSTEM

Dr D.K. KAUSHIK

In this innovative project, a simple electronic bell system using commonly available ICs is presented for use in educational institutes. This simple and easy-to-fabricate project has the following features:

- It sounds the bell automatically after every period of 40 minutes.
- It displays in digital form the current time and period number of the class going on.
- The system automatically switches off after the last period (11th period). The digital clock showing the current time, however, continues working as usual.

PARTS LIST

Semiconductors:	
IC1	- 7805 +5V regulator
IC2	- 7474 dual 'D' flip-flop
IC3	- MM5369 oscillator/driver
IC4	- MM5387/LM8361 clock chip or equivalent
IC5, IC6	- CD4026 decimal up-counter with 7-segment driver
IC7-IC10	- CD4017 decade counter
T1, T2	- BC107 npn transistor
T3, T4	- 2N2222 npn switching transistor
D1-D8	- 1N4001 rectifier diode
LED1, LED2	- Red LED
Resistors (all ¼-watt, ±5% carbon, unless stated otherwise):	
R1, R2	- 2.2-kilo-ohm
R3, R44, R50	- 1.5-kilo-ohm
R4	- 4.7-kilo-ohm
R5, R6, R45 R46, R48	- 10-kilo-ohm
R7-R43	- 330-ohms
R47	- 56-kilo-ohm
R49	- 20-mega-ohm
Capacitors:	
C1, C4	- 100µF, 25V electrolytic
C2	- 30pF ceramic disk
C3	- 30pF trimmer
Miscellaneous:	
S1-S4	- Tactile switch (SPST)
S5	- Tactile switch (DPDT)
X_{TAL}	- 3.57945MHz crystal
RL1-RL2	- 12V, 200-ohm relay (SPST)
DIS.1-DIS.6	- LT543 common-cathode 7-segment display
	- Power amplifier with loudspeaker

The principle

Fig. 1 shows the block diagram of the system, which has three parts. Part I has the usual digital clock comprising quartz crystal oscillator cum frequency divider IC MM5369, clock chip MM5387, and 7-segment common-cathode displays.

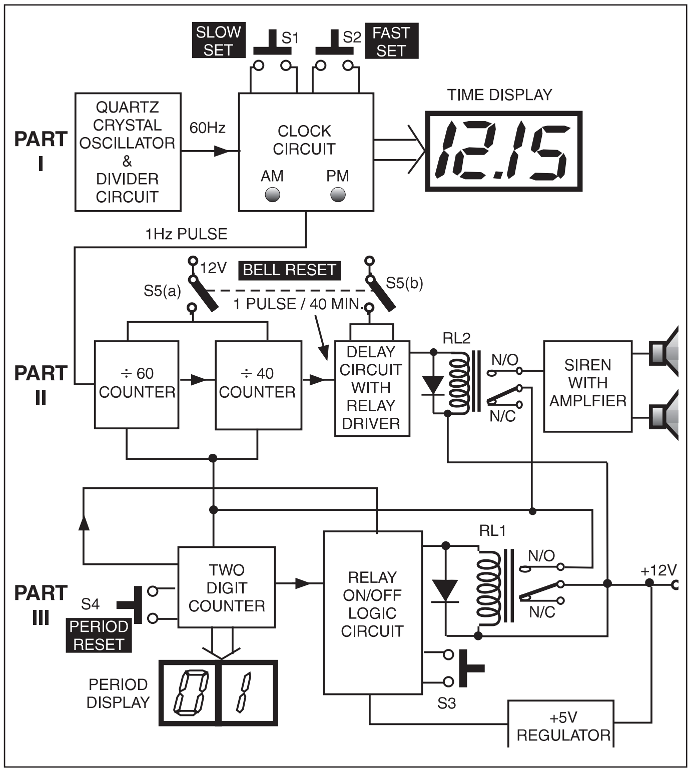
The 1Hz pulse (i.e. one pulse per sec.) is taken from the digital clock and used in part II of the circuit. The accuracy of the system depends on this 1Hz pulse, obtained from the standard digital clock circuit. In part II of the system, the 1Hz pulse is used to obtain one pulse after every 40 minutes, by employing a four-stage counter circuit.

The pulses obtained at 40-minute intervals drive transistor T4 (see Fig. 2) into saturation for a few seconds (the exact duration being decided by the delay circuit comprising 56-kilo-ohm resistor R47, 100µF capacitor C4, and diode D7). When the transistor goes into saturation, relay RL2 is energised and the bell sounds for a few seconds.

Any electronic horn/siren using an audio power amplifier of desired wattage may be used for the bell. In the prototype, the author used an audio tape recorded with the usual sound of brass bell, with tape recorder/player of 150 watts rating, driving four 20-watt speaker units. It is considered adequate for the campus of any educational institute. The readers may, however, use any other sound system according to their requirements.

Part III consists of the period counter and display. It displays the current period in progress. The number of pulses received at 40-minute intervals are counted by this counter circuit and the display unit displays the period number.

One additional relay circuit is used so that the power supply given to parts II and III of the system is automatically interrupted at the end of the eleventh



SLOW SET
S1
S2
FAST SET
TIME DISPLAY
PART I
QUARTZ CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR & DIVIDER CIRCUIT
60Hz
CLOCK CIRCUIT
AM
PM
12.15
1Hz PULSE
12V
BELL RESET
S5(a)
S5(b)
1 PULSE / 40 MIN.
RL2
PART II
÷ 60 COUNTER
÷ 40 COUNTER
DELAY CIRCUIT WITH RELAY DRIVER
N/O
N/C
SIREN WITH AMPLFIER
RL1
N/O
+12V
PART III
S4
PERIOD RESET
TWO DIGIT COUNTER
RELAY ON/OFF LOGIC CIRCUIT
N/C
PERIOD DISPLAY
01
S3
+5V REGULATOR

Fig. 1: Block diagram of the electronic bell system

period. Next day the system has to be reset, and the cycle repeats.

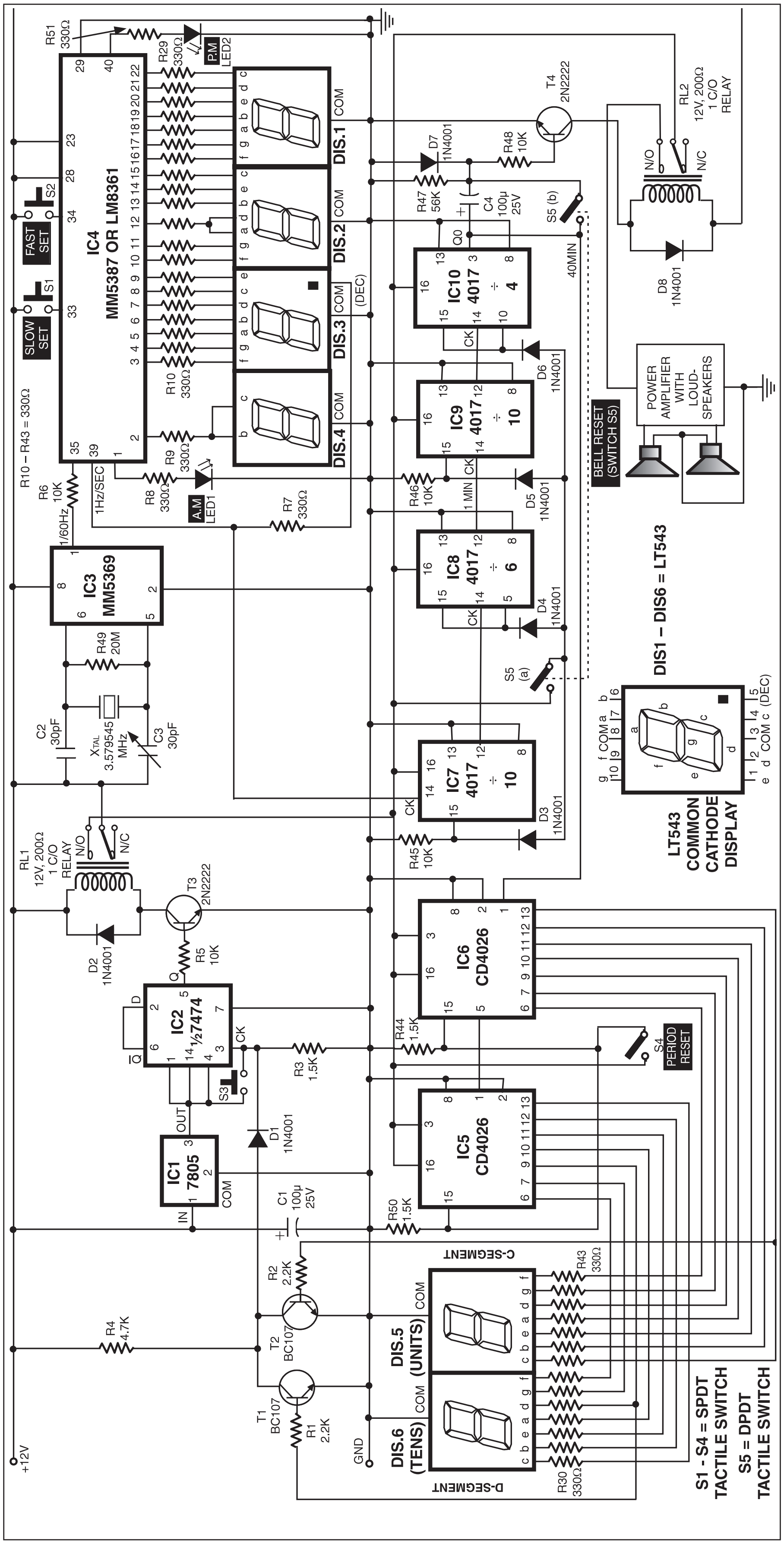

IC4
MM5387 OR LM8361
IC3
MM5369
IC1
7805
IC2
½7474
IC5
CD4026
IC6
CD4026
IC7
4017
÷10
IC8
4017
÷6
IC9
4017
÷10
IC10
4017
÷4
DIS.1
DIS.2
DIS.3
DIS.4
DIS.5 (UNITS)
DIS.6 (TENS)
SLOW SET
FAST SET
S1
S2
S3
S4
PERIOD RESET
S5 (a)
S5 (b)
BELL RESET (SWITCH S5)
40MIN
1 MIN
1Hz/SEC
1/60Hz
R10 – R43 = 330Ω
RL1 12V, 200Ω 1 C/O RELAY
RL2 12V, 200Ω 1 C/O RELAY
N/O
N/C
T1 BC107
T2 BC107
T3 2N2222
T4 2N2222
XTAL 3.579545 MHz
C2 30pF
C3 30pF
R49 20M
C1 100µ 25V
C4 100µ 25V
R47 56K
R48 10K
D7 1N4001
A.M LED1
P.M LED2
POWER AMPLIFIER WITH LOUD-SPEAKERS
C-SEGMENT
D-SEGMENT
+12V
GND
LT543 COMMON CATHODE DISPLAY
DIS1 – DIS6 = LT543
S1 - S4 = SPDT TACTILE SWITCH
S5 = DPDT TACTILE SWITCH

Fig. 2: Schematic diagram of electronic bell system for institutes

The circuit

Fig. 2 shows the detailed circuit diagram. The clock circuit of part I of the system is designed using 3.58MHz quartz crystal, MM5369 crystal oscillator and divider (IC3), MM5387 clock chip (IC4), four common-cathode 7-segment displays, and a few passive components. For more details of the digital clock, the readers may consult 'Car Clock Module' project in September 1986 issue or Electronics Projects (Vol. 7) published by EFY. Push-to-on switches S1 and S2 (slow and fast time set) may be used to set the time of the digital clock.

*(**Note.** For ready reference, pin configurations of ICs MM5369 and MM5387/LM8361 are reproduced here in Figs 3 and 4, respectively.)*

The standard 1Hz pulse is taken from pin 39 of IC4 and connected to clock input pin 14 of decade counter IC7 (CD4017). The carry pin 12 of IC7 outputs a pulse every 10 seconds, which is connected to clock pin 14 of the next CD4017 decade counter (IC8). The reset terminal (pin 15) of IC8 is connected to pin 5 (output No. 6) of the same IC. This IC thus divides the signal by a factor of 6 and its pin 12 (carry pin) gives an output of one pulse every minute. This pulse is applied to IC9 (CD4017), where it is further divided by a factor of 10 to produce an output pulse at every 10-minute interval. Finally, a pulse at every 40-minute interval is obtained from IC10 (CD4017), which is configured as divide-by-four counter, since its reset pin 15 is shorted to Q4 output pin 10 of IC10.

The output pulse at pin 3 of IC10 remains high for ten minutes and low for 30 minutes. This output pulse (every 40 minutes) is connected to the base of transistor T4 through a combination of capacitor C4 and resistance R47, to energise the relay and sound the bell. The capacitor-resistor combination of C4-R47 acts as a differentiator circuit, while diode D7 clips off the negative going portion of the pulse. The delay time may be adjusted by choosing proper C4-R47 combination values.

After the preset time delay of

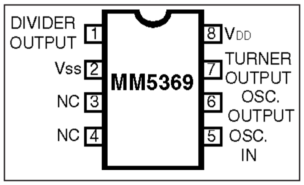

DIVIDER OUTPUT
1
Vss
2
NC
3
NC
4
MM5369
8
VDD
7
TURNER OUTPUT
6
OSC. OUTPUT
5
OSC. IN

Fig. 3: Pin configuration of MM5369

a few seconds, the transistor goes into cut-off and the relay gets de-energised, to switch off the bell. However, the clock circuit of part I around IC4 and divider circuit formed by IC7 through IC10 continue to work as usual and hence the accuracy of the periods is not affected by the 'on' and 'off' times of transistor T4.

To count and display the current period, a two-digit counter is designed using two CMOS decade counter cum 7-segment decoder/driver CD4026 ICs (IC5 and IC6) and two 7-segment common-cathode displays (LT543). The pulse obtained every 40 minutes from pin 3 of IC10 is also connected to the input of this two-digit counter. This counter counts these pulses and displays them via the LT543 (showing the current period number in progress). The two-digit counter counts and displays the period number up to 11.

The segment 'd' output for most significant digit (MSD) and segment 'c' output for least significant digit (LSD) from IC5 and IC6 are connected to the bases of transistors T1 and T2 respectively, via 2.2-kilo-ohm resistors R1 and R2. The collectors of the two transistors are connected together, working as a NOR gate. When 'd' and 'c' segment driving outputs from IC5 and IC6 respectively, go low simultaneously (just at the beginning of 12th period), the output (common collector voltage of transistors T1 and T2) goes high. This output is also connected to clock pin 3 of IC2 (IC 7474), which is a dual 'D' flip-flop.

Only one of the two flip-flops is used here in toggle mode by connecting its $\overline{Q}$ pin 6 to data (D) pin 2. The flip-flop toggles after every clock pulse. The 'Q' output of this flip-flop drives relay RL1 through transistor T3, and thus switches off the supply to parts II and III of the system, just at the beginning of 12th period (i.e. at the end of 11th period). Resumption of the supply may take place the next day after momentarily pressing switch S3. For power supply, a 12V car battery with charging facility is recommended.

An actual-size, single-sided PCB for the circuit (Fig. 2) is shown in Fig. 5 and the component layout for the PCB in Fig. 6.

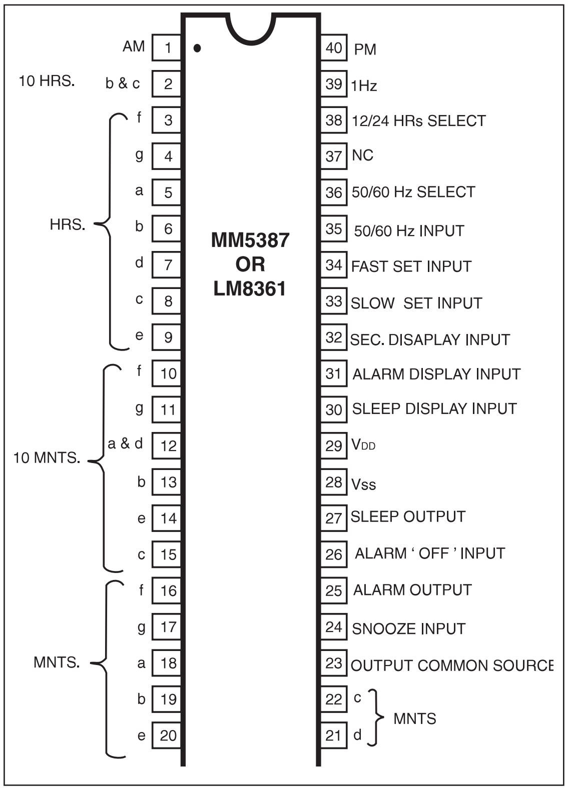

AM
1
10 HRS.
b & c
2
HRS.
f
3
g
4
a
5
b
6
d
7
c
8
e
9
10 MNTS.
f
10
g
11
a & d
12
b
13
e
14
c
15
MNTS.
f
16
g
17
a
18
b
19
e
20
MM5387 OR LM8361
40
PM
39
1Hz
38
12/24 HRs SELECT
37
NC
36
50/60 Hz SELECT
35
50/60 Hz INPUT
34
FAST SET INPUT
33
SLOW SET INPUT
32
SEC. DISAPLAY INPUT
31
ALARM DISPLAY INPUT
30
SLEEP DISPLAY INPUT
29
VDD
28
Vss
27
SLEEP OUTPUT
26
ALARM ' OFF ' INPUT
25
ALARM OUTPUT
24
SNOOZE INPUT
23
OUTPUT COMMON SOURCE
22
c
21
d
MNTS

Fig. 4: Pin configuration of IC MM5387/LM8361

Operation

After completing the circuit, test the circuit according to circuit description, as discussed above. For operation of the circuit, switch S3 is momentarily pressed for resumption of the supply to parts II and III of the circuit, as relay RL1 is energised. Period-displaying 7-segment displays DIS.5 and DIS.6 will display any random number, which is reset to 00 by momentary depression of switch S4.

Further, switch S5 (DPDT) is pressed and then released exactly at the time when the first period is to start. This resets IC7 through IC10. The output Q0 at pin 3 of IC10 will go high, to energise the relay and thus switch on the bell for a few seconds

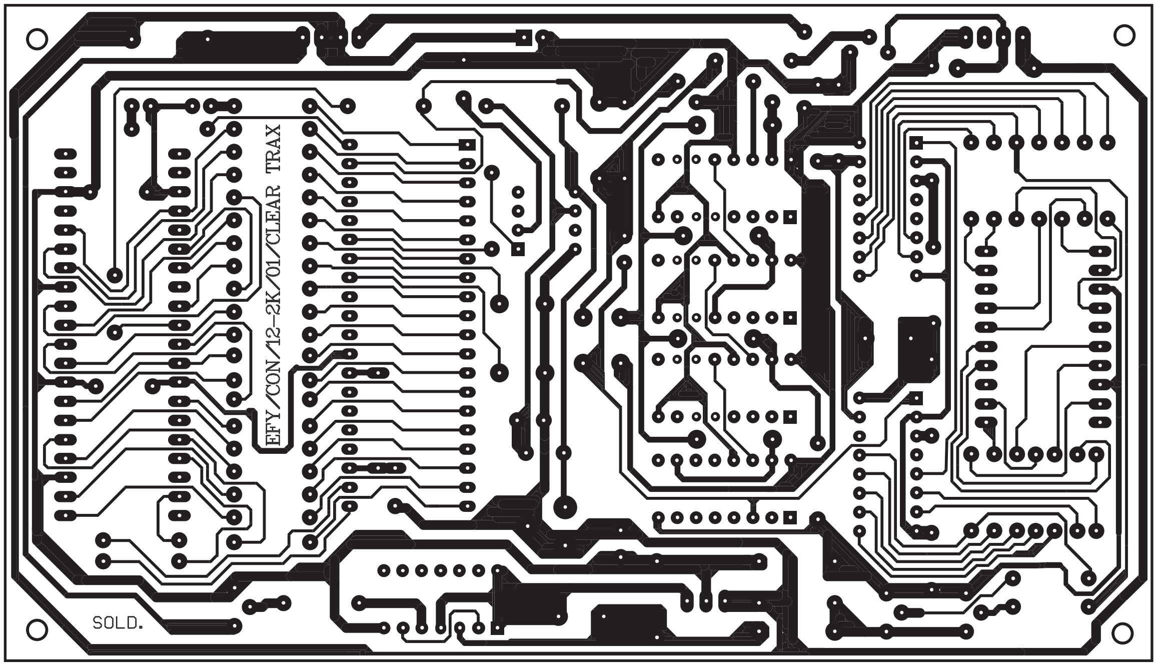

EFY/CON/12-2K/01/CLEAR TRAX
SOLD.

Fig. 5: PCB layout

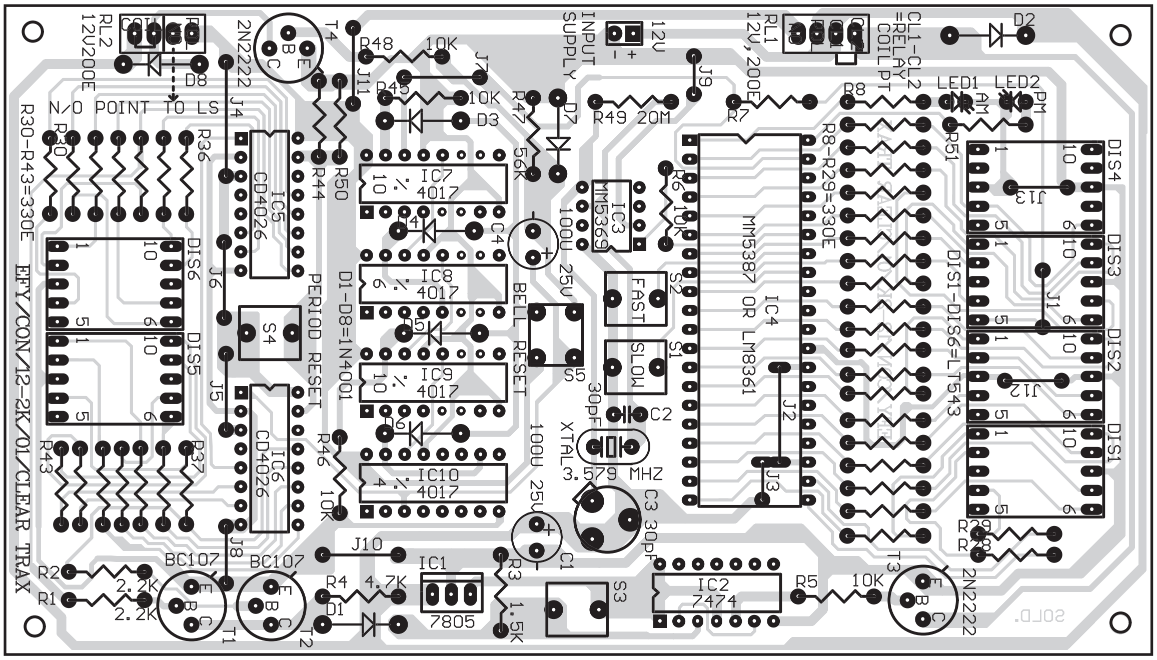

RL2 12V,200E
COIL
D8
N/O POINT TO LS
2N2222
T4
R48 10K
J11
J7
R45 10K
D3
R47 56K
D7
INPUT SUPPLY
12V
J9
R49 20M
RL1 12V, 200E
R7
CL1-CL2 =RELAY COIL PT
D2
LED1 AM
LED2 PM
R8
R51
R30-R43=330E
R30
R36
J4
IC5 CD4026
R44
R50
IC7 4017
IC3 MM5369
R6 10K
C4
100U 25V
MM5387 OR LM8361
IC4
R8-R29=330E
DIS4
J13
DIS6
D4
IC8 4017
J6
S4
PERIOD RESET
D1-D8=1N4001
BELL RESET
S2
FAST
DIS3
J1
D5
IC9 4017
S5
S1
SLOW
J2
DIS1-DIS6=LT543
DIS2
J12
DIS5
J5
R46 10K
D6
IC10 4017
30pF
C2
XTAL
3.579 MHZ
C3 30pF
J3
DIS1
R43
R37
IC6 CD4026
J8
100U 25V
C1
R29
R28
EFY/CON/12-2K/01/CLEAR TRAX
R2
2.2K
R1
2.2K
BC107
T1
BC107
T2
J10
R4 4.7K
D1
IC1
7805
R3 1.5K
S3
IC2 7474
R5 10K
T3
2N2222
SOLD.

Fig. 6: Component layout

and advance the period display from 00 to 01 (indicating that the first period has started).

Hereafter, the circuit works automatically, sounding the bell for a few seconds after every 40 minutes. In the evening, after the eleventh period is over and the institute is to be closed, the power supply to parts II and III of the circuit gets automatically switched off. Though the ringing of bell and display of periods discontinue, the digital clock continues to work as usual. Next morning, the above operation needs to be repeated.

This system was successfully demonstrated by the author in a science and technology exhibition where it was appreciated and liked by most of the visitors—especially those from the educational institutes.

SIMPLE TELEPHONE RECORDING/ANSWERING MACHINE

B.B. MANOHAR

This project is intended to provide you with a simple recording and answering machine, which in the absence of the subscriber/owner of the telephone instrument, responds to the incoming calls and also records them automatically.

Description

To understand the overall working of the system, refer to its block diagram shown in Fig. 1. The incoming telephone line pair is terminated into the ring detection unit comprising a monostable flip-flop followed by a ring counter to detect the incoming calls. After counting a predetermined number of rings, it triggers a timer (another monostable flip-flop) via an inverter. The output of the timer is used for energisation of a set of relays, which initiate the following actions:

1. Switch on AC power to the tape recorder.

2. Switch on DC voltage to the tape player.

3. Reset the ring counter in the ring detector section to make it ready for the next incoming call/ring. However, any fresh call/ring will be ignored as long as the timer output stays 'high'. The timer output also controls the 'on' time of the recorder and player. The 'on' time can be set as per length of the message to be recorded/played; say, two to three minutes.

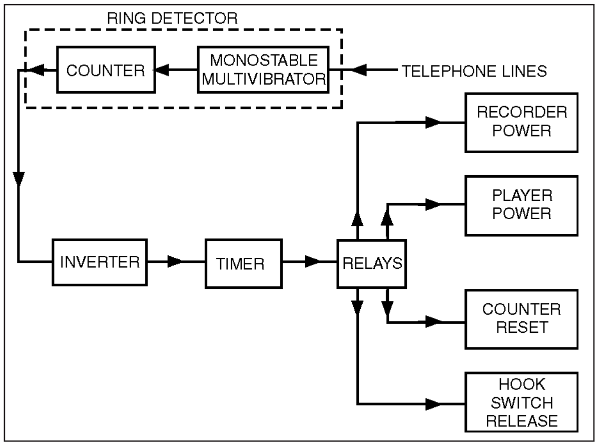

RING DETECTOR
COUNTER
MONOSTABLE MULTIVIBRATOR
TELEPHONE LINES
RECORDER POWER
PLAYER POWER
INVERTER
TIMER
RELAYS
COUNTER RESET
HOOK SWITCH RELEASE

Fig. 1: Block diagram of telephone recording/answering machine

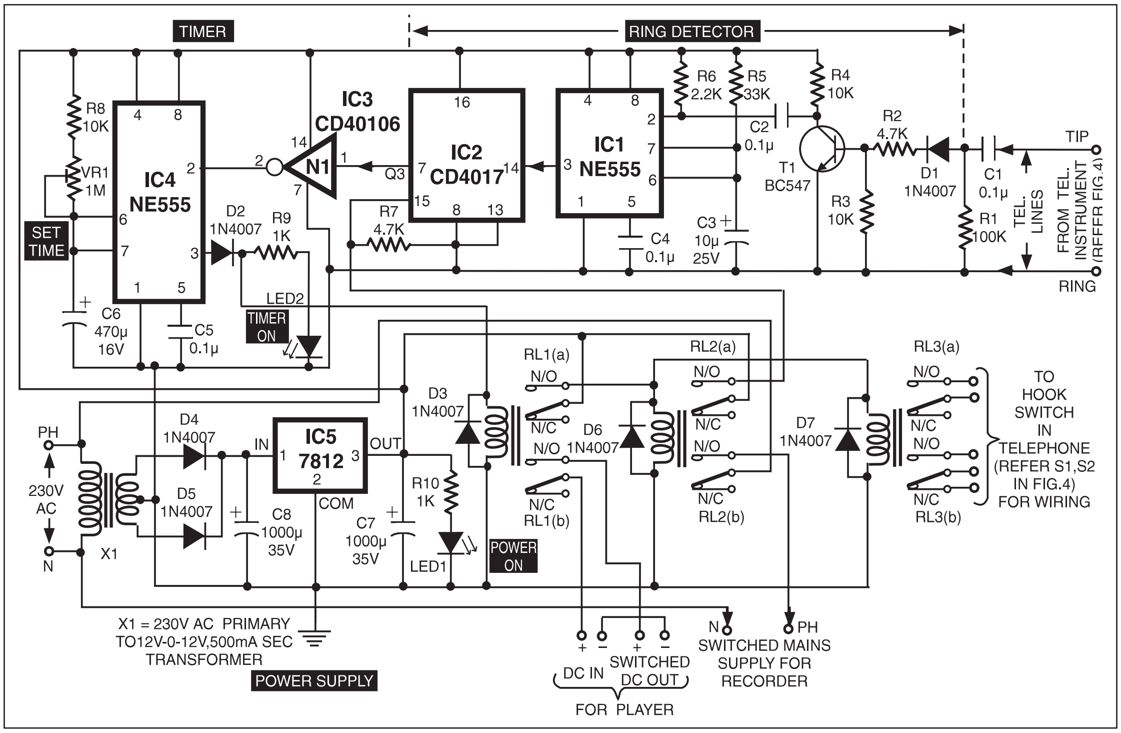

TIMER
RING DETECTOR
R8 10K
VR1 1M
SET TIME
C6 470µ 16V
C5 0.1µ
IC4 NE555
D2 1N4007
R9 1K
LED2
TIMER ON
IC3 CD40106
N1
IC2 CD4017
Q3
R7 4.7K
IC1 NE555
C4 0.1µ
R6 2.2K
R5 33K
R4 10K
C2 0.1µ
C3 10µ 25V
T1 BC547
R3 10K
R2 4.7K
D1 1N4007
C1 0.1µ
R1 100K
TIP
RING
TEL. LINES
FROM TEL. INSTRUMENT (REFER FIG.4)
PH
230V AC
N
X1
D4 1N4007
D5 1N4007
IN
IC5 7812
OUT
COM
C8 1000µ 35V
C7 1000µ 35V
D3 1N4007
R10 1K
LED1
POWER ON
RL1(a)
RL1(b)
N/O
N/C
D6 1N4007
RL2(a)
RL2(b)
D7 1N4007
RL3(a)
RL3(b)
TO HOOK SWITCH IN TELEPHONE (REFER S1,S2 IN FIG.4) FOR WIRING
X1 = 230V AC PRIMARY TO12V-0-12V,500mA SEC TRANSFORMER
POWER SUPPLY
DC IN
SWITCHED DC OUT
FOR PLAYER
SWITCHED MAINS SUPPLY FOR RECORDER

Fig. 2: Circuit diagram of telephone recording/answering machine

4. Simulate off-hook state of the telephone, which is initially in on-hook condition.

The schematic diagram incorporating the control circuitry,

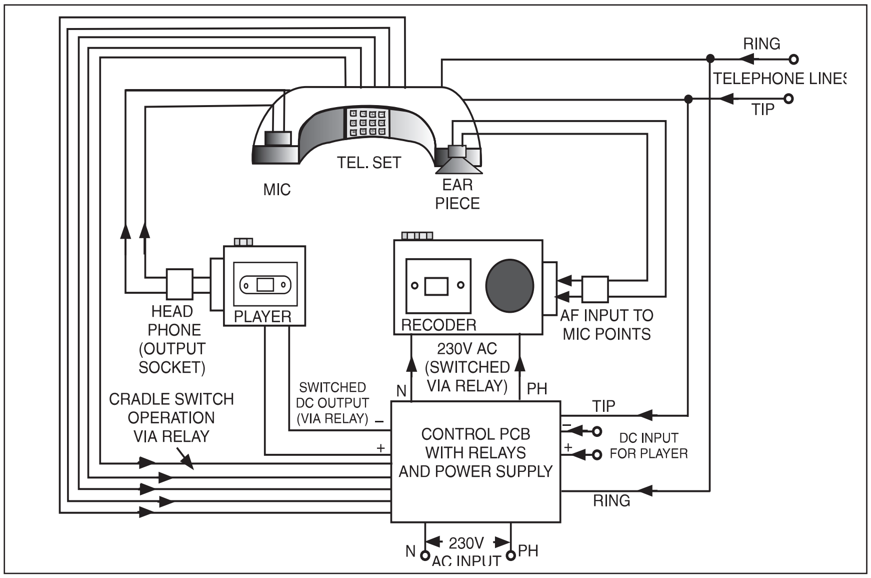

RING
TELEPHONE LINES
TIP
TEL. SET
MIC
EAR PIECE
HEAD PHONE (OUTPUT SOCKET)
PLAYER
RECODER
AF INPUT TO MIC POINTS
230V AC (SWITCHED VIA RELAY)
N
PH
SWITCHED DC OUTPUT (VIA RELAY)
CRADLE SWITCH OPERATION VIA RELAY
TIP
CONTROL PCB WITH RELAYS AND POWER SUPPLY
DC INPUT FOR PLAYER
RING
N
230V AC INPUT
PH

Fig. 3: Line diagram of telephone recording/answering machine showing interconnection amongst accessories used in the system

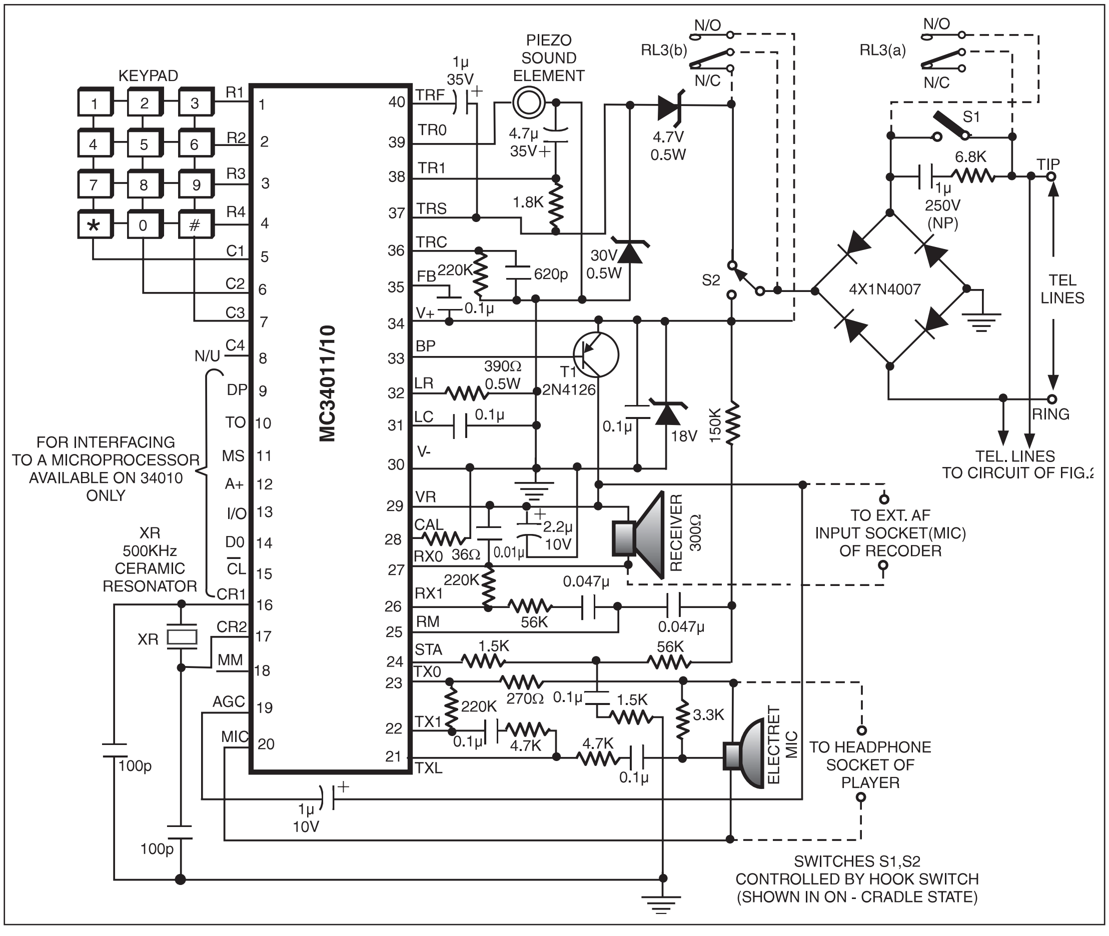

KEYPAD
1 2 3
4 5 6
7 8 9
* 0 #
R1 R2 R3 R4 C1 C2 C3 C4
N/U
DP TO MS A+ I/O D0 CL CR1 CR2 MM AGC MIC
FOR INTERFACING TO A MICROPROCESSOR AVAILABLE ON 34010 ONLY
XR 500KHz CERAMIC RESONATOR
XR
100p
100p
MC34011/10
TRF TR0 TR1 TRS TRC FB V+ BP LR LC V- VR CAL RX0 RX1 RM STA TX0 TX1 TXL
1µ 35V
PIEZO SOUND ELEMENT
4.7µ 35V
1.8K
220K
620p
0.1µ
390Ω 0.5W
0.1µ
T1 2N4126
4.7V 0.5W
30V 0.5W
0.1µ
18V
150K
2.2µ 10V
36Ω
0.01µ
220K
0.047µ
56K
0.047µ
RECEIVER 300Ω
1.5K
56K
270Ω
0.1µ
1.5K
220K
3.3K
0.1µ
4.7K
4.7K
0.1µ
ELECTRET MIC
1µ 10V
RL3(b)
N/O
N/C
RL3(a)
N/O
N/C
S1
6.8K
1µ 250V (NP)
TIP
S2
4X1N4007
TEL LINES
RING
TEL. LINES TO CIRCUIT OF FIG.2
TO EXT. AF INPUT SOCKET(MIC) OF RECODER
TO HEADPHONE SOCKET OF PLAYER
SWITCHES S1,S2 CONTROLLED BY HOOK SWITCH (SHOWN IN ON - CRADLE STATE)

Fig. 4: Telephone circuit diagram using single Motorola IC MC34010/MC34011

including power supply and relays, is shown in Fig. 2. The line diagram, including all accessories used in the system, is shown in Fig. 3.

Normally, the telephone lines (in on-hook position of the handset) carry 50V DC. However, during ringing, the lines carry 133Hz, 80V AC (modulated pulses), as shown in Fig 5.

Ring detection circuit comprises an input sensing section followed by monostable multivibrator and decade counter. In the input sensing section, capacitor C1 is used for DC blocking while 1N4007 diode D1 is used to rectify the AC ringing voltage. The potentiometer formed by resistors R2 and R3 (shunted by base-to-emitter resistance of transistor T1) acts as voltage/current limiting network for transistor T1. During the positive incursions of the ringing voltage at the base of transistor T1, it is driven into saturation. As a result, the collector of transistor T1 is pulled 'low'. This low-going pulse is coupled to trigger pin 2 of timer NE555 (IC1) configured as monostable (retriggerable). The output pulse width of IC1 is given by the relationship

Pulse width = 1.1 R4 x C3 ... seconds

where R4 is in ohms and C3 in Farads.

With the component values shown, the pulse width will be roughly 0.36 seconds. This will ensure that the mono pulse does not end during the pause period (0.2 sec.) between two successive rings, so that only one pulse is generated at the output of IC1 for each pair of ring signals separated by 0.2 seconds.

The output of IC1 is coupled to clock input pin 14 of the decade counter IC 4017 (IC2), which is used for counting the rings. From the decade counter one can select any output from Q0 through Q9. But in this project, we take the output from Q3, which goes high at the beginning of third ring (so you will hear only two rings properly).

The Q3 output at pin 7 of IC2 is inverted by N1 inverter gate of IC3 to trigger timer IC4 (configured as monostable), whose pulse width can be adjusted with the

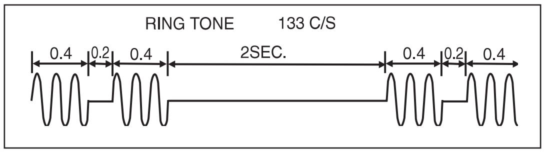


Fig. 5: Ringing tone timing waveform

help of preset VR1. The pulse width should be so adjusted that the tape player could replay the required message and the recorder could record the response from the far-end subscriber within the set pulse width period. As stated earlier, timer IC4, when triggered, initiates four different functions. These are accomplished via relays RL1 - RL3 as follows:

1. The output of timer IC4 energises relay RL1. On energisation, contacts RL1(a) of this relay extend +12V to the coils of RL2 and RL3, thereby energising both of them (RL2 and RL3). RL1(b) contacts of relay RL1 (on energisation) switch on the DC supply to the record player, whose play button is supposed to be already depressed. (Please note that DC power supply for the player is not catered to in the circuit. The supply voltage will depend on the 'make' of the player, and may vary from one player to the other. In many cases, battery supply (provided inside the player itself) could be routed via RL2(a) contacts.) Thus, it will start playing the prerecorded message, which would get coupled to the telephone lines, since the hook switch would also be in the released state, simultaneously via relay RL3 (energised) contacts, as described later.

2. RL2(a) contacts of relay RL2, on energisation, extend +12V to reset pin 15 of counter IC2. Thus the counter remains reset until IC4 timer's output goes low again. RL2(b) contacts of relay RL2, on energisation, switch on 230V AC supply to the tape recorder and thus

PARTS LIST (Fig. 2)

Semiconductors:	
IC1, IC4	- NE555 timer
IC2	- CD4017 decade counter
IC3	- CD40106 inverter
IC5	- 7812 regulator (+12V)
T1	- BC547 npn transistor
D1-D7	- 1N4007 rectifier diode
LED1, LED2	- Red LED
Resistors (all ¼-watt, ±5% carbon, unless stated otherwise):	
R1	- 100-kilo-ohm
R2, R7	- 4.7-kilo-ohm
R3, R4, R8	- 10-kilo-ohm
R5	- 33-kilo-ohm
R6	- 2.2-ohms
R9, R10	- 1-kilo-ohm
VR1	- 1-mega-ohm preset
Capacitors:	
C1, C2, C4, C5	- 0.1µF, 25V ceramic disk
C3	- 10µF, 25V electrolytic
C6	- 470µF, 16V electrolytic
C7, C8	- 1000µF, 35V electrolytic
Miscellaneous:	
X1	- 230V AC primary to 12V-0-12V, 500mA sec. transformer
RL1-RL3	- 12V, 150-ohm, 2C/o relay
	- Tape player with DC supply source
	- Tape recorder
	- Telephone instrument

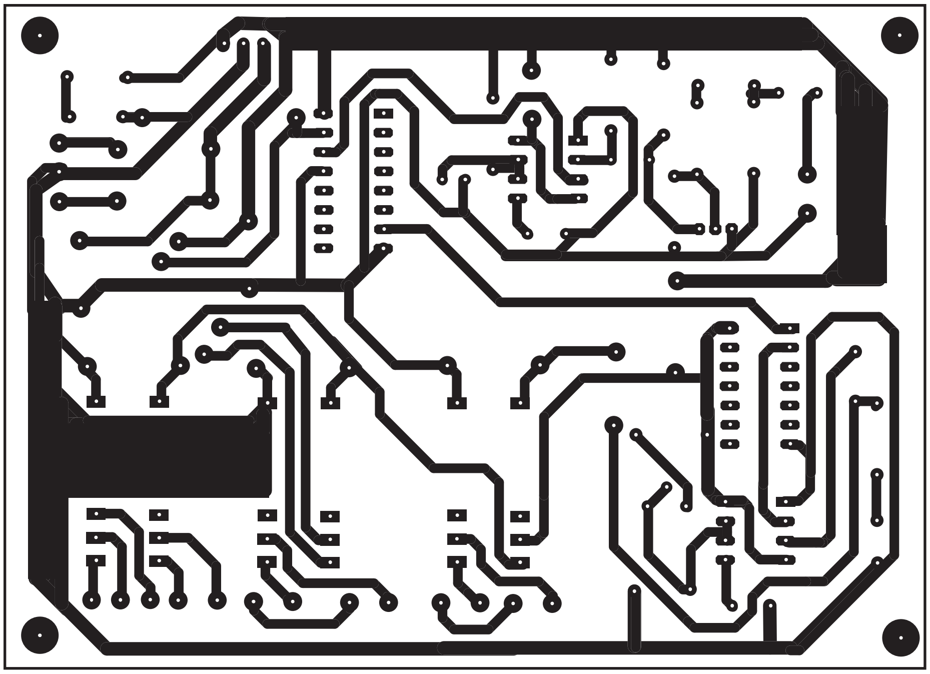


Fig. 6: Actual-size, single-sided PCB for the circuit in Fig. 2

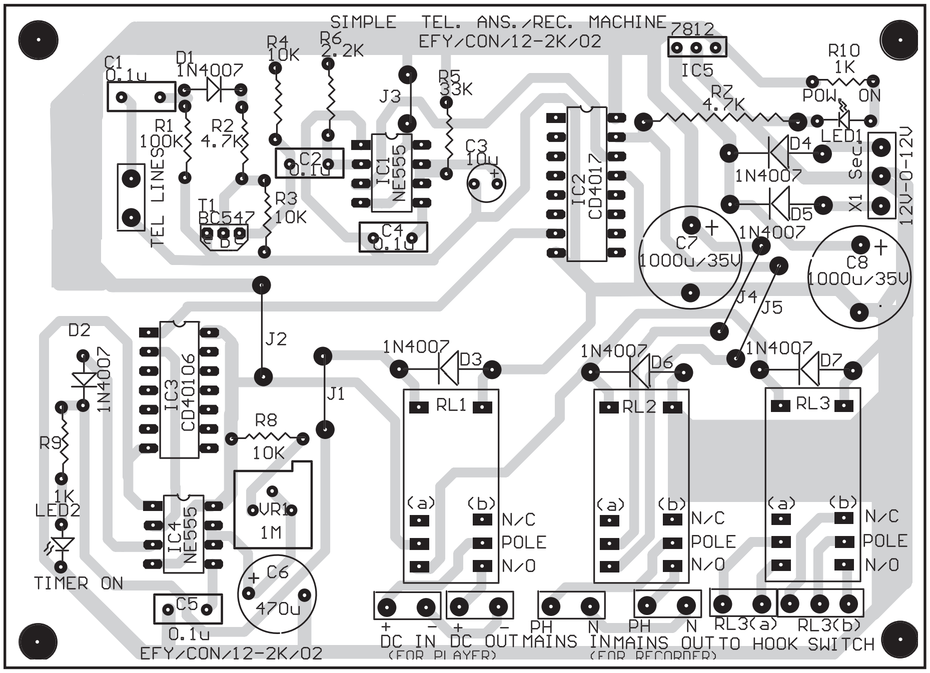

SIMPLE TEL. ANS./REC. MACHINE
EFY/CON/12-2K/02
7812
IC5
R10
1K
POW. ON
LED1
C1
0.1u
D1
1N4007
R4
10K
R6
2.2K
R5
33K
J3
R1
100K
R2
4.7K
C2
0.1u
IC1
NE555
C3
10u
IC2
CD4017
R7
4.7K
D4
1N4007
D5
1N4007
X1
Sec
12V-0-12V
TEL LINES
T1
BC547
E B C
R3
10K
C4
0.1u
C7
1000u/35V
C8
1000u/35V
J4
J5
D2
1N4007
IC3
CD40106
J2
J1
1N4007
D3
1N4007
D6
1N4007
D7
RL1
RL2
RL3
R8
10K
R9
1K
LED2
TIMER ON
IC4
NE555
VR1
1M
C6
470u
C5
0.1u
(a)
(b)
N/C
POLE
N/O
+ - DC IN
+ - DC OUT
(FOR PLAYER)
PH N MAINS IN
PH N MAINS OUT
(FOR RECORDER)
RL3(a) TO HOOK SWITCH RL3(b)
EFY/CON/12-2K/02

Fig. 7: Component layout for the PCB

it can record the message received in the earpiece of the telephone.

3. Relay RL3 performs the functions of cradle switch for the telephone in absence of the subscriber (or even during his presence, if he fails to lift his handset off the cradle during ringing). Its contacts RL3(a) and RL3(b) are wired in parallel with the hook switch, as shown in Fig. 4. (*This application circuit is based on Motorola single-chip telephone set IC MC34010 or MC34011. The latter chip does not provide microprocessor interface; otherwise both chips are identical*.)

Important points

Normally, the player and recorder buttons are always in the pressed or 'on' condition, so that these are automatically switched 'on' by timer IC4 via relays. If we use C90 cassette tapes for the incoming calls, and assuming that pulse width of timer IC4 is set for 3 minutes, we can record/answer 15 incoming calls, since we can use only one side of the tape in this set-up and hence we can play/record the messages for 45 minutes only. However, one may use each 3-minute duration for message answering (playing) for a minute, with the remaining two minutes reserved for recording other-end subscriber's message (i.e. the tape in the player will run blank for these two minutes). During these two minutes, if other-end subscriber is relaying any message, then the same will be recorded automatically in the tape recorder that is already 'on'.

Whenever the subscriber (owner) intends going out of station, he will have to rewind the player and press the play button 'on'. Similarly, he has to rewind the recorder for recording the 15 incoming messages and also ensure that the recording button is in 'on' (pressed) condition. Both the recorder and the player will be automatically switched 'on' for the preset duration whenever three rings are received, as explained already.

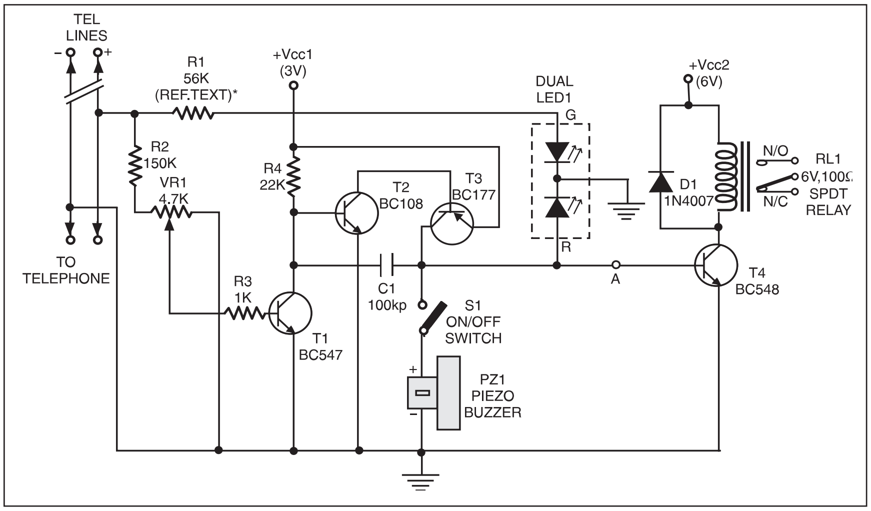
An actual-size PCB for the circuit in Fig. 2 is shown in Fig. 6 and its component layout is shown in Fig. 7.

□

SECTION B:
CIRCUIT IDEAS

MULTIPURPOSE CIRCUIT FOR TELEPHONES

RANJITH G. PODUVAL



This add-on device for telephones can be connected in parallel to the telephone instrument. The circuit provides audio-visual indication of on-hook, off-hook, and ringing modes. It can also be used to connect the telephone to a CID (caller identification device) through a relay and also to indicate tapping or misuse of telephone lines by sounding a buzzer.

In on-hook mode, 48V DC supply is maintained across the telephone lines. In this case, the bi-colour LED glows in green, indicating the idle state of the telephone. The value of resistor R1 can be changed somewhat to adjust the LED glow, without loading the telephone lines (by trial and error).

In on-hook mode of the hand-set, potentiometer VR1 is so adjusted that base of T1 (BC547) is forward biased, which, in turn, cuts off transistor T2 (BC108). While adjusting potmeter VR1, ensure that the LED keeps glowing only in green and not in red.

When the hand-set is lifted, the line voltage drops to around 12V DC. When this happens, the voltage across transistor T1's base-emitter junction falls below its conduction level to cut it off. As a result transistor pair T2-T3 starts oscillating and the piezo-buzzer starts beeping (with switch S1 in on position). At the same time, the bi-colour LED glows in red.

In ringing mode, the bi-colour LED flashes in green in synchronisation with the telephone ring.

A CID can be connected using a relay. The relay driver transistor can be connected via point a as shown in the circuit. To use the circuit for warning against misuse, switch S1 can be left in on position to activate the piezo-buzzer when anyone tries to tap the telephone line. (When the telephone line is tapped, it's like the off-hook mode of the telephone hand-set.)

Two 1.5V pencil cells can provide Vcc1 power supply, while a separate power supply for Vcc2 is recommended to avoid draining the battery. However, a single 6-volt supply source can be used in conjunction with a 3.3V zener diode to cater to both Vcc2 and Vcc1 supplies.

Reader queries:

In this multipurpose circuit for telephones, following feature should be added to increase its use.

When someone makes a call from one's line, or during a burglary, he usually cuts down both the telephone lines. Under this condition, the audiovisual alarm should sound.

Shailendra Singh
Kolkata

The author, Ranjith G. Poduval replies:

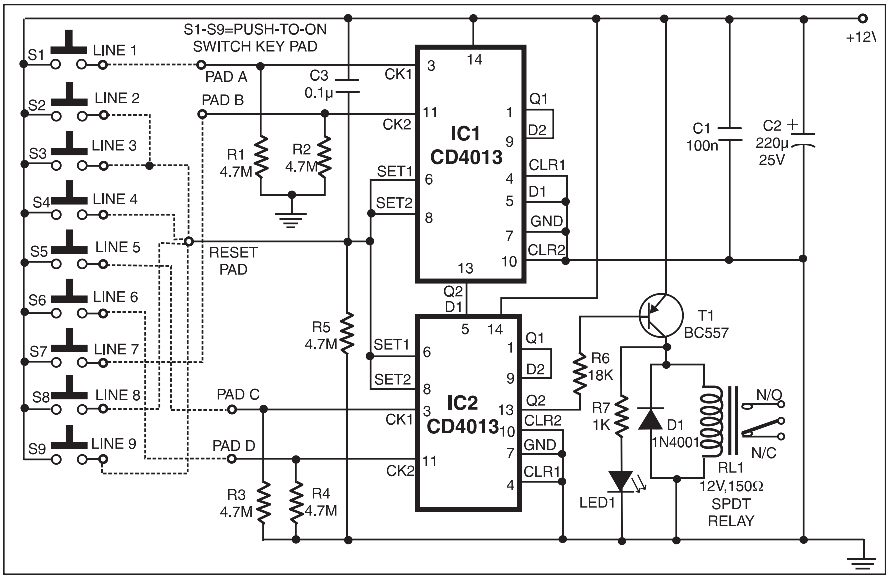
As mentioned in the text, transistor T1 is cut-off at 12V DC or less across the lines. For any voltage below that, same condition holds true and hence the circuit will continue to give an audiovisual indication in case one/both lines are cut.

SIMPLE CODE LOCK

YASH D. DOSHI

The circuit described here is of an electronic combination lock for daily use. It responds only to the right sequence of four digits that are keyed in remotely. If a wrong key is touched, it resets the lock. The lock code can be set by connecting the line wires to the pads A, B, C, and D in the figure. For example, if the code is 1756, connect line 1 to A, line 7 to B, line 5 to C, line 6 to D and rest of the lines—2, 3, 4, 8, and 9—to the reset pad as shown by dotted lines in the figure.

The circuit is built around two CD4013 dual-D flip-flop ICs. The clock pins of the four flip-flops are connected to A, B, C, and D pads. The correct code sequence for energisation of relay RL1 is realised by clocking points A, B, C, and D in that order. The five remaining switches are connected to reset pad which resets all the flip-flops. Touching the key pad switch A/B/C/D briefly pulls the clock input pin high and the state of flip-flop is altered. The Q output pin of each flip-flop is wired to D input pin of the next flip-flop while D pin of the first flip-flop is grounded. Thus, if correct clocking sequence is followed then low level appears at Q2 output of IC2 which energises the relay through relay driver transistor T1. The reset keys are wired to set pins 6 and 8 of each IC. (Power-on-reset capacitor C1 has been added at EFY during testing as the state of Q output is indeterminate during switching on operation.)


S1-S9=PUSH-TO-ON
SWITCH KEY PAD
S1 LINE 1
S2 LINE 2
S3 LINE 3
S4 LINE 4
S5 LINE 5
S6 LINE 6
S7 LINE 7
S8 LINE 8
S9 LINE 9
PAD A
PAD B
PAD C
PAD D
RESET PAD
C3 0.1µ
R1 4.7M
R2 4.7M
R3 4.7M
R4 4.7M
R5 4.7M
R6 18K
R7 1K
IC1 CD4013
IC2 CD4013
CK1
CK2
SET1
SET2
Q1
D2
CLR1
D1
GND
CLR2
Q2
C1 100n
C2 220µ 25V
+12V
T1 BC557
D1 1N4001
LED1
RL1 12V,150Ω SPDT RELAY
N/O
N/C

This circuit can be usefully employed in cars so that the car can start only when the correct code sequence is keyed in via the key pad. The circuit can also be used in various other applications.

AUTOMATIC BATHROOM LIGHT

JAYAN A.R.

This circuit is used to automate the working of a bathroom light. It is designed for a bathroom fitted with an automatic door-closer, where the manual verification of light status is difficult. The circuit also indicates whether the bathroom is occupied or not. The circuit uses only two ICs and can be operated from a 5V supply. As it does not use any mechanical contacts it gives a reliable performance.

One infrared LED (D1) and one infrared detector diode (D2) form the sensor part of the circuit. Both the infrared LED and the detector diode are fitted on the frame of the door with a small separation between them as shown in Fig. 1. The radiation from IR LED is blocked by a small opaque strip (fitted on the door) when the door is closed. Detector diode D2 has a resistance in the range of meg-ohms when it is not activated by IR rays. When the door is opened, the strip moves along with it. Radiation from the IR LED turns on the IR detector diode and the voltage across it drops to a low level.

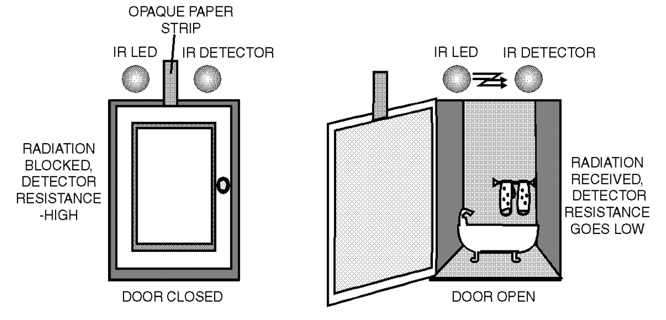
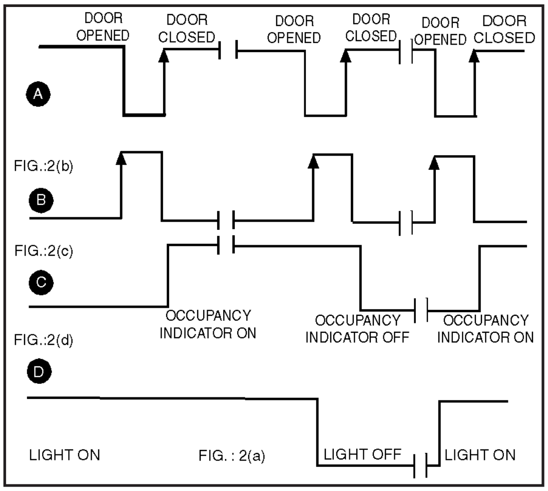
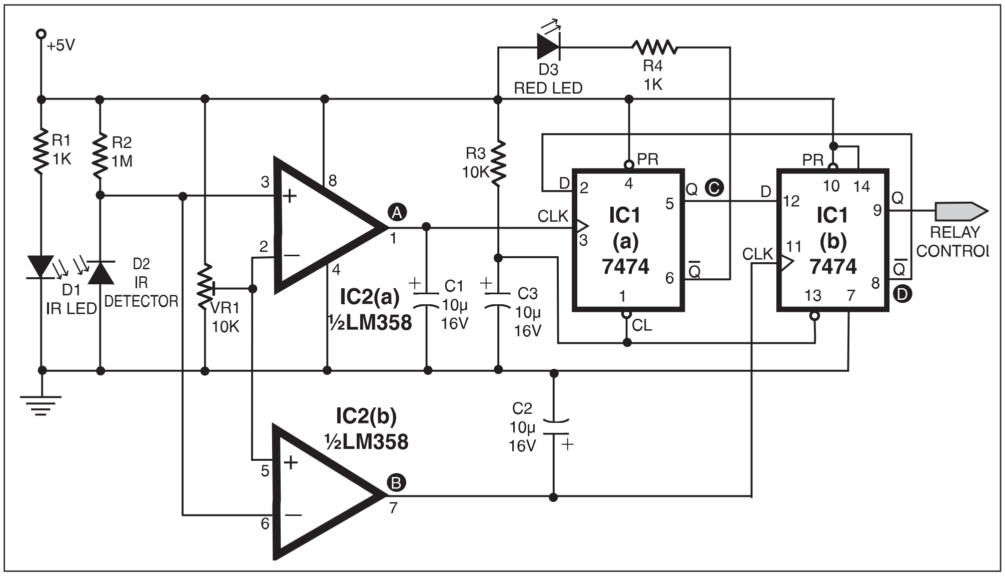

OPAQUE PAPER STRIP
IR LED
IR DETECTOR
RADIATION BLOCKED, DETECTOR RESISTANCE -HIGH
DOOR CLOSED
IR LED
IR DETECTOR
RADIATION RECEIVED, DETECTOR RESISTANCE GOES LOW
DOOR OPEN

Fig.1(b)


DOOR OPENED
DOOR CLOSED
DOOR OPENED
DOOR CLOSED
DOOR OPENED
DOOR CLOSED
A
FIG.:2(b)
B
FIG.:2(c)
C
OCCUPANCY INDICATOR ON
OCCUPANCY INDICATOR OFF
OCCUPANCY INDICATOR ON
FIG.:2(d)
D
LIGHT ON
FIG. : 2(a)
LIGHT OFF
LIGHT ON

Comparator LM358 IC2(a) compares the voltage across the photodetector against a reference potential set by preset VR1. The preset is so adjusted as to provide an optimum threshold voltage so that output of IC2(a) is high when the door is closed and low when the door is open. Capacitor C1 is connected at the output to filter out unwanted transitions in output voltage generated at the time of opening or closing of the door. Thus, at point a, a low-to-high going voltage transition is available for every closing of the door after opening it. (See waveform a in Fig. 2.)

The second comparator IC2(b) does the reverse of IC2(a), as the input terminals are reversed. At point B, a low level is available when the door is closed and it switches to a high level when the door is opened. (See waveform B in Fig. 2.) Thus, a low-to-high going voltage transition is available at point B for every opening of the door, from the closed position. Capacitor C2 is connected at the output to filter out unwanted transitions in the output voltage generated at the time of closing or opening of the door.



IC 7474, a rising-edge-sensitive dual-D flip-flop, is used in the circuit to memorise the occupancy status of the bath-room. IC1(a) memorises the state of the door and acts as an occupancy indicator while IC2(b) is used to control the relay to turn on and turn off the bathroom light. Q output pin 8 of IC1(b) is tied to D input pin 2 of IC1(a) whereas Q output pin 5 of IC1(a) is tied to D input pin 12 of IC1(b).

At the time of switching on power for the first time, the resistor-capacitor combination R3-C3 clears the two flip-flops. As a result Q outputs of both IC1(a) and IC1(b) are low, and the low level at the output of IC1(b) activates a relay to turn on the bathroom light. This operation is independent of the door status (open/closed). The occupancy indicator red LED (D3) is off at this point of time, indicating that the room is vacant.

When a person enters the bathroom, the door is opened and closed, which provides clock signals for IC1(b) (first) and IC1(a). The low level at point C (pin 5) is clocked in by IC1(b), at the time of opening the door, keeping the light status unchanged.

The high level point D (pin 8) is clocked in by IC1(a), turning on the occupancy indicator LED (D3) on at the time of closing of the door. (See waveform C in Fig. 2.)

When the person exits the bathroom, the door is opened again. The output of IC1(b) switches to high level, turning off the bathroom light. (See waveform D in Fig. 2.) The closing of the door by the door-closer produces a low-to-high transition at the clock input (pin 3) of IC1(a). This clocks in the low level at Q output of IC1(b) point D to Q output of IC1(a) point C, thereby turning off the occupancy indicator.

Reader queries:
The circuit will not work satisfactorily in daylight and in the presence of light from electric bulbs. Since the IR LED is connected to the power supply, it will emit unmodulated IR light only. The IR photodetector will sense both IR light and visible light, and if an intense beam of visible light falls on the photodetector, its reverse resistance will become very low.

Pradeep G., Alappuzha

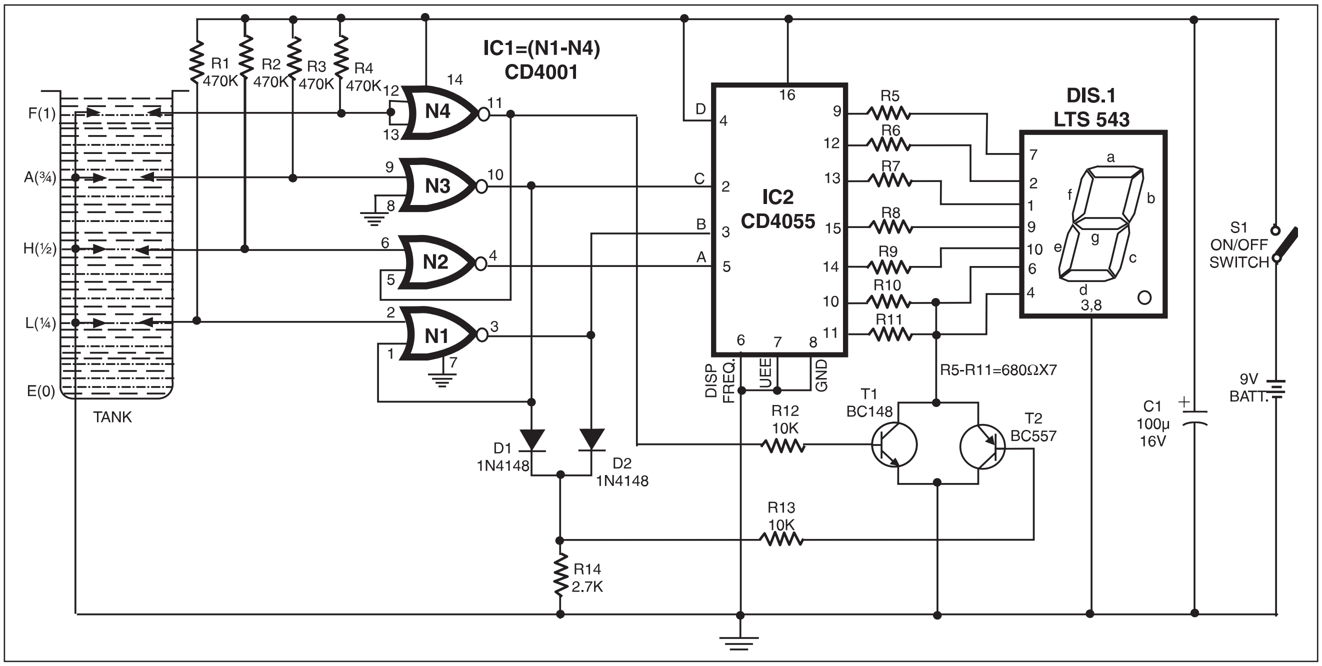
The author, Jayan A.R., replies:
The IR diode and detector should be fitted inside the bathroom. It is assumed that there is only one electric bulb (the one being controlled) inside the bathroom. If sunlight or any other light affects the functioning of the sensor, it is advisable to enclose the sensor and diode in an opaque box with a small opening for the opaque strip fitted on the door.

SMART FLUID LEVEL INDICATOR

THOMMACHAN THOMAS

Most of the fluid level indicator circuits use a bar graph or a seven-segment display to indicate the fluid level. Such a display using LEDs or digits may not make much sense to an ordinary person. The circuit presented here overcomes this flaw and displays the level using a seven-segment display—but with a difference. It shows each level in meaningful English letters. It displays the letter e for empty, L for low, H for half, A for above average, and F for full tank .

The circuit is built using CMOS ICs. CD4001 is a quad. nor gate and CD4055 is a BCD to seven-segment decoder and display driver IC. This decoder IC is capable of producing some English alphabets besides the usual digits 0 through 9. The BCD codes for various displays are given in Table I. The BCD


IC1=(N1-N4)
CD4001
R1
470K
R2
470K
R3
470K
R4
470K
N4
N3
N2
N1
F(1)
A(¾)
H(½)
L(¼)
E(0)
TANK
D1
1N4148
D2
1N4148
R14
2.7K
R13
10K
R12
10K
IC2
CD4055
D
C
B
A
DISP FREQ.
UEE
GND
R5
R6
R7
R8
R9
R10
R11
R5-R11=680ΩX7
DIS.1
LTS 543
T1
BC148
T2
BC557
C1
100µ
16V
9V
BATT.
S1
ON/OFF
SWITCH

codes are generated by nor gates because of their interconnections as the sensing probes get immersed in water. Their operation being self-explanatory is not included here.

Note that there is no display pattern like E or F available from the IC. Therefore to obtain the pattern for letters E and F, transistors T1 and T2 are used. These transistors blank out the unnecessary segments from the seven-segment display. It can be seen that letter E is generated by blanking 'B' and 'C' segments of the seven-segment display while it decodes digit 8. Letter F is obtained by blanking segment 'B' while it decodes letter P.

TABLE I

D	C	B	A	DISPLAY
L	L	L	L	0
L	L	L	H	1
—	—	—	—	2
—	—	—	—	3
—	—	—	—	4
—	—	—	—	5
—	—	—	—	6
—	—	—	—	7
H	L	L	L	8
H	L	L	H	9
H	L	H	L	L
H	L	H	H	H
H	H	L	L	P
H	H	L	H	A
H	H	H	L	—
H	H	H	H	BLANK

As CMOS ICs are used, the current consumption is extremely low. This makes it possible to power the circuit from a battery. The input sensing current through the fluid (with all the four probes immersed in water) is of the order of 70 µA, which results in low rate of probe deterioration due to oxidation as also low levels of electrolysis in the fluid.

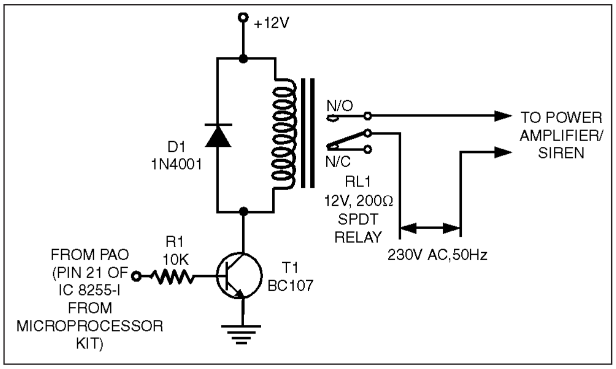
Note: This circuit should not be used with inflammable or highly reactive fluids.

AUTOMATIC SCHOOL BELL SYSTEM

DR D.K. KAUSHIK

This is an effective and useful project for educational institutions. In most schools and colleges, the peon rings the bell after every period (usually of a 40-minute duration). The peon has to depend on his wrist watch or clock, and sometimes he can forget to ring the bell in time. In the present system, the human error has been eliminated. Every morning, when the school starts, someone has to just switch on the system and it thereafter work automatically.

The automatic microprocessor controlled school bell system presented here has been tested by the author on a Vinytics' microprocessor-8085 kit (VMC-8506). The kit displays the period number on two most significant digits of address field and minutes of the period elapsed on the next two digits of the address field. The data field of the kit displays seconds continuously.


+12V
D1
1N4001
N/O
N/C
RL1
12V, 200Ω
SPDT
RELAY
TO POWER
AMPLIFIER/
SIREN
230V AC,50Hz
FROM PAO
(PIN 21 OF
IC 8255-I
FROM
MICROPROCESSOR
KIT)
R1
10K
T1
BC107

The idea used here is very simple. The programmable peripheral interfacing (PPI) Intel-8255-I chip present in the microprocessor kit has been used. It has three 8-bit wide input/output ports (port A, port B, and port C). Control word

80 (hex) is used to initialise all ports of 8255-I as output ports. Bit 0 of port A (PA0) is connected to the base of transistor BC107 through a 10-kilo-ohm resistor as shown in the figure. It is used to energise the relay when PA0 pin of 8255-I is high. A siren, hooter, or any bell sound system with an audio amplifier of proper wattage (along with 2 or 3 loudspeakers) may be installed in the school campus. The relay would get energised after every 40 minutes for a few seconds. The program (software) and data used for the purpose are given below in mnemonic and machine code forms. The program is self-explanatory.

The program and data have been entered at specific memory locations. However, the readers are at liberty to use any other memory area in their kits, depending on their convenience. Two monitor programs (stored in kit's ROM/EPROM) at locations 0347H (for clearing the display) and 05DOH (for displaying contents of memory locations 2050H through 2055 in the address and data fields respectively) have been used in the program. Please note that before calling the display routine, registers A and B are required to be initialised with either 00 or 01 to indicate to the monitor program as to where the contents of above-mentioned memory locations are to be displayed (e.g. address field or data field), and whether a dot is to be displayed at the end of address field or not. (Readers should refer to their kit's documentation before using the display routine.) In Vinytics' kit, if register a contents are 00, the address field is used for display, and if it is 01, the data field is used for display. Similarly, if register B contains 00 then no dot is displayed at the end of address field, else if B contents are 01, a dot is displayed.

When the program is executed on the microprocessor kit, a bell sound would be heard for a few seconds. The address and data fields would initially display :

01 00 00

01 indicates start of first period with 00 as elapsed minutes and 00 seconds in the data field. The data field (seconds) are continuously incremented.

BELL.BAS

Address	Op-code	Label	Mnemonic	Comments
20 FC	3E 80		MVI A, 80H	Initialise 8255-I as output port
20 FE	DE 03		OUT 03 H	
2100	31 FF 27		LXI SP, 27FFH	Initialise the stack pointer
2103	CD 47 03		CALL 0347H	Clears the display
2106	C3 69 21		JMP TT	Jump to ring the bell
2109	AF	AA	XRA A	Put A=0
210 A	47		MOV B, A	Put B=0
210 B	21 50 20		LXI H, 2050 H	Starting address of display
210 E	CD D0 05		CALL 05D0H	Call output routine to display period no. & minutes to address field
21 11	3E 01		MVI A, 01H	A=01
21 13	06 00		MVI B, 00H	B=00
21 15	21 54 20		LXI H, 2054H	Current sec.
21 18	CD D0 05		CALL 05D0H	Address of LSD of current sec.
21 1B	21 55 20		LXI H, 2055H	
21 1E	7E		MOV A, M	Move the LSD of current sec. to acc.
21 1F	C6 01		ADI 01 H	Add 01 to acc.
21 21	FE 0A		CPI 0AH	Compare LSD of sec. with 0AH (10 decimal)
21 23	CA 36 21		JZ RR	If LSD completes 09 jump to RR
21 26	77		MOV M, A	Move the acc. content to 20 55 H location
21 27	06 02	DD	MVI B, 02H	Delay
21 29	11 00 FA	YY	LXI D, FA00H	Sub-
21 2C	CD 00 25		CALL 2500H	Routine (Delay)
21 2F	05		DCR B	For
21 30	C2 29 21		JNZ YY	1 second
21 33	C3 09 21		JMP AA	After delay of 1 sec. Jump to AA for display the time
21 36	3E 00	RR	MVI A, 00H	A=0
21 38	77		MOV M, A	Store Acc. To memory location
21 39	2B		DCX H	Decrement HL pair content
21 3A	7E		MOV A, M	Move the MSD of sec to acc.
21 3B	C6 01		ADI 01H	Add 01 to Acc.
21 3D	FE 06		CPI 06H	Compare MSD of sec with 06H
21 3F	CA 46 21		JZ UU	If sec. complete 59 move to UU
21 42	77		MOV M, A	Store acc. content to memory location
21 43	C3 27 21		JMP DD	Jump for delay of 1 sec.
21 46	3E 00	UU	MVI A, 00	Put A=00 after completing 59 seconds
21 48	77		MOV M,A	
21 49	2B		DCX H	
21 4A	7E		MOV A,M	Move current LSD of minutes to acc.
21 4B	C6 01		ADI 01H	Add 01 to acc.
21 4D	FE 0A		CPI 0A	Compares acc. to 0A H
21 4F	CA 56 21		JZ VV	Jump to VV if LSD of minutes completes 09
21 52	77		MOV M,A	Move acc. to memory location
21 53	C3 27 21		JMP DD	Jump for delay of 1 sec.
21 56	3E 00	VV	MVI A,00H	
21 58	77		MOV M,A	
21 59	2B		DCX H	Decrement H-L pair content
21 5A	7E		MOV A,M	Move MSD of minutes to acc.
21 5B	C6 01		ADI 01H	Add 01 to acc.
21 5D	FE 04		CPI 04H	Compare acc. content with 04 H
21 5F	CA 66 21		JZ SS	If minutes 40 then jump to SS
21 62	77		MOV M,A	
21 63	C3 27 21		JMP DD	Jump for delay of 1 sec
21 66	3E 04	SS	MVI A, 04	Put A=4
21 68	77		MOV M, A	
21 69	AF	TT	XRA A	A=0
21 6A	47		MOV B,A	B=0
21 6B	21 50 20		LXI H, 2050H	
21 6E	CD D0 05		CALL 05D0H	Display the period no. and minutes in address field
21 71	3E 01		MVI A, 01H	A=1
21 73	06 00		MVI B, 00H	B=0
21 75	21 54 20		LXI H, 2054 H	
21 78	CD D0 05		CALL 05D0 H	Display the seconds in data field
21 7B	3E 01		MVI A, 01H	
21 7D	D3 00		OUT 00H	Exite the 8255:1 for engergising the relay (rings the bell)
21 7F	21 55 20		LXI H, 2055H	
21 82	3E 00		MVI A, 00H	Stores 00 to memory location
21 84	77		MOV M, A	2055 to
21 85	2B		DCX H	2052 H
21 86	77		MOVM, A	
21 87	2B		DCX H	
21 88	77		MOV M, A	
21 89	2B		DCX H	
21 8A	77		MOV M,A	
21 8B	2B		DCXH	
21 8C	7E		MOV A, M	Brings the LSD current period no. to acc
21 8D	C6 01		ADI 01	Add 1 to it compare with OA
21 8F	FE 0A		CPI 0A	
21 91	CA 98 21		JZ XX	If LSD of period no. complete 09 then jump to XX
21 94	77		MOVM, A	Else store it to memory location
21 95	C3 A0 21		JMP XY	Jump to XY
21 98	3E 00	XX	MVI A, 00H	A=0
21 9A	77		MOV M,A	Store it to main location
21 9B	2B		DCX H	
21 9C	7E		MOV A, M	Store MSD of period no. to acc
21 9D	C6 01		ADI 01H	Add 1 to it
21 9F	77	XXX	MOV M,A	Store it memory location
21 A0	06 02	XY	MVI B, 02	
21 A2	11 00 FA	XYZ	LXI D, FA 00H	Program 1 sec display
21 A5	CD 00 25		CALL 2500 H	
21 A8	05		DCR B	
21 A9	C2 A2 21		JNZ XYZ	
21 AC	AF		XRA	A=0
21 AD	47		MOV B,A	B=0
21 AE	21 50 20		LXI H, 2050H	
21 B1	CD D0 05		CALL 05D0H	
21 B4	3E 01		MVI A, 0IH	
21 B6	06 00		MVI B, 00H	Program to display
21 B8	21 54 20		LXI H, 2054 H	The period no.
21 BB	CD D0 05		CALL 05 D0 H	Minutes and second
21 BE	21 55 20		LXI H, 2055H	
21 C1	7E		MOV A, M	LSD of stored current second to acc
21 C2	C6 01		ADI 01H	Add 1 to it
21 C4	FE 06		CPI 06H	Compare with 06
21 C6	C2 9F 21		JNZ XXX	If not 06 jump to XXX
21 C9	3E 00		MVIA, 00H	A=0
21 CB	D3 00		OUT 00H	Output to 8255 to de-energise the relay
21 CD	C3 09 21		JMP AA	Repeat for next period
DELAY SUBROUTINE				
25 00	1B	NEXT	DCX D	
25 01	7A		MOV A, D	
25 02	B3		ORA E	
25 03	C2 00 25		JNZ NEXT	
25 06	C9		RET	
DATA				
20 50	00			MSD of period no.
20 51	00			LSD of period no.
20 52	00			MSD of minutes
20 53	00			LSD of minutes
20 54	00			MSD of seconds
20 55	00			LSD of seconds

DESIGNING AN RF PROBE

N.S. HARISANKAR, VU3NSH

Radio frequency probe is used to directly measure the level of RF RMS voltage present across two points. It is one of the most useful test instruments for home brewers as well as for communication equipment service/design labs.

RF voltage level being measured provides useful information only when the probe has been designed for use with a specific multimeter. The design of RF probe is a function of the meter we intend to use it with. If a meter with a different input resistance is used with the probe, the reading will be incorrect. The value of R_X (refer figure) is so chosen that when this resistor is connected in parallel with input resistance of the multimeter, the peak value is about 1.414 times the RMS voltage. Resistor R_X has to drop this excess voltage so that meter indication is accurate. If we know the input resistance of the meter, we can calculate the value of R_X with the help of the following relationship:

1.414 X meter DC input resistance=R_Y

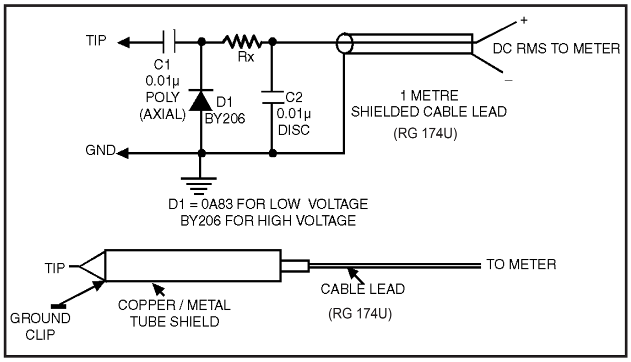
Then $R_X = R_Y$ – meter DC input resistance

For example, if meter input resistance is 20 meg-ohm, R_Y = 28.28 meg-ohm and R_X = 8.28 meg-ohm.

We can convert the RF voltage level (E) so measured across a given load resistance (R) to RF watts (W) using the following relationship:

$$\text{Power P} = \frac{E^2}{R} \text{ watts (W)}$$

For example, if RF probe voltage reading across a load resistance of 50 ohm is found to be, say, 15.85 volts, the power in the load = 15.85 x 15.85 / 50 = 5W approx. In other words, for 5-watt power in a 50-ohm load, the voltage across the load is 15.85 volts.



The rectified DC voltage at the cathode of diode D1 is at about the peak level of the RF voltage at the tip of the probe.

Use shielded cable in between the probe output and meter. It will act as feed-through capacitance and thus avoid RF interference. The maximum RF input voltage level depends on the peak inverse voltage (PIV) of diode D1. The shielded lead length is too large to give accurate results at UHF. Please refer Tables I and II for ready conversion of RF voltage level (RMS) to equivalent power across a 50-ohm load and deduction of R_X value for a given meter's DC input resistance, respectively.

One can also use OA90, 1N34 or OA79 for diode D1 for low-level RF input.

TABLE I

Voltage to Watts Conversion
for 50 ohms Termination

RMS (V)	RF Power (W)
2.24	0.1
3.88	0.3
5.0	0.5
7.08	1
12.25	3
15.90	5
20.0	8
22.4	10
38.75	25
41.85	35
50.0	50

Table II

Meter DC Impedence	Rx
20 Meg-ohm	8.25 Meg-ohm
10 Meg-ohm	4.14 Meg-ohm
1 Meg-ohm	41.4 kilo-ohm
20 kilo-ohm	8.28 kilo-ohm

BASS AND TREBLE FOR STEREO SYSTEM

VIVEK SHUKLA

Modern audio frequency amplifiers provide flat frequency response over the whole audio range from 16 Hz to 20 kHz. To get faithful reproduction of sound we need depth of sound, which is provided by bass (low notes). Hence low-frequency notes should be amplified more than the high-frequency notes (treble). To cater to the individual taste, and also to offset the effect of noise present with the signal, provision of bass and treble controls is made. The combined control is referred to as tone control.

The circuit for bass and treble control shown in the figure is quite simple and cost-effective. This circuit is designed to be adopted for any stereo system. Here, the power supply is 12-volt DC, which may be tapped from the power supply of stereo system itself. For the sake of clarity, the figure here shows only one channel (the circuit for the other channel being identical). The input for the circuit is taken from the output of preamplifier stage for the left as well as right channel of the stereo system

Potentiometer VR1 (10-kilo-ohm) in series with capacitor C4 forms the treble control. When the slider of potentiometer VR1 is at the lower end, minimum treble signal develops across the load. The lowest point is referred to as treble cut. As the slider is moved upward, more and more treble signal is picked up. The highest point is referred to as treble boost.

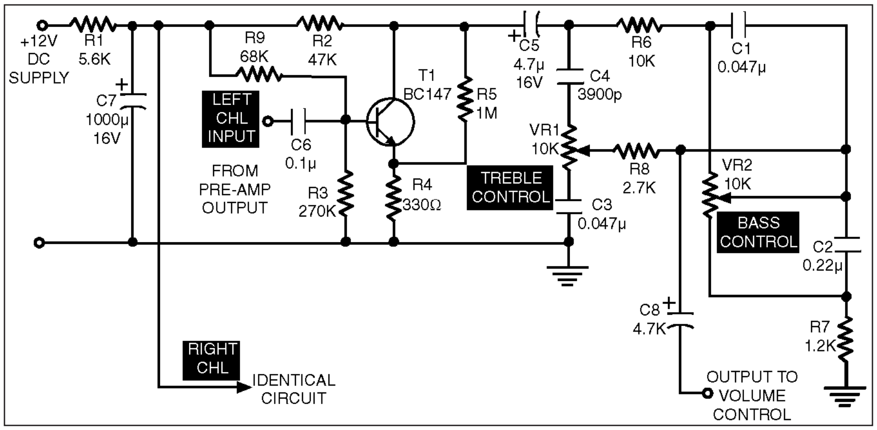
Bass would be cut if capacitive reactance in series with the signal increases. Thus, when the slider of potentiometer VR2 is at the upper end, capacitor C1 is shorted and the signal goes directly to the next stage, bypassing capacitor C1. Hence, bass has nil attenuation, and it is called bass boost. When the slider is at the lowest end, capacitor C1 is effectively in parallel with potentiometer VR2. In this position, bass will have maximum attenuation, producing bass cut.

Bass boost and bass cut are effective by ±15 dB at 16 Hz, compared to the output at 1 kHz. Treble boost and treble cut are also effective by the same amount at 20 kHz, compared to the value at 10 kHz.

After assembling the circuit, we may check the performance of the bass and treble sections as follows:

1. Set the slider of the potentiometers at their mid-positions.
2. Turn-on the stereo system.
3. Set the volume control of stereo system at mid-level.
4. Set the slider at the position of optimum sound effect.

This circuit can be easily assembled using a general-purpose PCB.


+12V
DC
SUPPLY
R1
5.6K
C7
1000µ
16V
R9
68K
R2
47K
LEFT
CHL
INPUT
C6
0.1µ
FROM
PRE-AMP
OUTPUT
R3
270K
T1
BC147
R4
330Ω
R5
1M
C5
4.7µ
16V
TREBLE
CONTROL
C4
3900p
VR1
10K
C3
0.047µ
R6
10K
R8
2.7K
C1
0.047µ
VR2
10K
BASS
CONTROL
C2
0.22µ
C8
4.7K
R7
1.2K
RIGHT
CHL
IDENTICAL
CIRCUIT
OUTPUT TO
VOLUME
CONTROL

PROTECTION FOR YOUR ELECTRICAL APPLIANCES

MALAY BANERJEE

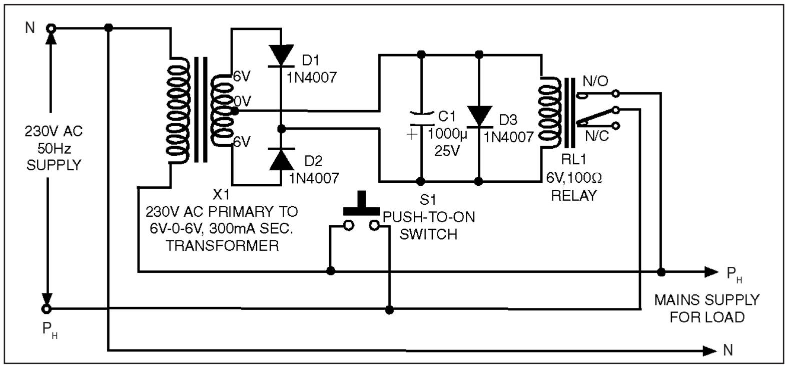
Here is a very low-cost circuit to save your electrically operated appliances, such as TV, tape recorder, refrigerator, and other instruments during sudden tripping and resumption of mains supply. Appliances like refrigerators and air-conditioners are more prone to damage due to such conditions.

The simple circuit given here switches off the mains supply to the load as soon as the power trips. The supply can be resumed only by manual intervention. Thus, the supply may be switched on only after it has stabilised.

The circuit comprises a step-down transformer followed by a full-wave rectifier and smoothing capacitor C1 which acts as a supply source for relay RL1. Initially, when the circuit is switched on, the power supply path to the step-down transformer X1 as well as the load is incomplete, as the relay is in de-energised state. To energise the relay, press switch S1 for a short duration. This completes the path for the supply to transformer X1 as also the load via closed contacts of switch S1. Meanwhile, the supply to relay becomes available and it gets energised to provide a parallel path for the supply to the transformer as well as the load.

If there is any interruption in the power supply, the supply to the transformer is not available and the relay de-energises. Thus, once the supply is interrupted even for a brief period, the relay is de-energised and you have to press switch S1 momentarily (when the supply resumes) to make it available to the load.

Very-short-duration (say, 1 to 5 milliseconds) interruptions or fluctuations will not affect the circuit because of presence of large-value capacitor which has to discharge via the relay coil. Thus the circuit provides suitable safety against erratic power supply conditions.


N
230V AC
50Hz
SUPPLY
P$_H$
6V
0V
6V
D1
1N4007
D2
1N4007
X1
230V AC PRIMARY TO
6V-0-6V, 300mA SEC.
TRANSFORMER
C1
1000µ
25V
D3
1N4007
N/O
N/C
RL1
6V,100Ω
RELAY
S1
PUSH-TO-ON
SWITCH
P$_H$
MAINS SUPPLY
FOR LOAD
N

DIGITAL WATER LEVEL METER

K. UDHAYA KUMARAN, VU3GTH

This digital water level meter shows up to 65 discrete water levels in the overhead tank (OHT). It helps to know the quantity of water in the OHT quite precisely. The circuit is specially suited for use in apartments, hostels, hotels, etc, where many taps are connected to one OHT. In such cases, if someone forgets to close the tap, this circuit would alert the operator well in time.

Normally, for multi water level readings, one has to use complex circuitry employing multi-core wires from the OHT to the circuit as probes. This circuit does away with such complexity and uses just a 2-core cable to monitor various water levels. Fig. 2. shows various water levels and the corresponding readings on 7-sement displays as percentage of the full level (100%).

IC1 and IC2 shown in Fig. 1 are CD4033 (decade up counter cum 7-segment decoder) which form a two-digit frequency counter. The CK pin 1 and CE pin 2 of IC1 are used in such a way that the counter advances when pin 1 is held high and pin 2 undergoes a high-to-low transition.

For water level reading, this frequency counter needs two types of inputs. One of the these is a continuous 30Hz (approx.) clock, which is applied to pin 2 of IC1. The other is a timing pulse, which is applied to pin 1 of IC1. The timing pulse is a positive pulse of variable duration (0.5 second to 3 seconds, depending upon the water level in the tank) followed by 4-second low level.

Thus, during positive duration of timing pulse at pin 1 of IC1, the frequency counter is allowed to count the number of negative going pulses which are continuously available at its pin 2. At the same time the pnp transistor T1 remains cut-off due to the positive voltage at its base, and so the displays (DIS.1 and DIS.2) remain off. However, at the end of positive pulse at pin 1 of IC1 (and base of transistor T1), the frequency counter is latched. During the following 4-second low level period, transistor T1 conducts and displays DIS.1 and DIS.2 show the current count. At beginning of the next positive timing pulse the frequency counter resets (as the reset pin 15 of IC1 and IC2 receives a differentiated positive going pulse via capacitor C1) and starts counting afresh.

Thus, this digital water level meter shows water level reading for four-second duration and then goes off for a variable period of 0.5 second to 3 seconds. Thereafter the cycle repeats. This type of display technique is very useful, because if there is ripple in water, we shall otherwise observe rapid fluctuations in level readings, and shall not get a correct idea of the actual level.

Timer IC4 is used as a free-running astable multivibrator which generates continuous 30Hz clock pulses with 52 per cent duty cycle. The output of IC4 is available at its pin 3, which is connected to pin 2 of IC1.

The other timer, IC3, is used as timing pulse generator wherein we have independent control over high and low duration (duty cycle) of the timing pulses

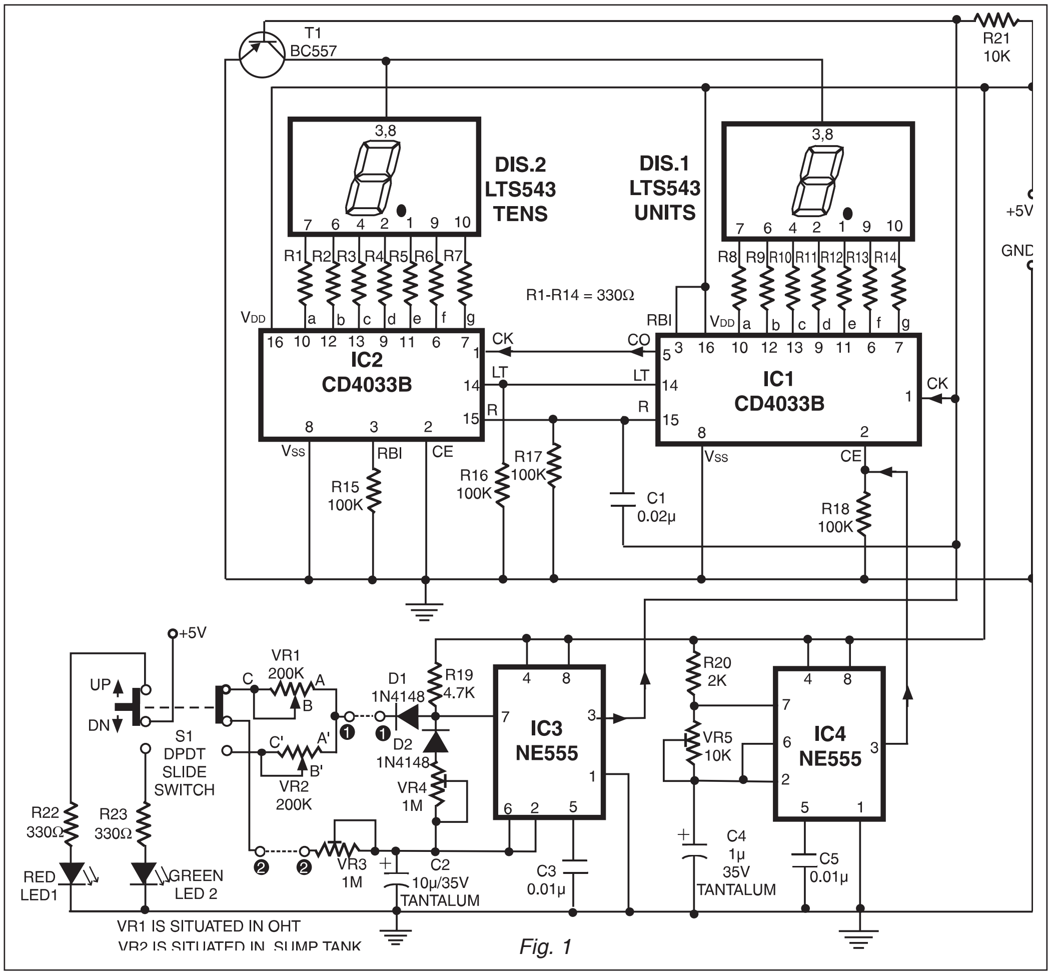

T1
BC557
R21
10K
DIS.2
LTS543
TENS
DIS.1
LTS543
UNITS
3,8
7 6 4 2 1 9 10
R1 R2 R3 R4 R5 R6 R7
R8 R9 R10 R11 R12 R13 R14
R1-R14 = 330Ω
+5V
GND
VDD
a b c d e f g
16 10 12 13 9 11 6 7
IC2
CD4033B
IC1
CD4033B
CK
CO
LT
R
RBI
CE
VSS
8 3 2
1 14 15 5 3
R15
100K
R16
100K
R17
100K
C1
0.02µ
R18
100K
+5V
UP
DN
S1
DPDT
SLIDE
SWITCH
VR1
200K
C A B
C' A' B'
VR2
200K
❶
❷
D1
1N4148
D2
1N4148
R19
4.7K
VR4
1M
VR3
1M
C2
10µ/35V
TANTALUM
IC3
NE555
4 8 7 3 6 2 5 1
C3
0.01µ
R20
2K
VR5
10K
C4
1µ
35V
TANTALUM
IC4
NE555
C5
0.01µ
R22
330Ω
R23
330Ω
RED
LED1
GREEN
LED 2
VR1 IS SITUATED IN OHT
VR2 IS SITUATED IN SUMP TANK

Fig. 1

available at its output pin 3. The different duration of high and low periods of the timing pulses are achieved because the charging and discharging paths for the timing capacitor C2 differ. The charging path of capacitor C2 consists of resistor R19, diode D1, and potmeters VR1 for OHT (or VR2 for sump tank, depending upon the position of slide switch S1) and VR3. However, the discharge path of capacitor C2 is via diode D2 and variable resistor VR4.

By adjusting preset VR4, the low-duration pulse period (4 seconds) can be set. The low-pulse duration should invariably be greater than 3 seconds.

Potmeter VR1 (or VR2), a linear wire-wound pot, is fitted in such a way in the overhead tank (or sump tank) that when water level is minimum, the value of VR1 = 2 kilo-ohm. When water level in the tank is maximum, the in-circuit value of potmeter VR1 increases to 340-kilo-ohm (approximately). This is achieved by one-third movement of pot shaft. The change in resistance of VR1 results in the change in charging period of capacitor C2. Thus, depending upon the level of water in the tank, the in-circuit value of VR1 (or VR2) resistance changes the charging time of capacitor C2 and so also the duration of positive pulse period of IC3 from 0.5 second to 3 seconds.

Adjustment of presets for achieving the desired accuracy of count can be accomplished, without using any frequency counter, by using the following procedure (which was adopted by the author during calibration of his prototype):

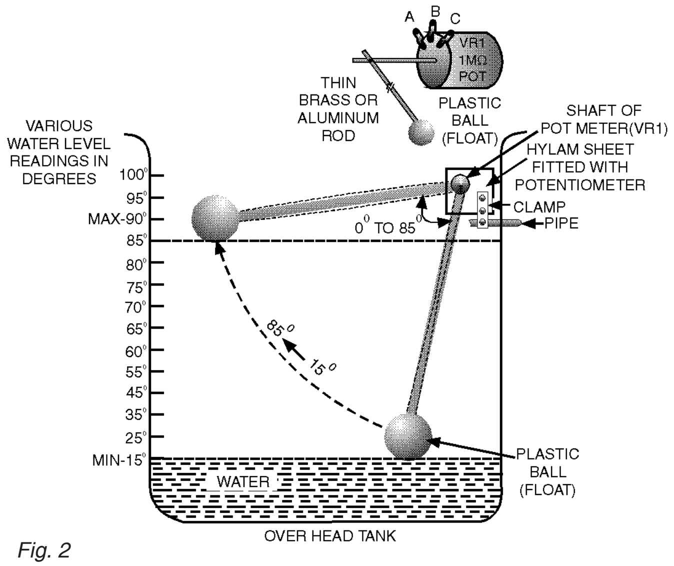


Fig. 2

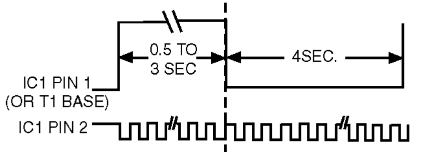


Fig. 3

1. First adjust the values: VR1 (or VR2) = 2 kilo-ohm, VR3 = 64 kilo-ohm, VR4 = 90 kilo-ohm, VR5 = 23.5 kilo-ohm.

2. Now switch on the circuit. The 7-segment DIS.1 and DIS.2 blink. If necessary, adjust VR3 such that the display goes 'on' for 4-second period.

3. If display readout is 15, increase value of pot VR1 from 2-kilo-ohm to 340-kilo-ohm. Now, the display should show 90. If there is a difference in the displayed count, slightly adjust presets VR5 and VR3 in such a way that when VR1 is 2-kilo-ohm the display readout is 15, and when VR1 is 340-kilo-ohm the display readout is 90.

4. If 15- to 90-count display is achieved with less than one-third movement of pot shaft, increase the value of VR5 slightly. If 15- to 90-count display is not achieved with one-third movement of pot shaft, decrease value of VR5.

If you need this digital water level meter to monitor the levels of water in the overhead as well as the sump tanks, it can be done by moving DPDT slide switch to down (dn) position. The indication of the position selected is provided by different colour LEDs (refer Figs 1 and 2) or by using a single bi-colour LED. To monitor water level in more than two tanks, one may use a similar arrangement in conjunction with a rotary switch.

For timing capacitors C2 and C4 use tantalum capacitors for better stability.

UNIVERSAL HIGH-RESISTANCE VOLTMETER

YOGESH KATARIA

The full-scale deflection of the universal high-input-resistance voltmeter circuit shown in the figure depends on the function switch position as follows:

(a) 5V DC on position 1

(b) 5V AC rms in position 2

(c) 5V peak AC in position 3

(d) 5V AC peak-to-peak in position 4

TABLE I

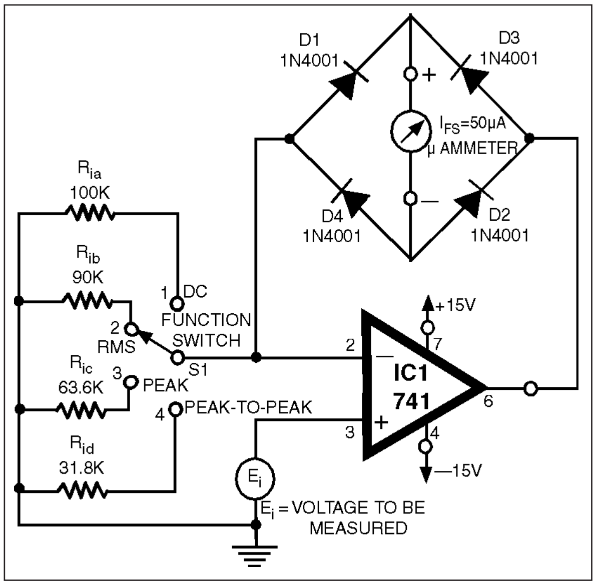
Position 1 of Function Switch

E_{dc} input	Meter Current
5.00V	44 µA
4.00V	34 µA
3.00V	24 µA
2.00V	14 µA
1.00V	4 µA

The circuit is basically a voltage-to-current converter. The design procedure is as follows:

Calculate R_I according to the application from one of the following equations:

(a) DC voltmeter: R_{IA} = full-scale E_{DC}/I_{FS}


D1
1N4001
D3
1N4001
+
I_{FS}=50µA
µ AMMETER
—
D4
1N4001
D2
1N4001
R_{ia}
100K
R_{ib}
90K
1 DC
2
RMS
FUNCTION
SWITCH
S1
R_{ic}
63.6K
3 PEAK
4 PEAK-TO-PEAK
R_{id}
31.8K
+15V
2
7
IC1
741
6
3
4
—15V
E_i
E_i = VOLTAGE TO BE
MEASURED

(b) RMS AC voltmeter (sine wave only): $R_{IB} = 0.9$ full-scale E_{RMS}/ I_{FS}

(c) Peak reading voltmeter (sine wave only): $R_{IC} = 0.636$ full-scale E_{PK}/I_{FS}

(d) Peak-to-peak AC voltmeter (sine wave only): $R_{ID} = 0.318$ full-scale $E_{PK\text{-}TO\text{-}PK} / I_{FS}$

The term I_{FS} in the above equations refers to meter's full-scale deflection current rating in amperes.

It must be noted that neither meter resistance nor diode voltage drops affects meter current.

Note: The results obtained during practical testing of the circuit in EFY lab are tabulated in Tables I through IV.

A high-input resistance op-amp, a bridge rectifier, a microammeter, and a few other discrete components are all that are required to realise this versatile circuit. This circuit can be used for measurement of DC, AC RMS, AC peak, or AC peak-to-peak voltage by simply changing the value of the resistor connected between the inverting input terminal of the op-amp and ground. The voltage to be measured is connected to non-inverting input of the op-amp.

TABLE II

Position 2 of Function Switch

E_{rms} input	Meter Current
5V	46 µA
4V	36 µA
3V	26 µA
2V	18 µA
1V	10 µA

TABLE III

Position 3 of Function Switch

E_{Pk} input	Meter Current
5V peak	46 µA
4V peak	36 µA
3V peak	26 µA
2V peak	16 µA
1V peak	6 µA

TABLE IV

Position 4 of Function Switch

$E_{Pk\text{-}To\text{-}Pk}$	Meter Current
5V peak to peak	46 µA
4V peak to peak	36 µA
3V peak to peak	26 µA
2V peak to peak	16 µA
1V peak to peak	7 µA

TRIAC/TRANSISTOR CHECKER

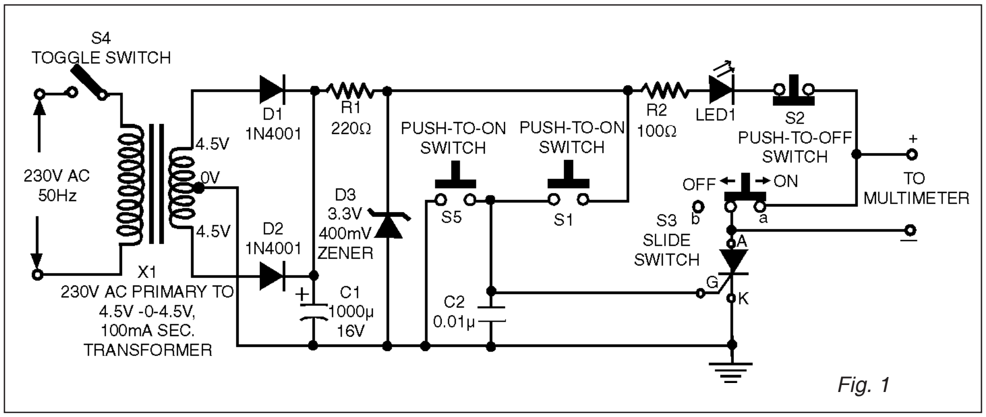
PRAVEEN SHANKER

Here is a circuit which can be used for testing of SCRs as well as triacs. The circuit could even be used for checking of pnp and npn transistors.

The circuit works on 3V DC, derived using a zener diode in conjunction with a step-down transformer and rectifier arrangement, as shown in the figure. Alternatively, one may power the circuit using two pencil cells.

For testing an SCR, insert it in the socket with terminals inserted in proper slots. Slide switch S3 to 'on' position (towards 'a') and press switch S1 momentarily. The LED1 would glow and keep glowing until switch S2 is pressed or mains supply to step-down transformer is interrupted for a short duration using switch S4. This would indicate that the SCR under test is serviceable.

With switch S3 in 'off' position (towards 'b'), you may connect a milliammeter or a multimeter to monitor the current flowing through the SCR. If the SCR is 'no good,' the LED1 would


S4
TOGGLE SWITCH
230V AC
50Hz
4.5V
0V
4.5V
X1
230V AC PRIMARY TO
4.5V -0-4.5V,
100mA SEC.
TRANSFORMER
D1
1N4001
D2
1N4001
R1
220Ω
D3
3.3V
400mV
ZENER
C1
1000µ
16V
PUSH-TO-ON
SWITCH
S5
PUSH-TO-ON
SWITCH
S1
C2
0.01µ
R2
100Ω
LED1
S2
PUSH-TO-OFF
SWITCH
OFF
ON
b
a
S3
SLIDE
SWITCH
A
G
K
+
TO
MULTIMETER
—
Fig. 1

never glow. If the SCR is faulty (leaky), the LED1 would glow by itself. In other words, if the LED1 glows only on pressing switch S1 momentarily and goes off on pressing switch S2, the SCR is good.

For testing a triac, initially connect its MT1 terminal to point A (positive), MT2 to point K (negative), and its gate to point G. Now, on pressing switch S1 momentarily, the LED1 would glow. On pressing switch S2 momentarily, the LED would go off. Next, on pressing switch S5, the LED will not glow.

Now reverse connections of MT1 and MT2, i.e. connect MT1 to the negative and MT2 to the positive side. For a good working triac, S2 would not initiate conduction in the triac and the LED1 would remain off. On the other hand, momentary depression of S5 would initiate conduction of the triac and LED1 would glow.

The indication of a leaky triac is similar to that of an SCR. If, during both the above-mentioned tests, the LED1 lights up, only then the triac is good.

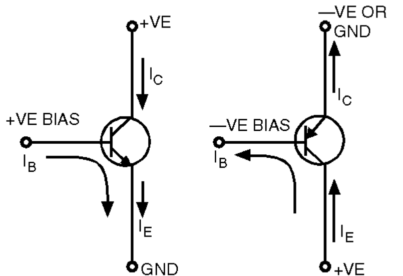


Fig. 2

Before connecting any SCR/triac in the circuit, please check its anode/MT1's connection with the case. (***Note:*** A triac is actually two SCRs connected back to back. The first accepts positive pulse for conduction while the second accepts negative pulse for conduction.)

You can also check transistors with this circuit by introducing a resistor (about 1 kilo-ohm) between the junction of switches S1 and S5 and point G. The collector of npn or emitter of pnp transistor is to be connected to positive (point A), while emitter of an npn and collector of a pnp transistor is to be connected to negative (point K). The base in both cases is to be connected to point G.

Fig. 2 indicates the conventional current direction and forward biasing condition for pnp and npn transistors. If the transistor under test is of npn type, on pressing S1, the LED1 glows, and on releasing or lifting the finger, it goes off, indicating that the transistor is good. For pnp transistor, the LED1 glows on pressing switch S5 and goes off when it is released. This indicates that the transistor under test is good. A leaky or short-circuited SCR or transistor would be indicated by a permanent glow of the LED1 by itself, i.e. without pressing switch S1 or S5.

A NOVEL METHOD OF FREQUENCY VARIATION USING 555

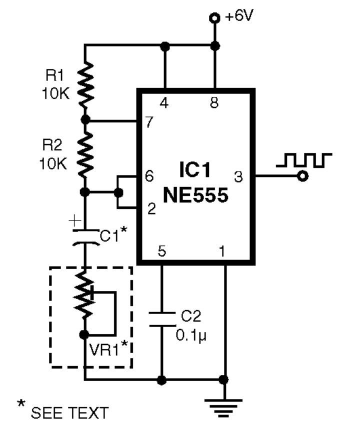
VYJESH M.V.

Electronics For You readers are very much familiar with the functioning of timer 555 in astable mode of operation. Traditionally, if at all there was a need to keep the duty factor constant and change the frequency continuously, the method was to use a variable capacitor, rated in picofarads. But in that case, changing the frequency in tens of hertz range would become tedious. On the other hand, sacrificing duty factor, change of frequency can be done by changing the values of R1 or R2.

TABLE I

VR1 (Ω)	Frequency (Hz) (C1=0.1µ)	Frequency (Hz) (C1=1µ)
10	453	46
33	455	46.5
68	459	47
100	462	48
220	467	50
500	478	52
1000	506	55
2000	585	63
3300	780	81
4700	1300	140
5600	2200	244
	Duty Cycle =66%	Duty Cycle =68%

Note: Using higher values of capacitors (e.g., 10µ) or higher values of resistors (e.g., 6.8k), the results were found to be erratic.



Both of the above-mentioned problems can be overcome simply by using a variable resistor, as shown in the circuit diagram. Surprisingly, increase of resistance results in increase of frequency, instead of decrease. When the value of variable resistor is zero, frequency is given by formula:

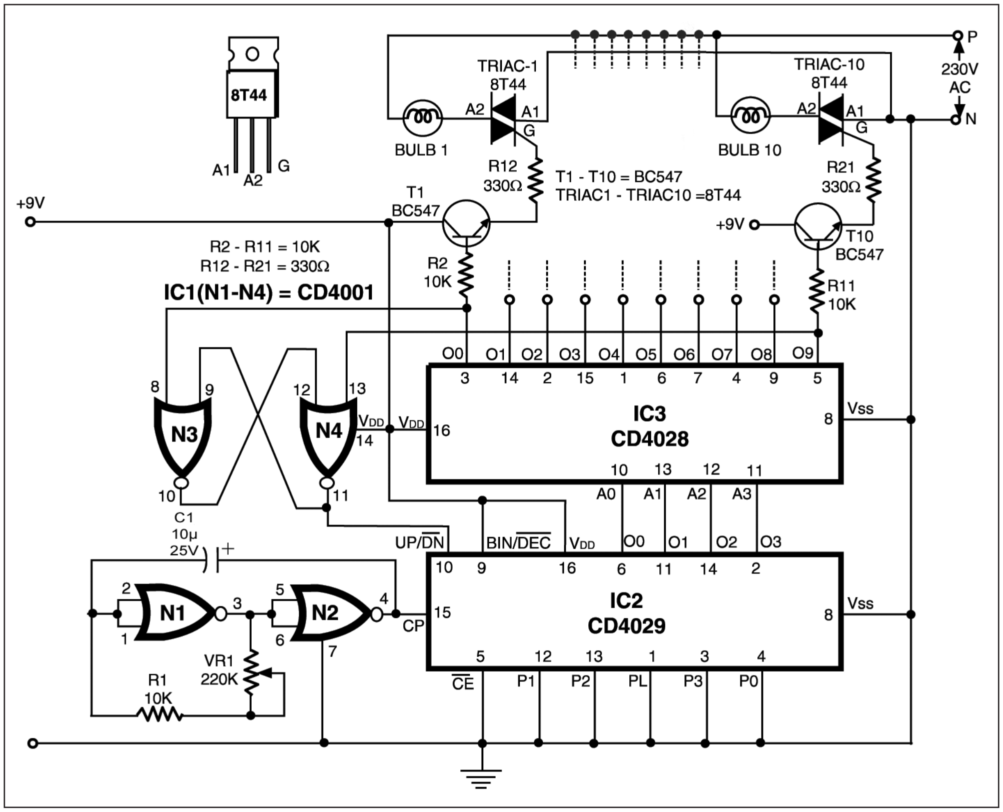
$$f = \frac{1.44}{(R1+2R2)C1}$$

Now, when the value of variable resistor VR1 is increased, the frequency increases from the value of 'f' as determined from above formula (with VR1=0).

Lab note: *The circuit has been practically verified with two different values of timing capacitor C1 and different values of in-circuit resistance VR1 and the results obtained are tabulated in Table I.*

PENDULUM DISPLAY

K.P. VISWANATHAN


8T44
A1
A2
G
TRIAC-1
8T44
BULB 1
A2
A1
G
R12
330Ω
T1 - T10 = BC547
TRIAC1 - TRIAC10 =8T44
TRIAC-10
8T44
BULB 10
R21
330Ω
P
230V
AC
N
+9V
T1
BC547
+9V
T10
BC547
R2 - R11 = 10K
R12 - R21 = 330Ω
IC1(N1-N4) = CD4001
R2
10K
R11
10K
O0 O1 O2 O3 O4 O5 O6 O7 O8 O9
3 14 2 15 1 6 7 4 9 5
IC3
CD4028
VDD
16
Vss
8
10 13 12 11
A0 A1 A2 A3
N3
N4
8 9 10
12 13 11
VDD
14
C1
10µ
25V
UP/DN
BIN/DEC
VDD
O0 O1 O2 O3
10 9 16 6 11 14 2
IC2
CD4029
CP
15
Vss
8
5 12 13 1 3 4
CE P1 P2 PL P3 P0
N1
N2
2 1 3
5 6 4 7
VR1
220K
R1
10K

The circuit presented here can be used for producing eye-catching effects like 'pendulum' and 'dashing lights.' To and fro motion of a pendulum can be simulated by arranging ten bulbs in a curved fashion and lighting them up sequentially, first in one direction and then in the other, using this circuit. For pendulum effect, the frequency of oscillator should be quite low.

Similarly, one may create a dashing light effect by using 19 bulbs and connecting them in such a way that bulb number 1 and 19, 2 and 18, 3 and 17, so on are in parallel. For achieving the dashing light effect, the oscillator frequency should be comparatively high.

In this circuit NOR gates N1 and N2 form an oscillator whose period can be adjusted using potmeter VR1. Oscillator output is fed to clock pin 15 of IC2 (CD4029), which is a binary/BCD up/down counter. As long as pin 10 of IC2 is at logic 1, it counts up; when it changes to logic 0, it counts down. This changeover of logic state at pin 10 is explained below.

The BCD outputs of IC2 are connected to IC3 (CD4028), which is a 1-of-10 decoder. As per sequential BCD inputs (up or down) to address pins of IC3, the outputs of IC3 go high and trigger the triacs (Triac1 through Triac10) via corresponding transistors (T1 through T10) to light up the bulbs connected to them.

Initially, when output O0 of IC3 goes high, the output of flip-flop formed by NOR gates N3 and N4 goes high, thus keeping pin 10 of IC2 at logic 1, and the counter counts up. Subsequently, when output O9 become high, the flip-flop is toggled and pin 10 of IC2 is pulled to logic 0, and the counter starts counting down. The cycle repeats endlessly.

AUDIO LEVEL INDICATOR

LOKESH KUMATH

The audio level indicator described here is quite simple and utilises readily available ICs. The function of the circuit can be understood with reference to Fig. 2 which shows two concentric circles formed by red and green LEDs respectively.

When the audio level increases, the speed of the roulette (moving light effect in the circles) also increases. The lighting LEDs of one of the two circles would appear to move in clockwise direction, while the other circle's LEDs appear to move in anticlockwise direction. When no audio is available, the speed of these two roulettes appears to be constant.

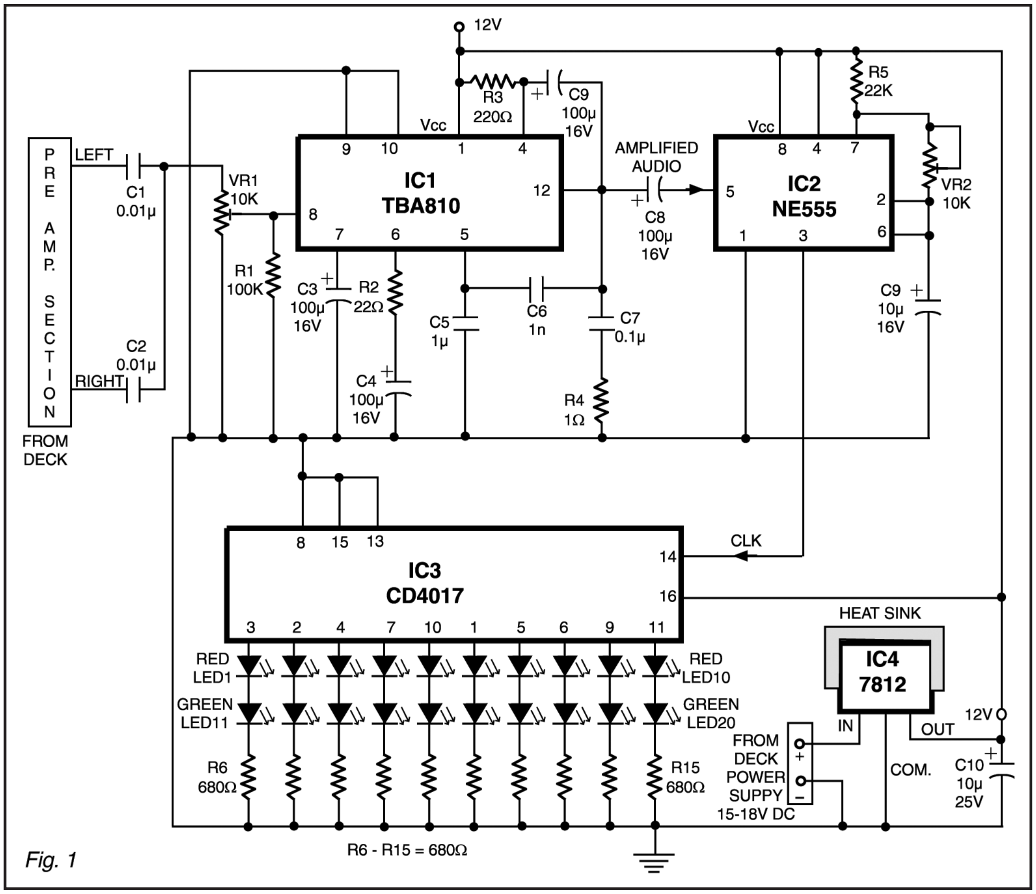

12V
PRE AMP. SECTION
FROM DECK
LEFT
RIGHT
C1 0.01µ
C2 0.01µ
VR1 10K
R1 100K
R3 220Ω
C9 100µ 16V
Vcc
9
10
1
4
12
8
7
6
5
IC1 TBA810
C3 100µ 16V
R2 22Ω
C4 100µ 16V
C5 1µ
C6 1n
C7 0.1µ
R4 1Ω
AMPLIFIED AUDIO
C8 100µ 16V
IC2 NE555
R5 22K
VR2 10K
C9 10µ 16V
2
3
IC3 CD4017
8
15
13
14
16
CLK
11
RED LED1
RED LED10
GREEN LED11
GREEN LED20
R6 680Ω
R15 680Ω
HEAT SINK
IC4 7812
IN
OUT
COM.
12V
C10 10µ 25V
FROM DECK POWER SUPPY 15-18V DC
R6 - R15 = 680Ω

Fig. 1

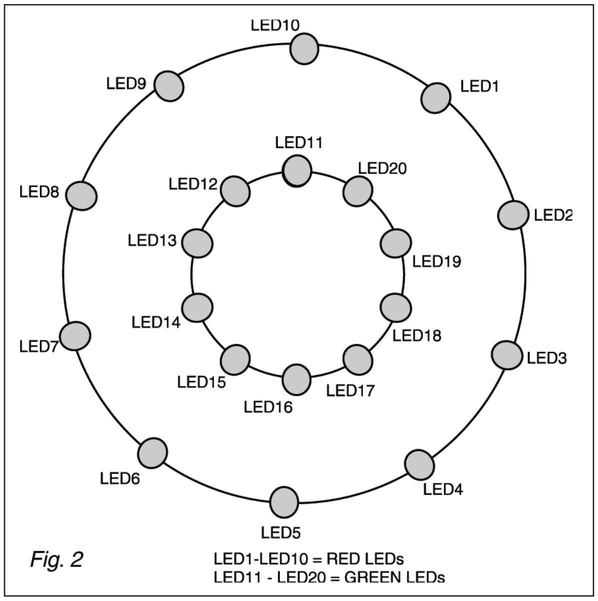

LED10
LED1
LED2
LED3
LED4
LED5
LED6
LED7
LED8
LED9
LED11
LED20
LED19
LED18
LED17
LED16
LED15
LED14
LED13
LED12

Fig. 2

LED1-LED10 = RED LEDs
LED11 - LED20 = GREEN LEDs

Although the LEDs here are arranged in circular form and only two colours are used, a number of different combinations are possible. For example, one may have red and green LEDs arranged in two rows, one over the other. LEDs of one row may be made to appear moving from left to right and of the other in the opposite direction, i.e from right to left.

In the circuit shown in Fig. 1, IC 555 is wired to operate in an astable mode as a voltage controlled oscillator (VCO). The only difference here is that pin 5 (which is a frequency controlling pin connected to the inverting terminal of a comparator inside the IC) is not grounded via a capacitor, but the potential at this pin is made to change in accordance with the audio level. This causes the internal flip-flop of timer NE555 to set and reset according to the audio level, and hence the output frequency varies correspondingly. This output is fed to the clock input pin of ring counter IC CD4017 whose output advances at a rate proportional to the clock input or the audio level present at pin 5 of IC2.

The audio output is not taken directly from the output of the deck (across speaker terminals) because the output across speaker terminals depends upon the setting of the volume control and would vary from one model to the other. Here, the left and the right outputs (in case of a stereo deck) are fed to the input of an audio amplifier IC TBA810, via capacitors C1 and C2 (0.01µF). These low-value capacitors help to maintain the required separation between left and right channels. Otherwise, at high frequencies the separation may fall tremendously, thereby short-circuiting L and R channels.

The 10k preset VR1 before IC TBA810 is used to control the output level so that at maximum output the potential at pin 5 of 555 is such that the frequency of 555 is between 1 and 15 Hz (approximately). Otherwise, all the LEDs at the output of IC3 will appear flickering.

The other 10k preset VR2 is used to set the normal speed of the roulette, between 2 and 3 Hz. One point to be noted here is, that the audio signals should be taken from the output of preamplifier IC of the deck just before the volume control. The output will depend on the setting of volume control (which we do not want) if it is taken after the volume control.

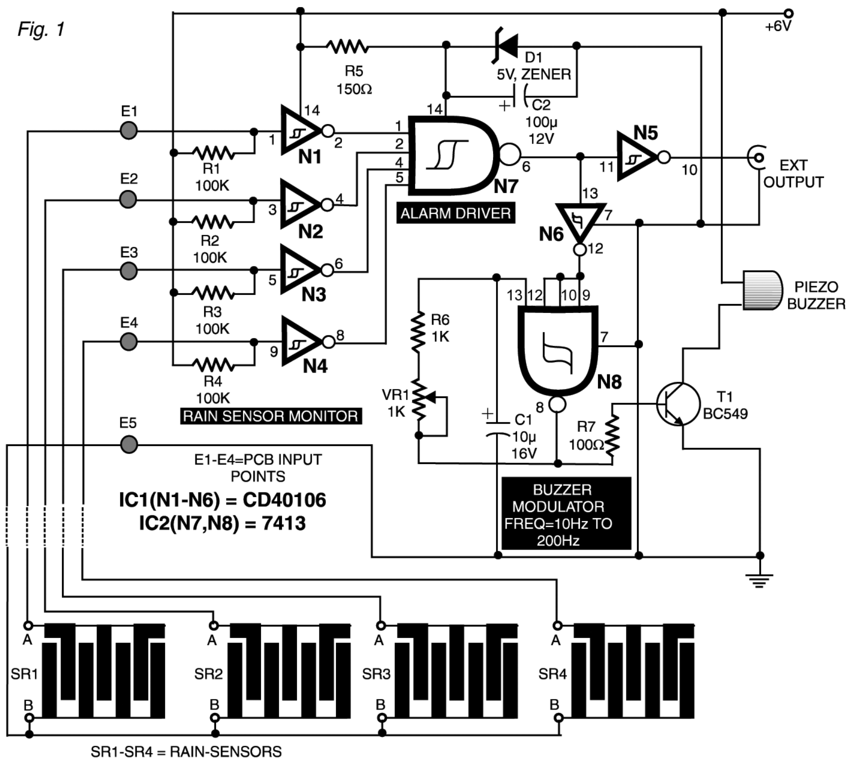
The power supply for the circuit may be tapped from the power supply of the deck, as shown in Fig. 1. The power supply voltage in a deck is not exactly 12V DC, but is around 15 to18V. It is preferable to connect a 7812 regulator IC for 12V regulation as shown in Fig. 1.

CLEVER RAIN-ALARM

M.K. CHANDRA MOULEESWARAN

Usually rain-alarms employ a single sensor. A serious drawback of this type of sensor is that even if a single drop of water falls on the sensor, the alarm would sound. There is a probability that the alarm may be false. To overcome this drawback, here we make use of four sensors, each placed well away from the other at suitable spots on the roof. The rain alarm would sound only if all the four sensors get wet. This reduces the probability of false alarm to a very great extent.

Fig. 1



+6V
E1
E2
E3
E4
E5
R1 100K
R2 100K
R3 100K
R4 100K
R5 150Ω
D1 5V, ZENER
C2 100µ 12V
N1
N2
N3
N4
N5
N6
N7
N8
ALARM DRIVER
RAIN SENSOR MONITOR
EXT OUTPUT
PIEZO BUZZER
R6 1K
VR1 1K
C1 10µ 16V
R7 100Ω
T1 BC549
E1-E4=PCB INPUT POINTS
IC1(N1-N6) = CD40106
IC2(N7,N8) = 7413
BUZZER MODULATOR FREQ=10Hz TO 200Hz
A
B
SR1
SR2
SR3
SR4
SR1-SR4 = RAIN-SENSORS

The four rain-sensors SR1 to SR4, along with pull-up resistors R1 to R4 (connected to positive rails) and inverters N1 to N4, form the rain-sensor-monitor stage. The sensor wires are brought to the PCB input points E1 to E5 using a 5-core cable. The four outputs of Schmitt inverter gates N1 to N4 go to the four inputs of Schmitt NAND gate N7, that makes the alarm driver stage.

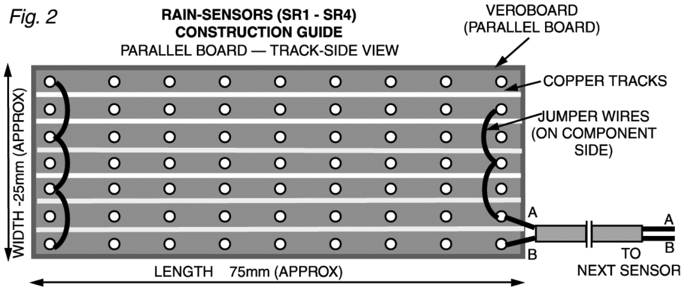
When all four sensors sense the rain, all four inputs to gates N1 through N4 go low and their outputs go high. Thus all four inputs to NAND gate N7 also go high and its output at pin 6 goes to logic 0. The output of gate N7 is high if any one or more of the rain-sensor plates SR1 through SR4 remain dry. The output of gate N7 is coupled to inverter gates N5 and N6. The output from gate N5 (logic 1 when rain is sensed) is brought to 'EXT' output connector, which may be used to control other external devices. The output from the other inverter gate N6 is used as enable input for NAND gate N8, which is\ configured as a low-frequency oscillator to drive/modulate the piezo buzzer via transistor T1. The frequency of the oscillator/modulator stage is variable between 10 Hz and 200 Hz with the help of preset VR1. The buzzer is of piezo-electric type having a continuous tone that is interrupted by the low-frequency output of N8. The buzzer will sound whenever rain is sensed (by all four sensors).

6V power supply (100mA) is used here to enable proper interfacing of the CMOS and TTL ICs used in the circuit. The power supply requirement is quite low and a 6-volt battery pack can be easily used. During quiscent-state, only a negligible current is consumed by the circuit. Even during active state, not more than 20mA current is needed for driving a good-quality piezo-buzzer. Please note that IC2, being of TTL type, needs a 5V regulated supply. Therefore zener D1, along with capacitor C2 and resistor R5, are used for this purpose.

A parallel-track, general-purpose PCB or a veroboard is enough to hold all the components. The rain-sensors SR1 to SR4 can be fabricated as shown in the construction guide in Fig. 2. They can be made simply by connecting alternate parallel tracks using jumpers on the component side. Use some epoxy cement on and around the wire joints at A and B to avoid corrosion. Also, the sensors can be cemented in place with epoxy cement.

If the number of sensors is to be increased, just add another set of CD40106 and 7413 ICs along with the associated discrete components. Another good utility of the rain-alarm is in agriculture. When drip-irrigation is employed, fix the four sensors at four corners of the tree-pits, at a suitable height from the ground. Then, as soon as the water rises to the sensor's level, the circuit can be

Fig. 2



RAIN-SENSORS (SR1 - SR4) CONSTRUCTION GUIDE
PARALLEL BOARD — TRACK-SIDE VIEW
VEROBOARD (PARALLEL BOARD)
COPPER TRACKS
JUMPER WIRES (ON COMPONENT SIDE)
WIDTH -25mm (APPROX)
LENGTH 75mm (APPROX)
A
B
TO NEXT SENSOR

used to switch off the water pump.

To extend the life of the rain sensors, which remain always exposed to the elements when fitted on roof tops. The copper tracks can be coated with a thin layer of good quality solder. Similarly, applying two coats of stannous chloride on the tracks will retain them clean and it may be tinned for good electrical contact.

LASER CONTROLLED ON/OFF SWITCH

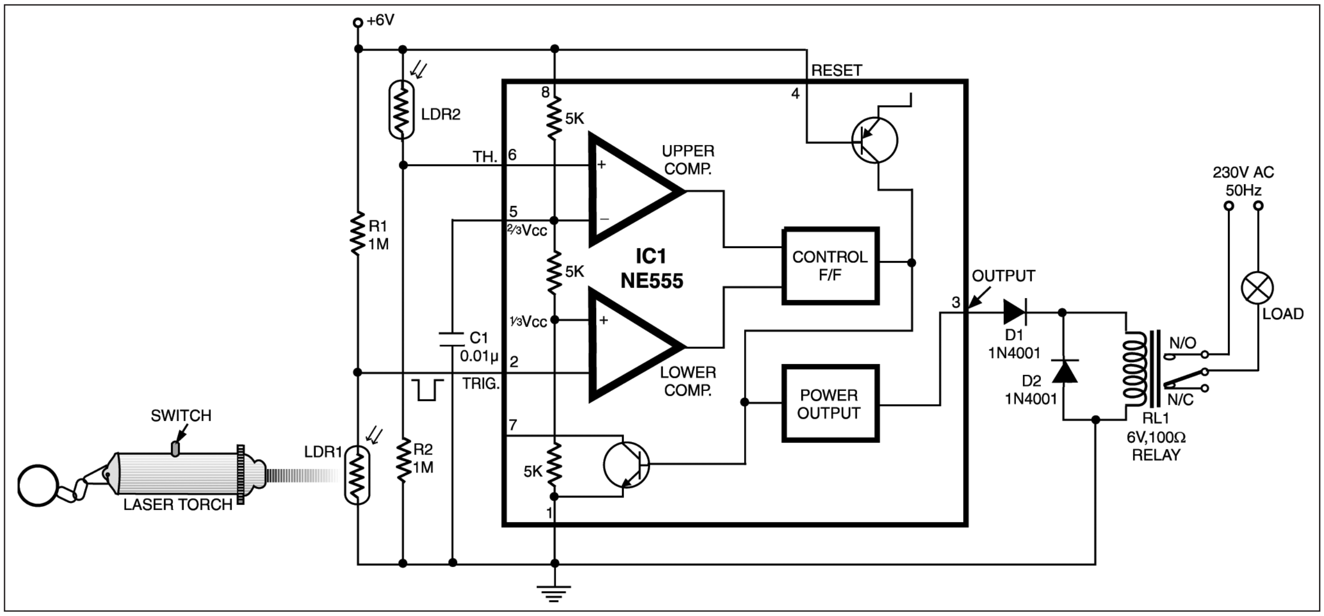
DR K.P. RAO

This circuit is built around a 555 timer using very few components. Since the circuit is very simple, even a novice can easily build it and use it as a controlling device. A laser pointer, now easily available in the market, can be used to operate this device.

This circuit has been tested in operational conditions from a distance of 500 metres and was found to work satisfactorily, though it can be controlled from still longer distances. Aiming (aligning) the laser beam exactly on to the LDR is a practical problem.

The circuit is very useful in switching on/off a fan at night without getting off the bed. It can also be used for controlling a variety of other devices like radio or music system. The limitation is that the circuit is operational only in dark or dull-lit environments.

By focussing the laser beam on LDR1 the connected gadget can be activated through the relay, whereas by focusing laser beam on LDR2 we can switch off the gadget. The timer is configured to operate in bistable mode.


+6V
LDR2
RESET
8
4
5K
TH.
6
UPPER
COMP.
230V AC
50Hz
5
2/3Vcc
R1
1M
IC1
NE555
CONTROL
F/F
5K
OUTPUT
3
LOAD
1/3Vcc
C1
0.01µ
2
TRIG.
D1
1N4001
N/O
D2
1N4001
LOWER
COMP.
POWER
OUTPUT
N/C
SWITCH
7
RL1
6V,100Ω
RELAY
LDR1
R2
1M
5K
LASER TORCH
1

TELEPHONE CONVERSATION RECORDER

PRADEEP VASUDEVA

This circuit enables automatic switching-on of the tape recorder when the handset is lifted. The tape recorder gets switched off when the handset is replaced. The signals are suitably attenuated to a level at which they can be recorded using the 'MICIN' socket of the tape recorder.

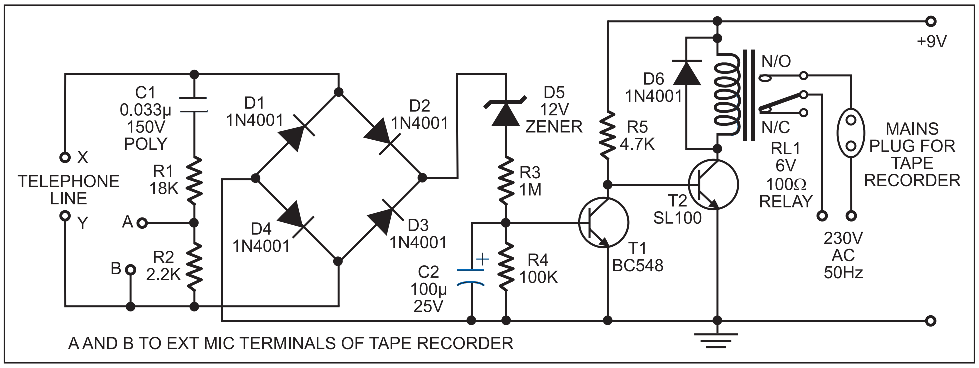
Points X and Y in the circuit are connected to the telephone lines. Resistors R1 and R2 act as a voltage divider. The voltage appearing across R2 is fed to the 'MIC-IN' socket of the tape recorder. The values of R1 and R2 may be changed depending on the input impedance of the tape recorder's 'MIC-IN' terminals. Capacitor C1 is used for blocking the flow of DC.

The second part of the circuit controls relay RL1, which is used to switch on/off the tape recorder. A voltage of 48 volts appears across the telephone lines in on-hook condition. This voltage drops to about 9 volts when the handset is lifted. Diodes D1 through D4 constitute a bridge rectifier/polarity guard. This ensures that transistor T1 gets voltage of proper polarity, irrespective of the polarity of the telephone lines.

During on-hook condition, the output from the bridge (48V DC) passes through 12V zener D5 and is applied to the base of transistor T1 via the voltage divider comprising resistors R3 and R4. This switches on transistor T1 and its collector is pulled low. This, in turn, causes transistor T2 to cut off and relay RL1 is not energised.

When the telephone handset is lifted, the voltage across points X and Y falls below 12 volts and so zener diode D5 does not conduct. As a result, base of transistor T1 is pulled to ground potential via resistor R4 and thus is cut off. Thus, base of transistor T2 gets forward biased via resistor R5, which results in the energisation of relay RL1. The tape recorder is switched 'on' and recording begins.

The tape recorder should be kept loaded with a cassette and the record button of the tape recorder should remain pressed to enable it to record the conversation as soon as the handset is lifted. Capacitor C2 ensures that the relay is not switched on-and-off repeatedly when a number is being dialled in pulse dialling mode.



SIMPLE AND ECONOMIC SINGLE-PHASING PREVENTOR

PRAVINCHANDRA B. MEHTA

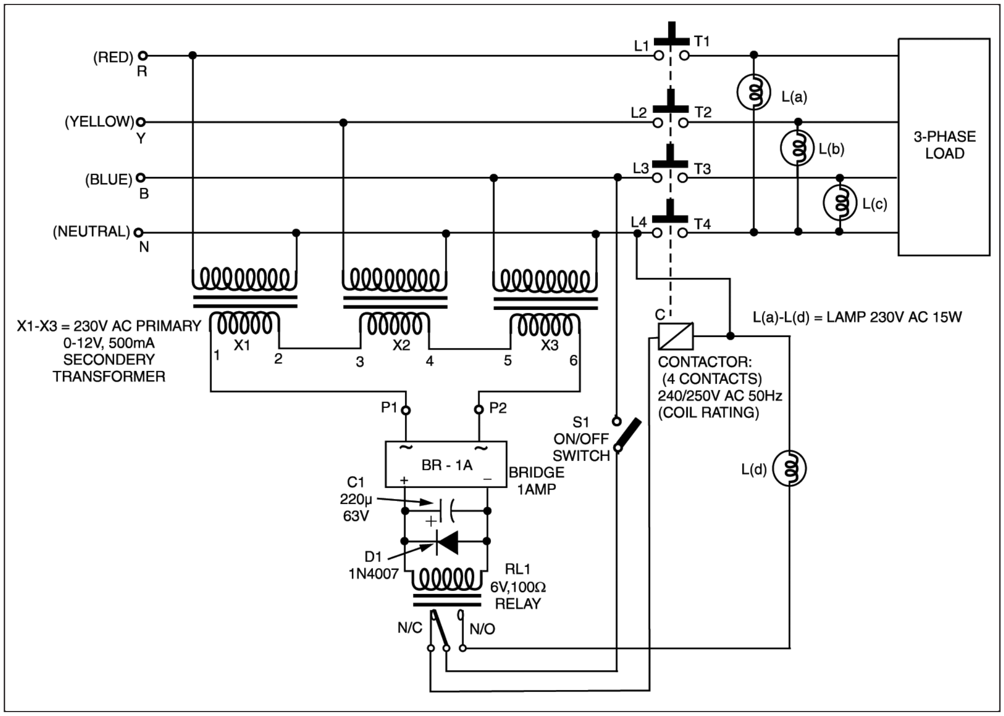
Three-phase motors and other appliances are widely used in all sectors of industry. These appliances are prone to damage due to single phasing. Apart from damage to the costly apparatus, it may also cause a production loss. Many circuits of single phasing preventor (SPP) are available but the circuit suggested here is very simple and economical.

Easily-available mains step-down transformers X1, X2, and X3 (230V AC primary to 0-12V, 500mA secondary rating) are used with their primaries connected in star mode and secondaries in open delta mode. The characteristic of this type of connection is that when three-phase balanced input is applied to the primaries, no output across open delta secondaries will be available. But in case of major unbalance or single-phasing, some voltage, called residual voltage, is induced in the secondaries across points 1 and 6 shown in the circuit diagram. Three-phase supply is given to apparatus (load) through contactor C. While the primaries of transformers X1, X2, and X3 are connected ahead of the contactor. The contactor can be energised via N/C (normally closed) contacts of relay RL1 by pressing switch S1.

As soon as single-phasing or major unbalance occurs, 8 to 12 volts are induced across point P1-P2, which after rectification operates relay RL1. As a result, the supply to contactor coil is cut off and it de-energises, thereby protecting the apparatus. Lamp L(d) is also lit up (unless B phase has failed), indicating that SPP has operated. Lamps L(a), L(b), and L(c) indicate the healthiness of three phases R, Y, and B. After resumption of the balanced 3-phase supply, the contactor will automatically energise (with S1 closed) and supply to the appliance will be resumed.

Notes: *Proper polarity of the transformer connections has to be ensured in the above circuit. To determine proper polarity, connect the primary ends which are eventually to be connected to three phases, to any single phase (the other ends are connected to neutral). Now proceed to connect secondaries of two of the* *three transformers in series and measure the AC ouput across the unconnected ends. This should be double (24V AC) of the individual secondary output (12V AC). If it is not so, reverse one of the two secondary connections to get the required output. Similarly, connect the third transformer secondary in series with the other two secondaries. The output across the unconnected ends should now be treble (36V AC). If it is not so, reverse the connections of the third secondary. Now shift the primary ends (connected to single phase) to each of the three phases, as shown in the figure. The voltage across points P1-P2 will be nearly zero if all three phases are present.*

—Technical Editor



WATER-TANK LEVEL METER

M.K. CHANDRA MOULEESWARAN

The water-tank level meter described here is very simple and useful for monitoring the water level in an overhead tank (OHT). The water level at 30cm intervals is monitored and continuously indicated by LEDs arranged in a meter-format. When all the LEDs are 'off', it indicates that the OHT is empty. When the water level reaches the top limit, the whole LED-meter begins to flash.

The height at which the level-sensing electrodes are fitted is adjustable. Thus, the minimum and maximum level settings may be varied as desired. The range of the meter can also be enlarged to cater to any level.

No special or critical components are used. CMOS ICs are used to limit the idle current to a minimum level.

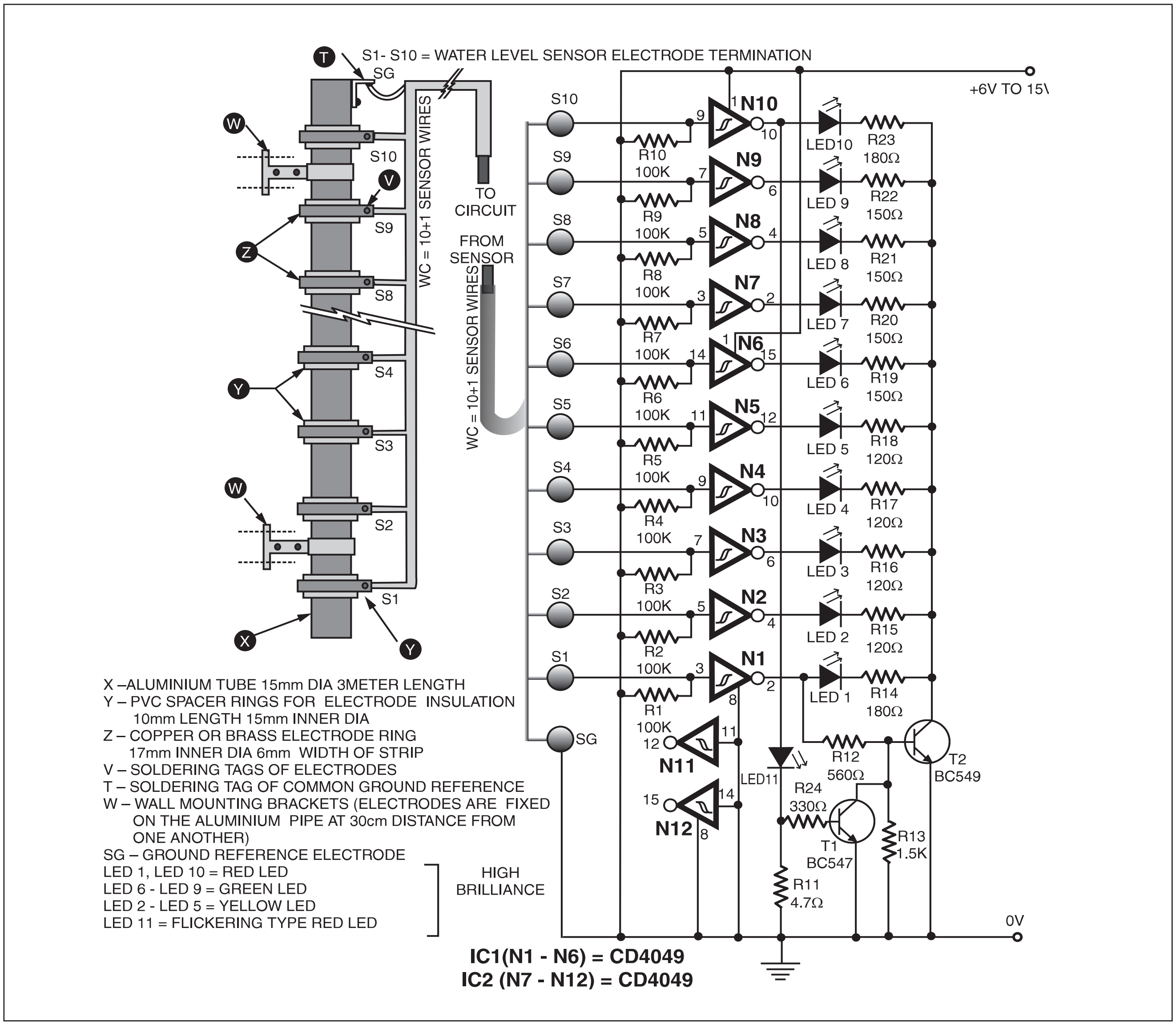
Even when all the LEDs are 'on', i.e. water reaches the top level, the demand on the power supply is reasonably low. Further, the extremely high input resistance of the Schmitt inverter gates reduces the input current and thus minimises the erosion of electrodes.

The principal part of the device is its water-level sensor assembly. By using easily available material, it can be fabricated to meet one's own specific requirements.

The common ground reference electrode 'X' is an aluminium conduit of 15mm outer diameter and 3-metre length, to cater to a 3-metre deep overhead tank. Insulating spacer rings 'Y' (10mm length, 15mm dia.) are fabricated from electrical wiring conduits of 15mm inner diameter. These are pushed tightly over the aluminum conduit at preferred places, say 30cm apart. If the pieces are too tight, they can be heated in boiling water for softening and then pushed over 'X'.

The sensor electrodes 'Z' are made out of copper or brass strips (6mm wide and 1mm thick) which are shaped into rings that can tightly slip over the 'Y' pieces. The ends of these strips are folded firmly and formed into solder tags S1 to S10 and SG. The wall-mounting brackets, made of aluminium die-cast, are screwed directly on 'X' at two suitable places. The sensor cable 'WC' wires are soldered to solder tags, and some epoxy cement is applied around the joints and tags to avoid corrosion by water. The common ground reference wire 'SG' is taken from tag 'T'. The cable's individual wires from S1 to S10 and SG are cut and matched in length for a neat layout. The other ends of the cable are connected to the PCB terminal points S1 to S10 and SG respectively. No separate ground is needed.

The electronics portion is simple and straightforward. A long piece of veroboard



S1- S10 = WATER LEVEL SENSOR ELECTRODE TERMINATION
T
SG
W
V
Z
Y
X
S10
S9
S8
S4
S3
S2
S1
WC = 10+1 SENSOR WIRES
TO CIRCUIT
FROM SENSOR
WC = 10+1 SENSOR WIRES
+6V TO 15\
N10
N9
N8
N7
N6
N5
N4
N3
N2
N1
N11
N12
R10 100K
R9 100K
R8 100K
R7 100K
R6 100K
R5 100K
R4 100K
R3 100K
R2 100K
R1 100K
LED10
LED 9
LED 8
LED 7
LED 6
LED 5
LED 4
LED 3
LED 2
LED 1
LED11
R23 180Ω
R22 150Ω
R21 150Ω
R20 150Ω
R19 150Ω
R18 120Ω
R17 120Ω
R16 120Ω
R15 120Ω
R14 180Ω
R12 560Ω
R24 330Ω
R13 1.5K
R11 4.7Ω
T1 BC547
T2 BC549
0V
X –ALUMINIUM TUBE 15mm DIA 3METER LENGTH
Y – PVC SPACER RINGS FOR ELECTRODE INSULATION 10mm LENGTH 15mm INNER DIA
Z – COPPER OR BRASS ELECTRODE RING 17mm INNER DIA 6mm WIDTH OF STRIP
V – SOLDERING TAGS OF ELECTRODES
T – SOLDERING TAG OF COMMON GROUND REFERENCE
W – WALL MOUNTING BRACKETS (ELECTRODES ARE FIXED ON THE ALUMINIUM PIPE AT 30cm DISTANCE FROM ONE ANOTHER)
SG – GROUND REFERENCE ELECTRODE
LED 1, LED 10 = RED LED
LED 6 - LED 9 = GREEN LED
LED 2 - LED 5 = YELLOW LED
LED 11 = FLICKERING TYPE RED LED
HIGH BRILLIANCE
IC1(N1 - N6) = CD4049
IC2 (N7 - N12) = CD4049

can hold all the parts including the power supply section. For easy installation, the LEDs can be set at the track side of the board, in a single line, so that they may be pushed through the cutouts in the front panel of the enclosure from inside.

The water level at 30cm intervals is monitored by corresponding sensors, causing the input to the corresponding inverters (normally pulled 'high' via resistors R1 through R10) to go 'low', as soon as water reaches the respective sensors.

On initial switching 'on' of the power supply, when the tank is empty, all the electrodes are open. As a result, all the inverter inputs are 'high' (via the pull-up resistors R1 to R10) and their outputs are all 'low'. Thus, all the LEDs are 'off'. As soon as the water starts filling the tank, the rising water level grounds the first sensor. The logic 1 output of first inverter gate N1 causes conduction of transistor T2 to extend ground to one side of resistors R14 through R23 via emitter-collector path of transistor T2. The LED D1 is thus lit up.

Similarly, other LEDs turn 'on' successively as the water level rises. As soon as the water in OHT reaches the top level, the output of gate N10 goes to logic 1 and causes flashing-type LED D11 to start flashing. At the same time, transistor T1 conducts and cuts off alternately, in synchronism with LED D11's flash rate, to ground the base of transistor T2 during conduction of transistor T1. As a result, transistor T2 also starts cutting 'off' during conduction of transistor T1, to make the LED meter (comprising LEDs D1 through D10) flash and thus warn that the water has reached the top level. When the water level goes down, the reverse happens and each LED is turned 'off' successively.

The novel feature of this circuit is that whenever the water level is below the first sensor, all the LEDs are 'off' and the quiescent current is very low. Thus, a power 'on'/'off' switch is not so essential. Even when the LED-meter is fully on, the current drawn from the power supply is not more than 120 mA. A heat-sink may, however, be used for transistor T2, if the tank is expected to remain full most of the time. A power supply unit providing unregulated 6V DC to 15V DC at 300mA current is adequate.

Caution. A point to be noted is that water tends to stick to the narrow space at the sensor-spacer junction and can cause a false reading on the LED-meter. This can be avoided if the spacers are made wider than 10 mm.

PHONE BROADCASTER

ANJAN NANDI

Here is a simple yet very useful circuit which can be used to eavesdrop on a telephone conversation. The circuit can also be used as a wireless telephone amplifier.

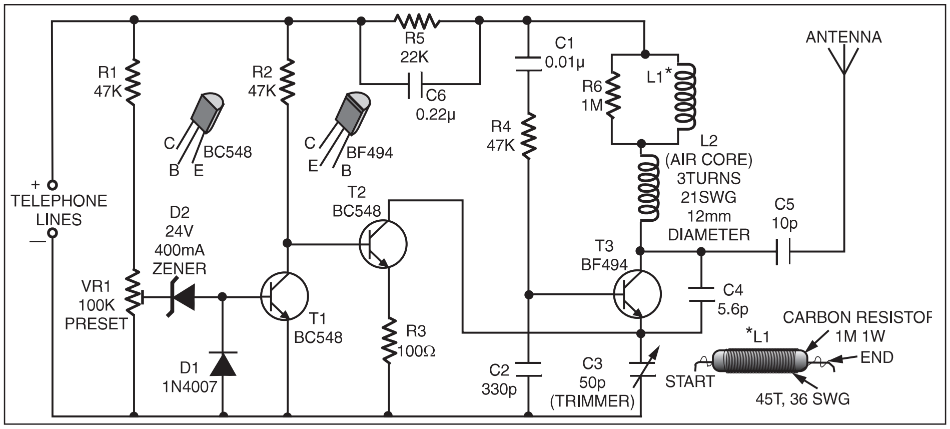
One important feature of this circuit is that the circuit derives its power directly from the active telephone lines, and thus avoids use of any external battery or other power supplies. This not only saves a lot of space but also money. It consumes very low current from telephone lines without disturbing its performance. The circuit is very tiny and can be built using a single-IC type veroboard that can be easily fitted inside a telephone connection box of 3.75 cm x 5 cm.

The circuit consists of two sections, namely, automatic switching section and FM transmitter section.

Automatic switching section comprises resistors R1 to R3, preset VR1, transistors T1 and T2, zener D2, and diode D1. Resistor R1, along with preset VR1, works as a voltage divider. When voltage across the telephone lines is 48V DC, the voltage available at wiper of preset VR1 ranges from 0 to 32V (adjustable). The switching voltage of the circuit depends on zener breakdown voltage (here 24V) and switching voltage of the transistor T1 (0.7V). Thus, if we adjust preset VR1 to get over 24.7 volts, it will cause the zener to breakdown and transistor T1 to conduct. As a result collector of transistor T1 will get pulled towards negative supply, to cut off transistor T2. At this stage, if you lift the handset of the telephone, the line voltage drops to about 11V and transistor T1 is cut off. As a result, transistor T2 gets forward biased through resistor R2, to provide a DC path for transistor T3 used in the following FM transmitter section.

The low-power FM transmitter section comprises oscillator transistor T3, coil L1, and a few other components. Transistor T3 works as a common-emitter RF oscillator, with transistor T2 serving as an electronic 'on'/'off' switch. The audio signal available across the telephone lines automatically modulates oscillator frequency via transistor T2 along with its series biasing resistor R3. The modulated RF signal is fed to the antenna. The telephone conversation can be heard on an FM receiver remotely when it is tuned to FM transmitter frequency.

Lab Note: During testing of the circuit it was observed that the telephone used was giving an engaged tone when dialed by any subscriber. Addition of resistor R5 and capacitor C6 was found necessary for rectification of the fault.



TELEPHONE CALL METER USING CALCULATOR AND COB

K. UDHAYA KUMARAN, VU3GTH

In this circuit, a simple calculator, in conjunction with a COB (chip-on-board) from an analogue quartz clock, is used to make a telephone call meter. The calculator enables conversion of STD/ISD calls to local call equivalents and always displays current local call-meter reading.

The circuit is simple and presents an

elegant look, with feather-touch operation. It consumes very low current and is fully battery operated. The batteries used last more than a year.

Another advantage of using this circuit is that it is compatible with any type of pulse rate format, i.e. pulse rate in whole number, or whole number with decimal part. Recently, the telephone department announced changes in pulse rate format, which included pulse rate in whole number plus decimal part. In such a case, this circuit proves very handy.

To convert STD/ISD calls to local calls, this circuit needs accurate 1Hz clock pulses, generated by clock COB. This COB is found inside analogue quartz wall clocks or time-piece mechanisms. It consists of IC, chip capacitors, and crystal that one can retrieve from scrap quartz clock mechanisms.

Normally, the COB inside clock mechanism will be in good condition. However, before using the COB, please check its serviceability by applying 1.5V DC across terminals C and D, as shown in the figure. Then check DC voltage across terminals A and B; these terminals in a clock are connected to a coil. If the COB is in good condition, the multimeter needle would deflect forward and backward once every second. In fact, 0.5Hz clock is available at terminals A and B, with a phase difference of 90°. The advantage of using this COB is that it works on a 1.5V DC source.

The clock pulses available from terminal A and B are combined using a bridge, comprising diodes D1 to D4, to obtain 1Hz clock pulses. These clock pulses are applied to the base of transistor T1. The collector and emitter of transistor T1 are connected across calculator's '=' terminals.

The number of pulses forming an equivalent call may be determined from the latest telephone directory. However, the pulse rate (PR) found in the directory cannot be used directly in this circuit. For compatibility with this circuit, the pulse rate applicable for a particular place/distance, based on time of the day/holidays, is converted to pulse rate equivalent (PRE) using the formula PRE = 1/PR.

You may prepare a look-up table for various pulse rates and their equivalents (see Table). Suppose you are going to make an STD call in pulse rate 4. Note down from the table the pulse rate equivalent for pulse rate 4, which is 0.25. Please note that on maturity of a call in the telephone exchange, the exchange call meter immediately advances to one call and it will be further incremented according to pulse rate. So one call should always be included before counting the calls.

For making call in pulse rate 4, slide switch S1 to 'off' (pulse set position) and press calculator buttons in the following order: 1, '+', 0.25, '='. Here, 1 is initial count, and 0.25 is PRE. Now calculator displays 1.25. This call meter is now ready to count. Now make the call, and as soon as the call matures, immediately slide switch S1 to 'on' (start/standby position). The COB starts generating clock pulses of 1 Hz. Transistor T1 conducts once every second, and thus '=' button in calculator is activated electronically once every second. The calculator display starts from 1.25, advancing every second as follows:

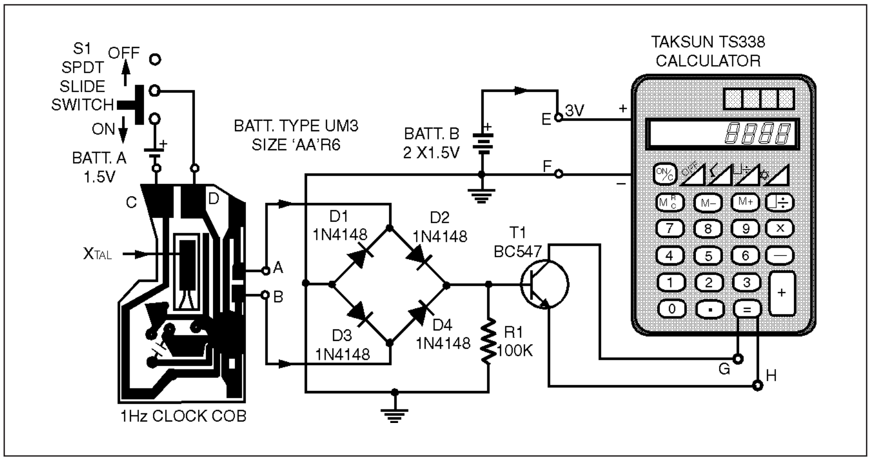
1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2.00, 2.25, 2.50, and so on.

After finishing the call, immediately slide switch S1 to 'off' position (pulse set position) and note down the local call meter reading from the calculator display. If decimal value is more than or equal to 0.9, add another call to the whole number value. If decimal value is less than 0.9, neglect decimal value and note down only whole numbers.

LOOKUP TABLE

Pulse rate (PR)	2	2.5	3	4	6	8	12	16	24	32	36	48
Pulse rate eqlt. (PRE)	0.500	0.400	0.333	0.250	0.166	0.125	0.083	0.062	0.041	0.031	0.027	0.020

Note: Here PRE is shown up to three decimal places. In practice, one may use up to five or six decimal places.



To store this local call meter reading into calculator memory, press 'M+' button. Now local call meter reading is stored in memory and is added to the previous local call meter reading. For continuous display of current local call meter reading, press 'MRC' button and slide switch S1 to 'on' (start/standby position). The current local call meter reading will blink once every second.

In prototype circuit, the author used TAKSUN calculator. The display height was 1 cm. In this calculator, he substituted the two button-type batteries with two externally connected 1.5V R6 type batteries to run the calculator for more than an year.

The power 'off' button terminals were made dummy by affixing cellotape on contacts to avoid erasing of memory, should someone accidentally press the power 'off' button. This calculator has auto 'off' facility. Therefore, some button needs to be pressed frequently to keep the calculator 'on'. So, in the idle condition, the '=' button is activated electronically once every second by transistor T1, to keep the calculator continuously 'on'.

Useful hints. Solder the '=' button terminals by drilling small holes in its vicinity on PCB pattern using thin copper wire and solder it neatly, such that the '=' button could get activated electronically as well as manually. Take the copper wire through a hole to the backside of the PCB, from where it is taken out of the calculator as terminals G and H.

At calculator's battery terminals,

solder two wires to '+' and '–' terminals. These wires are also taken out from calculator as terminals E and F. Affix COB on a general-purpose PCB and solder the remaining components neatly. For giving the unit an elegant look, purchase a jewellery plastic box with flip-type cover (size 15cm x 15cm). Now fix the board, calculator, and batteries, along with holder inside the jewellery box. Then mount the box on the wall and paste the look-up table inside the box cover in such a way that on opening the box, it is visible on left side of the box.

Caution. The negative terminals of battery A and battery B are to be kept isolated from each other for proper operation of this circuit.

SIMPLE ELECTRONIC CODE LOCK

REJO G. PAREKKATTU

The circuit diagram of a simple electronic code lock is shown in figure. A 9-digit code number is used to operate the code lock.

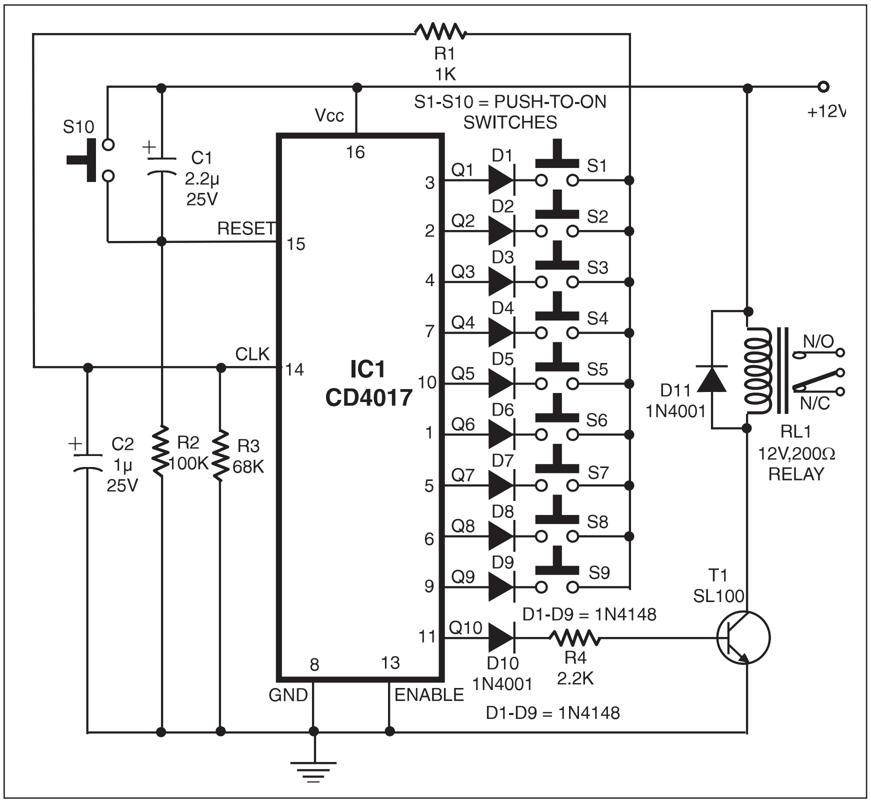
When power supply to the circuit is turned on, a positive pulse is applied to the RESET pin (pin 15) through capacitor C1. Thus, the first output terminal Q1 (pin 3) of the decade counter IC (CD 4017) will be high and all other outputs (Q2 to Q10) will be low. To shift the high state from Q1 to Q2, a positive pulse must be applied at the clock input terminal (pin 14) of IC1. This is possible only by pressing the push-to-on switch S1 momentarily. On pressing switch S1, the high state shifts from Q1 to Q2.

Now, to change the high state from Q2 to Q3, apply another positive pulse at pin 14, which is possible only by pressing switch S2. Similarly, the high state can be shifted up to the tenth output (Q10) by pressing the switches S1 through S9 sequentially in that order. When Q10 (pin 11) is high, transistor T1 conducts and energises relay RL1. The relay can be used to switch 'on' power to any electrical appliance.

Diodes D1 through D9 are provided to prevent damage/malfunctioning of the IC when two switches corresponding to 'high' and 'low' output terminals are pressed simultaneously. Capacitor C2 and resistor R3 are provided to prevent noise during switching action.

Switch S10 is used to reset the circuit manually. Switches S1 to S10 can be mounted on a keyboard panel, and any number or letter can be used to mark them. Switch S10 is also placed together with other switches so that any stranger trying to operate the lock frequently presses the switch S10, thereby resetting the circuit many times. Thus, he is never able to turn the relay 'on'. If necessary, two or three switches can be connected in parallel with S10 and placed on the keyboard panel for more safety.

A 12V power supply is used for the circuit. The circuit is very simple and can be easily assembled on a general-purpose PCB. The code number can be easily changed by changing the connections to switches (S1 to S9).



MINI VOICE-PROCESSOR

(BASED ON UMC APPLICATION NOTE AND DATA SHEET FOR IC UM5506B)

The UM5506B is a highly integrated voice processor CMOS IC with in-built ADM (adaptive delta modulation) capability. The chip integrates an analogue comparator, a 10-bit D/A converter, a low-pass filter, an op-amp, and a 96-kilobit static RAM. It has an on-chip amplifier for sound recording and direct speaker driving capability.

Although 28 pins/pads are shown in the figure, its COB version mounted on a PCB, as tested at EFY Lab, had only 16 lines coming out of the COB. These lines, after proper identification, have been indicated with asterisk (*) marks in Fig. 2. Very few external components are needed for its use in applications such as greeting cards or toys. The tested PCB measured 3 cm x 5.25 cm and required only 3-volt supply for operation.

The IC, along with external components, as shown in Fig. 2, can be used for recording of sound for a recording length of 6 seconds. During record mode, the voice signals picked up by the condenser mic are converted into digital signals using ADM algorithm and stored in its internal SRAM. During play mode, the digital data is converted back into analogue signals and played back through the speaker. For understanding the operation, the functions of switches S1 through S4 and their corresponding pins is described below.

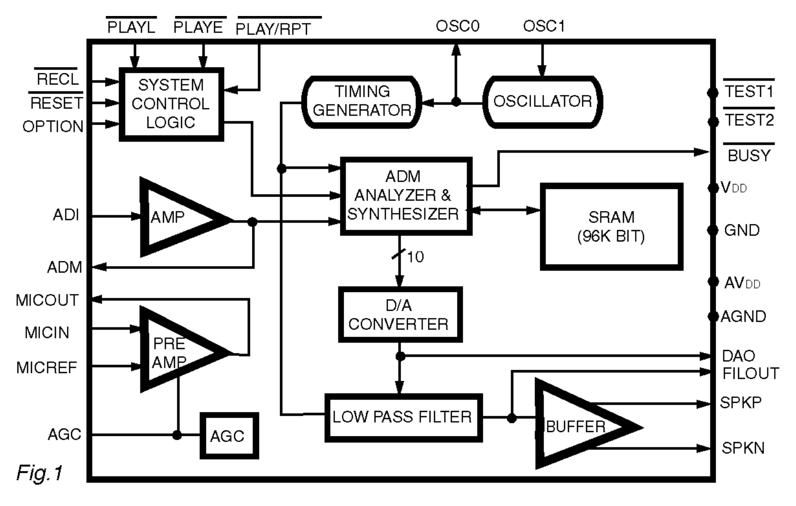

PLAYL
PLAYE
PLAY/RPT
OSC0
OSC1
RECL
RESET
OPTION
SYSTEM CONTROL LOGIC
TIMING GENERATOR
OSCILLATOR
TEST1
TEST2
BUSY
ADM ANALYZER & SYNTHESIZER
VDD
ADI
AMP
SRAM (96K BIT)
GND
10
ADM
AVDD
MICOUT
D/A CONVERTER
AGND
MICIN
PRE AMP
MICREF
DAO
FILOUT
SPKP
LOW PASS FILTER
BUFFER
AGC
AGC
SPKN

Fig.1

S1(RECL). Pressing (grounding) this pin ends the power-down mode and initiates a record cycle. Recording continues as long as this pin is held 'low', provided memory is not completely filled. If memory is full or the pin is 'high', it enters the power-down mode.

S2 (PLAYL). Pressing (grounding) this pin ends the power-down mode and initiates the play cycle. The stored/recorded message is played until finished or this pin is taken 'high'.

S3(PLAYE). Pressing (grounding) this pin momentarily ends the power-down mode and enters the play mode. Subsequent taking of this pin 'high' has no effect. However, pressing this pin once more finishes the play mode and the chip enters the power-down mode. The action is analogous to the falling-edge trigger mode.

S4 (PLAY/RPT). Pressing (grounding) this pin ends the power-down mode and enters the play mode. The chip will complete the recorded message and then keep repeating the message as long as it is kept pressed. When released, it will enter the power-down mode.

LED1 connected to BUZY pin lights up to indicate end of power-down mode and remains 'on' during record and play-mode active period. A beep is produced in the speaker to indicate start of record cycle and also that the memory is full.

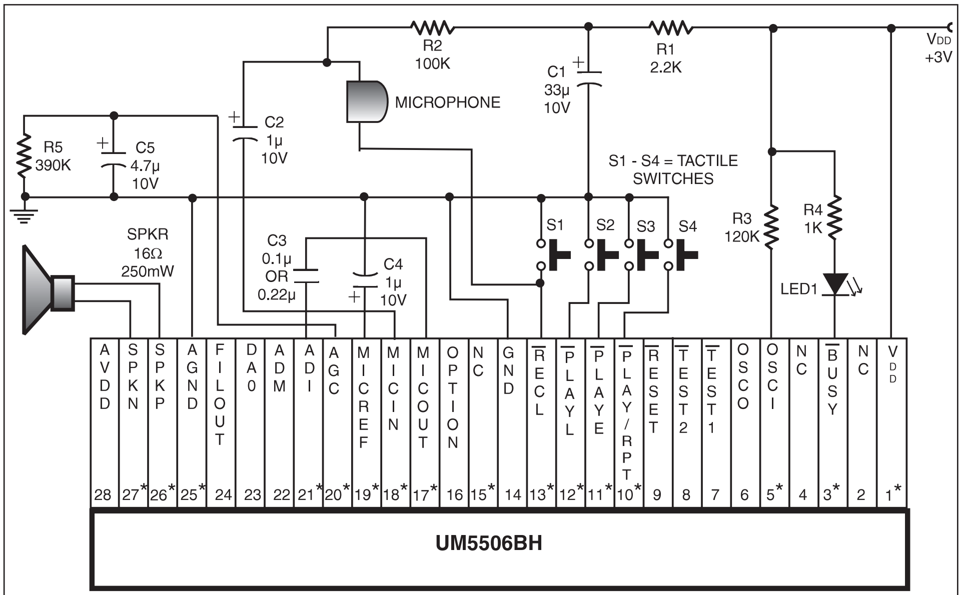
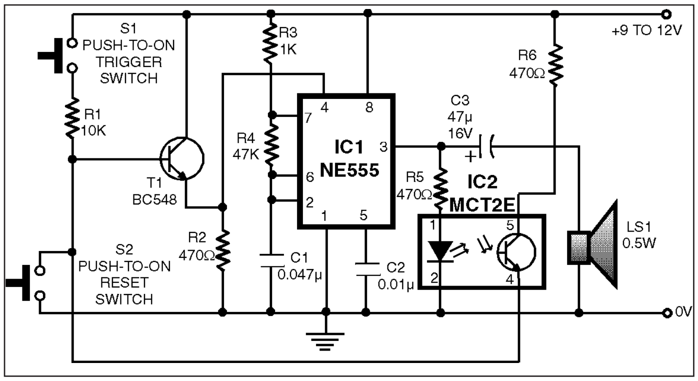

R2 100K
R1 2.2K
VDD +3V
C1 33µ 10V
MICROPHONE
C2 1µ 10V
R5 390K
C5 4.7µ 10V
S1 - S4 = TACTILE SWITCHES
SPKR 16Ω 250mW
C3 0.1µ OR 0.22µ
C4 1µ 10V
S1
S2
S3
S4
R3 120K
R4 1K
LED1
AVDD
SPKN
SPKP
AGND
FILOUT
DA0
ADM
ADI
AGC
MICREF
MICIN
MICOUT
OPTION
NC
GND
RECL
PLAYL
PLAYE
PLAY/RPT
RESET
TEST2
TEST1
OSCO
OSCI
NC
BUSY
NC
VDD
28 27* 26* 25* 24 23 22 21* 20* 19* 18* 17* 16 15* 14 13* 12* 11* 10* 9 8 7 6 5* 4 3* 2 1*
UM5506BH

Fig. 2 NOTE : ONLY LINES MARKED WITH * ARE THE ONES COMING OUT OF THE COB.

LATCH-UP ALARM USING OPTO-COUPLER

PRADEEP G.

The latch-up alarm described here is based on single IC NE555, configured as an astable multivibrator. The timing components are selected such that the oscillation frequency of the multivibrator lies within the audio range. Instead of a flip-flop stage, an opto-coupler (MCT2E) is used for latching of the alarm.



Under normal condition, pin 4 of IC1 is pulled to ground via resistor R2, and its output at pin 3 is held ‘low’. When switch S1 is pressed momentarily, transistor T1 conducts to bring reset pin 4 of 555 to logic ‘high’. As a result, IC1 is activated and the alarm starts to sound.

Simultaneously, the LED inside opto-coupler glows and the phototransistor conducts. As a result, trigger transistor T1 gets base bias via phototransistor and resistor R6. The alarm sounds continuously until reset switch S2 is pressed. When switch S2 is pressed, transistor T1 is switched ‘off’ to bring pin 4 of IC1 to ‘low’ state and the alarm is disabled.

STEPPER MOTOR DRIVER

PIYUSH P. TAILOR

Stepper motors are widely used where precision and accuracy are the primary considerations during rotation or positioning. Microprocessors or microcontrollers are often employed for controlling their operation. But it may not always be convenient or necessary to use microcontrollers, as it would make the gadget unnecessarily costlier.

Here is a simple and low-cost circuit to drive a stepper motor on full power for any number of whole steps. The present circuit is intended to drive four-winding stepper motors, but one can easily modify it for other types.

The popular decade counter CD4017 (IC1) with decoded outputs is used here as a sequence generator (similar to the running-light effect). As we need only four outputs, the fifth output (pin 10) is connected to the RESET pin (pin 15). The four outputs, in conjunction with four npn power transistors, function as half-power full-step drivers. In order to get full power, eight diodes (8 x 1N4148) are used. Truth Table I depicts the half-power operation, while truth Table II depicts the full-power operation.

The use of hex inverter IC2 (CD4069) gives two benefits:

1. The inversion through NOT gates allows the use of pnp power transistors (4 x BD140), which make it possible to ground the common terminal of the motor. This is useful in many applications.

2. The two unused inverter gates (N1 and N2) are handy to use as clock generator, in conjunction with preset VR1 and capacitor C1. Varying the preset allows the change in clock frequency and hence the speed of the motor.

If one does not know the sequence of motor terminals to be connected to terminals A through D of the circuit, then first connect any one terminal of motor to terminal A of the circuit and connect common terminal to the ground. Now give the lowest possible supply (3V) and check for correct sequence of the remaining three terminals, using trial-and-error method for the maximum six combinations/possibilities. At correct sequence, the motor would rotate in either clockwise or anticlockwise direction.

To use external clock pulses, simply disconnect pin 14 of CD4017 from pin 4 of CD4069 and then connect external clock pulses to pin 14 of CD4017. Each pulse drives the motor by one step, which may normally be 1.8° or 3.6°, as shown on the label plate of the motor.

To reverse the direction of rotation, one should interchange terminals A with B and C with D simultaneously.

The colours of motor terminal wires, shown in the diagram, are those of the stepper motor used in head-drive of a 1.2MB floppy disk drive unit, operating on 12V with a 3.6°/step, which the author

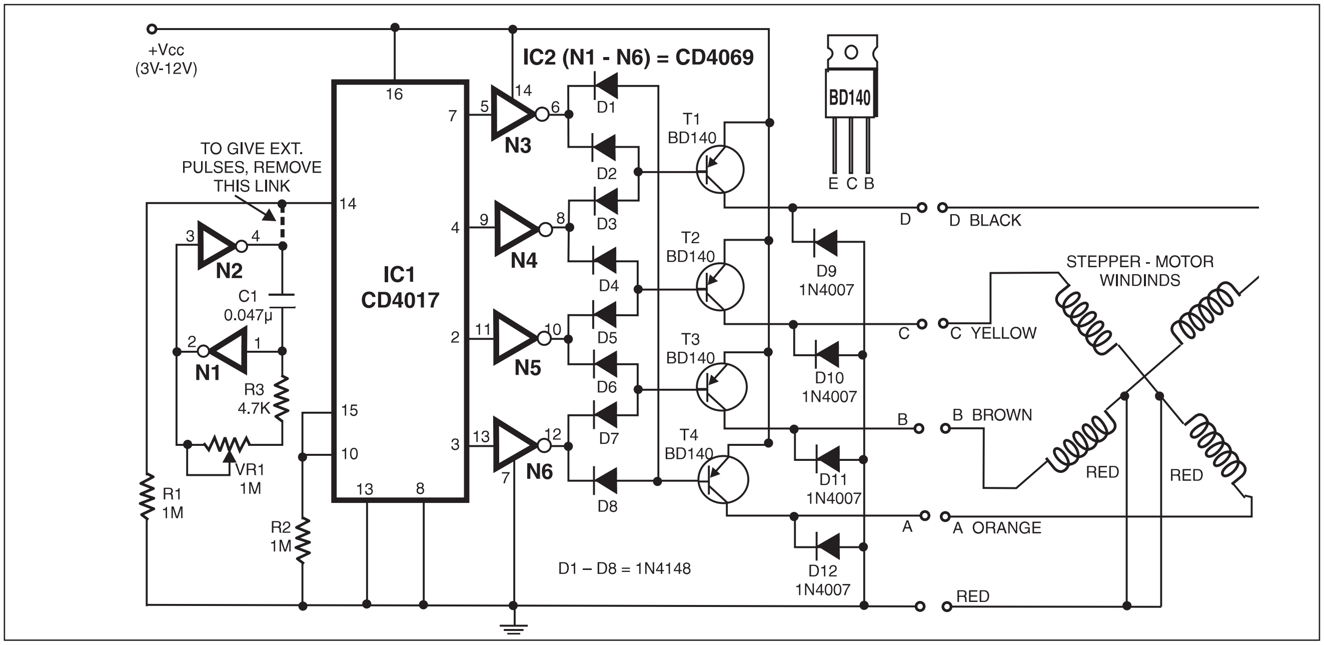


TABLE I
Half-Power Operation

Step number	Supply to coils A	B	C	D
1	On	Off	Off	Off
2	Off	On	Off	Off
3	Off	Off	On	Off
4	Off	Off	Off	On
5 Repetition	On	Off	Off	Off
|	|	|	|	|
|	|	|	|	|

TABLE II
Full-Power Operation

Step number	Supply to coils A	B	C	D
1	On	On	Off	Off
2	Off	On	On	Off
3	Off	Off	On	On
4	On	Off	Off	On
5 Repetition	On	On	Off	Off
|	|	|	|	|
|	|	|	|	|

has used in his prototype.

Notes: 1. Heat-sinks may not be required for the power transistors.

2. Supply voltage for the circuit is equal to the operating voltage of the motor (i.e. between 3V and 12V).

3. RPM of motor = $\frac{f \times d}{6}$, where f is the frequency of clock pulses and d the angular displacement in degrees per step.

ELECTRONIC DIGITAL TACHOMETER

ADITYA U. RANE

Tachometer is nothing but a simple electronic digital transducer. It finds many applications in our day-to-day life.

Normally, a tachometer is used for measuring the speed of a rotating shaft, gear, or a pulley. A tape or a contrasting stripe is pasted on the rotating part of the machinery. The reflected light from the contrasting stripe falls on the junctionof the sensor module to alternately activate and deactivate it, depending upon the size and width of the tape pasted on the pulley or rotating part of the machine. Hence, one gets the output in the form of sharp pulses for every revolution.

Apart from counting the revolutions of a moving object, the circuit can also be used for counting the objects on a conveyer belt.

The basic digital tachometer circuit consists of two stages. The first stage is a simple monostable, wired around IC NE555. The second stage consists of a digital counter based on 4-digit counter IC 74C926. When light from any source falls on junction of the infrared module, its output goes low. This output is connected to pin 2 of NE555 (configured as a monostable) to trigger it.

The output pulses from pin 3 are connected to clock pin 12 of 74C926. Hence, on receipt of every pulse, the count of IC 74C926 increments by one. For checking the revolutions in a predetermined time period, a stopwatch may be used. Before counting starts, depress reset switch S1 and release it as soon as counting is to start. At the instant when counting is to end, one should immediately withdraw either the sensor module or switch 'off' the light source to see the final reading (revolutions) on the display. Accuracy will be better if the counting period is comparatively larger.

The 74C926 is basically a 4-digit counter module, which can count from 0000 to its maximum possible value of 9999. It can be operated with V_{CC} of 3 to 15 volts. Here, regulated 5-volt supply is used for the entire circuit. The circuit shown in Fig. 2 employs 7805 regulator. This 4-digit counter can be readily interfaced to many circuits such as clock-frequency meter, digital voltmeter, tachometer (as explained here), stop watch, etc. A reset switch is connected between pin 13 and V_{CC}.

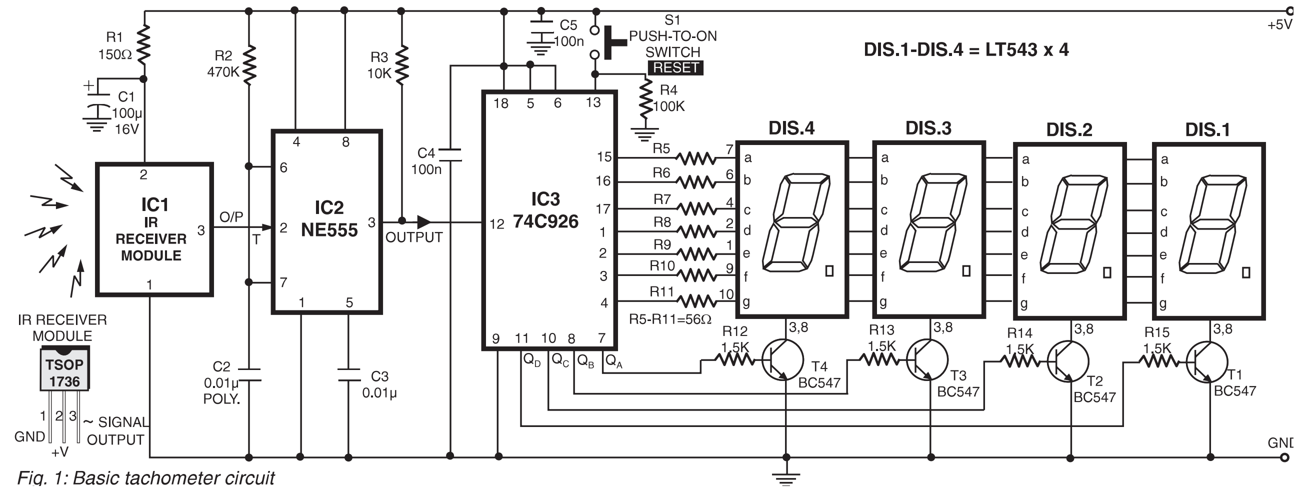

R1
150Ω
C1
100µ
16V
R2
470K
R3
10K
C5
100n
S1
PUSH-TO-ON
SWITCH
RESET
R4
100K
DIS.1-DIS.4 = LT543 x 4
+5V
IC1
IR
RECEIVER
MODULE
O/P
T
IC2
NE555
C4
100n
OUTPUT
IC3
74C926
R5
R6
R7
R8
R9
R10
R11
R5-R11=56Ω
DIS.4
DIS.3
DIS.2
DIS.1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
3,8
R12
1.5K
T4
BC547
R13
1.5K
T3
BC547
R14
1.5K
T2
BC547
R15
1.5K
T1
BC547
IR RECEIVER
MODULE
TSOP
1736
GND
+V
~ SIGNAL
OUTPUT
C2
0.01µ
POLY.
C3
0.01µ
QD
QC
QB
QA
GND

Fig. 1: Basic tachometer circuit

The chip 74C926 pulls its carry output (pin 4) 'high' when the counter reaches 6,000. This output can be suitably used in clock circuits for resetting; for example, if the clock input is 100 Hz per second, the carry output will be available every minute. However, here we are not using the carry output.

There are different versions of 4-digit counter modules for different applications. For example, in 74C927, the second most significant digit gets divided by 6, rather than 10. Similarly, in 74C928, the most significant digit gets divided by 2, rather than 10, and its carry output goes 'high' at the count of 2000, and 'low' only when the reset switch is pulled 'high'.

Figs 3 and 4 show the applications of the electronic digital tachometer. Basic principle in both these applications is the same. The important factor is that maximum reflected light from the contrasting stripe should fall on the IR detector, i.e. θ1 should be equal to θ2. The other important thing is that the contrasting stripe may be a mirror with a small piece of tape pasted on it, as shown in Fig. 5.

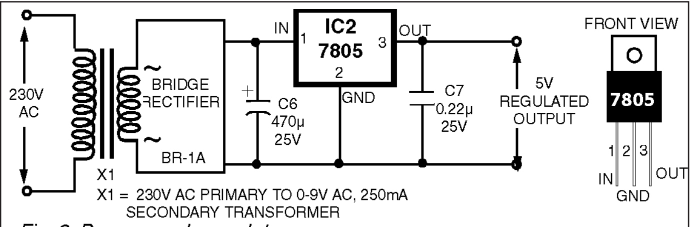

230V
AC
X1
BRIDGE
RECTIFIER
BR-1A
C6
470µ
25V
IN
IC2
7805
OUT
GND
C7
0.22µ
25V
5V
REGULATED
OUTPUT
FRONT VIEW
7805
1 2 3
IN
GND
OUT
X1 = 230V AC PRIMARY TO 0-9V AC, 250mA
SECONDARY TRANSFORMER

Fig. 2: Power supply regulator

Fig. 6 shows another application of the same circuit for counting the objects moving over a conveyer belt. The only difference between applications shown in Figs 3, 4, and 6 is that in the first two applications, one requires a contrasting stripe, whereas in case of Fig. 6, one requires a light source and a sensor module which are kept on the opposite sides of the conveyer belt.

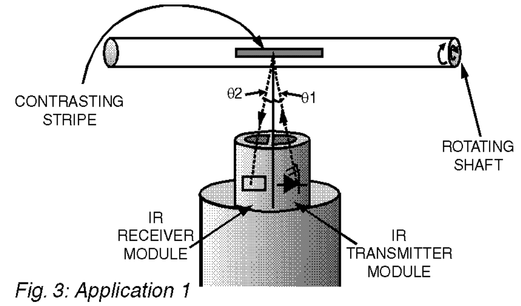

CONTRASTING
STRIPE
θ2
θ1
ROTATING
SHAFT
IR
RECEIVER
MODULE
IR
TRANSMITTER
MODULE

Fig. 3: Application 1

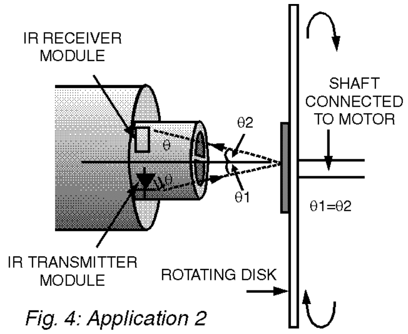

IR RECEIVER
MODULE
SHAFT
CONNECTED
TO MOTOR
θ2
θ
θ
θ1
θ1=θ2
IR TRANSMITTER
MODULE
ROTATING DISK

Fig. 4: Application 2

When there is no object between the source (light) and the sensor module, one gets a continuous pulse at the output pin 3 of monostable IC NE555. But as soon as the object on moving conveyer belt obstructs the light path, the output of NE555 goes 'low'. Since output pin 3 of NE555 is connected to the clock input pin 12 of 74C926, the number of objects get counted continuously—up to 9999, using a single 74C926. A simple IR light-source circuit is shown in Fig. 7.

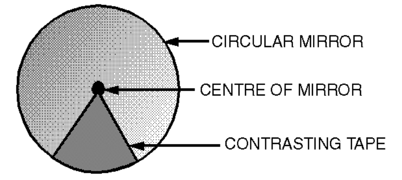

CIRCULAR MIRROR
CENTRE OF MIRROR
CONTRASTING TAPE

Fig. 5: Use of contrasting stripe

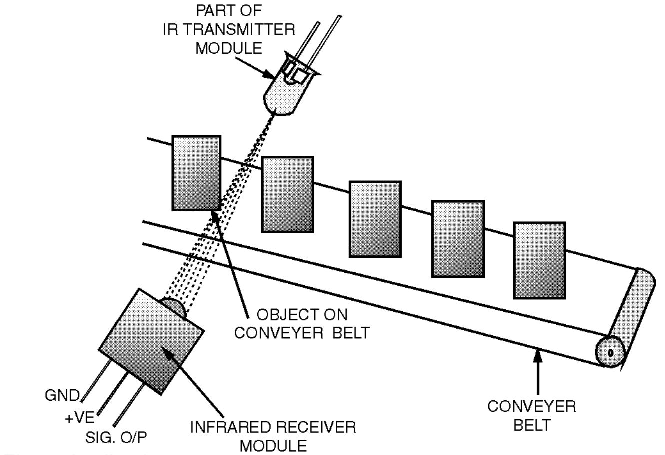

PART OF
IR TRANSMITTER
MODULE
OBJECT ON
CONVEYER BELT
GND
+VE
SIG. O/P
INFRARED RECEIVER
MODULE
CONVEYER
BELT

Fig. 6: Application 3

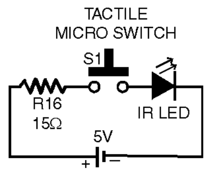

TACTILE
MICRO SWITCH
S1
R16
15Ω
IR LED
5V

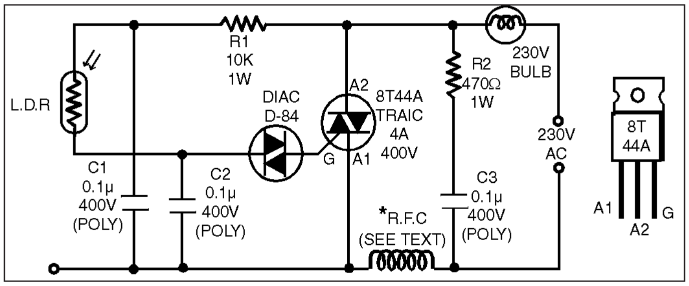
Fig. 7: IR light source

LIGHT-OPERATED LIGHT SWITCH

PRADEEP G.

Here is a light-operated, remote-controlled solidstate switch to operate a lamp. During darkness, the resistance of LDR shoots up to meg-ohm range. Thus, the triac does not get gate drive and hence it does not conduct.

When LDR is illuminated by means of a torch-light beam, the resistance of LDR suddenly decreases (below 10-kilo-ohm). This causes the triac to conduct and switch 'on' the lamp. Light received from the lamp (not from the torch) keeps LDR's resistance low. So, the lamp remains continuously 'on'. Once the lamp is 'on', it can be switched 'off' again by interrupting the light falling on LDR, by either waving hand in front of it or by interrupting power supply to the circuit for a moment.


L.D.R
R1
10K
1W
DIAC
D-84
A2
8T44A
TRAIC
4A
400V
G
A1
R2
470Ω
1W
230V
BULB
230V
AC
C1
0.1μ
400V
(POLY)
C2
0.1μ
400V
(POLY)
*R.F.C
(SEE TEXT)
C3
0.1μ
400V
(POLY)
8T
44A
A1
A2
G

RFC employed here can be made by winding about 15 turns of 18 SWG wire over an insulated ferrite rod.

PRECISION DIGITAL AC POWER CONTROLLER

PRATAP CHANDRA SAHU

SCRs and Triacs are extensively used in modern electronic power controllers—in which power is controlled by means of phase angle variation of the conduction period. Controlling the phase angle can be made simple and easy if we set different firing times corresponding to different firing angles. The design given here is a synchronised programmable timer which achieves this objective.

The following equation for a sinewave shows how firing time and the phase angle are related to each other:

$\theta = 2\pi ft$ or $\theta \propto t$

Here, θ is the angle described by a sinewave in time t (seconds), while f is the frequency of sinewave in Hz. Time period T (in seconds) of a sinewave is

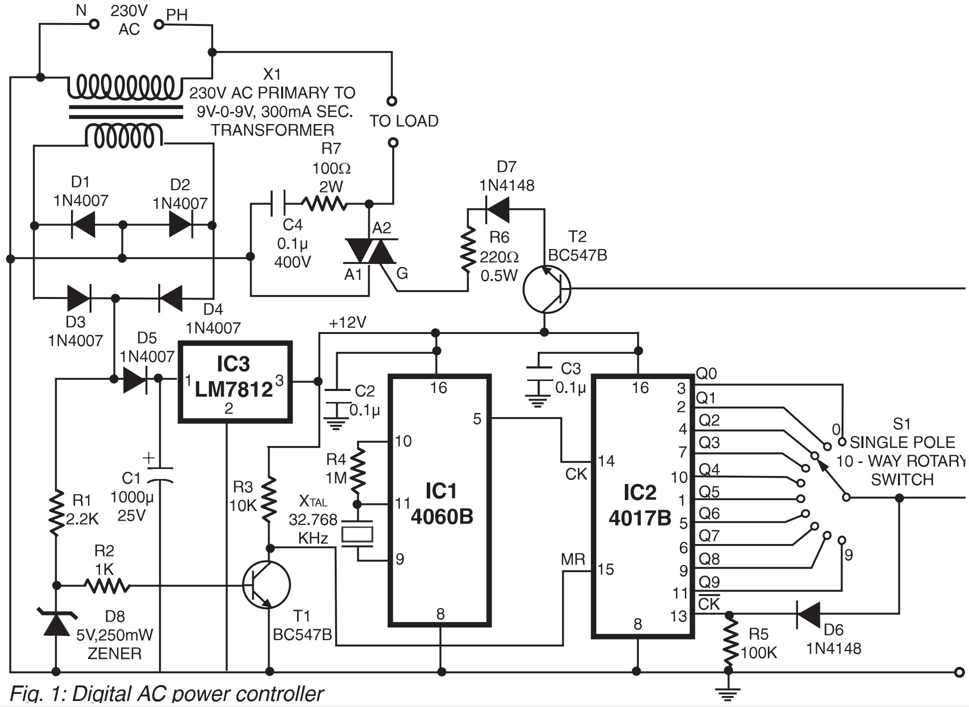

N
230V
AC
PH
X1
230V AC PRIMARY TO
9V-0-9V, 300mA SEC.
TRANSFORMER
TO LOAD
R7
100Ω
2W
C4
0.1μ
400V
A2
A1
G
D7
1N4148
R6
220Ω
0.5W
T2
BC547B
D1
1N4007
D2
1N4007
D3
1N4007
D4
1N4007
D5
1N4007
+12V
IC3
LM7812
1
2
3
C2
0.1μ
C3
0.1μ
C1
1000μ
25V
R1
2.2K
R2
1K
D8
5V,250mW
ZENER
R3
10K
R4
1M
XTAL
32.768
KHz
T1
BC547B
IC1
4060B
16
5
10
11
9
8
IC2
4017B
16
14
CK
MR
15
8
3
2
4
7
10
1
5
6
9
11
13
Q0
Q1
Q2
Q3
Q4
Q5
Q6
Q7
Q8
Q9
CK
0
9
S1
SINGLE POLE
10 - WAY ROTARY
SWITCH
R5
100K
D6
1N4148

Fig. 1: Digital AC power controller

equal to the reciprocal of its frequency, i.e. T = 1/f.

The above equation indicates that if one divides the angle described during one complete cycle of the sinewave (2π = 360°) into equal parts, then time period T of the wave will be divided into identical equal parts. Thus, it becomes fairly easy to set the different programmable timings synchronised with the AC mains sinewave at zero crossing. The main advantage of such an arrangement, as already mentioned earlier, is that only the firing time has to be programmed to set different firing angles. It is to be noted that the more precise the timer, the more precise will be the power being controlled.

In this circuit, the time period of mains waveform is divided into 20 equal parts. So, there is a time interval of 1 ms between two consecutive steps. The sampling voltage is unfiltered full-wave and is obtained from the diode bridge at the output of the power transformer. The timer is reset at every zero crossing of full wave and set again instantly for the next delay time. This arrangement helps the timer to be set for every half of mains wave—when the positive half of the mains waveform starts building up, the timer is set for that half and as it begins to cross zero, it gets reset and set again for negative half, when the negative half begins to build up. The process is repeated. Here, instead of using two zero crossing detectors—one for each half of mains wave—a single detector is used to perform both the functions. This is possible because the sampling wave for negative half is inverted by the rectifier diode bridge.

The 18V AC from power transformer is fed to the four diodes in bridge configuration, followed by the filter capacitor which is again followed by a three-terminal voltage regulator IC LM7812. The voltage so obtained drives the circuit. The unfiltered voltage is isolated from the filter capacitor by a diode and is fed to zener diode D8, which acts as a clipper to clip voltage above 6 volts.

This voltage is fed to the base of transistor T1, which is wired as zero crossing detector. When base voltage reaches the threshold, it conducts. It thus supplies a narrow positive pulse which resets the timer at every zero crossing.

A 32.768kHz crystal is used to get stable output of nearly 1 kHz (1,024Hz) frequency after five stages of binary division by an oscillator-cum-divider IC CD4060. The 32.768kHz crystal is used because it can be found in unused quartz clocks and is readily available in the market. But use of a 1kHz crystal using a quad-NAND IC CD4093 as clock generator, as shown in Fig. 2, is better as it provides the exact time interval required. In that case, CD4060 oscillator/divider is not required.

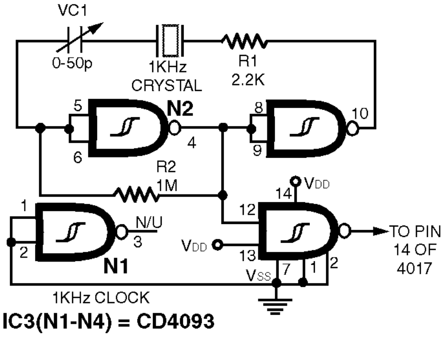


Fig. 2: 1kHz clock

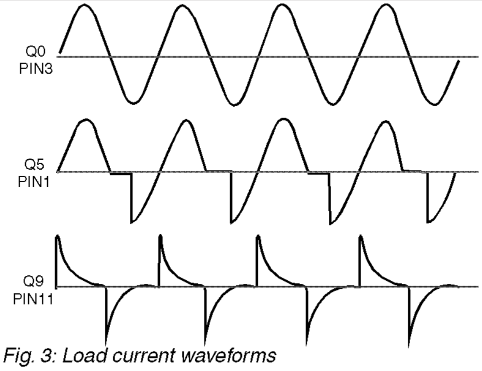


Fig. 3: Load current waveforms

The CD4017B counter-cum-decoder IC then divides this 1kHz signal into ten equal intervals, which are programmed via the single-pole, 10-way rotary switch. Once the delayed output reaches the desired time interval, the corresponding output of CD4017 inhibits the counter CD4017 (via pole of rotary switch and diode D6) and fires the Triac. Transistor T2 here acts as a driver transistor. The reset pin of 4017 is connected to zero crossing detector output to reset it at every zero crossing. (The load-current waveforms for a few positions of the rotary switch, as observed at EFY Lab, are shown in Fig. 3.)

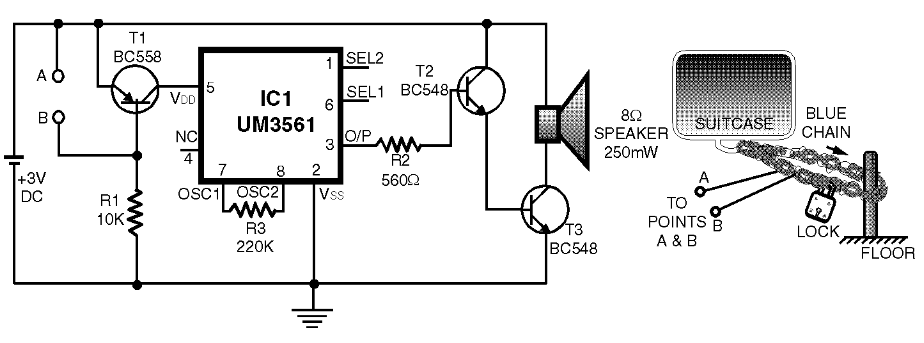
The circuit can be used as power controller in lighting equipment, hot-air oven, universal single-phase AC motor, heater, etc.

LUGGAGE SECURITY SYSTEM

DHURJATI SINHA

While travelling by a train or bus, we generally lock our luggage using a chain-and-lock arrangement. But, still we are under tension, apprehending that somebody may cut the chain and steal our luggage. Here is a simple circuit to alarm you when somebody tries to cut the chain.

Transistor T1 enables supply to the sound generator chip when the base current starts flowing through



it. When the wire (thin enameled copper wire of 30 to 40 SWG, used for winding transformers) loop around the chain is broken by somebody, the base of transistor T1, which was earlier tied to positive rail, gets opened. As a result, transistor T1 gets forward biased to extend the positive supply to the alarm circuit. In idle mode, the power consumption of the circuit is minimum and thus it can be used for hundreds of travel hours.

To enable generation of different alarm sounds, connections to pin 1 and 6 may be made as per the table.

Select 1 (Pin6)	Select 2 (Pin1)	Sound effect
X	X	Police siren
V_{DD}	X	Fire-engine siren
V_{SS}	X	Ambulance siren
"-"	V_{DD}	Machine-gun sound

Note: X = no connection; "-" = do not care

ADD-ON STEREO CHANNEL SELECTOR CUM LEVEL INDICATOR

PRABHASH K.P.

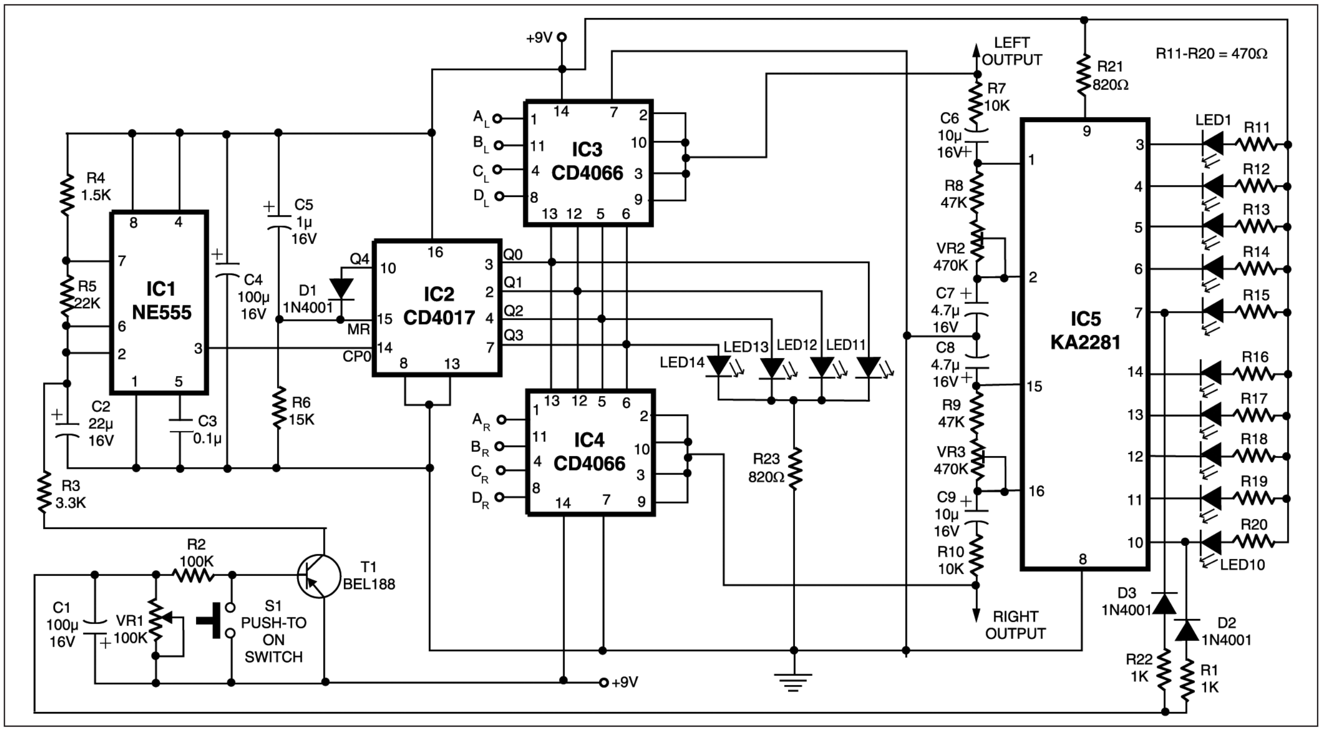
The add-on circuit presented here is useful for stereo systems. This circuit has provision for connecting stereo outputs from four different sources/ channels as inputs and only one of them is selected/ connected to the output at any one time.

When power supply is turned 'on', channel A (A_R and A_L) is selected. If no audio is present in channel A, the circuit waits for some time and then selects the next channel (channel B), This search operation continues until it detects audio signal in one of the channels. The inter-channel wait or delay time can be adjusted with the help of preset VR1. If still longer time is needed, one may replace capacitor C1 with a capacitor of higher value.

Suppose channel A is connected to a tape recorder and channel B is connected to a radio receiver. If initially channel A is selected, the audio from the tape recorder will be present at the output. After the tape is played completely, or if there is sufficient pause between consecutive recordings, the circuit automatically switches over to the output from the radio receiver. To manually skip over from one (selected) active channel, simply push the skip switch (S1) momentarily once or more, until the desired channel inputs gets selected. The selected channel (A, B, C, or D) is indicated by the glowing of corresponding LED (LED11, LED12, LED13, or LED14 respectively).

IC CD4066 contains four analogue switches. These switches are connected to four separate channels. For stereo operation, two similar CD4066 ICs are used as shown in the circuit. These analogue switches are controlled by IC CD4017 outputs. CD4017 is a 10-bit ring counter IC. Since only one of its outputs is high at any instant, only one switch will be closed at a time. IC CD4017 is configured as a 4-bit ring counter by connecting the fifth output Q4 (pin 10) to the reset pin. Capacitor C5 in conjunction with resistor R6 forms a power-on-reset circuit for IC2, so that on initial switching 'on' of the power supply, output Q0 (pin 3) is always high'. The clock signal to CD4017 is provided by IC1 (NE555) which acts as an astable multivibrator when transistor T1 is in cut-off state.

IC5 (KA2281) is used here for not


+9V
LEFT OUTPUT
R21 820Ω
R11-R20 = 470Ω
R4 1.5K
R5 22K
IC1 NE555
C2 22µ 16V
C3 0.1µ
R3 3.3K
C4 100µ 16V
C5 1µ 16V
R6 15K
D1 1N4001
Q4
MR
CP0
IC2 CD4017
Q0
Q1
Q2
Q3
A_L
B_L
C_L
D_L
IC3 CD4066
A_R
B_R
C_R
D_R
IC4 CD4066
LED14
LED13
LED12
LED11
R23 820Ω
R7 10K
C6 10µ 16V
R8 47K
VR2 470K
C7 4.7µ 16V
C8 4.7µ 16V
R9 47K
VR3 470K
C9 10µ 16V
R10 10K
RIGHT OUTPUT
IC5 KA2281
LED1
LED10
R11
R12
R13
R14
R15
R16
R17
R18
R19
R20
D3 1N4001
D2 1N4001
R22 1K
R1 1K
R2 100K
T1 BEL188
C1 100µ 16V
VR1 100K
S1 PUSH-TO ON SWITCH
+9V

only indicating the audio levels of the selected stereo channel, but also for forward biasing transistor T1. As soon as a specific threshold audio level is detected in a selected channel, pin 7 and/or pin 10 of IC5 goes 'low'. This low level is coupled to the base of transistor T1, through diode-resistor combination of D2-R1/D3-R22. As a result, transistor T1 conducts and causes output of IC1 to remain 'low' (disabled) as long as the selected channel output exceeds the preset audio threshold level.

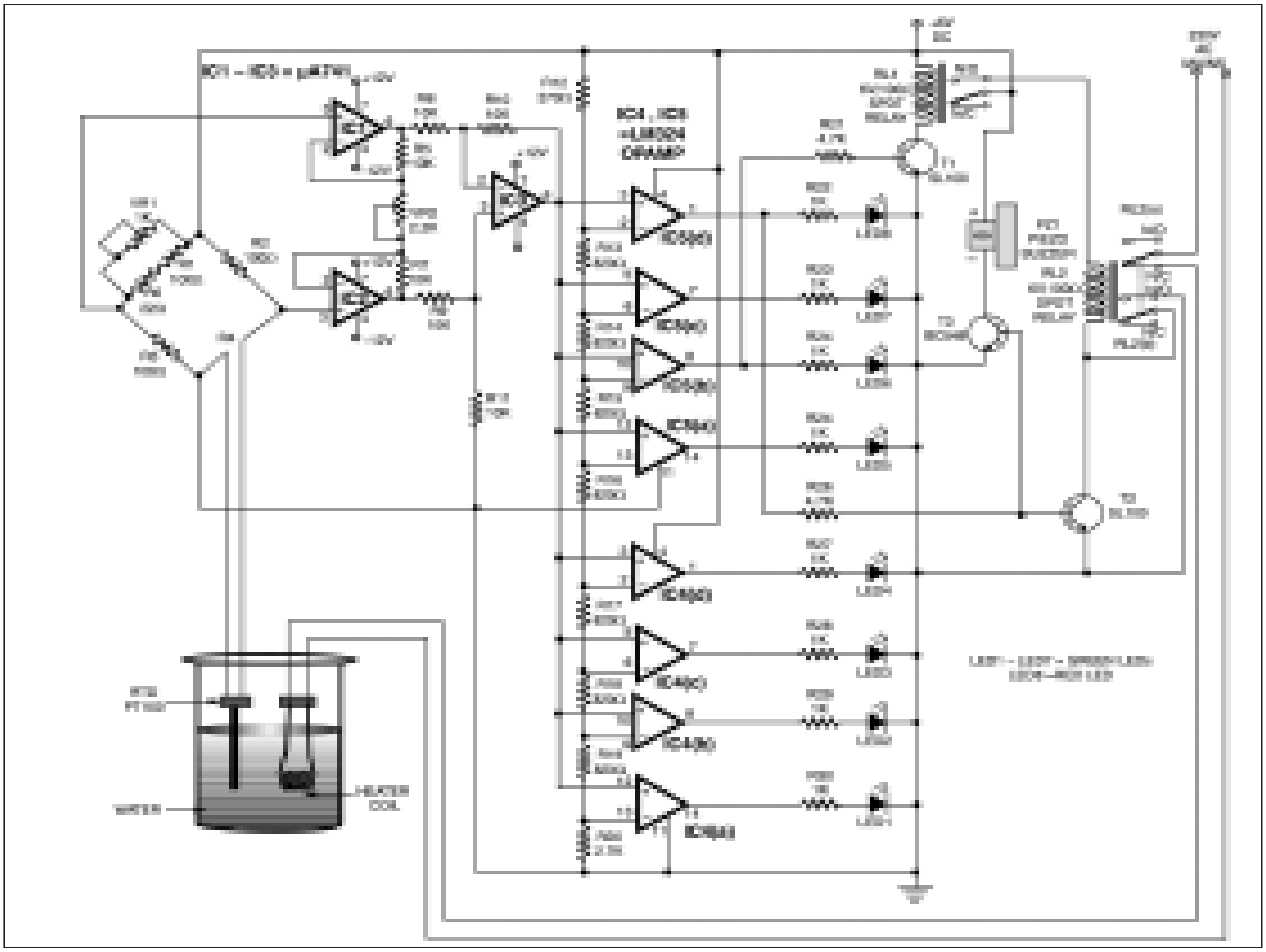
Presets VR2 and VR3 have been included for adjustment of individual audio threshold levels of left and right stereo channels, as desired. Once the multivibrator action of IC1 is disabled, output of IC2 does not change further. Hence, searching through the channels continues until it receives an audio signal exceeding the preset threshold value. The skip switch S1 is used to skip a channel even if audio is present in the selected channel. The number of channels can be easily extended up to ten, by using additional 4066 ICs.

WATER TEMPERATURE CONTROLLER

VIJAY D. SATHE

The circuit presented here controls the temperature of water as well as indicates it on an LED bargraph. When the temperature of water is 0° C, none of the bargraph display LEDs glows. But as the temperature starts increasing above approximately 30°C, LEDs from LED1 through LED8 of the bargraph start glowing one after the other. When temperature is around 30°C, only LED1 would be 'on'. For temperature greater than 97°C, all display LEDs will be 'on'.

To detect the temperature of water, commonly used resistance-temperature detector (RTD) PT100 is used. It is connected to one of the arms of a Wheatstone bridge as shown in the figure. RTD PT100 has a resistance of 100 ohms when surrounding temperature is 0°C. (To cater to resistance tolerances and calibration, resistor R6 (22-ohm) and 1-kilo-ohm preset VR1 were added at EFY lab. during testing.) Ideally, at 0°C, the bridge has to be in balanced condition and, for other temperatures, the bridge will be unbalanced. The unbalanced voltage of the bridge is converted into suitable value in the range 0V to 5V (corresponding to temperatures 0°C to 100°C, respectively) by the instrumentation amplifier formed by op-amps IC1 through IC3 (uA741). Output of instrumentation



amplifier is coupled to voltage comparators for driving the display LEDs.

Before using this circuit, the following adjustments have to be made. First, immerse the RTD in ice cold water (0°C) and adjust preset VR1 such that the bridge becomes balanced and the output of IC3 becomes 0V. Next, immerse the RTD in boiling water and slightly adjust preset VR2 such that the output of IC3 becomes 6V. Respeat the above two steps four to five times.

To control the temperature of water, 'on'/'off' type controller is used. Lower threshold point is set at 80°C, while upper threshold point is set at 97°C. An electric heater coil is used for heating the water. When power supply is switched 'on', the heater starts heating the water. When temperature reaches 80°C, output of IC5(b) goes 'high'. This turns 'on' relay driver transistor T1 to energise relay RL1. In this state, relay RL2 is in 'off' condition. When temperature of water crosses 97°C, output of IC5(d) goes 'high'. This makes transistor T2 'on', which, in turn, energises relay RL2. Relay RL2 in energised state cuts off power supply to the heater coil. Relay RL2, once energised, remains so due to the latching arrangement provided by its second pair of contacts. Simultaneously, the buzzer also sounds, due to forward biasing of transistor T3.

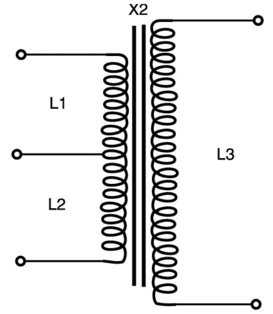
Since the supply to the heater is cut-off, the temperature of water starts decreasing. Gradually, the buzzer goes 'off', as output of IC5(d) goes 'low'. When temperature goes below 80°C, output of IC5(b) goes 'low' to turn 'off' transistor T1 and relay RL1. As a result, the power supply provided to relay RL2 (via RL1 N/O contacts) is cut off and relay RL2 de-energises. This will again turn 'on' the mains electric power supply to the heater coil. Once again, the temperature of water starts increasing and the cycle repeats to maintain water temperature within the limits 80°C to 97°C.

This controller can be used to control the temperature of water in water heaters, boilers, etc. The lower and upper threshold points can be changed by connecting the base terminals of transistors T1 and T2 to different output terminals of voltage comparators (IC4 and IC5). Base terminals of transistors T1 and T2 are meant for lower and upper threshold points, respectively.

EMERGENCY LIGHT

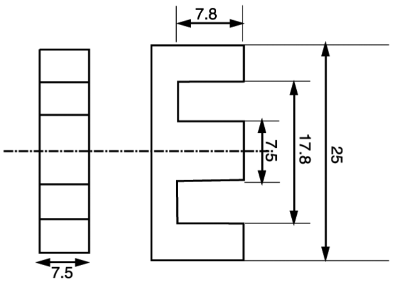
RAJESH KAMBOJ

The circuit of emergency light presented here is unique in the sense that it is automatic, compact, reliable, low-cost, and easy to assemble. The circuit consists of four sections, namely, battery charging section, inverter section, changeover section, and low battery voltage indication section.



L1 = 27 SWG, 12 TURNS
L2 = 27 SWG, 24TURNS
L3 = 36 SWG, 400TURNS

Fig. 2: Details of ferrite core transformer



NOTE:ALL DIMENSIONS IN mm

Fig. 3: Details of EE 25x13x7 ferrite core

In the battery charging section, 230V AC mains is converted to 9V AC using step-down transformer X1. The diodes D1 and D2 from a full-wave rectifier, and capacitor C1 filters the rectified voltage. The output of filter is about 12V DC, which is connected to the collector of transistor T1 provides a fixed bias of 8.2V. Thus, transistor T1 works as a regulator and provides a constant voltage for charging the lead-acid battery. LED1 indicates the charging of battery.

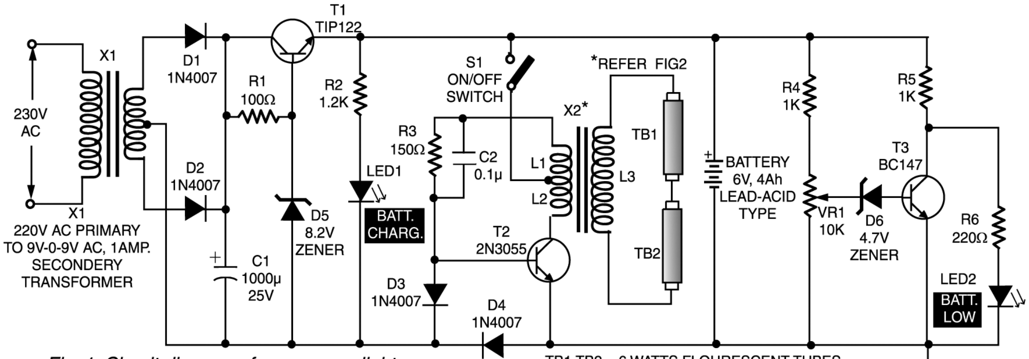


Fig. 1: Circuit diagram of emergency light

TB1,TB2 = 6 WATTS FLOURESCENT TUBES

The inverter section comprises transformer X2, transistor T2, capacitor C2 and resistor R3. Transformer X2 is ferrite core type. Its winding details are shown in Fig. 2, while core details are shown in Fig. 3. Resistor R3 provides DC bias to the base of transistor T2, while capacitor C2 couples the positive AC feed-back from winding L1 to the base of transistor T2 to sustain the oscillations. The AC power developed across primary winding L2 is transferred to secondary winding L3, which ultimately lights up the fluorescent tubes.

The changeover section uses diodes D3 and D4 as an automatic switch. In the presence of AC mains supply, diode D3 keeps transistor T2 in its cut-off state, while diode D4 provides DC path for charging of the battery. But, in the absence of AC mains supply, diode D4 is reverse biased and acts as an 'off' switch, inhibiting the conduction of diode D3, which allows normal functioning of transistor T2. The inverter can be switched 'off', when not required, by using 'on/off' switch S1.

Low battery voltage indicator circuit comprises transistor T3, sensor diode D6, LED 2, variable resistor VR1, and resistors R4 through R6. The low battery indication can be adjusted from 4.7V to 5V by using variable resistor VR1. When the battery voltage is above 4.7V, zener diode D6 remains in the breakdown region, keeping transistor T3 in 'on' state. As a result, LED2 does not glow. But if the battery voltage discharges to a level below 4.7V, zener diode D6 comes out of conduction, keeping transistor T3 at cut-off level. At the same time, LED2 gives the indication of low battery voltage.

The whole circuit can be assembled in a cabinet of emergency light suitably.

Readers queries:

(A) I would like the author to clarify the following points:

1. Is it possible to use 11W to 40W tubes in place of two 6W tubes?
2. Can a buzzer be added in the 'Batt-Low' section to get beep indication for every second up to five times and continuous buzzer indication after battery-low cut-off is reached?
3. Can I use this circuit as an inverter for electronic weighing machine. Also, please give short-circuit overload protection circuit for this emergency light.
4. How can we maximise the battery backup time?
5. Is there any problem in using SMF or tubular battery?
6. Can you please add a charging voltage cut-off circuit to avoid overcharging of battery.

Praveen Kumar S.
Bangalore

The author, Rajesh Kumar Kamboj, replies:

1. One can replace two 6W tubes with an 11W tube. The circuit has been designed to deliver power up to 12W. Therefore it is not feasible to use tubes beyond 12W rating. A large modification in the circuit changes its basic design parameters. Hence, if one wants to use more power, one may refer to '50Hz Sinewave Inverter Using MOSFETs' circuit published in Nov. '99 issue of EFY (Electronics Projects Vol. 20), or other similar circuits that have been published in EFY from time to time.

2. It is possible to add a beeper circuit in the 'low-battery voltage indication section', to get one beep per second for a desired time and then a continuous beep indication. The circuit, shown in Fig. 1, is designed for such a purpose. IC1 is configured as a monostable multivibrator while IC2 is configured as an astable multivibrator. The frequency (beeps per second) can be varied by using variable resistance VR2. Similarly, the time-period to get five beeps or more can be changed by varying the variable resistance VR1.

Transistor T1 receives the low-battery voltage indication signal at its base from the collector of transistor T3 of the emergency light's circuit and generates a low going pulse to trigger pin 2 of IC1 (NE555). During the same period, pin 6 of IC3 (CD4011) also receives enable signal for NAND gate from the collector of transistor T3. The signals generated by IC1 (NE555) and IC2 (NE555) are processed by IC3 (CD4011). Transistor T2 gets the processed signal at its base from pin 10 of IC3 (CD4011) through resistor R4 to give desired results.

3. It is not advisable to use the circuit of 'Emergency Light' as an inverter for electronic weighing machine because electronic weighing machine operates on 50 Hz power supply, while this circuit operates on a frequency in ultrasonic range. As a result, electronic components used in electronic weighing machine may be effected. One can use a 2.5A rated fuse or overload thermal cutout of proper rating for short-circuit protection.

4. By avoiding extra circuitry and charging the battery properly, it is possible to get maximum backup from the battery. However, one can use a single 6W tube instead of using two tubes for longer backup time.

5. Rechargeable sealed maintenance-free battery as well as tubular battery of proper rating can be used.

6. The battery charging section is designed to provide constant 6.8V across battery's terminals, which is less than the maximum charging voltage specified at 6.9V. When the battery is charged to a level of 6.8V, the voltage level of battery becomes equal to that of charging section. As a result, current in the circuit is nearly zero. Therefore there is no need to add a cut-off circuit.

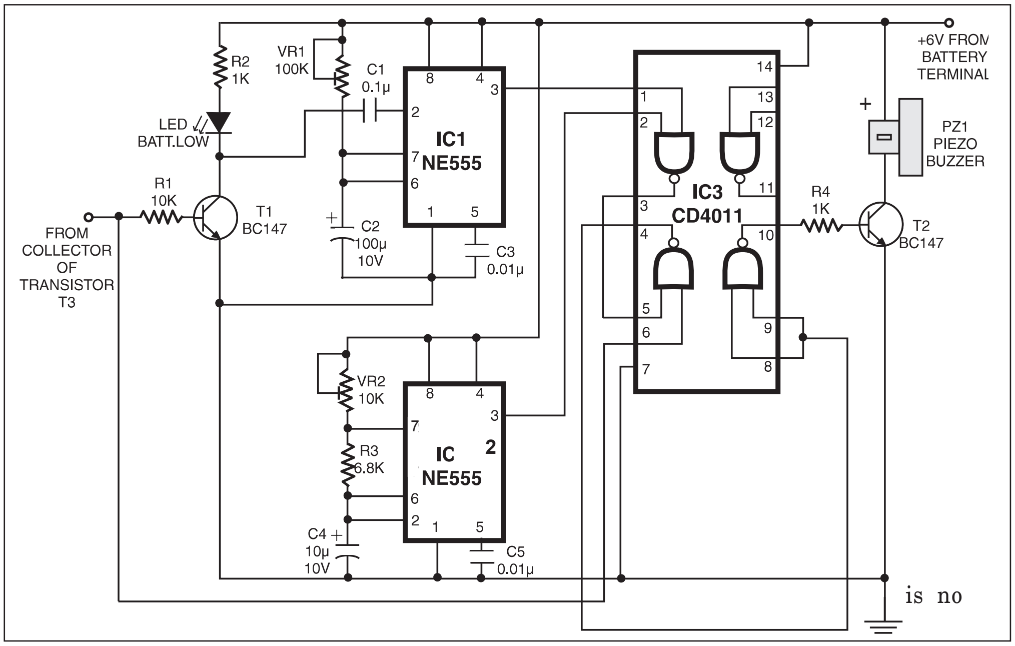


Fig. 1: Audio-visual indication of low-battery condition in emergency light circuit proposed by the author

(B) 1. Can we light only one tube or do we always have to keep both tubes 'on'?

2. What changes have to be done for low voltage cut-off of the tube, if battery voltage goes below specified limit?

3. Can TIP-122 transistor charge a battery of 6V-10Ah ?

4. Can we use this circuit for charging section?

5. Please give pin details for TIP-122

K. Kamaruzaman
Jeddah

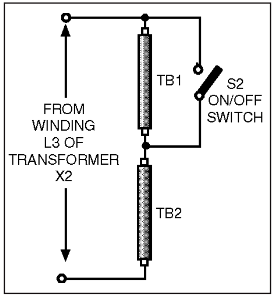

FROM WINDING L3 OF TRANSFORMER X2
TB1
TB2
S2 ON/OFF SWITCH

Fig. 2: Connection of single or double tubelights using a switch

The author, Rajesh K. Kamboj, replies:

1. Yes, it is possible to light-up a single tube, if one is not interested in lighting both the tubes simultaneously. One tube can be switched-off by shorting it using an extra on/off switch S2 across one of the terminals of the tubes (refer Fig. 2).

2. One can use the circuit shown in Fig. 3 to switch-off the operation of the inverter automatically in case the battery terminal voltage goes below the specified limit.

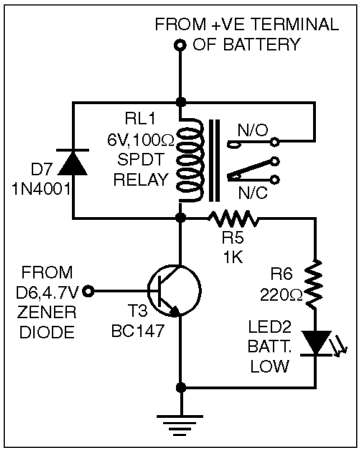

FROM +VE TERMINAL OF BATTERY
RL1 6V,100Ω SPDT RELAY
N/O
N/C
D7 1N4001
R5 1K
R6 220Ω
FROM D6,4.7V ZENER DIODE
T3 BC147
LED2 BATT. LOW

Fig. 3: Circuit to switch off the inverter

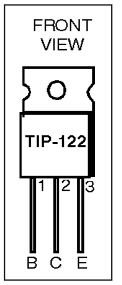

FRONT VIEW
TIP-122
1
2
3
B
C
E

Fig. 4: Pin configuration of TIP-122

3. Yes, it is possible to charge a battery of 6V, 10Ah using transistor TIP-122 in the circuit.

4. If the reader wants to operate the charging circuit up to 24V DC, the rating of zener diode D5 should be greater than 1.5 watts. Similarly, the voltage rating of capacitor C1 must be greater than 35V.

5. The pin-configuration of transistor TIP-122 is shown in Fig. 4.

PARALLEL TELEPHONE WITH SECRECY

MANUJ PAUL

Often a need arises for connection of two telephone instruments in parallel to one line. But it creates quite a few problems in their proper performance, such as over loading and overhearing of the conversation by an undesired person. In order to eliminate all such problems and get a clear reception, a simple scheme is presented here (Fig. 1).

This system will enable the incoming ring to be heard at both the telephones. The DPDT switch, installed with each of the parallel telephones, connects you to the line in one position of the switch and disconnects you in the other position of the switch. At any one time, only one telephone is connected to the line. To receive a call at the instrument, which is not connected to the line, you just have to flip the toggle switch at your telephone end to receive the call and have a conversation. As soon as the position of the toggle switch is changed, the line gets transferred to the other telephone instrument.

Mount one DPDT toggle switch, one telephone ringer, and one telephone terminal box on two wooden electrical switchboards, as shown in Fig. 3. Interconnect the boards using a 4-pair telephone cable as per Fig. 1. The system is ready to use. Ensure that the two lower leads of switch S2 are connected to switch S1 after reversal, as shown in the figure.

Lab. Note: The external ringer for the project as shown in Fig. 2, was designed/fabricated at EFY Lab.

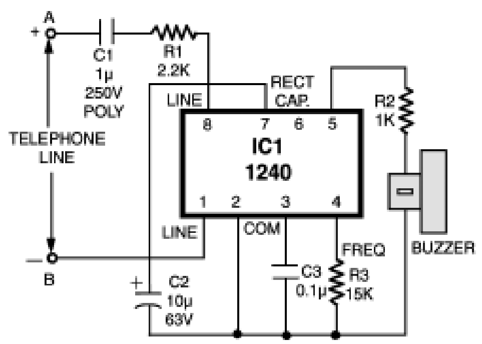

A
+
C1 1µ 250V POLY
R1 2.2K
TELEPHONE LINE
B
LINE
RECT CAP.
8
7
6
5
IC1 1240
1
2
3
4
LINE
COM
FREQ
C2 10µ 63V
C3 0.1µ
R3 15K
R2 1K
BUZZER

Fig. 2: Circuit diagram of external ringer

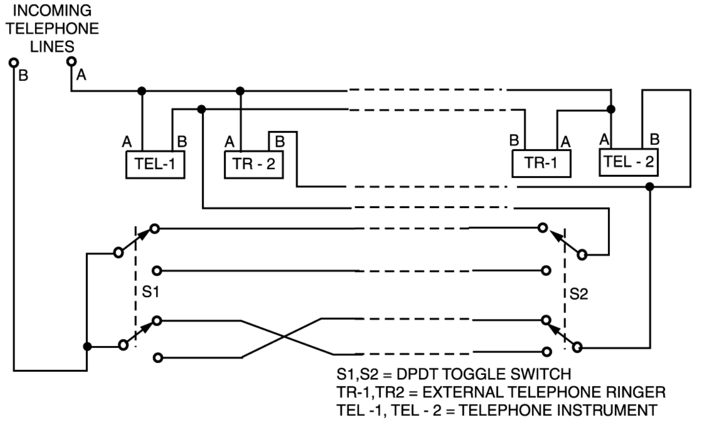

INCOMING TELEPHONE LINES
B
A
TEL-1
TR - 2
TR-1
TEL - 2
S1
S2
S1,S2 = DPDT TOGGLE SWITCH
TR-1,TR2 = EXTERNAL TELEPHONE RINGER
TEL -1, TEL - 2 = TELEPHONE INSTRUMENT

Fig. 1: Scheme for connecting two parallel telephones along with addional external ringers

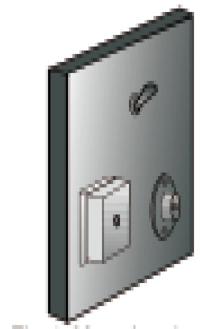


Fig. 3: Mounting details of DPDT switch, RINGER and and telephone terminal box

SINGLE DOORBELL FOR TWO DOORS

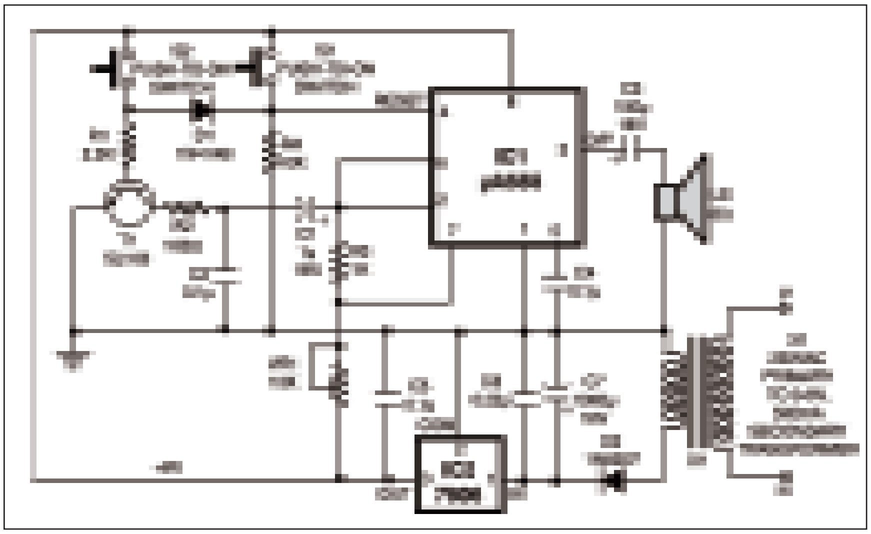
C.K. SUNITH

The circuit described here is different form conventional door bell circuits in the sense that it can produce two different tones-one of a lower frequency and the other of a much higher frequency.

The circuit uses a timer IC 555, which has been wired in free-running mode. When switch S1 is depressed, the circuit oscillates at around 1.5 kHz, resulting in a higher frequency note. When switch S2 is depressed, transistor T1 is turned 'on' and thus it shunts resistor R2 across capacitor C2. As a result, the circuit now oscillates at approximately 150 Hz and a tone of much lower frequency is generated.

The circuit can be conveniently employed as a doorbell for two separate doors at the same floor level. Doorbell switches S1 and S2 can be mounted near the respective doors.

The circuit can be assembled on a general-purpose PCB and housed inside a small cabinet. Tone can be adjusted with the help of preset VR1. Before power is switched 'on', it is advisable to adjust VR1 to approximately 5 kilo-ohm, that is, at the centre of the full range of potentiometer VR1. A trimpot can be used as VR1 for convenience of assembly.

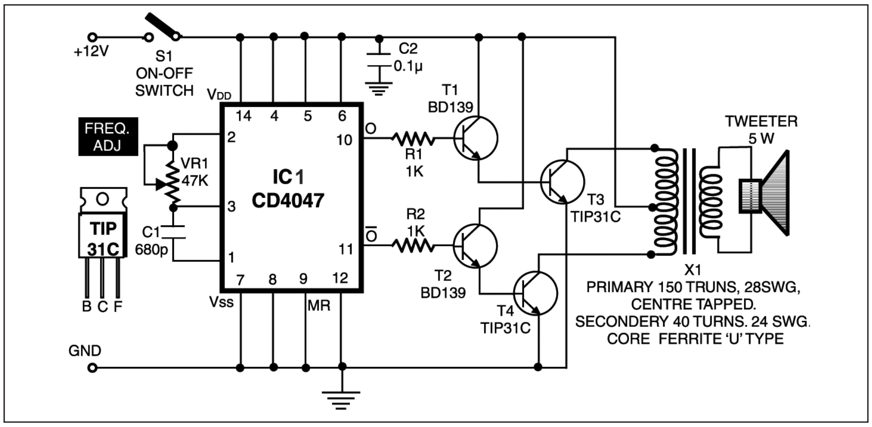


POWERFUL PEST REPELLER

PRADEEP G.

A major drawback of some pest repellers is that their power output is low and hence their effectiveness suffers. The pest repeller circuit described here generates powerful ultrasonic signals to repel pests. In addition to the ultrasonic frequency oscillator, separate push-pull power amplifier and transformer are used to boost ultrasonic signals.

Ultrasonic frequency oscillator is built around IC CD4047, which provides complementary outputs. These complementary outputs are amplified by transistors T1 and T2 (BD139) to drive transistorised push-pull power amplifier stage comprising power transistors T3 and T4 (2N3055). The output of the power amplifier is coupled to a tweeter, through output transformer X1. Transformer X1 is wound over ferrite core (UU or CC core). Primary winding consists of 150 turns of 28 SWG while secondary winding comprises 40 turns of 24 SWG wire. Adjust potentiometer VR1 for maximum effectiveness.


+12V
S1
ON-OFF
SWITCH
V_{DD}
FREQ.
ADJ
VR1
47K
TIP
31C
B C F
C1
680p
14 4 5 6
2
10
3
1
11
7 8 9 12
IC1
CD4047
Vss
MR
O
Ō
C2
0.1µ
T1
BD139
R1
1K
R2
1K
T2
BD139
T3
TIP31C
T4
TIP31C
TWEETER
5 W
X1
PRIMARY 150 TRUNS, 28SWG,
CENTRE TAPPED.
SECONDERY 40 TURNS. 24 SWG.
CORE FERRITE 'U' TYPE
GND

POWER-SUPPLY FAILURE ALARM

M.K. CHANDRA MOULEESWARAN

Most of the power-supply failure indicator circuits need a separate power-supply for themselves. But the alarm circuit presented here needs no additional supply source. It employs an electrolytic capacitor to store adequate charge, to feed power to the alarm circuit which sounds an alarm for a reasonable duration when the mains supply fails.

During the presence of mains power supply, the rectified mains voltage is stepped down to a required low level. A zener is used to limit the filtered voltage to 15-volt level. Mains presence is indicated by an LED. The low-level DC is used for charging capacitor C3 and reverse biasing switching transistor T1. Thus, transistor T1 remains cut-off as long as the mains supply is present. As soon as the mains power fails, the charge stored in the capacitor acts as a power-supply source for transistor T1. Since, in the absence of mains supply, the base of transistor is pulled 'low' via resistor R8, it conducts and sounds the buzzer (alarm) to give a warning of the power-failure.

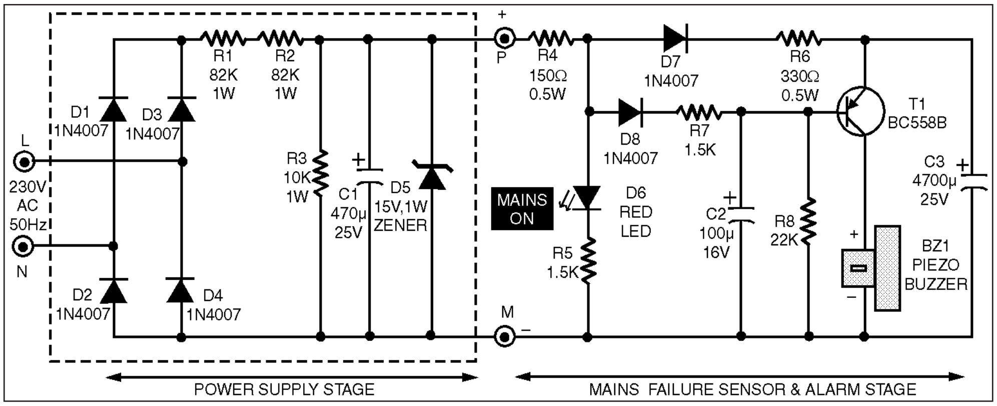
With the value of C3 as shown, a good-quality buzzer would sound for about a minute. By increasing or decreasing the value of capacitor C3, this time can be altered to serve one's need.

Assembly is quite easy. The values of the components are not critical. If the alarm circuit is powered from any external DC power-supply source, the mains-supply section up to points 'P' and 'M' can be omitted from the circuit. Following points may be noted:

1. At a higher DC voltage level, transistor T1 (BC558) may pass some collector-to-emitter leakage current, causing a continuous murmuring sound from the buzzer. In that case, replace it with some low-gain transistor.

2. Piezo buzzer must be a continuous tone version, with built-in oscillator.

To save space, one may use five small-sized 1000µF capacitors (in parallel) in place of bulky high-value capacitor C3.



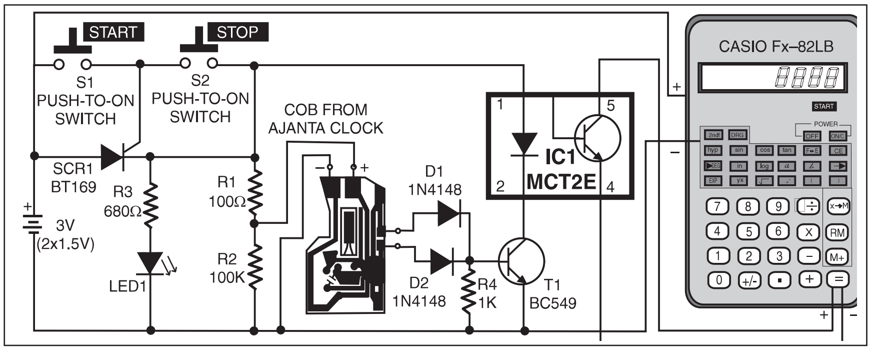
STOPWATCH USING COB AND CALCULATOR

ANANDAN M.A.

The heart of this circuit is a COB which is used in quartz clocks. SCR1 is used for 'start' and 'stop' operations. LED1 used in the circuit serves two purposes. It provides the path to satisfy the minimum holding current requirement (about 6 mA for a low-power SCR) for the SCR, to maintain it in 'on' state. By placing the LED in the vicinity of LCD, one can read the display even during darkness. The positive going output pulses from the two points of the COB (from Ajanta timepiece used by EFY) are combined to obtain one pulse per second output across resistor R4.

(***EFY Lab note:*** Please note that COBs used in different clocks may give different outputs—frequency as well as polarity—which may necessitate reversal of diodes, use of additional transistor inverter stage, and modification of key operation sequence of calculator.)

The voltage developed across resistor R4 provides forward bias for transistor T1. Transistor T1 conducts and switches 'on' the optocoupler, whose output (across collector and emitter of the in-built tran-



sistor) is connected to the two terminals of the ‘=’ (of Casio FX-82LB calculator used during actual testing at EFY) button’s keypad tracks, with collector connected to the more positive terminal than the emitter. Thus, once every second the ‘=’ button is activated.

To operate the calculator in stopwatch mode, switch on the calculator and press the keys in the following sequences:

(a) For seconds mode: [1][+][+]
(b) For minutes mode: [6][0][1/x][+][+]
(c) For hours mode: [3][6][0][0][1/x][+][+]

Note: The invoking of function (1/x) in different calculators may require pressing of a function key marked ‘INV’ or ‘SHIFT’ or ‘2ndF’, etc. Hence, use the appropriate key in your calculator for 1/x operation.

For accurate starting, press the ‘0’ key to reset the count immediately after pressing the start switch. (However, if you desire upcounting from a number other than ‘0’ second/minute/hour in respective modes, you may do so by keying that number immediately after pressing start switch.) The final reading can be taken by pressing the stop switch. The fractional portion of the results obtained during minutes mode and hours mode can be converted to sexagesimal notation (i.e. degree, minute, second) by invoking ‘° ' "’ key. For example, a display of 5.87 in hour mode will get converted to 5, 52,12 (5 hrs, 52 min., and 12 sec.) when one invokes ‘° ' "’ function key.

For downcounting in seconds, minutes, or hours mode, the procedure as outlined in the preceding paragraphs is to be followed except that keys [-][-] should be depressed in place of [+][+].

Pause/hold can be achieved by pressing the ‘=’ key continuously, or pressing switch S2. Intermediate time can be stored by pressing the ‘Min’ key. This reading can be retrieved by pressing the ‘MR’ key, after the stop switch has been pressed.

This circuit can be easily installed inside the calculator. There is a vacant space of 60x22x6 mm inside the Casio FX-82B calculator. By using a chip LED, the size restriction for installing the LED can be overcome. It can be placed near the LCD display to provide indication of the functioning of the stopwatch. The whole circuit can be assembled on a 55x20 mm PCB. The start/stop tactile switches can also be installed inside, with their operating lever popping out through a cutout above the keypad.

You may find certain keypad buttons such as ‘hyp’ which you may never require to use. Two such buttons can be removed to create place for ‘start’ and ‘stop’ switches, if required. By this arrangement, you can start or stop the clock, without affecting its working.

DIAL A VOLTAGE

RATHINDRA NATH BISWAS

In a conventional voltage-divider setup, the fixed voltage is applied across the entire network and the output is taken from across a selectable tap. Although this approach provides precision voltage output, it involves complex switching and unusually large number of resistors. Thus, it is not economical, as precision resistors are quite expensive.

A bridge that provides precision DC voltages from 0 to 10 volts, in steps of 0.01V, can be easily and economically built using a circular voltage divider. In this simple divider arrangement, the points across which the output is taken remain fixed, while the voltage source is moved from one pair of points to another.

As shown in the diagram, a total of 31 resistors are required to provide settability to within 0.01V. There are a total of three such dials. Each dial has ten resistors, except the last one (dial III), which contains eleven resistors. Dial 1 has ten resistors, having a value of 1 kilo-ohm each. It is marked from 0 to 9 volts in 1-volt steps. Dial II has ten resistors of 1,100-ohm value each. This dial is marked from 0 to 0.9 volt in 0.1 volt steps. Dial III has eleven resistors, having a value of 1,210-ohm each, with dial marking from 0 to 0.09 volt in 0.01 volt steps. The values of the resistors in a given ring are 1.1 times the values of the resistors in the preceding ring. The bridge shown in the illustration would read the value of unknown voltage as 6.43 volt (when the null detector reads ‘0’) as detailed below:

Dial I - 6 volts
Dial II - 0.4 volt
Dial II - 0.03 volt
Total : 6.43 volt

Note: *1. For the above example, the equivalent circuit has been reduced to a simpler form by EFY—in three stages, as shown in Fig. 2, for the benefit of the readers.*

2. Please do not confuse the dial voltages mentioned inside each of the three dials with the actual voltages across the associated resistors, which would be different.

The tighter the tolerance of the resistors, the more accurate will be the measurement of the unknown voltage. For null detection, any micro-ammeter or galvanometer can be used. However, the more sensitive the null detector is, the more closely the bridge output can be read. If lower value resistors are used, the bridge output impedance becomes lower. However, this would increase the power dissipation in the bridge.

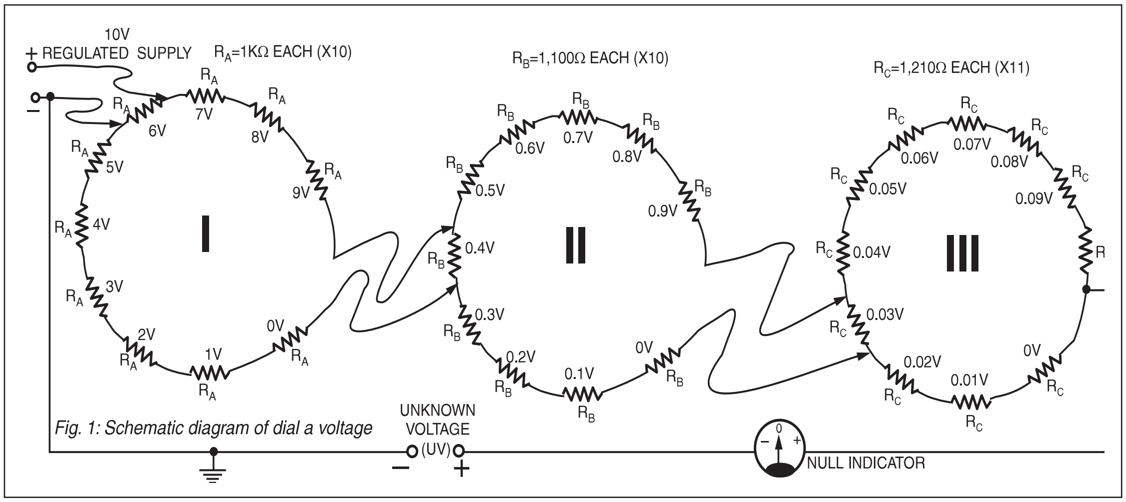


Fig. 1: Schematic diagram of dial a voltage

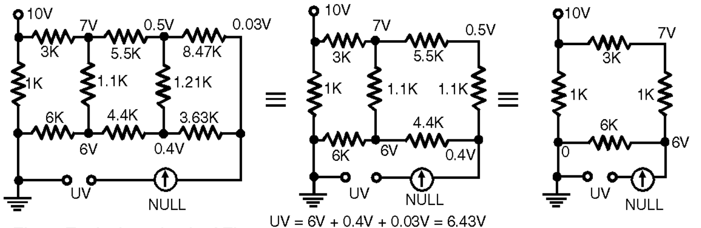


Fig. 2: Equivalent circuit of Fig. 1

The principal limitation of this arrangement is the allowable power dissipation of the resistor in the first ring, across which the full supply voltage is applied. Resistors in dial I must be able to withstand the full supply voltage of 10 volts. Regulated power supply (10-volt) only should be used in this circuit.

ELECTRONIC DANCING PEACOCK

C.K. SUNITH

All of you must have observed a dancing peacock, spreading out its beautiful feathers, turning around, closing them, and then doing it all over again. The author has attempted to reproduce a similar effect using a set of LEDs arranged according to a predetermined pattern.

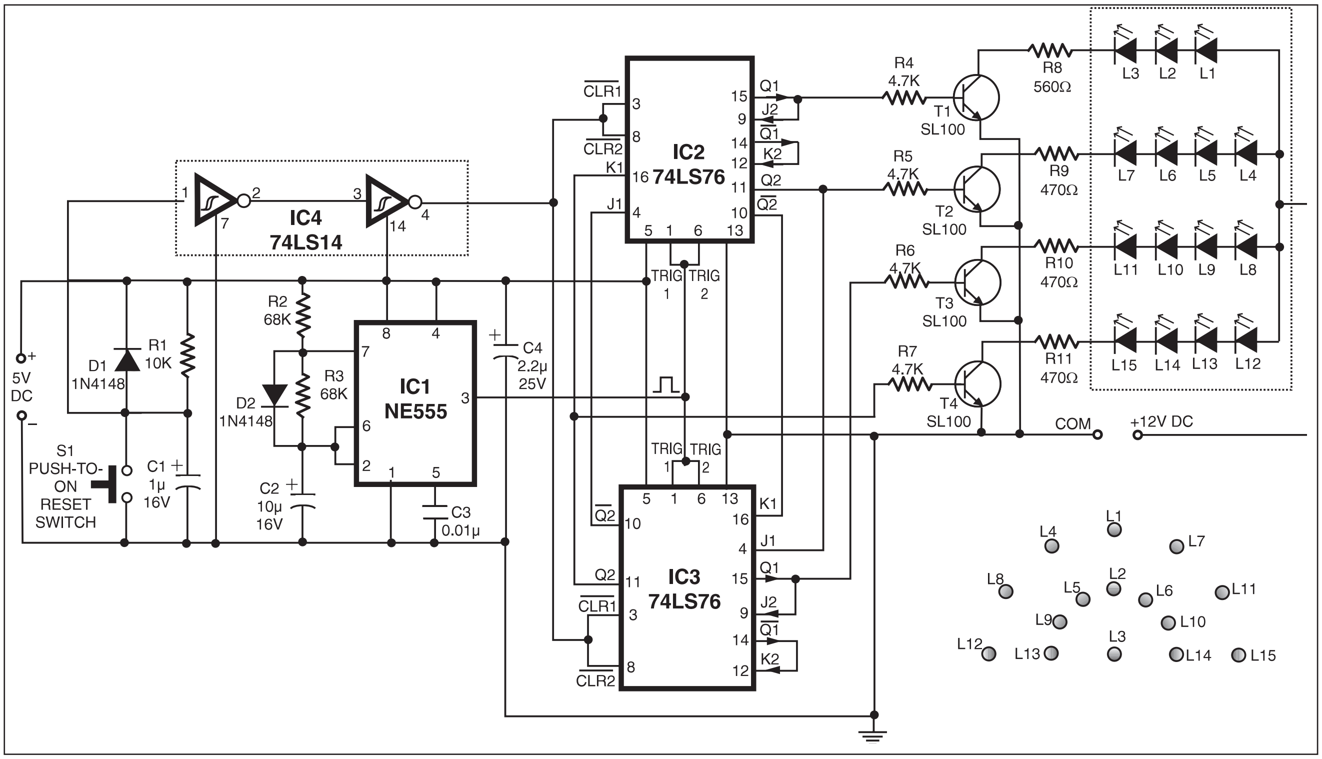
The circuit is built around two dual JK flip-flop ICs 7476, which have been wired as a Johnson counter. The count sequence of this counter is shown in Table I. The free running oscillator built around IC1, a popular timer NE555, generates approximately 1Hz waveform. The output of IC1 serves as the clock input for the counter built around IC2 and IC3.

The circuit can be reset by momentarily depressing switch S1. When the circuit is powered on, capacitor C1 will be initially uncharged, with the result that all the flip-flops are cleared. Now, as the capacitor starts charging toward the positive rail, the clear inputs of all the flip-flops go to logic 1 (and stay there) and the flip-flops are enabled. The counter begins to count in a particular sequence, as shown in Table I. Whenever the output of a flip-flop goes high, the associated transistor connected at its output saturates. It drives current through the array of LEDs connected as collector load, thereby causing them to turn 'on'.

Upon arrival of first clock pulse, the LSB will be set. The counter will now count 0001. This means that the array of LEDs at the centre of the display panel will be lit. When the next clock pulse arrives, logic 1 will also be copied to its preceding flip-flop and the counter will read 0011. As a result, the array of LEDs adjacent to the centre array (on both sides) will be lit. In this fashion, the count progresses upwards till it reaches 1111, when all the arrays of LEDs will be lit. Now the wings of the peacock are fully spread. At this stage, you may manually swing the display board both ways, holding it at its centre bottom by your thumb

TABLE I
Johnson Counter Count Sequence

D MSB	C	B	A LSB	Decimal Count	LED's LIT Upon Count
0	0	0	0	0	Nil
0	0	0	1	1	L1 to L3
0	0	1	1	3	L1 to L7
0	1	1	1	7	L1 to L11
1	1	1	1	15	L1 to L15
1	1	1	0	14	L4 to L15
1	1	0	0	12	L8 to L15
1	0	0	0	8	L12 to L15
0	0	0	0	0	Nil


IC4 74LS14
IC1 NE555
IC2 74LS76
IC3 74LS76
R1 10K
R2 68K
R3 68K
R4 4.7K
R5 4.7K
R6 4.7K
R7 4.7K
R8 560Ω
R9 470Ω
R10 470Ω
R11 470Ω
D1 1N4148
D2 1N4148
C1 1µ 16V
C2 10µ 16V
C3 0.01µ
C4 2.2µ 25V
T1 SL100
T2 SL100
T3 SL100
T4 SL100
5V DC
S1 PUSH-TO-ON RESET SWITCH
CLR1
CLR2
K1
J1
Q1
J2
K2
Q2
TRIG 1
TRIG 2
COM
+12V DC
L1 L2 L3 L4 L5 L6 L7 L8 L9 L10 L11 L12 L13 L14 L15

and forefinger to resemble a dancing peacock.

The countdown sequence of the counter will be initiated upon the arrival of the next clock pulse, which causes the count to read 1110. At this stage, the array of LEDs at the centre of the display panel will be turned 'off'. The counter then counts down to 1100 upon the arrival of the next clock when the array of LEDs adjacent to the centre array (on both sides) will also be turned 'off'. In this manner, the counter continues to count down till the contents read 0000, when the whole array of LEDs are turned 'off' and one full cycle is completed. The counter then starts the counting sequence all over again.

The circuit can be assembled on a general-purpose PCB. The LEDs can be stacked into an array as per the pattern shown in the figure. The circuit requires both +5V and +12V DC supplies. The circuit can be used as a festival display.

INVERTER OVERLOAD PROTECTOR WITH DELAYED AUTO RESET

SIDDHARTH SINGH

An overload condition in an inverter may permanently damage the power transistor array or burn off the transformer. Some of the domestic inverters sold in the market do not feature an overload shutdown facility, while those incorporating this feature come with a price tag.

The circuit presented here is an overload detector which shuts down the inverter in an overload condition. It has the following desirable features:

- It shuts down the inverter and also provides audio-visual indication of the overload condition.
- After shutdown, it automatically restarts the inverter with a delay of 6 seconds. Thus, it saves the user from the inconvenience caused due to manually resetting the system or running around in darkness to reset the system at night.
- It permanently shuts down the inverter and continues to give audio warning, in case there are more than three successive overloads. Under this condition, the system has to be manually reset. (Successive overload condition indicates that the inverter output is short-circuited or a heavy current is being drawn by the connected load.)

The circuit uses an ammeter (0-30A) as a transducer to detect overload condition. Such an ammeter is generally present in almost all inverters. This ammeter is connected between the negative supply of the battery and the

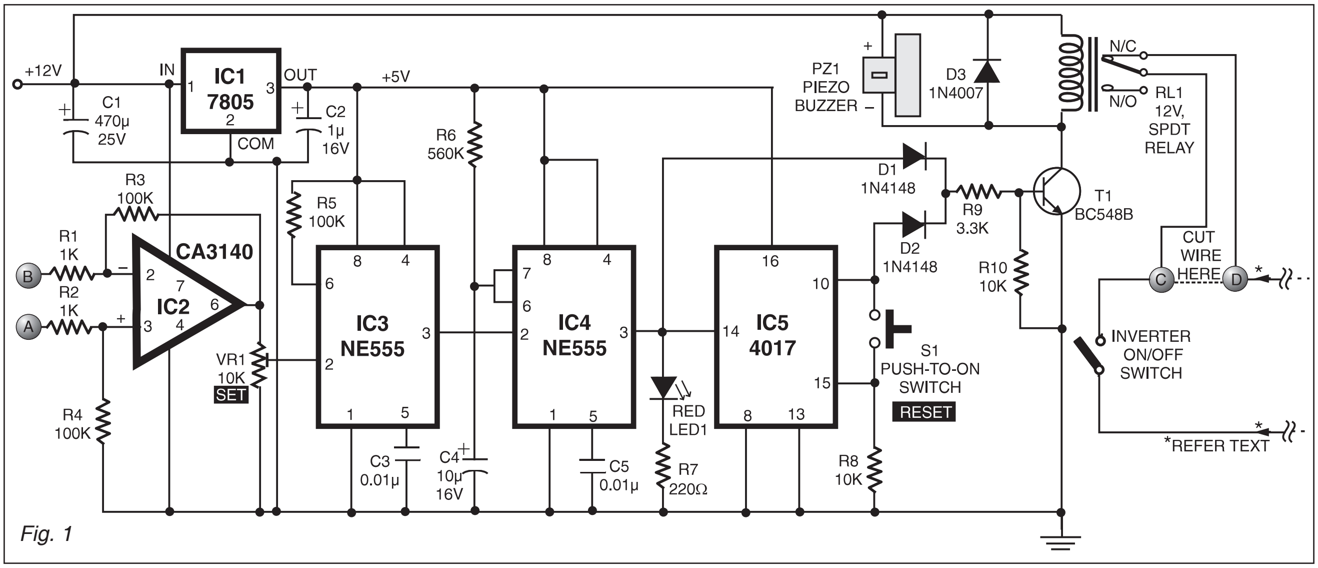

+12V
IN
IC1
7805
OUT
COM
+5V
C1
470µ
25V
C2
1µ
16V
R3
100K
R1
1K
R2
1K
B
A
CA3140
IC2
R4
100K
VR1
10K
SET
R5
100K
R6
560K
IC3
NE555
C3
0.01µ
C4
10µ
16V
IC4
NE555
C5
0.01µ
RED
LED1
R7
220Ω
IC5
4017
PZ1
PIEZO
BUZZER
D3
1N4007
D1
1N4148
D2
1N4148
R9
3.3K
T1
BC548B
R10
10K
S1
PUSH-TO-ON
SWITCH
RESET
R8
10K
N/C
N/O
RL1
12V,
SPDT
RELAY
CUT
WIRE
HERE
C
D
INVERTER
ON/OFF
SWITCH
*REFER TEXT

Fig. 1

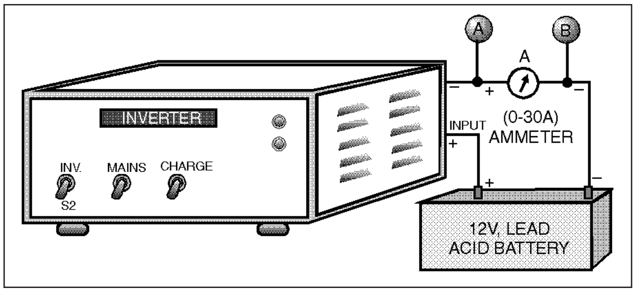
inverter, as shown in Fig. 2. The voltage developed across this ammeter, due to the flow of current, is very small. It is amplified by IC2, which is wired as a differential amplifier having a gain of 100. IC3 (NE555) is connected as a Schmitt 'trigger', whose output goes low when the voltage at its pin 2 exceeds 3.3V. IC4 (again an NE555 timer) is configured as a monostable multivibrator with a pulsewidth of 6 seconds. IC5 (CD4017) is a CMOS counter which counts the three sequential overload conditions, after which the system has to be reset manually, by pressing push-to-on switch S1.

The circuit can be powered from the inverter battery. In standby condition, it consumes 8-10 mA of current and around 70 mA with relay (RL1), buzzer (PZ1), and LED1 energised. Please note the following points carefully:

- Points A and B at the input of IC2 should be connected to the corresponding points (A and B respectively) across the ammeter.
- Points C and D of the relay contacts have to be connected in series with the already existing 'on'/'off' switch leads of inverter as shown in Fig. 1. This means that one of the two leads terminated on the existing switch has to be cut and the cut ends have to be connected to the pole and N/O contacts respectively of relay RL1.
- The ammeter should be connected in series with the negative terminal of the battery and inverter, as shown in Fig. 2.

Move the wiper of preset VR1 to the extreme position which is grounded. Switch 'on' the inverter. For a 300W inverter, connect about 250-260W of load. Now adjust VR1 slowly, until the inverter just trips or shuts down. Repeat the step if necessary. Use good-quality preset with dust cover (e.g. multi-turn trimpot) for reliable operation.

The circuit can be easily and successfully installed with minimum modifications to the existing inverter. All the components used are cheap and readily available. The whole circuit can be assembled on a general-purpose PCB.

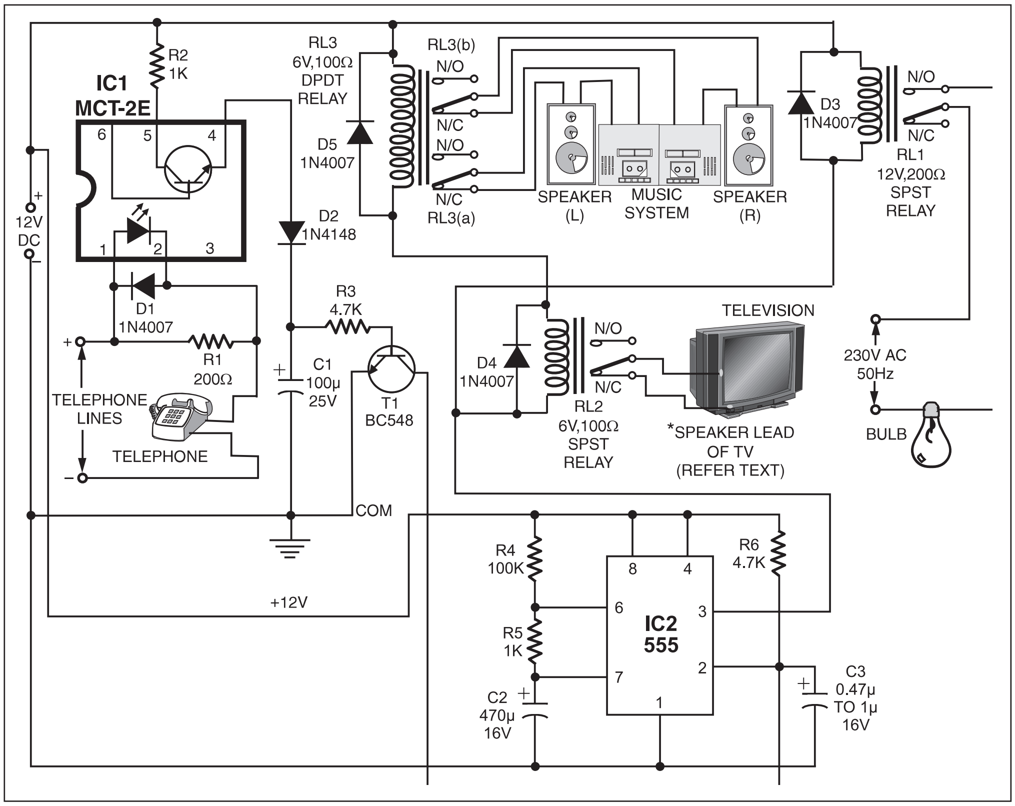

INVERTER
INV.
S2
MAINS
CHARGE
INPUT
A
B
A
(0-30A)
AMMETER
12V, LEAD
ACID BATTERY

TELEPHONE LINE BASED AUDIO MUTING AND LIGHT-ON CIRCUIT

DHURJATI SINHA

Very often when enjoying music or watching TV at high audio level, we may not be able to hear a telephone ring and thus miss an important incoming phone call. To overcome this situation, the circuit presented here can be used. The circuit would automatically light a bulb on arrival of a telephone ring and simultaneously mute the music system/

TV audio for the duration the telephone handset is off-hook. Lighting of the bulb would not only indicate an incoming call but also help in locating the telephone during darkness.


IC1
MCT-2E
R2
1K
6
5
4
1
2
3
12V
DC
+
−
D1
1N4007
R1
200Ω
+
TELEPHONE
LINES
−
TELEPHONE
RL3
6V,100Ω
DPDT
RELAY
D5
1N4007
D2
1N4148
R3
4.7K
C1
100µ
25V
T1
BC548
COM
+12V
RL3(b)
N/O
N/C
N/O
N/C
RL3(a)
SPEAKER
(L)
MUSIC
SYSTEM
SPEAKER
(R)
D3
1N4007
N/O
N/C
RL1
12V,200Ω
SPST
RELAY
TELEVISION
D4
1N4007
N/O
N/C
RL2
6V,100Ω
SPST
RELAY
*SPEAKER LEAD
OF TV
(REFER TEXT)
230V AC
50Hz
BULB
R4
100K
R5
1K
C2
470µ
16V
8
4
6
3
IC2
555
7
2
1
R6
4.7K
C3
0.47µ
TO 1µ
16V

On arrival of a ring, or when the handset is off-hook, the inbuilt transistor of IC1 (opto-coupler) conducts and capacitor C1 gets charged and, in turn, transistor T1 gets forward biased. As a result, transistor T1 conducts, causing energisation of relays RL1, RL2, and RL3. Diode D1 connected in anti-parallel to inbuilt diode of IC1, in shunt with resistor R1, provides an easy path for AC current and helps in limiting the voltage across inbuilt diode to a safe value during the ringing. (The RMS value of ring voltage lies between 70 and 90 volts RMS.) Capacitor C1 maintains necessary voltage for continuously forward biasing transistor T1 so that the relays are not de-energised during the negative half cycles and off-period of ring signal. Once the handset is picked up, the relays will still remain energised because of low-impedance DC path available (via cradle switch and handset) for the in-built diode of IC1. After completion of call when handset is placed back on its cradle, the low-impedance path through handset is no more available and thus relays RL1 through RL3 are deactivated.

As shown in the figure, the energised relay RL1 contacts switch on the light, while energisation of relay RL2 causes the path of TV speaker lead to be opened. (For dual-speaker TV, replace relay RL2 with a DPDT relay of 6V, 200 ohm.)

The timer IC2 (555) is configured in monostable mode and connected between transistor T1 and relay units provides a holding time of around 0.5 minutes.

Similarly, energisation of DPDT relay RL3 opens the leads going to the speakers and thus mutes both audio speakers. Use 'N/C' contacts of relay RL3 in series with speakers of music system and 'N/C' contacts of RL2 in series with TV speaker. Use 'N/O' contact of relay RL1 in series with a bulb to get the visual indication of an incoming call as well as light during off-hook period.

LOW-COST PCO BILLING METER

DHURJATI SINHA

The circuit presented here can be used in PCOs for displaying the actual bill. The comparative disadvantages of the presented circuit are as follows:

1. The calculator used along with this circuit is required to be switched 'on' manually before making a call.

2. Certain manual entries have to be made in the calculator; for example, for a pulse rate of Rs 1.26, number 1.26 is to be entered after switching 'on' the calculator followed by pressing of '+' button twice. However, possibility exists for automating these two functions by using additional circuitry.

In telephony, on-hook condition is represented by existance of 48V to 52V across the line. Similarly, the off-hook condition is represented by the line voltage dropping to a level of 8V to 10V (depending upon the length of the local lead line (local loop) from telephone exchange to the subscriber's premises as well as upon the impedance of telephone instrument). Handset is normally lifted either for dialing or in response to a ring.

In the circuit shown in Fig. 1, when the handset is off-hook, the optocoupler MCT2E (IC1) conducts and forward biases

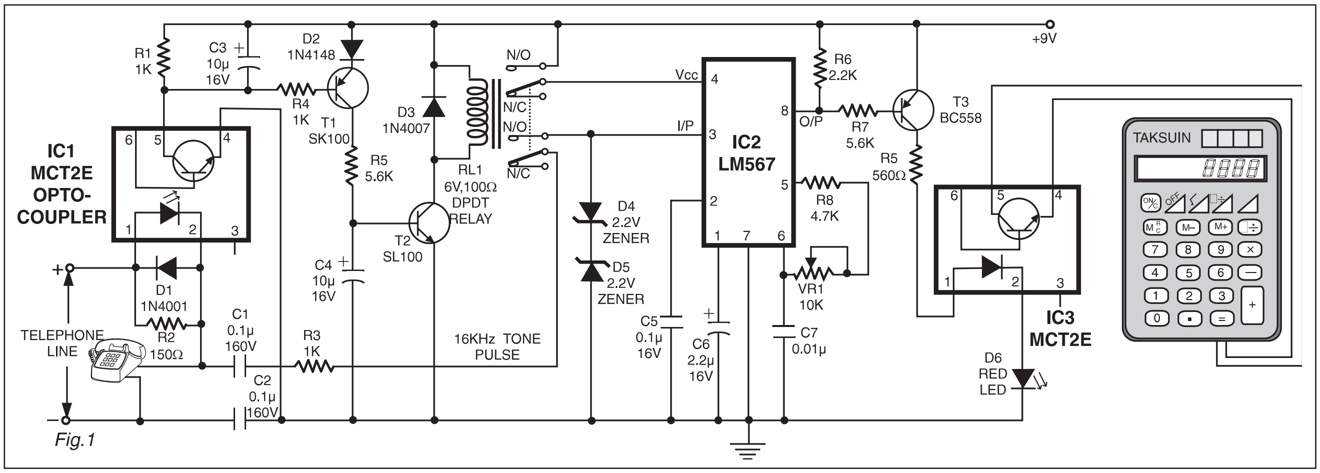

+9V
R1
1K
C3
10µ
16V
D2
1N4148
R4
1K
T1
SK100
D3
1N4007
N/O
N/C
N/O
N/C
RL1
6V,100Ω
DPDT
RELAY
R5
5.6K
T2
SL100
C4
10µ
16V
IC1
MCT2E
OPTO-
COUPLER
D1
1N4001
R2
150Ω
C1
0.1µ
160V
C2
0.1µ
160V
R3
1K
TELEPHONE
LINE
16KHz TONE
PULSE
D4
2.2V
ZENER
D5
2.2V
ZENER
C5
0.1µ
16V
C6
2.2µ
16V
Vcc
I/P
IC2
LM567
O/P
R6
2.2K
R7
5.6K
R8
4.7K
VR1
10K
C7
0.01µ
T3
BC558
R5
560Ω
IC3
MCT2E
D6
RED
LED
TAKSUIN

Fig.1

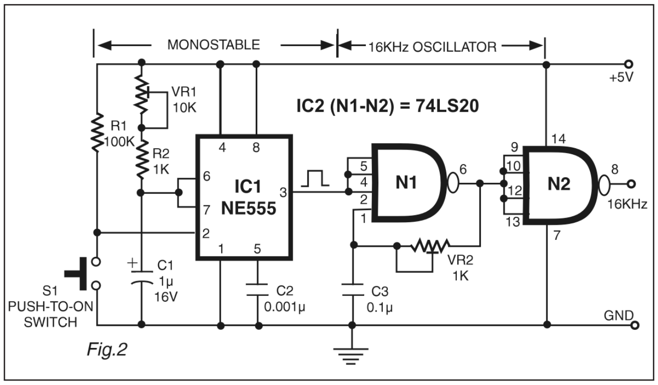

MONOSTABLE
16KHz OSCILLATOR
+5V
IC2 (N1-N2) = 74LS20
R1
100K
VR1
10K
R2
1K
IC1
NE555
N1
N2
16KHz
VR2
1K
C1
1µ
16V
C2
0.001µ
C3
0.1µ
S1
PUSH-TO-ON
SWITCH
GND

Fig.2

transistor T1, which, in turn, forward biases transistor T2 and energises relay RL1. In energised condition of relay, the upper set of relay contacts connects the positive supply rail to PLL (phase-locked loop) IC2 (LM567) pin 4, while the lower set of relay contacts couples the positive telephone lead to input pin 3 of LM567 via capacitor C1 and resistor R3.

The negative telephone lead is permanently capacitively coupled to ground via capacitor C2. As soon as call matures, 16kHz tone pulses would be pumped into the telephone line by the telephone exchange at suitable intervals. This interval depends on the pulse rate of the place called and also the time of the day and whether it's a working-day or holiday. On receipt of 16kHz pulse, output pin 8 of IC LM567 (which is tuned for centre frequency of 16 kHz) goes 'low' for the duration of the pulse. The output of IC2 is coupled via transistor T3 to optocoupler IC3. The output of this optocoupler is used to bridge the '=' button on a calculator (such as Taksun make), which has the effect of pressing the '=' button of the calculator.

Considering that pulse rate for a specific town/time/day happens to be Rs 1.26 per pulse, then before maturity of the call one enters 1.26 followed by pressing of '+' key twice. Now, if a total of ten billing pulses have been received from exchange for the duration of the call, then on completion of the call, the calculator display would show 12.60. The telephone operator has to bill the customer Rs 14.60 (Rs 12.60 towards call charges plus Rs 2.00 towards service charges).

For tuning of the PLL circuit around IC2, lift the handset and inject 16kHz tone across the line input points. Tune IC2 to centre frequency of 16 kHz with the help of preset VR1. Proper tuning of the PLL will cause LED (D6) to glow even with a very low-amplitude 16kHz tone.

EFY Lab note. Arrangement used for simulating a 16kHz pulsed tone is shown in Fig. 2. Push-to-on switch is used for generation of fixed-duration pulse for modulating and switching on a 16kHz oscillator.

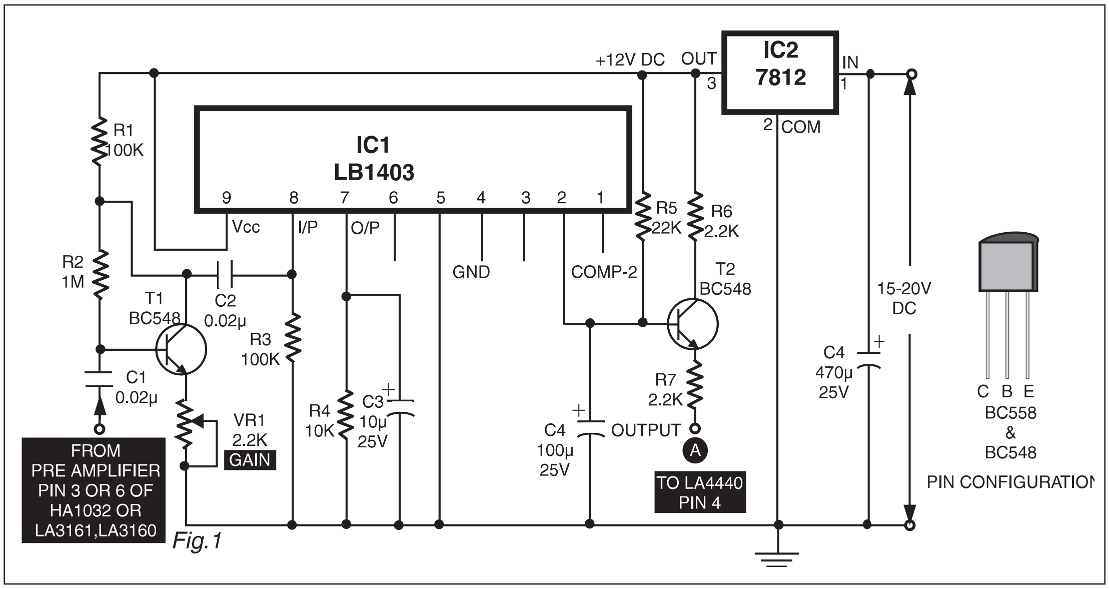
For more details regarding pulse rates, pulse codes, etc, readers are advised to go through the tariff rates and pulse code information given in the beginning pages of telephone directories, such as MTNL, Delhi directory, Vol. I.

AUTOMATIC MUTING CIRCUIT FOR AUDIO SYSTEMS

SUNISH P.

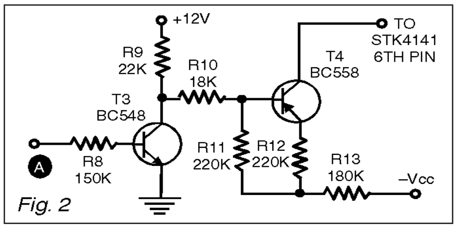
Fig. 1 shows a muting circuit, which makes use of IC LB1403. Signal from any pre-amplifier, such as HA1032, LA3161, or LA3160, is connected to the base of amplifier transistor T1. Variable resistor VR1 is used to control the gain of input signal.

Comparator 2 output at pin 2



+12V DC
OUT
3
IC2
7812
IN
1
2 COM
R1
100K
IC1
LB1403
9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
Vcc
I/P
O/P
GND
COMP-2
R5
22K
R6
2.2K
R2
1M
T1
BC548
C2
0.02µ
R3
100K
T2
BC548
15-20V
DC
C1
0.02µ
VR1
2.2K
GAIN
R4
10K
C3
10µ
25V
C4
100µ
25V
R7
2.2K
OUTPUT
A
C4
470µ
25V
C B E
BC558
&
BC548
PIN CONFIGURATIO
FROM
PRE AMPLIFIER
PIN 3 OR 6 OF
HA1032 OR
LA3161,LA3160
TO LA4440
PIN 4

Fig.1



+12V
TO
STK4141
6TH PIN
R9
22K
R10
18K
T4
BC558
T3
BC548
R8
150K
A
R11
220K
R12
220K
R13
180K
–Vcc

Fig. 2

of LB1403 is used for generation of muting signal at the emitter (point A) of transistor T2, which can be directly connected to muting pin 4 of amplifier employing IC LA4440. As long as the audio input to the circuit of Fig. 1 is below a certain level (say, 150 mV peak to peak), the output at point A will be high (the value measured at EFY Lab was around 4.5V). Once the input crosses this threshold level, the output will be around 0V. Capacitor C4 determines the 'on'/'off' muting delay. Higher the value of this capacitor, greater will be the muting delay period.

Slight circuit modification will be needed if this circuit is used with STK series amplifiers, such as STK 4141, 4142, 4152, and 4191, because they need negative polarity voltage for muting. The additional circuit to be connected at point A in that case is shown in Fig. 2.

2-LINE INTERCOM-CUM-TELEPHONE LINE CHANGEOVER CIRCUIT

J. SRINIVASAN

The circuit presented here can be used for connecting two telephones in parallel and also as a 2-line intercom.

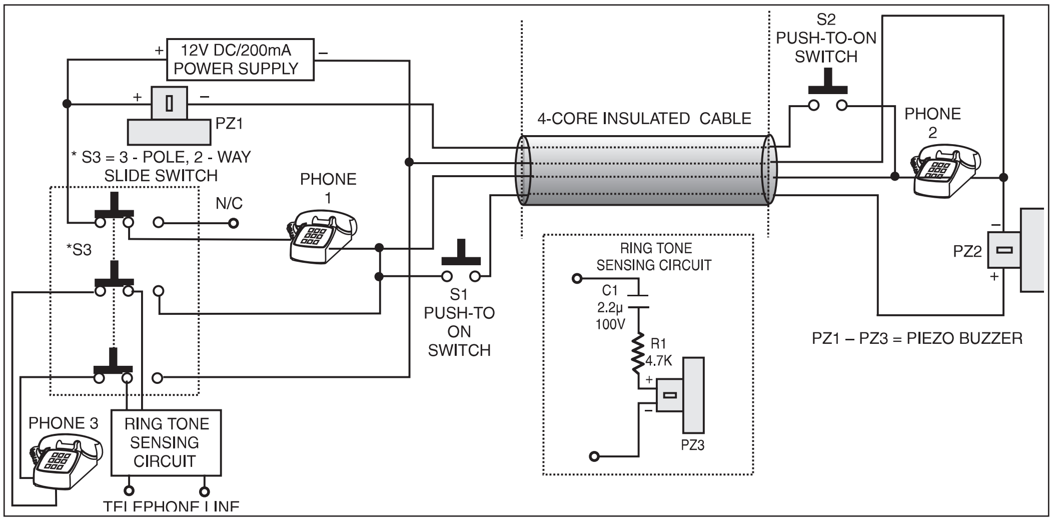
Usually a single telephone is connected to a telephone line. If another telephone is required at some distance, a parallel line is taken for connecting the other telephone. In this simple parallel line operation, the main problem is loss of privacy besides interference from the other phone. This problem is obviated in the circuit presented here.

Under normal condition, two telephones (telephone 1 and 2) can be used as intercom while telephone 3 is connected to the lines from exchange. In changeover mode, exchange line is disconnected from telephone 3 and gets connected to telephone 2.

For operation in intercom mode, one has to just lift the handset of phone 1 and then press switch S1. As a result, buzzer PZ2 sounds. Simultaneously, the side tone is heard in the speaker of handset of phone 1. The person at phone 2 could then lift the handset and start conversation. Similar procedure is to be followed for initiation of the conversation from phone 2 using switch S2. In this mode of operation, a 3-pole, 2-way slide-switch S3 is to be used as shown in the figure.

In the changeover mode of operation, switch S3 is used to changeover the telephone line for use by telephone 2. The switch is normally in the intercom mode and telephone 3 is connected to the exchange line. Before changing over the exchange line to telephone 2, the person at telephone 1 may inform the person at telephone 2 (in the intercom mode) that he is going to changeover the line for use by him (the person at telephone 2). As soon as changeover switch S3 is flipped to the other position, 12V supply is cut off and telephones 1 and 3 do not get any voltage or ring via the ring-tone-sensing unit.

Once switch S3 is flipped over for use of exchange line by the person at telephone 2, and the same (switch S3) is not flipped back to normal position after a telephone call is over, the next telephone call via exchange lines will go to telephone 2 only and the ring-tone-sensing circuit will still work. This enables the person at phone 3 to know that a call has gone through. If the handset of telephone 3 is lifted, it is found to be dead. To make telephone 3 again active, switch S3 should be changed over to its normal position.



12V DC/200mA POWER SUPPLY
+
–
PZ1
* S3 = 3 - POLE, 2 - WAY SLIDE SWITCH
N/C
PHONE 1
*S3
PHONE 3
RING TONE SENSING CIRCUIT
TELEPHONE LINE
S1 PUSH-TO ON SWITCH
4-CORE INSULATED CABLE
RING TONE SENSING CIRCUIT
C1 2.2µ 100V
R1 4.7K
PZ3
S2 PUSH-TO-ON SWITCH
PHONE 2
PZ2
PZ1 – PZ3 = PIEZO BUZZER

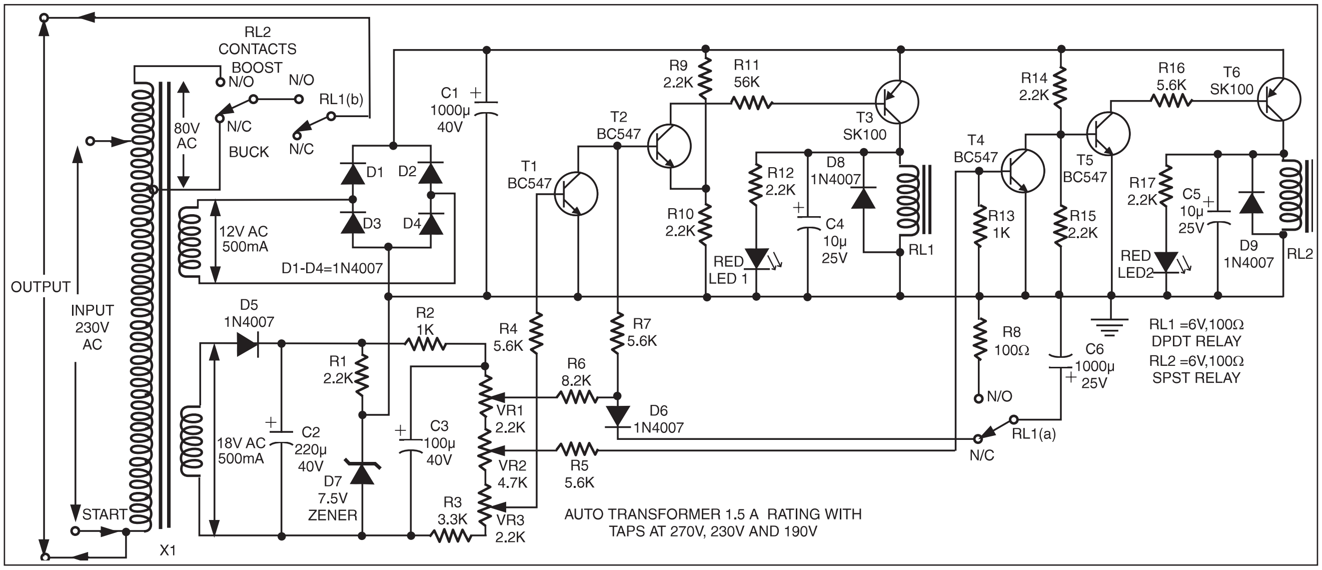
GUARD FOR REFRIGERATORS AND AIR-CONDITIONERS

THOMAS SEBASTIAN

A myriad of circuits have appeared in EFY for protection of refrigerators and air-conditioners against voltage fluctuations and brownouts. Here is a useful and economic circuit blending three features, namely, under-/over-voltage protection, switch 'on' delay, and regulation.

The circuit with commonly available components is a combination of familiar building blocks. The ladder resistance-trimpot configuration in conjunction with modified bridge comparator ensures reliable sequential operations of boosting, low-voltage cut-in, bucking, and high-voltage cut-off.

When the input line voltage is above 140V, relay RL2 energises and the boosted voltage appears at the N/O contact RL1(b) of relay RL1. However, relay RL1 remains de-energised under two conditions: first, if the input is below 170V threshold voltage (being controlled by trimpot VR1), and second, due to the initial shunting effect of capacitor C6 at the base junction of transistor T2. The transistor T2 will be enabled only when the charging capacitor raises its base potential to overcome the reverse bias voltage at its emitter. Thus, capacitor C6 and resistor R6 determine the duration of the on-delay, which is approximately three minutes for the given values.



RL2 CONTACTS
BOOST
N/O
N/O
RL1(b)
80V AC
N/C
BUCK
N/C
12V AC 500mA
D1
D2
D3
D4
D1-D4=1N4007
OUTPUT
INPUT 230V AC
START
X1
D5 1N4007
18V AC 500mA
C2 220µ 40V
R1 2.2K
D7 7.5V ZENER
R2 1K
C3 100µ 40V
R3 3.3K
VR1 2.2K
VR2 4.7K
VR3 2.2K
C1 1000µ 40V
T1 BC547
T2 BC547
R4 5.6K
R6 8.2K
R5 5.6K
R7 5.6K
D6 1N4007
R9 2.2K
R10 2.2K
R11 56K
T3 SK100
R12 2.2K
RED LED 1
C4 10µ 25V
D8 1N4007
RL1
T4 BC547
R13 1K
R8 100Ω
N/O
RL1(a)
N/C
R14 2.2K
T5 BC547
R15 2.2K
C6 1000µ 25V
R16 5.6K
T6 SK100
R17 2.2K
RED LED2
C5 10µ 25V
D9 1N4007
RL2
RL1 =6V,100Ω DPDT RELAY
RL2 =6V,100Ω SPST RELAY
AUTO TRANSFORMER 1.5 A RATING WITH TAPS AT 270V, 230V AND 190V

As soon as relay RL1 energises due to the switching action of transistor T2, the boosted voltage appears at the output. The adjustment of trimpot VR2 controls the bucking point. The output is isolated when the input reaches prohibitive voltage (say 270V), over-voltage sensing being controlled by trimpot VR3 to saturate transistor T4, which, in turn, cuts off relay RL1 via transistors T5 and T6. As a consequence, no output is available from the auto-transformer.

The resistor R8 discharges the timing capacitor C6 when RL1 energises. This is done to ensure that when capacitor C6 is connected back to the base junction of transistor T2, on resumption of mains supply after a power failure or an over-voltage condition, repeatability of on-delay is ensured.

By selecting the current rating of relay contacts (5A or 30A) and auto-transformer (500VA or 4000VA), the circuit can be adapted suitably for a refrigerator or air-conditioner to obtain a regulation of 200V to 240V for an input variation of 170V to 270V.

RADIO-BAND-POSITION DISPLAY

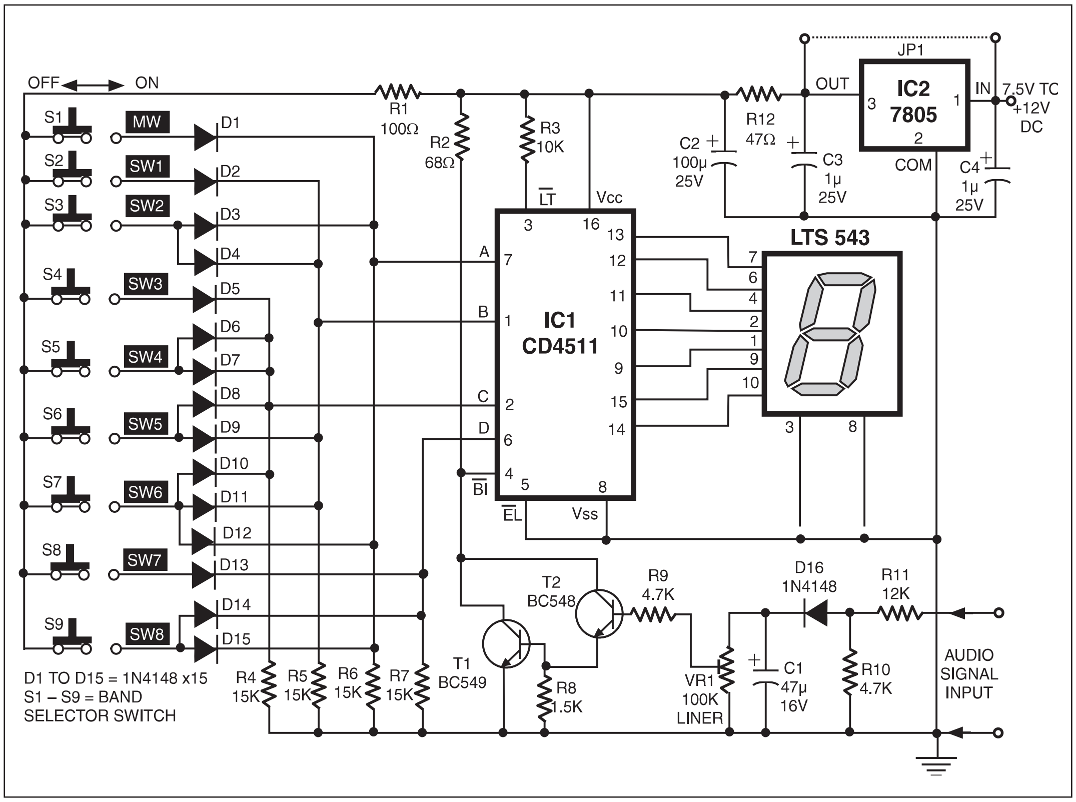
M.K. CHANDRA MOULEESWARAN

This circuit is an add-on unit for radio receivers that lack band-position display. The circuit presented here can show up to nine bands. It also incorporates a novel feature to make the display dance (blink) with the audio level from the receiver. The power-supply for the circuit can also be derived from the radio set.

The conversion of selected channel to BCD format is achieved using diodes D1 through D15 in conjunction with resistors R4 to R7. The voltages developed across these resistors (R4 through R7) serve as logic inputs to BCD inputs of BCD to 7-segment decoder IC1 (CD4511). When all switches are in 'off' state, the voltage across resistors R4 through R7 is logic zero, but when any of the switches S1 through S9 is slided to 'on' position, the output across these resistors changes to output proper BCD code to represent the selected channel. This BCD code is converted to 7-segment display by IC1. By this arrangement of diodes, the need for another decimal-to-BCD converter IC and associated parts is obviated. Switches S1 through S9 are actually parts of existing band-switch of the radio. Usually, one or two changeover contacts would be found extra in the modular pushbutton-type band-switches of the radios, which can be used for this add-on facility.

IC1's display blanking pin 4 is connected to a display-blinker-control circuit wired around transistors T1 and T2. A small part of the audio signal from the speaker terminals is applied to rectifier diode D16 and filter capacitor C1 to produce a pulsating DC across preset VR1. The sliding contact of preset VR1 is connected to the base of emitter-follower stage comprising transistor T2. The output of transistor T2, as amplified by transistor T1, is connected to pin 4 of IC1. Thus turning 'on'/'off' of display is controlled by the pulsating voltage developed from audio output of radio.

The power-supply regulator stage is needed only when radio power-supply is greater than 6V DC.

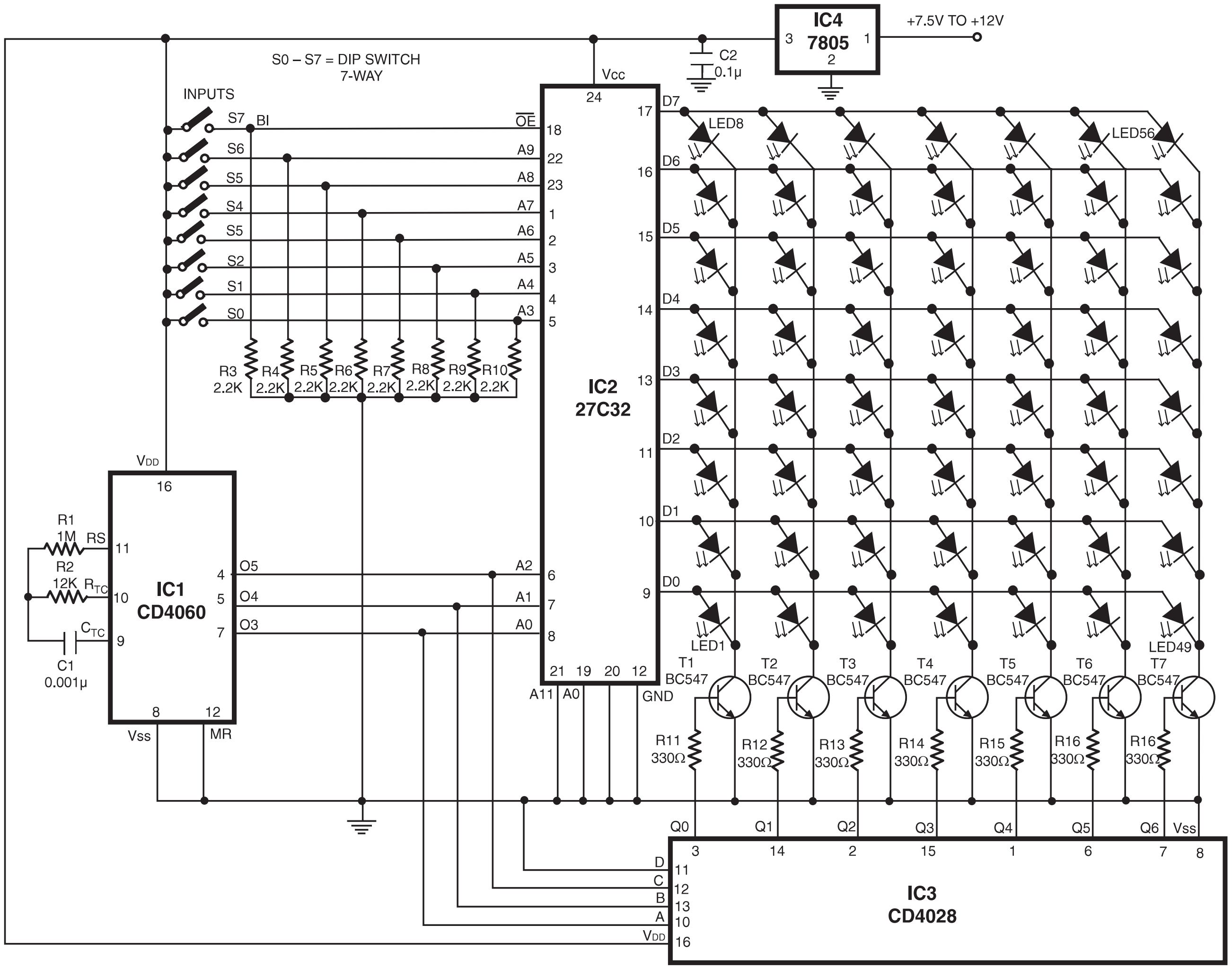

OFF
ON
S1
S2
S3
S4
S5
S6
S7
S8
S9
MW
SW1
SW2
SW3
SW4
SW5
SW6
SW7
SW8
D1
D2
D3
D4
D5
D6
D7
D8
D9
D10
D11
D12
D13
D14
D15
R1
100Ω
R2
68Ω
R3
10K
LT
Vcc
A
B
C
D
BI
EL
Vss
IC1
CD4511
R12
47Ω
C2
100µ
25V
C3
1µ
25V
JP1
OUT
IN
COM
IC2
7805
7.5V TO +12V DC
C4
1µ
25V
LTS 543
T2
BC548
T1
BC549
R8
1.5K
R9
4.7K
D16
1N4148
R11
12K
VR1
100K
LINER
C1
47µ
16V
R10
4.7K
AUDIO SIGNAL INPUT
R4
15K
R5
15K
R6
15K
R7
15K
D1 TO D15 = 1N4148 x15
S1 – S9 = BAND SELECTOR SWITCH

BINARY TO DOTMATRIX DISPLAY DECODER/DRIVER

JUNOMON ABRAHAM

Dotmatrix display is suitable for displaying alphanumeric characters and symbols. Dedicated dotmatrix display driver ICs are available, but these are costly and not easily available commercially. It would therefore be wise to make your own dotmatrix display, using easily available common ICs. One speciality of the circuit design presented here is that you can yourself decide the size and shape of the characters. Further, you can design it for any language.

The principle of displaying a character is that, for each character, a corresponding bit pattern is stored in an EPROM. When we supply a particular binary number, corresponding to the input hex digits shown in Table I, bitmap of the character shown against that number gets transferred to the dotmatrix display. For example, for letter 'Z', you are required to enter hex 23 (referred as page address), i.e. 010 on



IC4
7805
3
1
2
+7.5V TO +12V
C2
0.1µ
S0 – S7 = DIP SWITCH
7-WAY
INPUTS
S7
S6
S5
S4
S5
S2
S1
S0
BI
Vcc
24
OE
A9
A8
A7
A6
A5
A4
A3
18
22
23
1
2
3
4
5
17
16
15
14
13
11
10
9
D7
D6
D5
D4
D3
D2
D1
D0
LED8
LED56
LED1
LED49
R3
2.2K
R4
2.2K
R5
2.2K
R6
2.2K
R7
2.2K
R8
2.2K
R9
2.2K
R10
2.2K
IC2
27C32
VDD
16
R1
1M
RS
11
R2
12K
RTC
10
CTC
9
C1
0.001µ
IC1
CD4060
4
5
7
O5
O4
O3
A2
A1
A0
6
7
8
8
12
Vss
MR
21
19
20
12
A11
A0
GND
T1
BC547
T2
BC547
T3
BC547
T4
BC547
T5
BC547
T6
BC547
T7
BC547
R11
330Ω
R12
330Ω
R13
330Ω
R14
330Ω
R15
330Ω
R16
330Ω
R16
330Ω
Q0
Q1
Q2
Q3
Q4
Q5
Q6
Vss
3
14
2
15
1
6
7
8
D
C
B
A
VDD
11
12
13
10
16
IC3
CD4028

Fig. 1: Schematic diagram of binary to dotmatrix display decoder/driver

address lines A9 through A7, and 0011 on address lines A6 through A3. Addresses A2 through A0 (location addresses) are supplied by oscillator-cum-counter IC CD4060, repetitively outputting the required bit pattern, corresponding to bit pattern for 'Z' in this case.

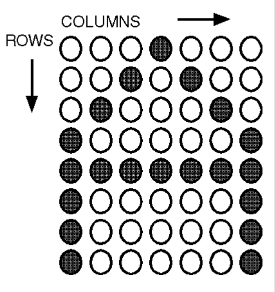


Fig. 2: LED pattern for letter 'A'

TABLE I

Displayed character	Hex input	Displayed character	Hex input
0	00	L	15
1	01	M	16
2	02	N	17
3	03	O	18
4	04	P	19
5	05	Q	1A
6	06	R	1B
7	07	S	1C
8	08	T	1D
9	09	U	1E
A	0A	V	1F
B	0B	W	20
C	0C	X	21
D	0D	Y	22
E	0E	Z	23
F	0F	+	24
G	10	–	25
H	11	÷	26
I	12	x	27
J	13	=	28
K	14		

TABLE II

	Address	050	051	052	053	054	055	056	057
Binary Data	D7	0	0	0	**1**	0	0	0	X
	D6	0	0	**1**	0	**1**	0	0	X
	D5	0	**1**	0	0	0	**1**	0	X
	D4	**1**	0	0	0	0	0	**1**	X
	D3	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	X
	D2	**1**	0	0	0	0	0	**1**	X
	D1	**1**	0	0	0	0	0	**1**	X
	D0	**1**	0	0	0	0	0	**1**	X
Hexdata		1F	28	48	88	48	28	1F	XX

TABLE III

Address	Data	Address	Data	Address	Data	Address	Data	Address	Data	Address	Data
[0]		**[7]**		**[E]**		**[L]**		**[S]**		**[Z]**	
000	3C	038	C1	070	FF	0A8	FF	0E0	62	118	81
001	42	039	82	071	91	0A9	01	0E1	91	119	83
002	81	03A	84	072	91	0AA	01	0E2	91	11A	85
003	81	03B	98	073	91	0AB	01	0E3	91	11B	99
004	82	03C	90	074	91	0AC	01	0E4	91	11C	A1
005	42	03D	B0	075	81	0AD	01	0E5	91	11D	C1
006	3C	03E	C0	076	81	0AE	01	0E6	4E	11E	81
007	xx	03F	xx	077	xx	0AF	xx	0E7	xx	11F	xx
[1]		**[8]**		**[F]**		**[M]**		**[T]**		**[+]**	
008	00	040	6E	078	FF	0B0	FF	0E8	80	120	10
009	00	041	91	079	90	0B1	40	0E9	80	121	10
00A	41	042	91	07A	90	0B2	20	0EA	80	122	10
00B	FF	043	91	07B	90	0B3	10	0EB	FF	123	
00C	01	044	91	07C	90	0B4	20	0EC	80	FE	
00D	00	045	91	07D	80	0B5	40	0ED	80	124	10
00E	00	046	6E	07E	80	0B6	FF	0EE	80	125	10
00F	xx	047	xx	07F	xx	0B7	xx	0EF	xx	126	10
[2]		**[9]**		**[G]**		**[N]**		**[U]**		127	xx
010	61	048	64	080	3C	0B8	FF	0F0	FE	**[–]**	
011	83	049	92	081	42	0B9	40	0F1	01	128	10
012	85	04A	91	082	81	0BA	20	0F2	01	129	10
013	89	04B	91	083	8D	0BB	18	0F3	01	12A	10
014	91	04C	91	084	89	0BC	04	0F4	01	12B	10
015	61	04D	92	085	4A	0BD	02	0F5	01	12C	10
016	00	04E	7C	086	2C	0BE	FF	0F6	FE	12D	10
017	xx	04F	xx	087	xx	0BF	xx	0F7	xx	12E	10
[3]		**[A]**		**[H]**		**[O]**		**[V]**		12F	xx
018	82	050	1F	088	FF	0C0	3C	0F8	F8	**[÷]**	
019	81	051	28	089	10	0C1	42	0F9	04	130	10
01A	81	052	48	08A	10	0C2	81	0FA	02	131	10
01B	91	053	88	08B	10	0C3	81	0FB	01	132	10
01C	B1	054	48	08C	10	0C4	81	0FC	02	133	54
01D	D1	055	28	08D	10	0C5	42	0FD	04	134	10
01E	8E	056	1F	08E	FF	0C6	3C	0FE	F8	135	10
01F	xx	057	xx	08F	xx	0C7	xx	0FF	xx	136	10
[4]		**[B]**		**[I]**		**[P]**		**[W]**		137	xx
020	08	058	FF	090	00	0C8	FF	100	FF	**[x]**	
021	18	059	91	091	00	0C9	90	101	02	138	00
022	28	05A	91	092	81	0CA	90	102	04	139	44
023	48	05B	91	093	FF	0CB	90	103	08	13A	28
024	BF	05C	91	094	81	0CC	90	104	04	13B	10
025	08	05D	91	095	00	0CD	90	105	02	13C	28
026	08	05E	6E	096	00	0CE	60	106	FF	13D	44
027	xx	05F	xx	097	xx	0CF	xx	107	xx	13E	00
[5]		**[C]**		**[J]**		**[Q]**		**[X]**		13F	xx
028	E1	060	3C	098	86	0D0	3C	108	83	**[=]**	
029	A1	061	42	099	81	0D1	42	109	44	140	28
02A	A1	062	81	09A	81	0D2	81	10A	28	141	28
02B	A1	063	81	09B	81	0D3	81	10B	10	142	28
02C	A1	064	81	09C	FE	0D4	85	10C	28	143	28
02D	92	065	42	09D	80	0D5	42	10D	44	144	28
02E	8C	066	24	09E	80	0D6	3D	10E	83	145	28
02F	xx	067	xx	09F	xx	0D7	xx	10F	xx	146	28
[6]		**[D]**		**[K]**		**[R]**		**[Y]**		147	xx
030	3C	068	FF	0A0	FF	0D8	FF	110	80	Note: xx =	
031	4A	069	81	0A1	10	0D9	90	111	40	Don't care	
032	91	06A	81	0A2	10	0DA	90	112	20		
033	91	06B	81	0A3	28	0DB	98	113	1F		
034	91	06C	81	0A4	44	0DC	94	114	20		
035	4A	06D	42	0A5	82	0DD	92	115	40		
036	24	06E	3C	0A6	81	0DE	61	116	80		
037	xx	06F	xx	0A7	xx	0DF	xx	117	xx		

Let us see how the bitmap of a character is formed to display any specific character. Here we have used an 8 (rows) x 7 (columns) LED display. We can use either a readymade LED. Fig. 2 shows the LED pattern for letter 'A' whose corresponding bitmap in memory is shown in Table II. Each memory location represents one column of the display. Since seven columns are used, we need seven locations (though counter supplies eight locations/addresses) for each character. The bitmap of each character is stored in one memory page (segment) of eight locations (8^{th} location is not used). The data from the corresponding pages/locations are transferred to the display by scanning the memory locations and columns of the display simultaneously.

The EPROM used for the purpose is 27C32, with a memory capacity of 4 kB. If you want to utilise its full capacity, you can store codes for up to 512 characters. The circuit shown here uses 1 kB of memory space and can show up to 128 characters.

Each character bitmap is stored in a memory page, and a particular memory page (character) is selected by giving its address. This page address is selected via DIP switches S0 through S7. Each page is scanned with the help of counter CD4060, which has an inbuilt oscillator, whose outputs are connected to A0, A1, and A2 lines. The same lines are connected to a decoder (4028) to drive the columns of the display. The rows are connected to the data outputs D0 through D7 of the EPROM. Thus, when a memory location is addressed, its data is output on the corresponding column. The eight memory locations corresponding to the selected letter are consecutively scanned. This process repeats itself at a fast rate. Due to persistence of vision, one sees a steady display of the corresponding memory map.

Table III shows the data needed to be stored in specific EPROM locations. It caters only to numerics, capital English letters, and some symbols. You are at liberty to store bit patterns for any other data, in any other style, in the EPROM.

The input 'BI' indicating blanking input (actually this is the $\overline{OE}$ signal of EPROM) can be used for blanking the display. You can also use this line for converting it into a blinking display by connecting it to a suitable output pin of counter CD4060.

You can also adapt the circuit for responding to ASCII input values by storing the character bit pattern in memory pages, their address being equal to the ASCII value of that character. Moreover, it is possible to display characters of any language and, if needed, the size of the display can also be modified by using some additional hardware.

AUTOMATIC SPEED-CONTROLLER FOR FANS AND COOLERS

PRADEEP VASUDEVA

During summer nights, the temperature is initially quite high. As time passes, the temperature starts dropping. Also, after a person falls asleep, the metabolic rate of one's body decreases. Thus, initially the fan/cooler needs to be run at full speed. As time passes, one has to get up again and again to adjust the speed of the fan or the cooler.

The device presented here makes the fan run at full speed for a predetermined time. The speed is decreased to medium after some time, and to slow later on. After a period of about eight hours, the fan/cooler is switched off.

Fig. 1 shows the circuit diagram of the system. IC1 (555) is used as an astable multivibrator to generate clock pulses. The pulses are fed to decade dividers/counters formed by IC2 and IC3. These ICs act as divide-by-10 and divide-by-9 counters, respectively. The values of capacitor C1 and resistors R1 and R2 are so adjusted that the final output of IC3 goes high after about eight hours.

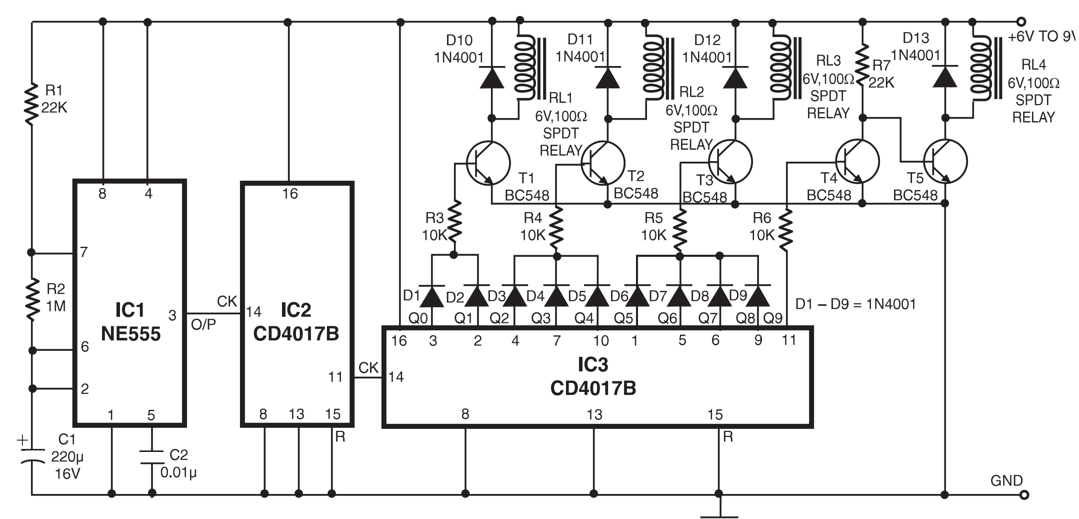

R1
22K
R2
1M
C1
220µ
16V
C2
0.01µ
IC1
NE555
8
4
7
6
2
1
5
3
O/P
CK
14
IC2
CD4017B
16
11
8
13
15
R
CK
14
IC3
CD4017B
16
3
2
4
7
10
1
5
6
9
11
8
13
15
R
Q0
Q1
Q2
Q3
Q4
Q5
Q6
Q7
Q8
Q9
D1
D2
D3
D4
D5
D6
D7
D8
D9
D1 – D9 = 1N4001
R3
10K
R4
10K
R5
10K
R6
10K
T1
BC548
T2
BC548
T3
BC548
T4
BC548
T5
BC548
D10
1N4001
D11
1N4001
D12
1N4001
D13
1N4001
RL1
6V,100Ω
SPDT
RELAY
RL2
6V,100Ω
SPDT
RELAY
RL3
6V,100Ω
SPDT
RELAY
R7
22K
RL4
6V,100Ω
SPDT
RELAY
+6V TO 9V
GND

Fig. 1. Circuit diagram for automatic speed control for fans/air-coolers

The first two outputs of IC3 (Q0 and Q1) are connected (ORed) via diodes D1 and D2 to the base of transistor T1. Initially output Q0 is high and therefore relay RL1 is energised. It remains energised when Q1 becomes high. The method of connecting the gadget to the fan/cooler is given in Figs 3 and 4.

It can be seen that initially the fan shall get AC supply directly, and so it shall run at top speed. When output Q2 becomes high and Q1 becomes low, relay RL1 is turned 'off' and relay RL2 is switched 'on'. The fan gets AC through a resistance and its speed drops to medium value. This

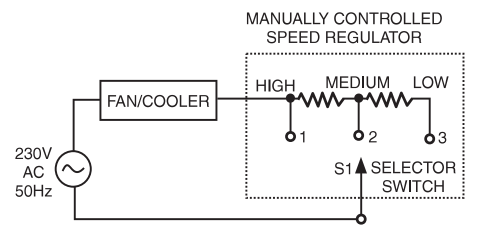

MANUALLY CONTROLLED SPEED REGULATOR
FAN/COOLER
HIGH
MEDIUM
LOW
1
2
3
230V AC 50Hz
S1
SELECTOR SWITCH

Fig. 2. Existing arrangement for fan speed control

continues until output Q4 is high. When Q4 goes low and Q5 goes high, relay RL2 is switched 'off' and relay RL3 is activated. The fan now runs at low speed.

Throughout the process, pin 11 of the IC3 is low, so T4 is cut off, thus keeping T5 in saturation and RL4 'on'. At the end of the cycle, when pin 11 (Q9) becomes high, T4 gets saturated and T5 is cut off. RL4 is switched 'off', thus switching 'off' the fan/cooler.

Using the circuit described above, the fan shall run at high speed for a comparatively lesser time when either of Q0 or Q1 output is high. At medium speed, it will run for a moderate time period when any of three outputs Q2 through Q4 is high, while at low speed, it will run for a much longer time period when any of the four outputs Q5 through Q8 is high.

If one wishes, one can make the fan run at the three speeds for an equal amount of time by connecting three decimal decoded outputs of IC3 to each of the transistors T1 to T3. One can also get more than three speeds by using an additional relay, transistor, and associated components, and connecting one or more outputs of IC3 to it.

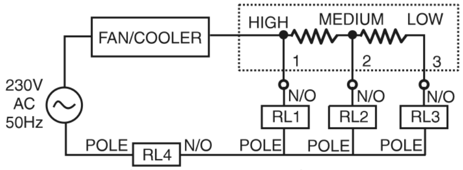

FAN/COOLER
HIGH
MEDIUM
LOW
1
2
3
230V AC 50Hz
N/O
N/O
N/O
RL1
RL2
RL3
POLE
RL4
N/O
POLE
POLE
POLE

Fig. 3. Modified arrangement for speed control

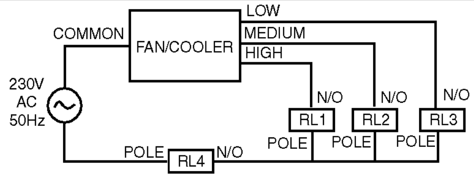

COMMON
FAN/COOLER
LOW
MEDIUM
HIGH
230V AC 50Hz
N/O
N/O
N/O
RL1
RL2
RL3
POLE
RL4
N/O
POLE
POLE
POLE

Fig. 4. Speed-control arrangement for cooler with different windings for various speeds

In the motors used in certain coolers there are separate windings for separate speeds. Such coolers do not use a rheostat type speed regulator. The method of connection of this device to such coolers is given in Fig. 4.

The resistors in Figs 2 and 3 are the tapped resistors, similar to those used in manually controlled fan-speed regulators. Alternatively wire-wound resistors of suitable wattage and resistance can be used.

BLOWN FUSE INDICATOR

ASHUTOSH KUMAR SINHA

Generally, when an equipment indicates no power, the cause may be just a blown fuse. Here is a circuit that shows the condition of fuse through LEDs. This compact circuit is very useful and reliable. It uses very few components, which makes it inexpensive too.

Under normal conditions (when fuse is alright), voltage drop in first arm is 2V + (2 x 0.7V) = 3.4V, whereas in second arm it is only 2V. So current flows through the second arm, i.e. through the green LED, causing it to glow; whereas the red LED remains off.

When the fuse blows off, the supply to green LED gets blocked, and because only one LED is in the circuit, the red LED glows. In case of power failure, both LEDs remain 'off'.

This circuit can be easily modified to produce a siren in fuse-blown condition (see Fig. 2). An optocoupler is used to trigger the siren. When the fuse blows, red LED glows. Simultaneously it switches 'on' the siren.

In place of a bicolour LED, two LEDs of red and green colour can be used. Similarly, only one diode in place of D1 and D2 may be used. Two diodes are used to increase the voltage drop, since the two LEDs may produce different voltage drops.

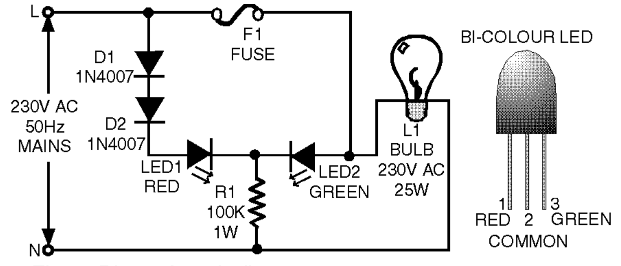

L
N
D1 1N4007
D2 1N4007
F1 FUSE
230V AC 50Hz MAINS
LED1 RED
R1 100K 1W
LED2 GREEN
L1 BULB 230V AC 25W
BI-COLOUR LED
1
2
3
RED
GREEN
COMMON

Fig. 1. Blown-fuse indicator

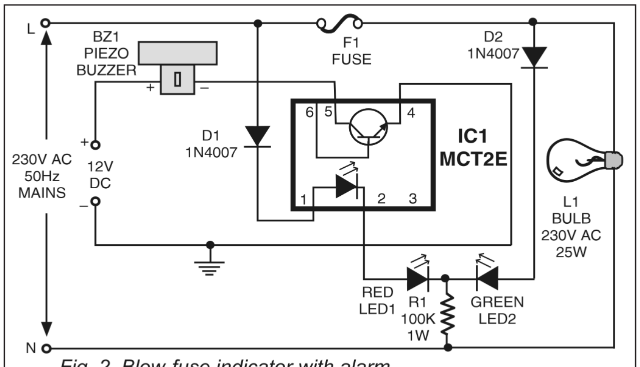

L
N
BZ1 PIEZO BUZZER
+
–
F1 FUSE
D2 1N4007
D1 1N4007
230V AC 50Hz MAINS
12V DC
+
–
6
5
4
1
2
3
IC1 MCT2E
L1 BULB 230V AC 25W
RED LED1
R1 100K 1W
GREEN LED2

Fig. 2. Blow-fuse indicator with alarm

OVER-/UNDER-VOLTAGE CUT-OFF WITH ON-TIME DELAY

K. UDHAYA KUMARAN, VU3GTH

Here is an inexpensive auto cut-off circuit, which is fabricated using transistors and other discrete components. It can be used to protect loads such as refrigerator, TV, and VCR from undesirable over and under line voltages, as well as surges caused due to sudden failure/resumption of mains power supply. This circuit can be used directly as a standalone circuit between the mains supply and the load, or it may be inserted between an existing automatic/manual stabiliser and the load.

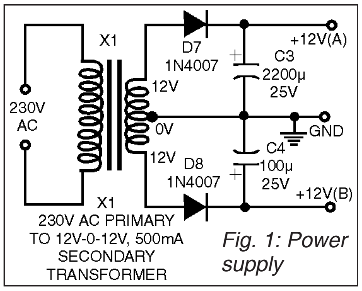

X1
D7
1N4007
+12V(A)
C3
2200µ
25V
12V
230V
AC
0V
GND
C4
100µ
25V
12V
D8
1N4007
+12V(B)
X1
230V AC PRIMARY
TO 12V-0-12V, 500mA
SECONDARY
TRANSFORMER

Fig. 1: Power supply

The on-time delay circuit not only protects the load from switching surges but also from quick changeover (off and on) effect of over-/under-voltage relay, in case the mains voltage starts fluctuating in the vicinity of under- or over-voltage preset points. When the mains supply goes out of preset (over- or under-voltage) limits, the relay/load is turned 'off' immediately, and it is turned 'on' only when AC mains voltage settles within the preset limits for a period equal to the 'on' time delay period. The on-time delay period is presetable for 5 seconds to 2 minutes duration, using presets VR3 and VR4. For electronic loads such as TV and VCR, the on-time delay may be set for 10 seconds to 20 seconds. For refrigerators, the delay should be preset for about 2 minutes duration, to protect the compressor motor from frequently turning 'on' and 'off'.

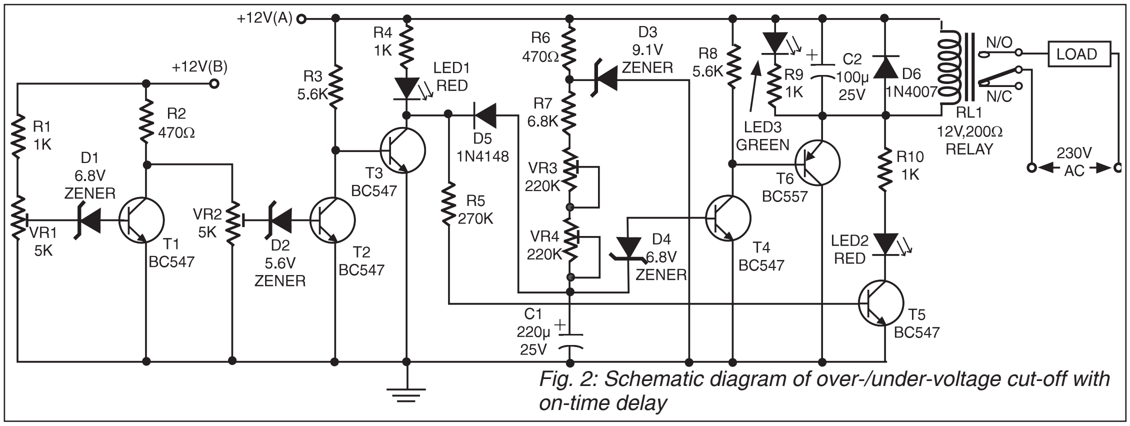

+12V(A)
R4
1K
R6
470Ω
D3
9.1V
ZENER
R8
5.6K
C2
100µ
25V
N/O
LOAD
+12V(B)
R3
5.6K
LED1
RED
R9
1K
D6
1N4007
N/C
RL1
12V,200Ω
RELAY
R1
1K
R2
470Ω
R7
6.8K
D5
1N4148
LED3
GREEN
R10
1K
230V
AC
D1
6.8V
ZENER
T3
BC547
VR3
220K
T6
BC557
VR2
5K
R5
270K
VR1
5K
T1
BC547
D2
5.6V
ZENER
T2
BC547
VR4
220K
D4
6.8V
ZENER
T4
BC547
LED2
RED
C1
220µ
25V
T5
BC547

Fig. 2: Schematic diagram of over-/under-voltage cut-off with on-time delay

In this circuit, the on-time and off-time delays depend on charging and discharging time of capacitor C1. Here the discharge time of capacitor C1 is quite less to suit our requirement. We want that on switching 'off' of the supply to the load, the circuit should be immediately ready to provide the required on-time delay when AC mains resumes after a brief interruption, or when mains AC voltage is interrupted for a short period due to over-/under-voltage cut-off operation. This circuit is also useful against frequent power supply interruptions resulting from loose electrical connections; be it at the pole or switch or relay contacts, or due to any other reason.

Here supply for the over- and under-voltage sampling part of the circuit [marked +12V(B)] and that required for the rest of the circuit [marked +12V(A)] are derived separately from lower half and upper half respectively of centre-tapped secondary of step-down transformer X1, as shown in Fig. 1. If we use common 12V DC supply for both parts of the circuit, then during relay 'on' operation, 12V DC to this circuit would fall below preset low cut-off voltage and thus affect the proper operation of the sampling circuit. The value of filtering capacitor C4 is so chosen that a fall in mains voltage may quickly activate under-voltage sensing circuit, should the mains voltage reach the low cut-off limit.

In the sampling part of the circuit, wired around transistor T1, presets VR1 and VR2 are used for presetting over- or under-voltage cut-off limits, respectively. The limits are set according to load voltage requirement, as per manufacturer's specifications.

Once the limits have been set, zener D1 will conduct if upper limit has been exceeded, resulting in cut-off of transistor T2. The same condition can also result when mains voltage falls below the under-voltage setting, as zener D2 stops conducting. Thus, in either case, transistor T2 is cut-off and transistor T3 is forward biased via resistor R3. This causes LED1 to be 'on'. Simultaneously, capacitor C2 quickly discharges via diode D5 and transistor T3. As collector of transistor T3 is pulled low, transistors T4 and T5 are both cut-off, as also transistor T5. Thus, LED2 and LED3 are 'off' and the relay is de-energised.

Now, when the mains voltage comes within the acceptable range, transistor T2 conducts to cut-off transistor T3. LED1 goes 'off'. Transistor T5 gets forward biased and LED2 becomes 'on'. However,

TABLE I
Showing State of LEDs for Various Circuit Conditions

Circuit condition	LED1	LED2	LED3	Relay/Load
Over or under voltage cut-off in operation	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
On-time delay in operation	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF
AC voltage normal after on-time delay	OFF	OFF	ON	ON

transistors T4 and T5 are still 'off', since base of T4 via zener D4 is connected to capacitor C1, which was in discharged condition. Thus, LED3 and relay RL1 or load remain 'off'.

Capacitor C1 starts charging slowly towards +12V(A) rail via resistors R6 and R7, and presets VR3 and VR4. When the potential across capacitor C1 reaches 6.8V (after a delay termed as on-time delay) to breakdown zener D4, transistor T4, as also transistor T5, gets forward biased, to switch 'on' LED3 and relay RL1 or load, while LED2 goes 'off'. Should the mains supply go out of preset limits before completion of the on-time delay, capacitor C1 will immediately discharge because of conduction of transistor T3, and the cycle will repeat until mains supply stablises within preset limits for the on-time delay period.

The on-time delay is selected by adjusting presets VR3 and VR4, and resistor R6. Zener diode D3 is used to obtain regulated 9.1 volts for timing capacitor C1, so that preset on-time delay is more or less independent of variation in input DC voltage to this circuit (which would vary according to the mains AC voltage). To switch 'off' the relay/load rapidly during undesired mains condition, the timing capacitor C1 is discharged rapidly to provide complete control over turning 'on' or 'off' of relay RL1 (or the load). The functioning of the LEDs and relay, depending on the circuit condition, is summarised in Table I.

ONE BUTTON FOR STEP, RUN, AND HALT COMMANDS

(BASED ON MOTOROLA APPLICATION NOTE)

The logic signals to step, run, and halt a computer or other appropriate digital devices or system may be generated by this circuit, which is operated by just a single pushbutton. The only active devices used are a dual one-shot and a dual flip-flop ICs.

The step command is generated each time the pushbutton is depressed momentarily. The run command occurs if the button is held down for a time exceeding about 300 ms.

This time (300 ms) represents an excellent compromise between circuit speed and accuracy. If this duration is made much shorter, the circuit may fail to differentiate between the step and run commands, and may generate the run command when the step command is desired, or vice versa. Also, repeatedly pressing the button rapidly to initiate step functions will generate the run command if the duration is set for much more than 300 ms. Finally, the device will be halted if the pushbutton is depressed momentarily when the circuit is in the run mode.

As shown in the figure, module A1 acts as an effective switch debouncer for the pushbutton. For a step command, poking the button quickly will cause 'Q' output of A1 to go high and trigger module A2 (the monostable for run-and-step operations). The Q output of A1 is also fed to 'D' input of module A3 (the run-and idle latch). At the same time, the active low $\overline{Q}$ output of A1 triggers the step one-shot A4, yielding the step function.

The sequence of events discussed above also describes the initial portion of the run

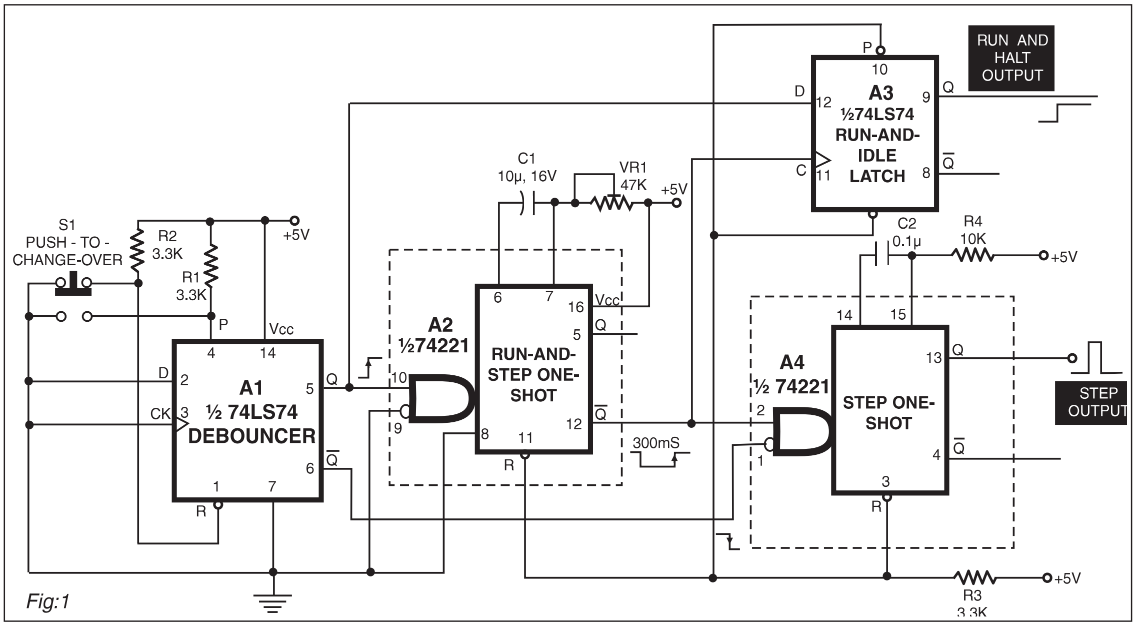


Fig:1

command, whereby the step pulse can be used to manually advance a computer's program counter by 1. The run pulse can be used to instruct the computer to rapidly execute succeeding steps automatically. The Q* output of A2 moves high 300 ms after the pushbutton is depressed. The positive going (trailing) edge of this pulse then clocks the state of the pushbutton (as detected by A1) into A3.

If the circuit/computer is in run mode, then pressing of the button will cause the circuit to halt the computer by clocking in a logic '0' (synchronously available at data input pin) to the run-and-idle latch A3. Note that the step pulse generated at the start of the halt sequence, as shown in the timing diagram, is of no consequence, since when the step is received, the machine is already in the run mode and will override that command.

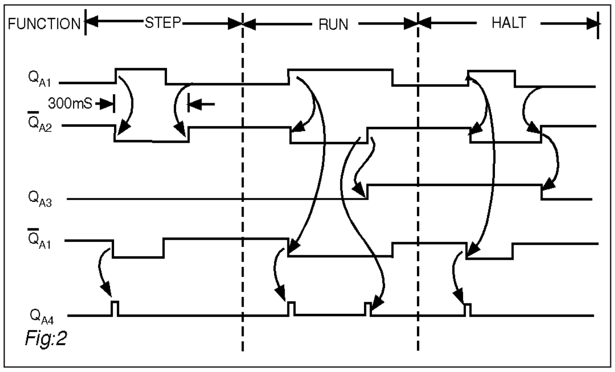


Fig:2

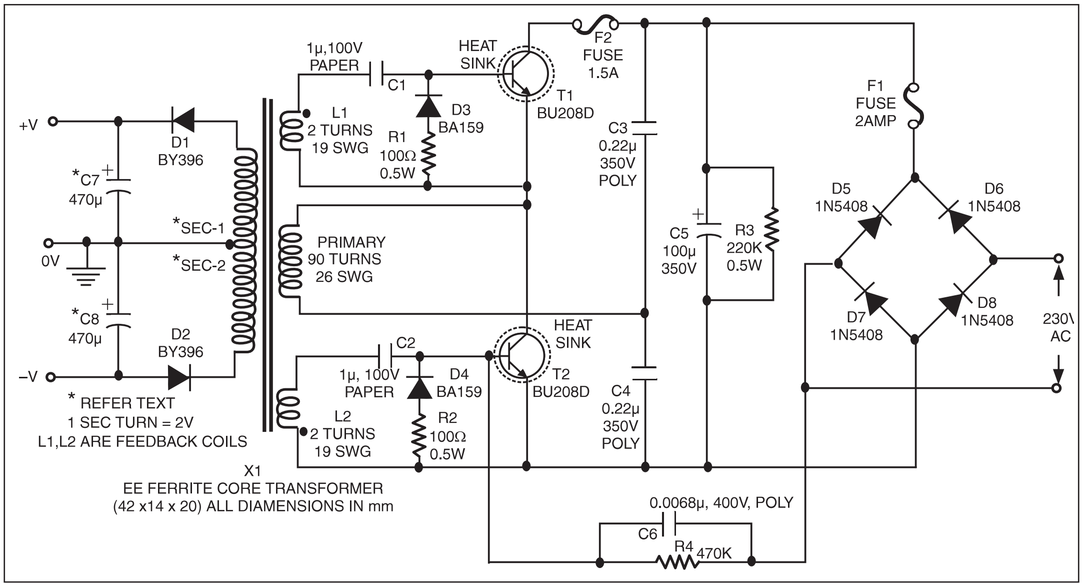
SIMPLE SWITCH MODE POWER SUPPLY

DEEPU P.A.

The SMPS described here is suitable for high-wattage stereos and other similar equipment. The circuit employs two high-voltage power transistors (BU208D) which have built-in reverse-connected diodes across their collectors and emitters. It can supply about 250-watt output.

The circuit uses a ferrite core transformer of 14mm width, 20mm height, and 42mm length of E-E cores. An air gap of 0.5 mm is required between E-E junction. Good insulation using plastic-insulating sheets (Mylar) is to be maintained between each layer of winding.

The number of primary turns required is 90 with 26 SWG wire. The secondary winding employs 17 SWG wire (for 4A load current). Each turn of the secondary develops approximately 2 volts. The reader can decide about the output voltage and the corresponding secondary turns, which would work out to be half the desired secondary voltage. The voltage rating of capacitors C7 and C8 should be at least twice the secondary output of each secondary section. BY396 rectifier diodes shown on the secondary side can be used for a maximum load current of 3 amperes.


+V
0V
−V
*C7
470μ
*C8
470μ
D1
BY396
D2
BY396
*SEC-1
*SEC-2
* REFER TEXT
1 SEC TURN = 2V
L1,L2 ARE FEEDBACK COILS
X1
EE FERRITE CORE TRANSFORMER
(42 x14 x 20) ALL DIAMENSIONS IN mm
1μ,100V
PAPER
C1
L1
2 TURNS
19 SWG
R1
100Ω
0.5W
D3
BA159
HEAT
SINK
T1
BU208D
PRIMARY
90 TURNS
26 SWG
C2
1μ, 100V
PAPER
L2
2 TURNS
19 SWG
D4
BA159
R2
100Ω
0.5W
HEAT
SINK
T2
BU208D
F2
FUSE
1.5A
C3
0.22μ
350V
POLY
C4
0.22μ
350V
POLY
C5
100μ
350V
R3
220K
0.5W
F1
FUSE
2AMP
D5
1N5408
D6
1N5408
D7
1N5408
D8
1N5408
230V
AC
0.0068μ, 400V, POLY
C6
R4
470K

Two feedback windings (L1 and L2) using two turns each of 19 SWG wire are wound on the same core. These windings are connected to transistors T1 and T2 with a phase difference of 180°, as shown by the polarity dots in the figure. First wind the primary winding (90 turns using 26 SWG wire) on the former. Then wind the two feedback windings over the secondary (output). Ensure that each winding is separated by an insulation layer.

Two separate heat sinks are to be provided for the two transistors (BU208D). The filter capacitor for mains should be of at least 47μF, 350V rating. It is better to use a 100μF, 350V capacitor. If the output is short-circuited by less than 8-ohm load, the SMPS would automatically turn off because of the absence of base current.

The hfe_{min} (current amplification factor) of BU208D is 2.5. Thus, sufficient base current is required for fully saturated operation, otherwise the transistors get over-heated.

At times, due to use of very high value of capacitors C7 and C8 (say 2200μF or so) on the secondary side or due to low load, the oscillations may cease on the primary side. This can be rectified by increasing the value of capacitor C6 to 0.01μF.

Readers queries:

❑ Please clarify my following doubts:

1. What are the functions of diodes D1 and D2, and capacitors C7 and C8?

2. Can we use this SMPS with AC-operated equipment like TV, tape recorder, VCR, CD player, etc? If no, what changes should be incorporated in the circuit?

N.M. Prasade
Pune

❑ 1. Biasing capacitor C6 and resistor R4 in transistor T2 section are shown connected to the AC supply in the figure. Instead, they should be connected to the DC supply.

2. What are the parameters to be considered for deciding the output current rating (i.e. one ampere or higher current output)?

3. Give more details as to how the circuit works? At what frequency do transistors T1 and T2 oscillate?

Dr P. Khasgiwala
Surat

The author, Deepu P.A. replies:

1. D1 and D2 are rectifying diodes, and C7 and C8 are used for filtering. In my circuit, DC dual power supply connections are shown. One can use a full-wave or a bridge rectifier.

2. As output frequency of SMPS is about 24 kHz, it cannot directly drive TV, tape recorder, VCR, etc. But it can supply the DC power needed inside the systems; for example, one can replace the transformer of a tape recorder with this SMPS.

In reply to Dr P. Khasgwala's letter:

1. C6 and R4 are not biasing capacitors. This combination is used to inject an initial noise to start oscillation. We do not require a biasing network because the transistors are working between cut-off and saturation regions.

2. To increase the output current rating, replace transistor BU208D with higher-current capacity switching transistors. Second, increase the size of the transformer and the ampere rating of diodes D1 and D2.

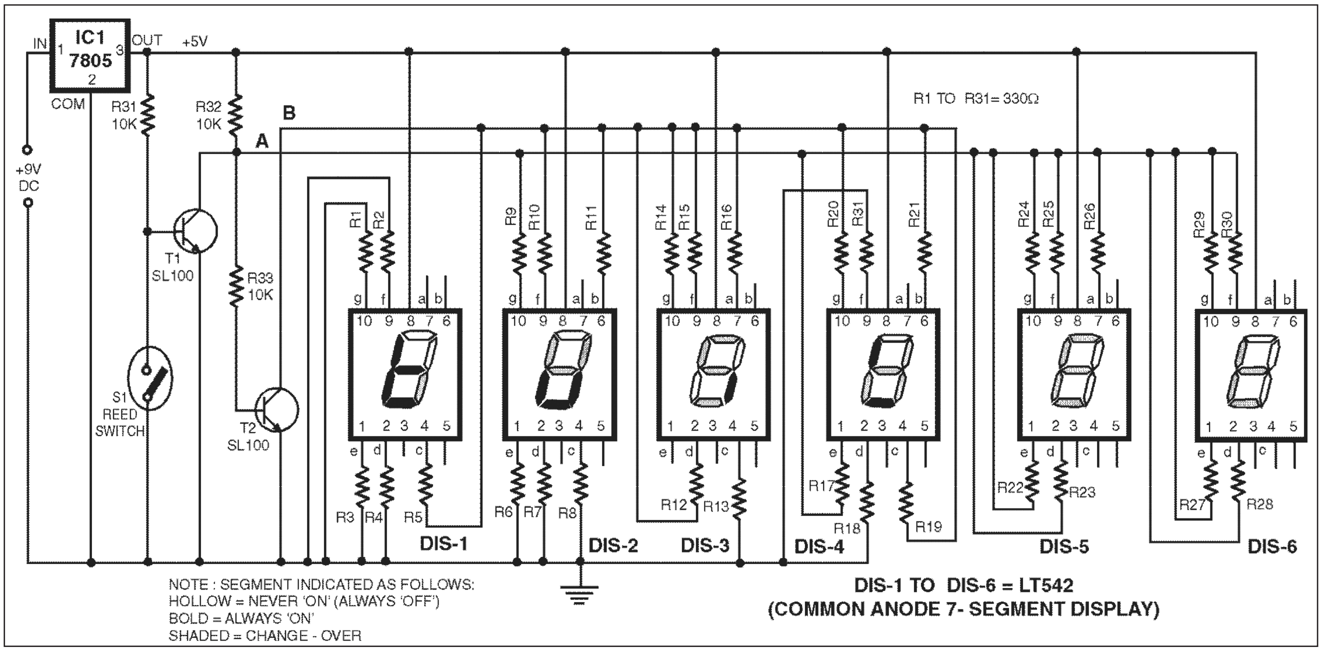
3. Initially, the noise is injected at the base of T2 and it is switched on. This causes charging of capacitor C3 and discharging of capacitor C4 through the 90-turns coil. The induced voltage in windings L1 and L2 differs in phase by 180°. After charging capacitor C3, transistor T2 is cut-off. When transistor T2 is off, transistor T1 is on. This causes discharging of capacitor C4 and charging of C3. This process repeats itself. The frequency depends on L1-C1 and L2-C2 combinations. In this circuit, the frequency of oscillations is about 24 kHz.

TOILET INDICATOR

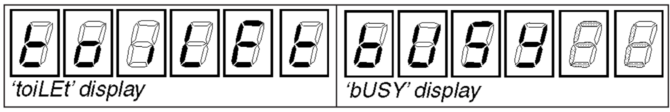
K.S. SANKAR

The circuit shown here displays the message 'toiLEt' or 'bUSY', using just six 7-segment common-anode displays. Such a display can be fixed on the toilet door and operated using a reed switch and a ferrite magnet pair, suitably fixed on toilet door and its frame, such that the reed switch is closed when the toilet is busy.

Those segments of the displays for each letter that are common to both the display words 'toiLEt' and 'bUSY' are connected through resistors to ground (indicated by bold lines in the figure). These segments are permanently lit. 'A' rail is connected to segments that make up the word 'toiLEt' and 'B' rail for the word 'bUSY'. The last two displays are



not used in the word 'bUSY'. Rails 'A' and 'B' are active low for the common-anode displays used here. Segments that are to be always 'off' are left disconnected and are shown as hollow lines. Those segments which are either lit during 'toiLEt' display (pulled 'low' via bus 'A') or during 'bUSY' display (pulled 'low' via bus 'B') are shown shaded in the figure.


'toiLEt' display
'bUSY' display

Connect a +5V supply rail to the common anode pin of all the displays. To test the circuit at this stage, temporarily ground either rail 'A' or rail 'B' (but not both), and check whether the display shows 'toiLET' and 'busy'. Use a 9V DC adapter as the power supply source and stabilise it through a 7805 regulator.

Normally, switch S1 is open and transistor T1 is forward biased. T1 conducts and thus rail 'A' goes to near 0V, to display the word 'toiLEt'. If switch S1 is closed, T1 switches 'off' and turns 'on' transistor T2 to take point 'B' to near ground potential, and thus the display changes over to indicate the word 'bUSY'.

Thus, when toilet door is open, the magnetically-operated (or micro-switch operated) reed switch is open and the display indicates 'toiLEt'. Now to make the message changeover to 'bUSY', when someone goes inside and locks the door, the switch needs to be closed on closure of the toilet door. One may also use other methods to achieve the same results.

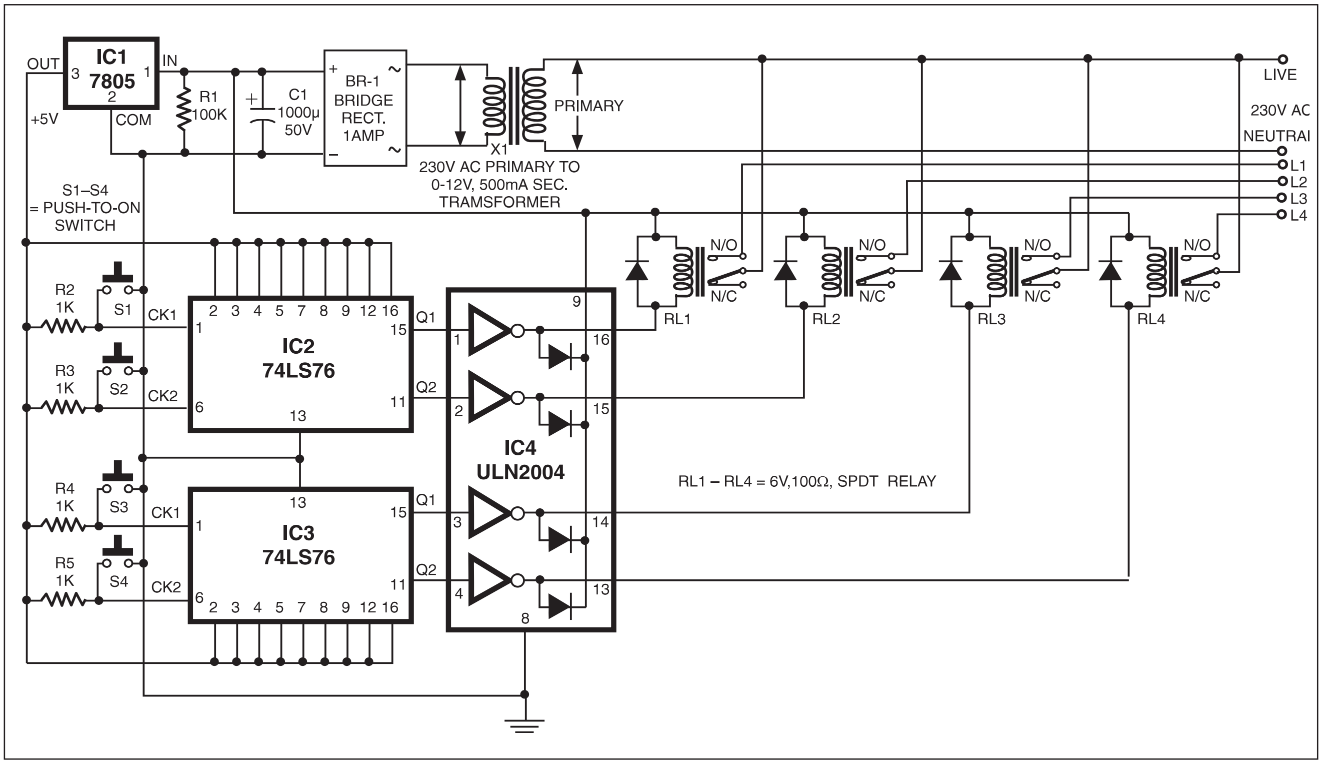
FEATHER-TOUCH SWITCHES FOR MAINS

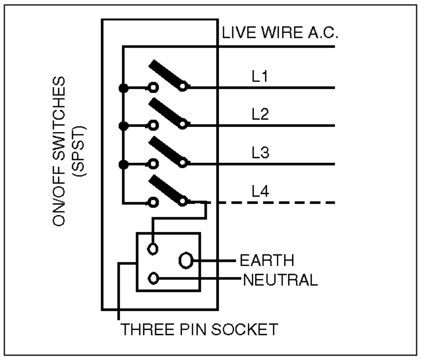
D.K. KAUSHIK

An ordinary AC switchboard contains separate switches for switching 'on'/'off' electric bulbs, tubelights, fans, etc. A very simple, interesting circuit presented here describes a feather-touch switchboard which may be used for switching 'on'/'off' four or even more devices. The membrane or micro-switches (push-to-on type) may be used with this circuit, which look very elegant. By momentary depression of a switch, the electrical appliance will be 'on'/'off', independently.

To understand the principle and design of the circuit, let us consider an existing switchboard consisting of four switches. One live wire, one neutral wire, and four wires for four switches are connected to the switchboard, as shown in the illustration below the circuit diagram. The switches are removed and the above-mentioned wires (live, neutral, L1, L2, L3, and L4) are connected to the circuit, as shown in column 3.

The circuit comprises four commonly available ICs and four micro-relays, in addition to four micro-switches/membrane


OUT
IC1
7805
IN
3
1
2
+5V
COM
R1
100K
C1
1000µ
50V
BR-1
BRIDGE
RECT.
1AMP
X1
PRIMARY
230V AC PRIMARY TO
0-12V, 500mA SEC.
TRAMSFORMER
LIVE
230V AC
NEUTRAI
L1
L2
L3
L4
S1–S4
= PUSH-TO-ON
SWITCH
R2
1K
S1
R3
1K
S2
R4
1K
S3
R5
1K
S4
CK1
CK2
IC2
74LS76
IC3
74LS76
2 3 4 5 7 8 9 12 16
1
6
13
15
11
Q1
Q2
IC4
ULN2004
9
16
15
14
13
8
N/O
N/C
RL1
RL2
RL3
RL4
RL1 – RL4 = 6V,100Ω, SPDT RELAY



switches (push-to-on type) and a few other passive components. IC 7805 is a 5-volt regulator used for supplying 5V to IC2 and IC3 (7476 ICs). These ICs are dual J-K flip-flops. The four J-K flip-flops being used in toggle mode toggle with each clock pulse. The clock pulses are generated by the push-to-on switches S1 through S4 when these are momentarily depressed. When a switch is momentarily depressed, its corresponding output changes its existing state (i.e. changes from 'high' to 'low' or vice versa). The outputs of flip-flops drive the corresponding relays, in conjunction with the four relay driver transistors SL100. The wires earlier removed are connected to this circuit. On the switch panel board, the micro-switches are connected, and under the board the connections are wired as suggested above.

Relays RL1 though RL4 are 9V, SPST-type micro-relays of proper contact ratings.

The circuit may be expanded for six switches by using one more IC 7476, and an IC ULN 2004 which has an array of seven Darlingtons for driving the relays. So two more micro-switches and relays may be connected in a similar fashion.

This circuit can be assembled on a general-purpose PCB. It is suggested that the circuit, after assembly on a PCB, may be housed in a box of proper size, which may be fitted on the wall in place of a normal switchboard.

Readers queries:

 The circuit is very good for light and other loads. I request the author to clear the follwing doubts:

1. Can we connect 12V DC power supply across 1000µF, 50V capacitor C1, so that we could use 12V DC common supply for all the switchboards?

2. Instead of two 74LS76 ICs, can the author suggest a single IC with six to seven outputs?

3. Can we use ULN2001, ULN2801, ULN2803, or ULN2003?

4. Can we connect an LDR in place of switches S1 through S4?

5. In any switch, the first depression causes the relay to energise and the next depression causes it to de-energise (toggle). Can we connect five to ten switches in parallel to any one switch, for any particular relay, to be used for staircase lights?

6. Can we eliminate the use of 500mA step-down transformer and develop the DC directly from mains? Would it need ventilation holes for dissipating the heat generated during such conversion?

Jerry D'Souza
Kedinje (Karnataka)

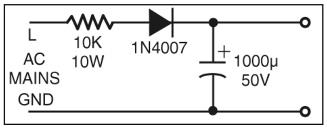


Fig. 1: Direct development of DC voltage from mains

The author, Dr D.K. Kaushik, replies:

1. Yes, 12V DC power supply (derived from AC) can be run to all the switchboards.

2. As far as I know, there is no IC that has more than two independent T flip-flops or J-K flip-flops. Thus, there is no alternative.

3. IC ULN2004 used in the circuit has Darlington pair array of seven outputs. For less outputs, the ICs suggested by the reader may be used.

4. No, a single LDR cannot be used in place of switches S1 to S4, as these are four independent switches. Four LDRs, if used, are to be housed in different units so that if light falls on one LDR, it does not affect the others.

5. Yes, a few micro switches may be connected in parallel to any one switch, since any switch in parallel may trigger the corresponding flip-flop. It could therefore be used for staircase light.

6. Yes, the transformer can be replaced by the circuit shown in Fig. 1. The same was included in my original manuscript. The 10-kilo-ohm resistor connected in the circuit may, however, get over-heated, for which ventilation holes will be needed.

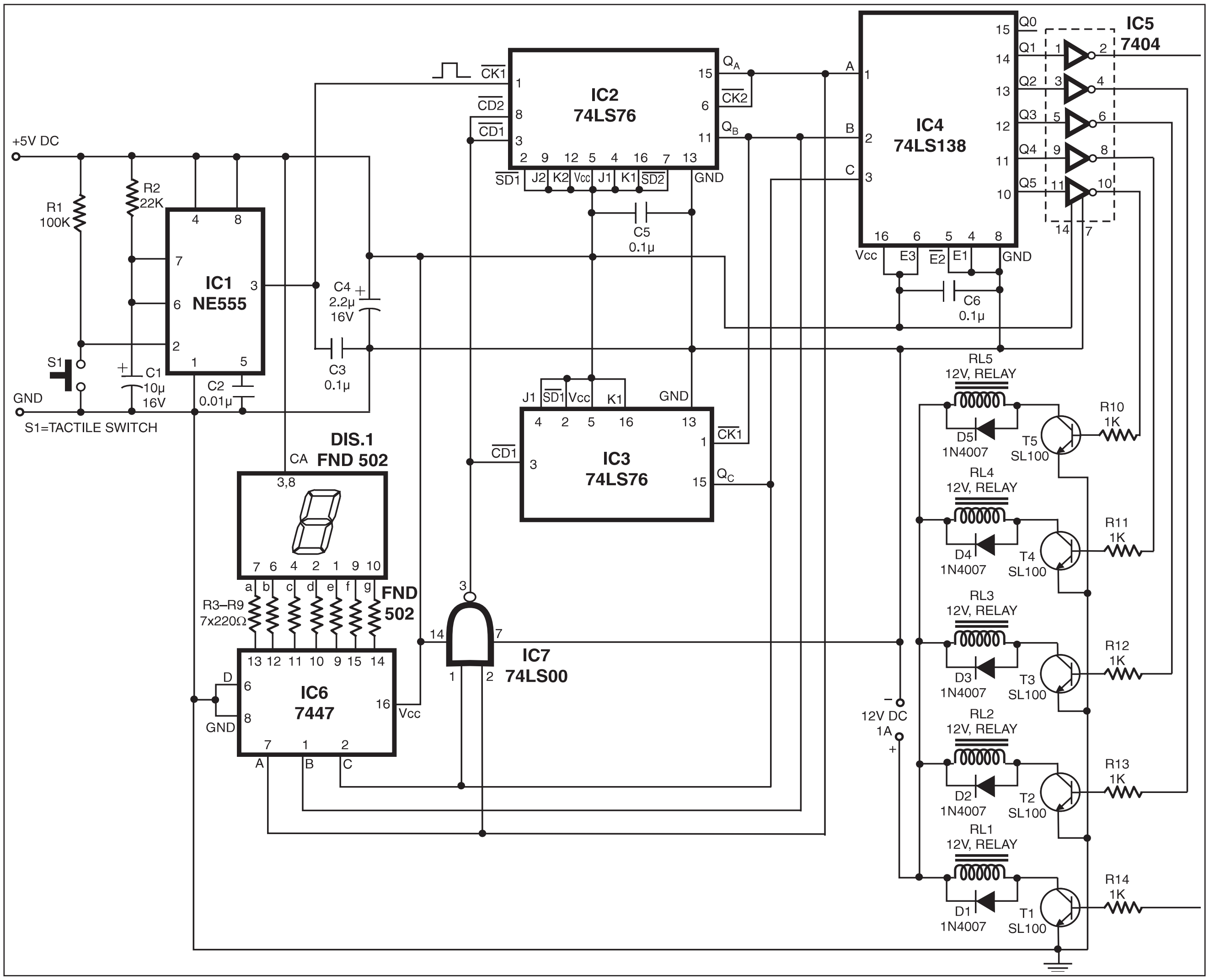
DIGITAL FAN REGULATOR

C.K. SUNITH

The circuit presented here is that of a digital fan regulator, which provide five speed levels as catered for in ordinary fan regulators. The circuit makes use of easily available components. An optional 7-segment display with its associated circuitry has been provided to display your choice of fan speed.

The heart of the circuit is a modulo-6 binary counter, built around IC2 and IC3 (IC 7476) which are dual JK flip-flops. The counter counts up in a straight binary progression from 000 to 101 (i.e. from 0 to 5) upon each successive clock edge and is reset to 000 at the next clock. The count sequence of the counter has been summarised in Table I.

Each flip-flop is configured to toggle when the clock goes from high to low. Let us begin with the assumption that



+5V DC
GND
R1 100K
R2 22K
IC1 NE555
S1
S1=TACTILE SWITCH
C1 10µ 16V
C2 0.01µ
C3 0.1µ
C4 2.2µ 16V
IC2 74LS76
CK1
CD2
CD1
SD1 J2 K2 Vcc J1 K1 SD2
GND
QA
CK2
QB
C5 0.1µ
IC3 74LS76
J1 SD1 Vcc K1
CK1
CD1
QC
IC4 74LS138
A
B
C
Vcc E3 E2 E1 GND
C6 0.1µ
Q0 Q1 Q2 Q3 Q4 Q5
IC5 7404
DIS.1 FND 502
CA
3,8
a b c d e f g
FND 502
R3–R9 7x220Ω
IC6 7447
D
GND
Vcc
A B C
IC7 74LS00
12V DC 1A
RL5 12V, RELAY
RL4 12V, RELAY
RL3 12V, RELAY
RL2 12V, RELAY
RL1 12V, RELAY
D5 1N4007
D4 1N4007
D3 1N4007
D2 1N4007
D1 1N4007
T5 SL100
T4 SL100
T3 SL100
T2 SL100
T1 SL100
R10 1K
R11 1K
R12 1K
R13 1K
R14 1K

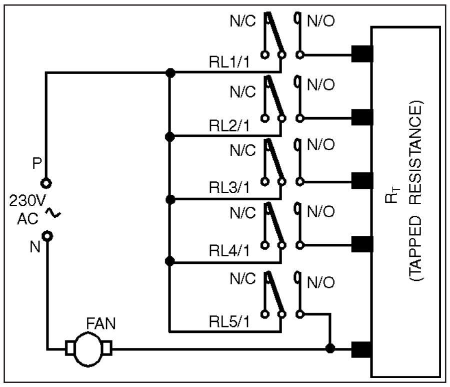
the counter reads 000 at power on. The monoshot built around IC1 (NE 555) provides necessary pulses to trigger the counter upon every depression of switch S1. Upon the arrival of first clock edge, the counter advances to 001. The outputs of the counter go to IC4 (IC 74138), which is a 3-line to 8-line decoder. When IC4 receives the input address 001, its output Q1 goes low, while other outputs Q0 and Q2 through Q7 stay high. The output Q1, after inversion, drives transistor T1, which actuates relay RL1. Now power is delivered to the fan through the N/O contacts RL1/1 of relay RL1 and the tapped resistor R_T. For the tapped resistor R_T, one can use the resistance found in conventional fan regulators with rotary speed regulator.

The outputs of the counter also go to IC6 (IC 7447), a BCD to 7-segment code converter, which, in turn, drives a 7-segment LED display. When switch S1 is depressed once again, the counter advances to count 010. Now, the output Q2 of IC4 goes low, while Q0, Q1 and Q3 through Q7 go high or remain high. This forces transistor T2 to saturation and actuates relay RL2. The display indicates the counter output in a 7-segment fashion.

TABLE I

Displayed count	Counter count	IC4's active low output	Relay activated
0	000	Q0	NIL
1	001	Q1	RL1
2	010	Q2	RL2
3	011	Q3	RL3
4	100	Q4	RL4
5	101	Q5	RL5
0	000	Q0	NIL

The counter proceeds through its normal count sequence upon every depression of switch S1 up to the count 101. When switch S1 is depressed once again, normally the counter should read 110. But the two most significant bits of the counter force the output of NAND gate (IC7) to go low to reset the counter to 000. The counter now begins to count through its normal sequence all over again, upon every key depression.



N/C
N/O
RL1/1
RL2/1
RL3/1
RL4/1
RL5/1
P
230V AC
N
FAN
R_T (TAPPED RESISTANCE)

The circuit does not provide the facility to memorise its previous setting once it is powered off or when there is a mains failure.

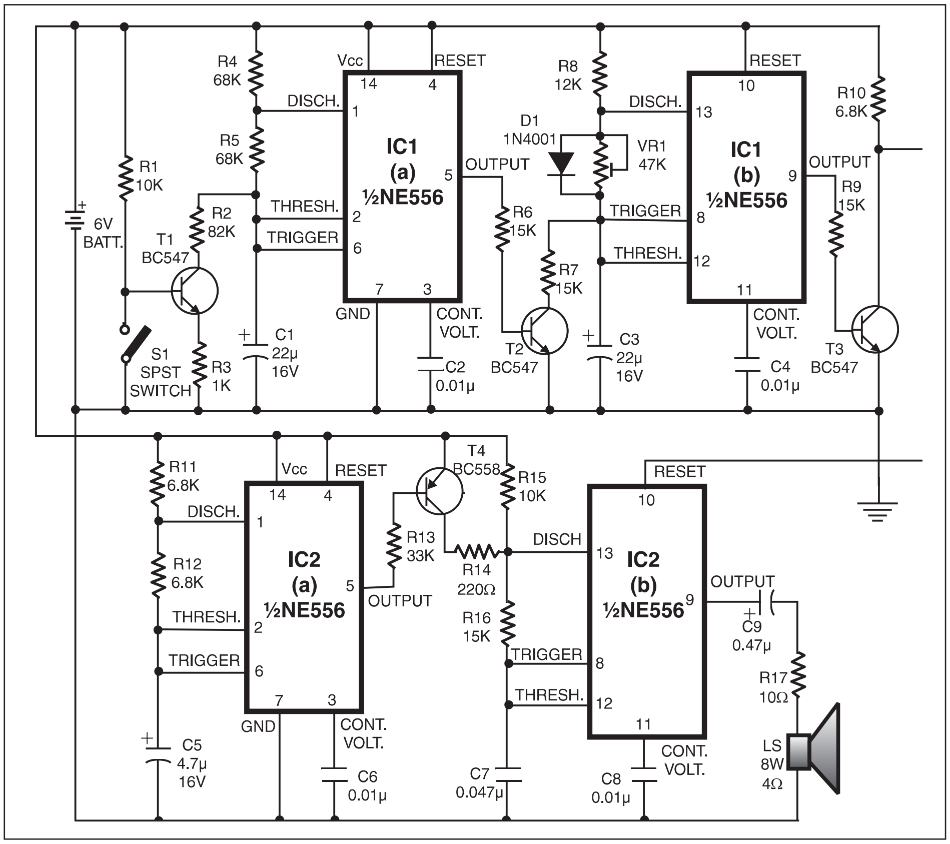
TELEPHONE RINGER USING TIMER ICs

PRABHASH K.P.

Using modulated rectangular waves of different time periods, the circuit presented here produces ringing tones similar to those produced by a telephone.

The circuit requires four astable multivibrators for its working. Therefore two 556 ICs are used here. The IC 556 contains two timers (similar to 555 ICs) in a single package. One can also assemble this circuit using four separate 555 ICs. The first multivibrator produces a rectangular waveform with 1-second 'low' duration and 2-second 'high' duration. This waveform is used to control the next multivibrator that produces another rectangular waveform.

A resistor R7 is used at the collector of transistor T2 to prevent capacitor C3 from fully discharging when transistor T2 is conducting. Preset VR1 must be set at such a value that two ringing tones are heard in the loudspeaker in one second. The remaining two multivibrators are used to produce ringing tones corresponding to the ringing pulses produced by the preceding multivibrator stages.


R4
68K
R5
68K
R1
10K
R2
82K
6V
BATT.
T1
BC547
S1
SPST
SWITCH
R3
1K
C1
22µ
16V
DISCH.
THRESH.
TRIGGER
Vcc
14
4
RESET
1
2
6
7
3
5
IC1
(a)
½NE556
OUTPUT
GND
CONT.
VOLT.
C2
0.01µ
R6
15K
R7
15K
T2
BC547
R8
12K
D1
1N4001
VR1
47K
C3
22µ
16V
DISCH.
TRIGGER
THRESH.
13
8
12
10
RESET
IC1
(b)
½NE556
9
OUTPUT
11
CONT.
VOLT.
C4
0.01µ
R10
6.8K
R9
15K
T3
BC547
R11
6.8K
R12
6.8K
DISCH.
THRESH.
TRIGGER
C5
4.7µ
16V
Vcc
14
4
RESET
IC2
(a)
½NE556
1
2
6
7
3
5
OUTPUT
GND
CONT.
VOLT.
C6
0.01µ
T4
BC558
R13
33K
R14
220Ω
R15
10K
R16
15K
C7
0.047µ
DISCH
TRIGGER
THRESH.
13
8
12
10
RESET
IC2
(b)
½NE556
9
11
OUTPUT
CONT.
VOLT.
C8
0.01µ
C9
0.47µ
R17
10Ω
LS
8W
4Ω

When switch S1 is closed, transistor T1 cuts off and thus the first multivibrator starts generating pulses. If this switch is placed in the power supply path, one has to wait for a longer time for the ringing to start after the switch is closed. The circuit used also has a provision for applying a drive voltage to the circuit to start the ringing.

Note that the circuit is not meant for connection to the telephone lines. Using appropriate drive circuitry at the input (across switch S1) one can use this circuit with intercoms, etc. Since ringing pulses are generated within the circuit, only a constant voltage is to be sent to the called party for ringing.

EFY Lab note. To resemble the actual telephone ringing a 400 Hz tone is switched on in the following sequence: 400ms on, 200ms off, 400ms on and 2000ms off and then repeat.

AUTOMATIC BATTERY CHARGER

YASH DEEP

Normally, chargers available in the market do not have any sort of control except for a rotary switch that can select different tappings on a rheostat, to vary the charging current. This type of control is not adequate because of the irregular fluctuations in the mains supply, rendering the control ineffective.

A simple circuit intended for automatic charging of lead-acid batteries is presented here. It is flexible enough to be used for large-capacity inverter batteries. Only the rating of transformer and power transistor needs to be increased.

The circuit has been basically designed for a car battery (about 40 Ah rating), which could be used for lighting two 40W tubelights. The circuit includes Schmitt trigger relay driver, float charger, and battery voltage monitor sections.

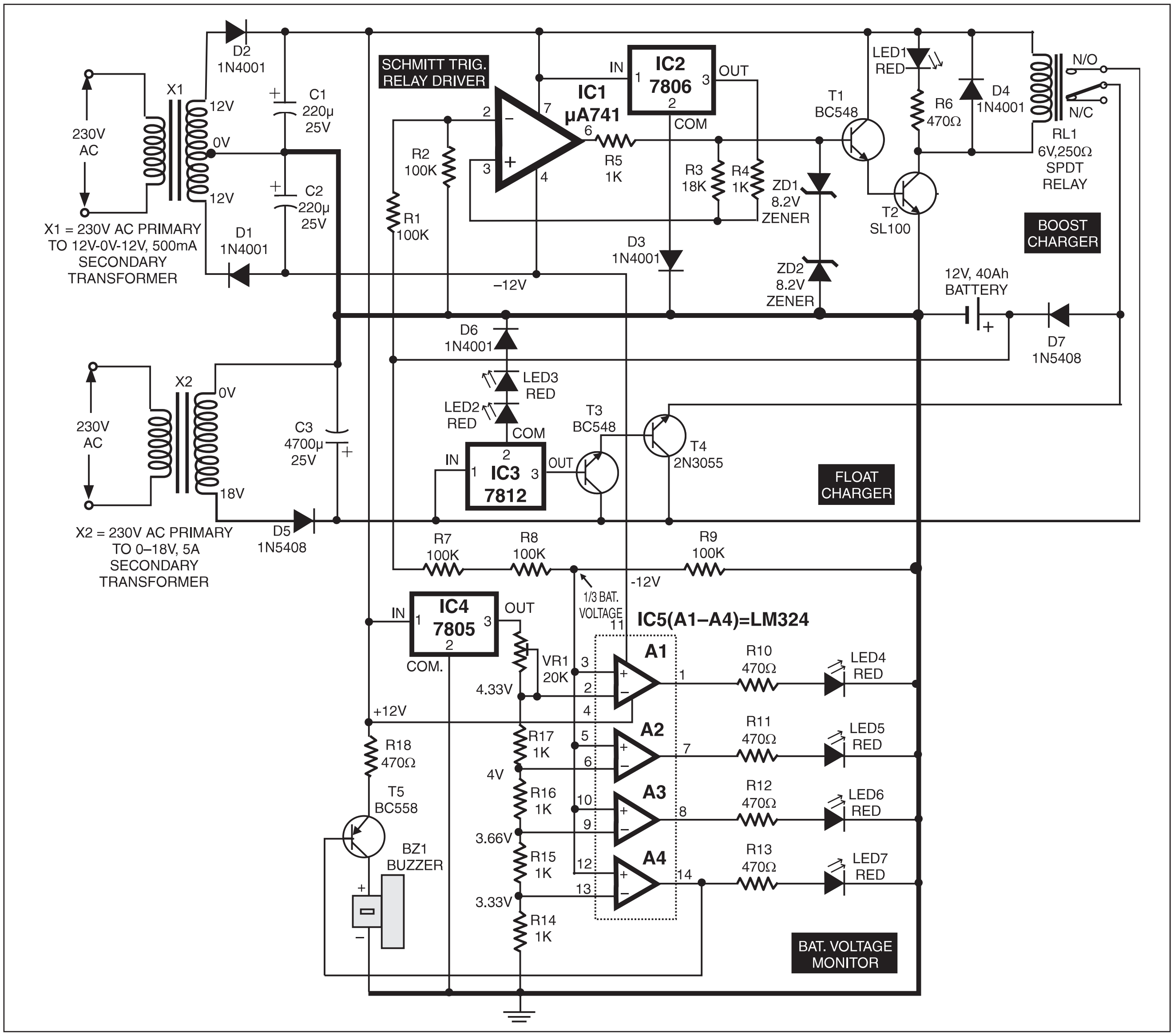
The Schmitt trigger configured around IC1 (UA741) is incorporated to avoid relay chattering. It is designed for a window of about 1V. During charging, when the battery voltage increases beyond 13.64V, the relay cuts off and the float charging section continues to work. When battery voltage falls below 11.66V, the relay is turned on and direct (fast) charging of the battery takes place at around 3A.

In the Schmitt trigger circuit, resistors R1 and R2 are used as a simple voltage divider (divide-by-2) to provide battery voltage sample to the inverting input terminal of IC1. The non-inverting input terminal of IC1 is used for reference input derived from the output of IC2 (7806), using the potentiometer arrangement of resistors R3 (18 kilo-ohm) and R4 (1 kilo-ohm).

LED1 is connected across relay to indicate fast charging mode. Diodes D3 and D6 in the common leads of IC2 and IC3 respectively provide added protection to the regulators.

The float charging section, comprising regulator 7812, transistors T3 and T4, and few other discrete components, becomes active when the battery voltage goes above 13.64V (such that the relay RL1 is de-energised). In the energised state of the relay, the emitter and collector of transistor T4 remain shorted, and hence the float charger is ineffective and direct charging of battery takes place.

The reference terminal of regulator (IC3) is kept at 3.9V using LED2, LED3, and diode D6 in the common lead of IC3 to obtain the required regulated output (15.9V), in excess of its rated output, which is needed for proper operation of the circuit. This output voltage is fed to the base of transistor T3 (BC548), which along with transistor T4 (2N3055) forms a Darlington pair. You get 14.5V output at the emitter of transistor T4, but because of a drop in diode D7 you effectively get 13.8V at the positive terminal of the battery. When Schmitt trigger switches 'on'



D2
1N4001
X1
12V
0V
12V
230V
AC
C1
220µ
25V
C2
220µ
25V
D1
1N4001
X1 = 230V AC PRIMARY TO 12V-0V-12V, 500mA SECONDARY TRANSFORMER
SCHMITT TRIG. RELAY DRIVER
IC1
µA741
IC2
7806
IN
OUT
COM
R2
100K
R1
100K
R5
1K
R3
18K
R4
1K
ZD1
8.2V
ZENER
ZD2
8.2V
ZENER
D3
1N4001
−12V
T1
BC548
T2
SL100
LED1
RED
R6
470Ω
D4
1N4001
N/O
N/C
RL1
6V,250Ω
SPDT
RELAY
BOOST CHARGER
12V, 40Ah
BATTERY
D7
1N5408
D6
1N4001
LED3
RED
LED2
RED
COM
IC3
7812
T3
BC548
T4
2N3055
FLOAT CHARGER
X2
0V
18V
230V
AC
C3
4700µ
25V
D5
1N5408
X2 = 230V AC PRIMARY TO 0–18V, 5A SECONDARY TRANSFORMER
R7
100K
R8
100K
R9
100K
-12V
1/3 BAT. VOLTAGE
IC4
7805
COM.
VR1
20K
4.33V
+12V
IC5(A1–A4)=LM324
A1
A2
A3
A4
R17
1K
4V
R16
1K
3.66V
R15
1K
3.33V
R14
1K
R18
470Ω
T5
BC558
BZ1
BUZZER
R10
470Ω
LED4
RED
R11
470Ω
LED5
RED
R12
470Ω
LED6
RED
R13
470Ω
LED7
RED
BAT. VOLTAGE MONITOR

relay RL1, charging is at high current rate (boost mode). The fast charging path, starting from transformer X2, comprises diode D5, N/O contacts of relay RL1, and diode D7.

The circuit built around IC4 and IC5 is the voltage monitoring section that provides visual display of battery voltage level in bar graph like fashion. Regulator 7805 is used for generating reference voltage. Preset VR1 (20 kilo-ohm) can be used to adjust voltage levels as indicated in the circuit. Here also a potmeter arrangement using resistors R7, R8, and R9 is used as 'divide by 3' circuit to sample the battery voltage. When voltage is below 10V, the buzzer sounds to indicate that the safe discharge limit has been exceeded.

TEMPERATURE MEASUREMENT INSTRUMENT

ANANTHA NARAYAN

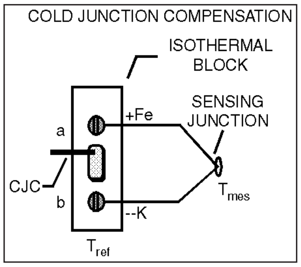
If wires of two dissimilar metals are joined at both the ends and the junction formed at one of the ends is heated more than the other junction, a current flows in the circuit due to See-beck thermal emf. This effect is used in thermocouple (TC) temperature sensors.

The Peltier effect is converse of the Seebeck effect, which means that if a current is forced through junctions of dissimilar metals, one junction starts getting hot while the other starts getting cold, depending on direction of the applied emf. This effect is used to make small portable refrigerators.

Table I

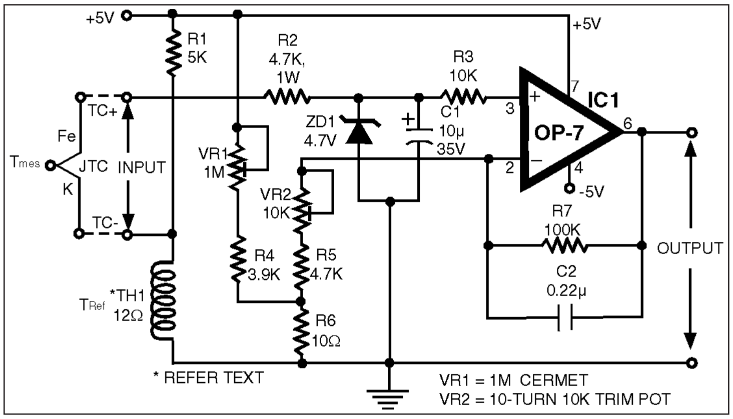
MV Thermocouple	Temperature in °C	Remarks
0	0	As cold junction is not zero but is at room temperature (RT), add RT to temperature.
2.585	50	
5.268	100	
10.777	200	
16.325	300	
21.846	400	**Example**
27.338	500	Feed 10.777mV between the TC+ and TC- terminals. If RT is 30°C, reading on 2V DPM will be 230 counts i.e. 230mV.
33.096	600	
Reference junction or cold junction at 0°C.		

It is known that one of the junctions is the sensing or hot junction (T_{mes}) and the other junction is the terminating or cold junction (T_{ref}). The voltage between terminals 'a' and 'b' is proportional to $T_{mes} - T_{ref}$ (as given in the Table I). The formula being $V_{ab} = a(T_{mes} - T_{ref})$, where a is the Seebeck coefficient of the thermocouple.



In the circuit, use only metal film resistors (MFRs) of 1 per cent tolerance, as this is an instrumentation application. Power supply should be a stable +5V, -5V supply, for which one can use 7805 and 7905 regulators.

The input terminals TC+ and TC– should go to a 4-way barrier terminal block. Two extra terminals are used to mount TH1 Cu thermistor. This forms an isothermal block, which is good enough.



A simple way to make a TH1 Cu thermistor is to take a 1meg-ohm, 2W resistor as a former and wind 2 metres of 46 SWG enameled copper (Cu) wire (5.91ohm/metre) over it. This gives a 12-ohm value. Terminate wire ends on resistor leads.

For calibration, you will need a DMM/DPM and a millivolt source (as shown in the figure below). First connect source between terminals TC+ and TC–, then set source to 0.00 mV (verify with DMM for zero). The output across +out and –out terminals must be in mV (use DMM), representing the room temperature (RT). For example, if RT is 30°C (use a glass thermometer), +out should be 30mV. At 0mV input, adjust VR1 till 30mV is read at +out terminal. This is 'zero cal'. Now increase mV input to 21.85 (corresponding to 400°C). Then vary VR2 till +out terminal is at 430mV (temp. +RT). This is 'gain cal'. Now, as VR1 and VR2 are interdependent, you may have to repeat 'zero cal' and 'gain cal' a few times till you get the above values.

Properties of J thermocouple and design aspects of gain block used in the temperature measurement instrument are summarised below:

J Thermocouple (ANSI Symbol 'J')

1. J is a thermocouple made of iron (positive) and constantan (negative).

2. Constantan is an alloy of copper

and nickel.

3. Full range of use is from –200°C to +700°C.

4. It is practical to use it only from 0°C to 400°C.

5. It is useful in reducing and alkaline atmosphere.

6. It corrodes/rusts in acidic and oxidising atmosphere.

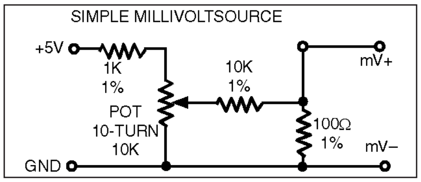
7. Colour codes of wires are negative-red and positive-white.

8. J type is popular because of low price and high mV output.

9. J type TC is used in rubber/plastic forming and for general purpose.

Design of gain block

1. Minimum input from thermocouple is as low as 1 to 2 mV. Hence ultra-low offset (<100µV) op-amp OP07 is used.


SIMPLE MILLIVOLTSOURCE
+5V
1K
1%
POT
10-TURN
10K
10K
1%
100Ω
1%
mV+
mV–
GND

2. Inputs may be subjected to wrong connections or high voltage. Use of resistor R2 limits current and zener ZD1 clamps voltage to a safe level.

3. Gain required is 400mV/21.8mV, which is approximately 18 at 400°C. Gain Av = (Rf+Ri)/Ri. Here Rf is R7 and Ri = R5+R6+VR2 (in circuit-value).

Design of TH1 cold junction compensation copper thermistor

1. J Type TC output changes by 0.052mV per °C as per Table I. Copper has a temperature coefficient of 0.0042 ohm per ohm/°C. For example, for a copper wire of 12 ohms, it is 12x0.0042=0.05 ohm/°C.

2. For R1 of 5k, current through TH1= 5V/5k=1mA. Change of voltage across TH1 with temperature is 0.05x1mA = 0.05 mV/deg.

3. This rate is the same as that of J type thermocouple and hence it simulates cold junction.

Lab Note. *During lab testing the value of VR1 had to be very much increased. However, as per author, it should be kept at 1 kilo-ohm only.*

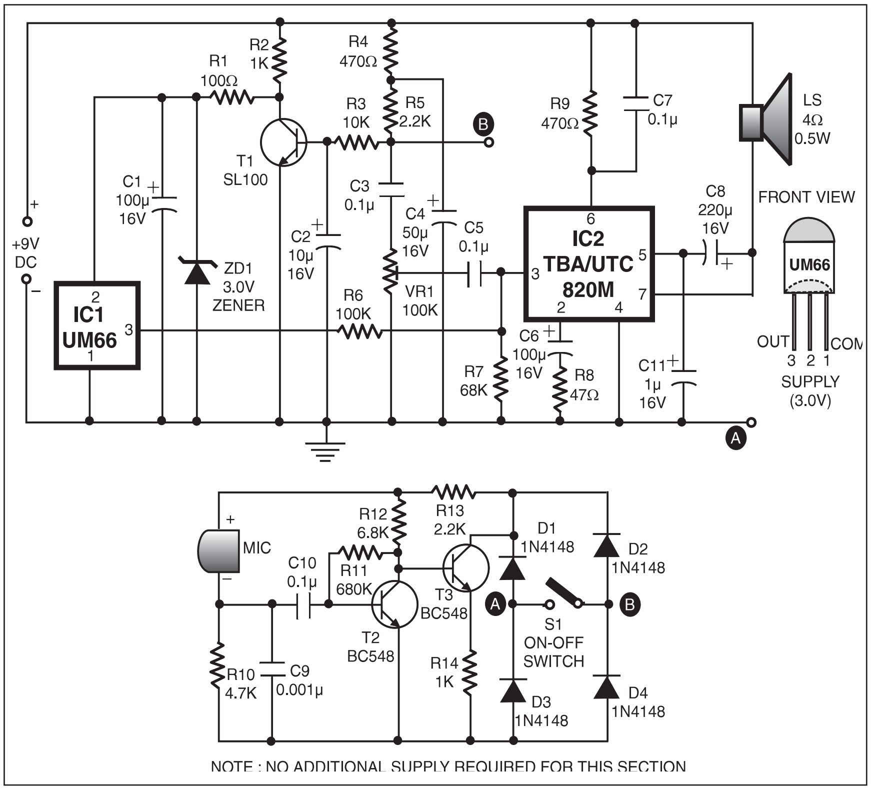
VOICE BELL

MUKESH KUMAR SONI

This circuit consists of two parts as shown in the figure. The upper circuit should be assembled in a box along with regulated 9V power supply (not shown in figure), while lower circuit may be assembled on a small general-purpose PCB and fixed inside the doorbell switch enclosure. Connect points A and B of one module to the similar points of the other, using a simple 2-core electric cable. The polarity need not be adhered to, because the bridge rectifier used inside the switch circuit automatically ensures proper polarity.

In the normal condition, any voice or sound in the vicinity of the door, where the lower circuit (module 2) is installed, will be heard on module 1 inside your home. However, as soon as the door bell switch is pressed by someone, a distinct bell sound will be heard in the loudspeaker, inside the house.

With switch S1 in open condition, module 2, which is a simple condenser mic amplifier, amplifies the sound/audio in its vicinity and the audio output is available across points A and B. In module 1, this audio is developed across preset VR1, which acts as a volume control. The audio from the wiper of the preset is coupled to the input of low-power (1.2-watt) audio amplifier TBA820M, which after amplification is fed into a 4-ohm loudspeaker.


+9V
DC
R1
100Ω
R2
1K
R4
470Ω
R3
10K
R5
2.2K
B
T1
SL100
C1
100µ
16V
ZD1
3.0V
ZENER
C2
10µ
16V
C3
0.1µ
C4
50µ
16V
C5
0.1µ
R6
100K
VR1
100K
IC1
UM66
IC2
TBA/UTC
820M
R7
68K
C6
100µ
16V
R8
47Ω
R9
470Ω
C7
0.1µ
C8
220µ
16V
C11
1µ
16V
LS
4Ω
0.5W
FRONT VIEW
UM66
OUT
COM
3 2 1
SUPPLY
(3.0V)
A
MIC
C10
0.1µ
R11
680K
R12
6.8K
R13
2.2K
T2
BC548
T3
BC548
R10
4.7K
C9
0.001µ
R14
1K
D1
1N4148
D2
1N4148
D3
1N4148
D4
1N4148
S1
ON-OFF
SWITCH
NOTE : NO ADDITIONAL SUPPLY REQUIRED FOR THIS SECTION

(The combination of resistor R9 and capacitor C7 introduced by EFY Lab in the path of Vcc pin 6, during actual testing, helps in noise reduction and limits the power dissipation in IC2.)

Transistor T1 is normally conducting due to its base pulled to the positive supply rails via resistors R3, R5, and R4. Therefore collector of transistor T1 is at near ground potential, and hence the melody generator UM66 (IC1) does not get any power supply and is thus off.

When bell switch S1 is pushed (closed), the audio output from module 1 is shorted to ground and at the same time transistor T1 base is pulled to ground via resistor R3. As a result, transistor T1 is cut off, to pull its collector high. The voltage at collector of transistor T1, after limiting by zener ZD1 to 3V, serves as power supply for melody generator UM66. The output of melody generator is directly coupled to the input of audio amplifier and hence only melody is reproduced in the speaker, when switch S1 is pushed.

The main advantage of this bell is that if there are strangers outside the door, conversing before gaining entry by pressing the bell switch, you can eavesdrop and hear their conversation to guess their intentions.

Lab Note. *This circuit can be easily modified to act as door-phone cum door-bell. So try it out!*

Readers queries:

❑ Please clarify my following doubts:

1. VR1 does not cause the necessary change in volume at the output.

2. When the circuit with microphone is connected, an abnormal buzzing sound is heard at the speaker, regardless of whether the microphone is present or is desoldered.

Mohd Mahfooz Sh.
Karnataka

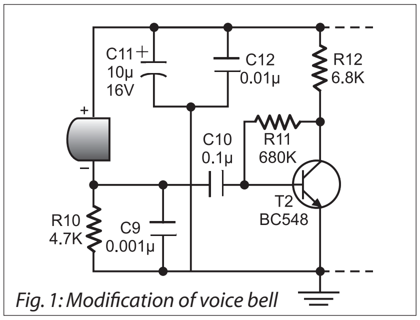


Fig. 1: Modification of voice bell

The author, Mukesh Kr Soni replies:

1. Preset VR1 does not change the volume of melody generator. It changes only the volume level of microphone output. It is designed to cater to this purpose. Since the door-bell always rings at full volume, the microphone output (sound in the vicinity of the door) should be controllable.

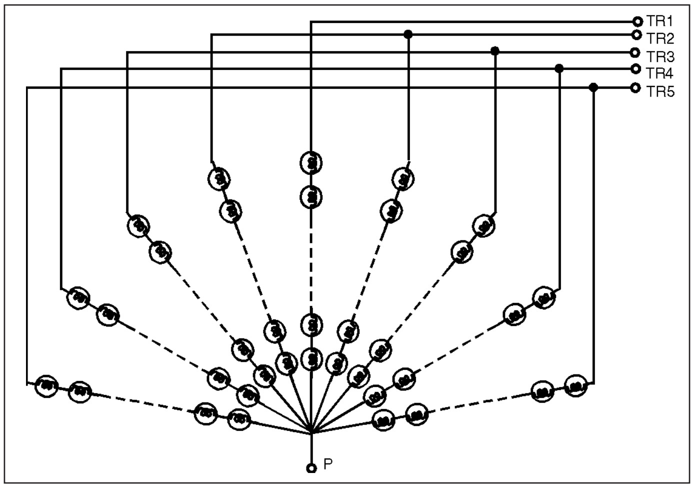
2. To stop the buzzing sound, connect condensers C11 and C12 as shown in Fig. 1

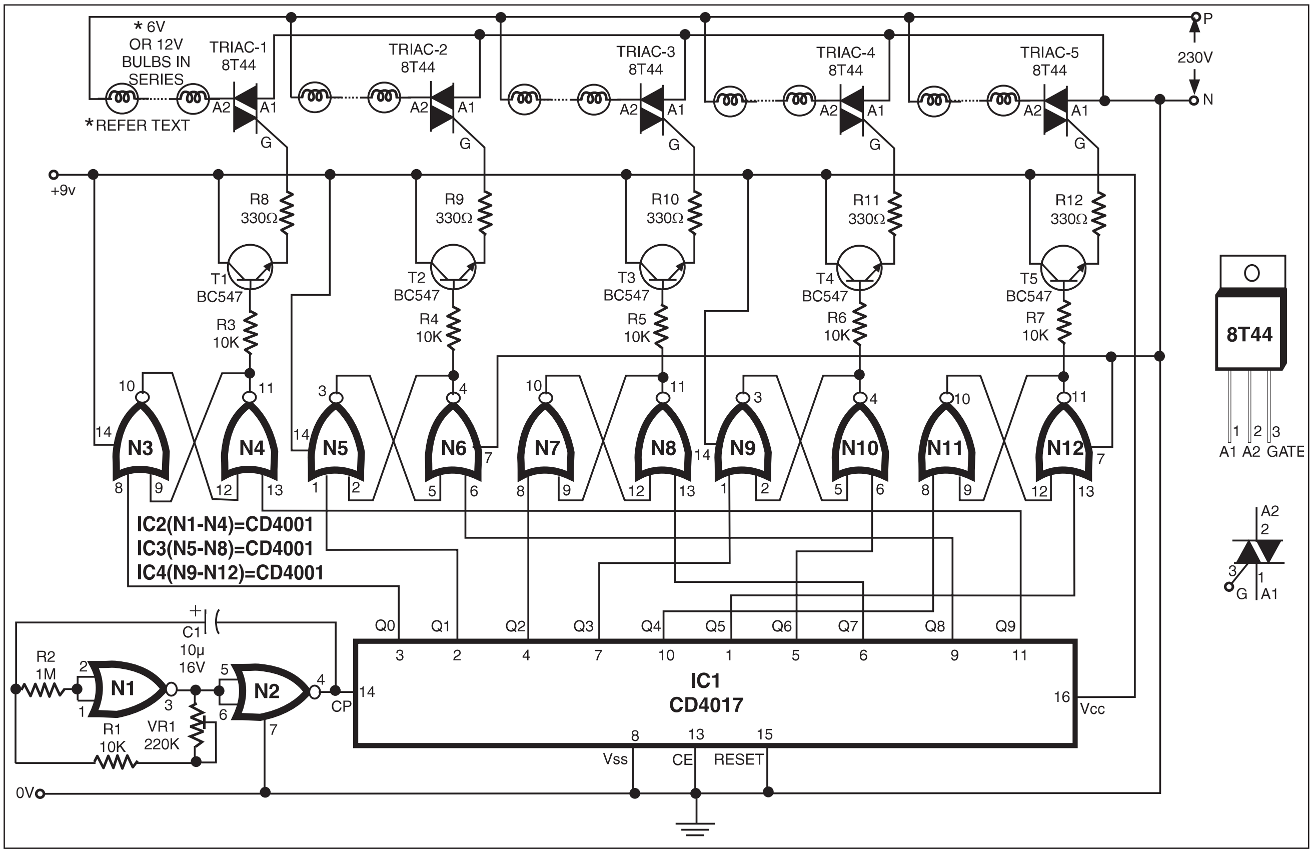
MOVING CURTAIN DISPLAY

K.P. VISWANATHAN

Several circuits have been published in earlier issues of EFY for producing eye-catching lighting effects, such as lighting up of characters one-by-one and their going off one-by-one in same direction, i.e. first character goes off first and so on (first-in first-out, or FIFO). In the present circuit, an attempt is made for changing this sequence, i.e. the first character to go off last (last-in first-out, or LIFO).

Easily available ICs are used and the number of characters is limited to five. Effects like 'curtain opening and closing' and 'peacock feathers spreading and closing' can be produced. Wiring of the same is shown in separate figures. Each line is lit up by 6-volt or 12-volt bulbs connected in series for 230V AC operation and controlled via triacs. LEDs can also be used with proper driving circuits. *(Please ensure that sum of voltage drop across the series-con-*



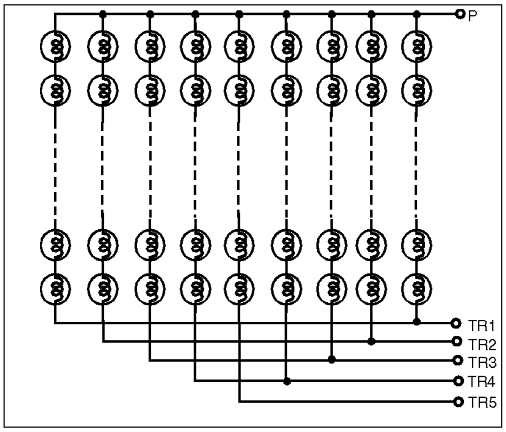

*6V OR 12V BULBS IN SERIES
*REFER TEXT
TRIAC-1 8T44
TRIAC-2 8T44
TRIAC-3 8T44
TRIAC-4 8T44
TRIAC-5 8T44
A2
A1
G
P
230V
N
+9v
R8 330Ω
R9 330Ω
R10 330Ω
R11 330Ω
R12 330Ω
T1 BC547
T2 BC547
T3 BC547
T4 BC547
T5 BC547
R3 10K
R4 10K
R5 10K
R6 10K
R7 10K
N3
N4
N5
N6
N7
N8
N9
N10
N11
N12
IC2(N1-N4)=CD4001
IC3(N5-N8)=CD4001
IC4(N9-N12)=CD4001
Q0
Q1
Q2
Q3
Q4
Q5
Q6
Q7
Q8
Q9
C1 10μ 16V
R2 1M
N1
N2
R1 10K
VR1 220K
CP
IC1 CD4017
Vcc
Vss
CE
RESET
0V
8T44
1 2 3
A1 A2 GATE
A2 2
3 G
1 A1

nected bulbs is equal to around 230V.)

Flip-flops formed by NOR gates are used for controlling the sequence. NOR gates N1 and N2 form an oscillator whose period can be controlled using preset VR1. Oscillator's output is fed to clock input pin 14 of IC1 (CD4017), which is a decade counter.

Initially when output Q0 of IC1 is high, the output of flip-flop formed by NOR gates N3 and N4 goes high, thus triggering triac-1 through driving transistor T1. In the same way, when Q1 to Q4 outputs go high sequentially, corresponding triacs get triggered and all the five groups of bulbs light up. The first part of the sequence is over.

When output Q5 of IC1 become high, the flip-flop formed by NOR gates N11 and N12 is toggled and the output is pulled to logic 0, removing the necessary drive given to triac-5. Similarly, when outputs Q6 through Q9 become high, triac-4 through triac-1 go off one by one and the earlier lit up bulbs go off last. The second part of the sequence is also over and then the cycle repeats itself endlessly.


P
TR1
TR2
TR3
TR4
TR5

PROXIMITY DETECTOR

K.S. SANKAR

This proximity detector is constructed using an infrared diode detector. Infrared detector can be used in various equipment such as burglar alarms, touch-free proximity switches for turning on a light, and solenoid-controlled valves for operating a water tap. Briefly, the circuit consists of an infrared transmitter and an infrared receiver (such as Siemens SFH506-38 used in TV sets).

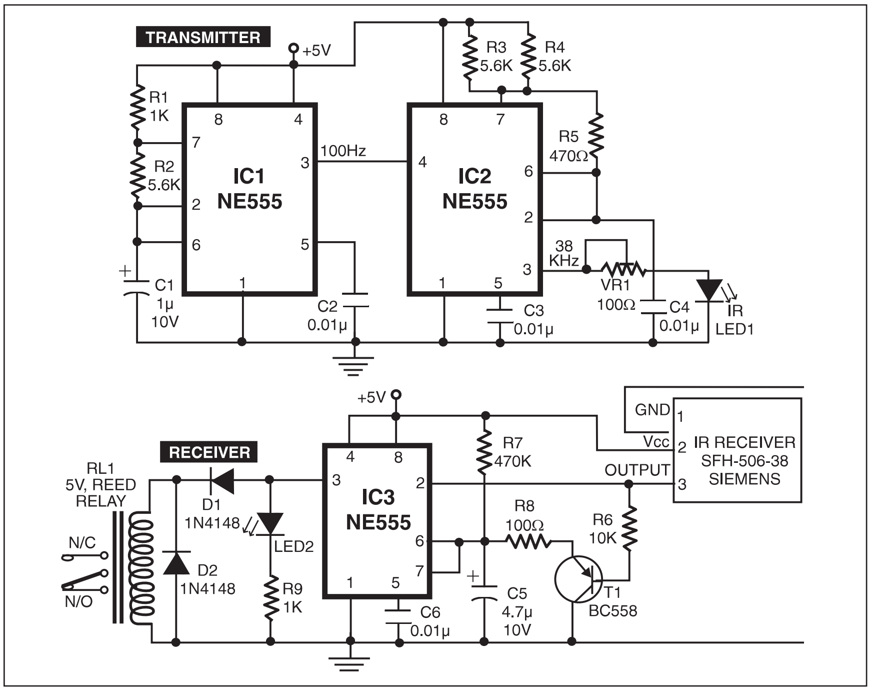
The transmitter part consists of two

555 timers (IC1 and IC2) wired in astable mode, as shown in the figure, for driving an infrared LED. A burst output of 38 kHz, modulated at 100 Hz, is required for the infrared detector to sense the transmission; hence the set-up as shown is required. To save power, the duty cycle of the 38kHz astable multivibrator is maintained at 10 per cent.

The receiver part has an infrared detector comprising IC 555 (IC3), wired for operation in monostable mode, followed by pnp transistor T1. Upon reception of infrared signals, the 555 timer (mono) is turned 'on' and it remains 'on' as long as the infrared signals are being received.

When no more signals are received, the mono goes 'off' after a few seconds (the delay depends on timing resistor-capacitor combination of R7-C5). The delay obtained using 470kilo-ohm resistor and 4.7µF capacitor is about 3 seconds. Unlike an ordinary mono, the capacitor in this mono is allowed to charge only when the reception of the signal has stopped, because of the pnp transistor T1 that shorts the charging capacitor as long as the output from IR receiver module is available (active low).

This setup can be used to detect proximity of an object moving by. Both transmitter and receiver can be mounted on a single breadboard/PCB, but care should be taken that infrared receiver is behind the infrared LED, so that the problem due to infrared leakage is obviated.



An object moving nearby actually reflects the infrared rays from the infrared LED. As the infrared receiver has a sensitivity angle of 60°, the IR rays are sensed within this lobe and the mono in the receiver section is triggered. This principle can be used to turn 'on' the light, using a relay, when a person comes nearby. The same automatically turns 'off' after some time, as the person moves away.

The sensitivity depends on the current-limiting resistor in series with the infrared LED. It is observed that with in-circuit resistance of preset VR1 set at 20 ohms, the object at a distance of about 25 cms can be sensed.

This circuit can be used for burglar alarms based on beam interruption, with the added advantage that the transmitter and receiver are housed in the same enclosure, avoiding any wiring problems.

MULTICHANNEL CONTROL USING SOFT SWITCHES

P. SABARINATHAN

This circuit uses only one octal D-type latch, IC 74LS373, and some associated circuitry to control eight different gadgets. To control more devices, identical circuits, in multiples, can be used. The circuit incorporates the following features:

(a) Individual 'on/off' control for all channels.

(b) Emergency 'off' control for all channels.

(c) Immediate 'on' control for all channels.

(d) LED indication for 'on' channels.

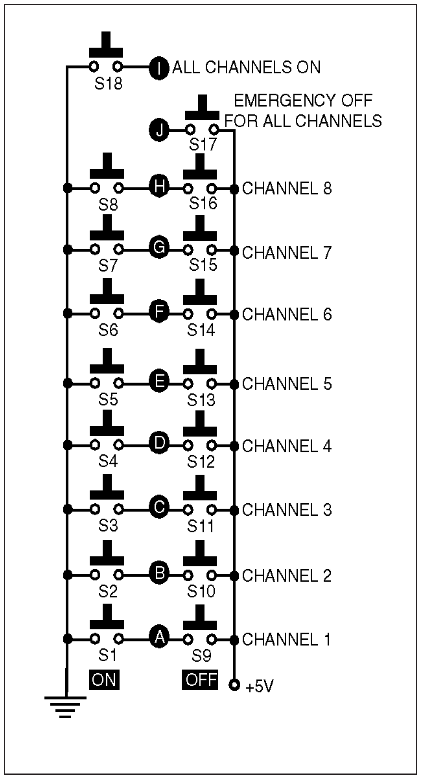
(e) Optional push-to-on buttons or tactile switches.

When one presses the 'on' switch (S1) of channel 1, a logic low is applied to data input pin D0. The same level appears on the data output pin Q0, because latch-enable pin LE (active high) is connected to Vcc, and the output-enable $\overline{OE}$ (active low) is pulled down using resistor R9. At the same time, Q0 output is fed back to D0 input, which thus keeps the common junction of D0 and Q0 (marked 'A' in the figures) at low level, even after releasing 'on' switch S1. This low level is applied to the base of transistor T1 through diode D9 to turn it on, and RL1 is activated. LED1 also glows to indicate that channel 1 is 'on'. The other channels can also be switched on, as desired, in a similar manner.

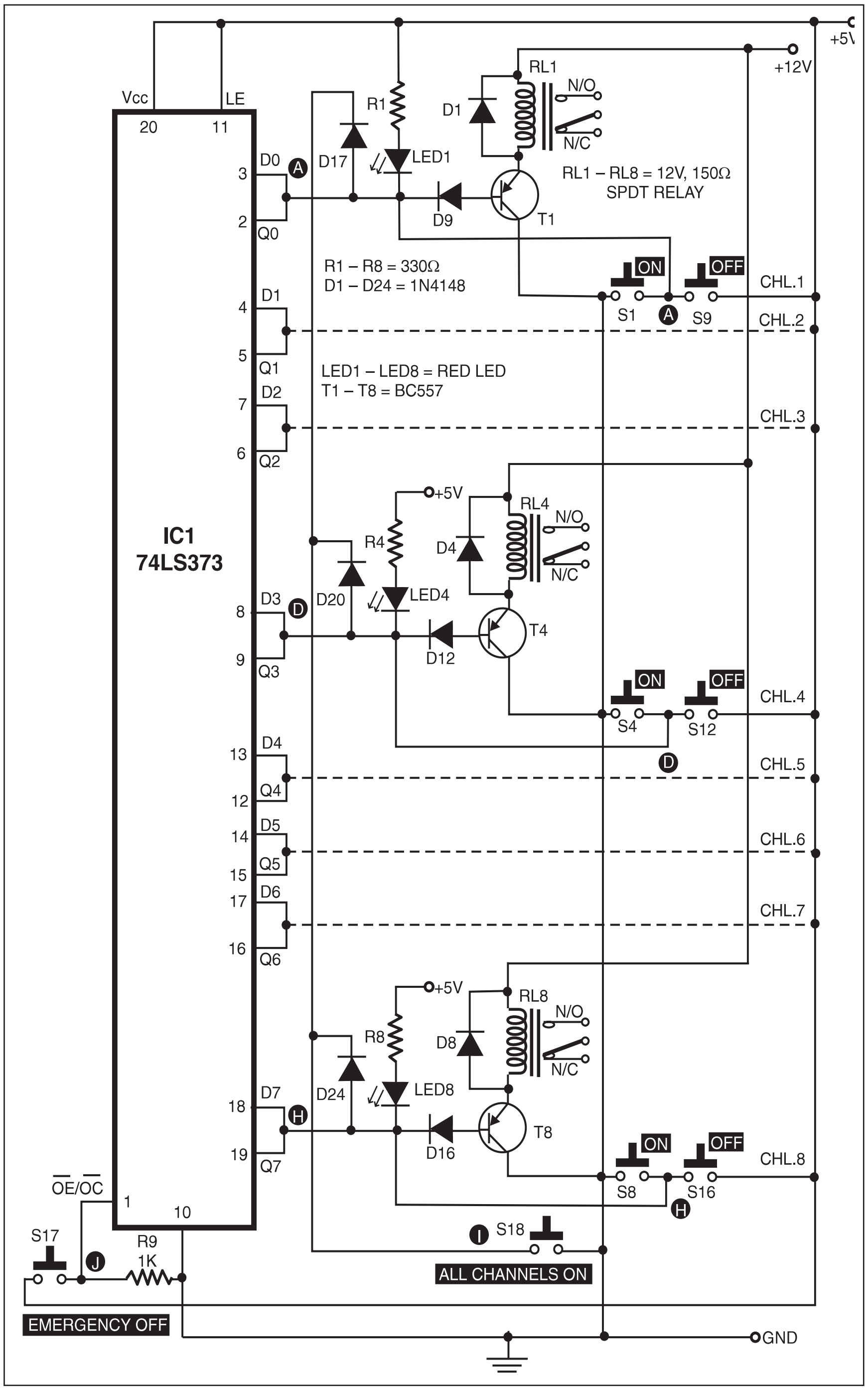
To switch off channel 1, 'off' switch S9 of channel 1 is pressed to apply logic high to point 'A'. Because of the feedback from Q0 to D0, point 'A' remains high even after releasing the 'off' switch. As a result, relay RL1 is deactivated and LED1 also goes off.

In case of emergency, press the emergency off switch S17 to disable all the outputs of IC1. In this state, the outputs of IC1 are in high impedance state, and as all transistor bases are almost 'open', all the relays get deactivated.

If all the channels are to be switched on simultaneously, a 'low' logic level is applied via diodes D17 through D24, to data inputs D0 to D7, by pressing switch S18 to activate all the relays.



S18
I ALL CHANNELS ON
J
S17
EMERGENCY OFF FOR ALL CHANNELS
S8 H S16 CHANNEL 8
S7 G S15 CHANNEL 7
S6 F S14 CHANNEL 6
S5 E S13 CHANNEL 5
S4 D S12 CHANNEL 4
S3 C S11 CHANNEL 3
S2 B S10 CHANNEL 2
S1 A S9 CHANNEL 1
ON
OFF
+5V



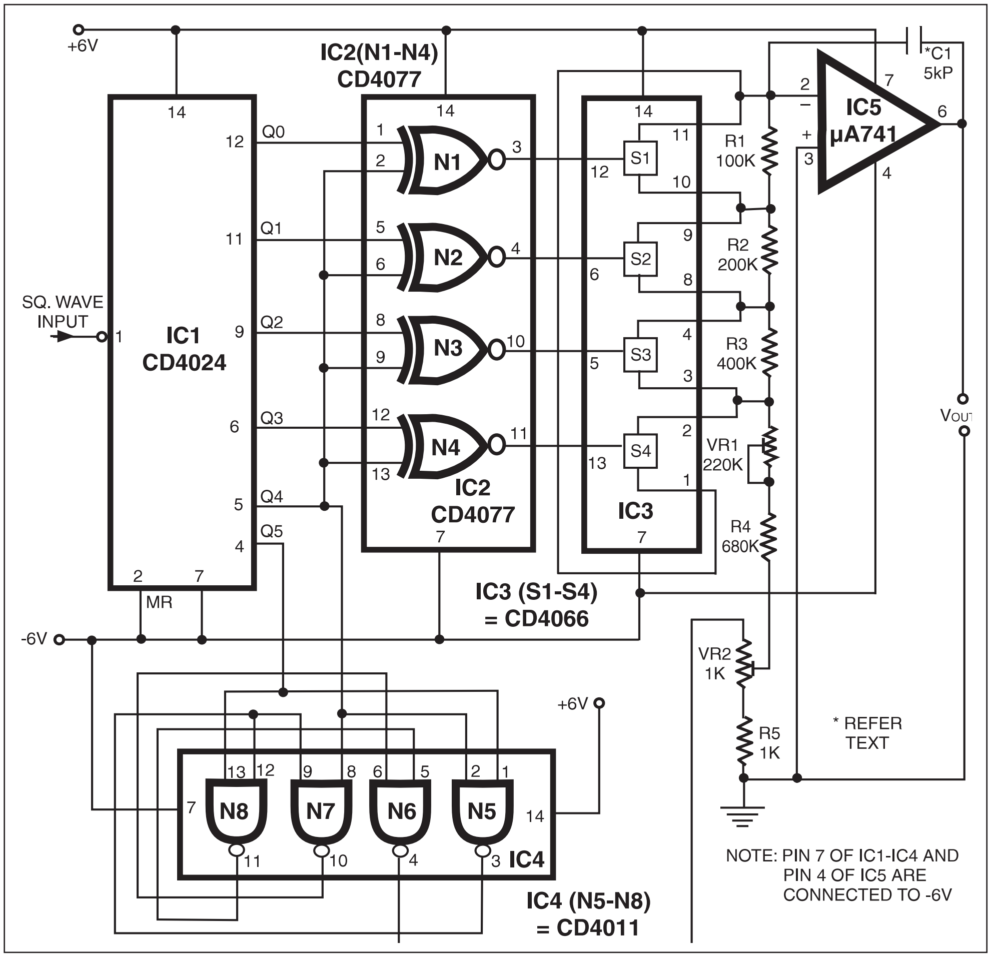
+5V
+12V
Vcc
LE
20
11
IC1
74LS373
D0 A 3
2 Q0
D1 4
5 Q1
D2 7
6 Q2
D3 D 8
9 Q3
D4 13
12 Q4
D5 14
15 Q5
D6 17
16 Q6
D7 H 18
19 Q7
OE/OC 1
10
R1
D17
LED1
D9
T1
D1
RL1
N/O
N/C
RL1 – RL8 = 12V, 150Ω SPDT RELAY
R1 – R8 = 330Ω
D1 – D24 = 1N4148
LED1 – LED8 = RED LED
T1 – T8 = BC557
ON
OFF
S1 A S9
CHL.1
CHL.2
CHL.3
+5V
R4
D20
LED4
D12
T4
D4
RL4
S4 S12
D
CHL.4
CHL.5
CHL.6
CHL.7
R8
D24
LED8
D16
T8
D8
RL8
S8 S16
H
CHL.8
S17
J
R9 1K
EMERGENCY OFF
I S18
ALL CHANNELS ON
GND

AN EXCLUSIVE SINEWAVE GENERATOR

J. CHOUDHURY

Many electronic devices depend upon the shape of the signals. It is very easy to produce squarewave signals from sine wave, but reproducing sinewave signals from the square wave is quite difficult. In case of static squarewave-to-sinewave converter, in low frequency range, we can get accurate sine wave, but in high frequency range the shape will not be a true sine wave. Here is a solution to that problem.

The circuit shown here uses five ICs.


+6V
IC2(N1-N4)
CD4077
IC1
CD4024
SQ. WAVE
INPUT
Q0
Q1
Q2
Q3
Q4
Q5
MR
-6V
N1
N2
N3
N4
IC2
CD4077
S1
S2
S3
S4
IC3
IC3 (S1-S4)
= CD4066
R1
100K
R2
200K
R3
400K
VR1
220K
R4
680K
VR2
1K
R5
1K
IC5
µA741
*C1
5kP
VOUT
* REFER
TEXT
N8
N7
N6
N5
IC4
IC4 (N5-N8)
= CD4011
NOTE: PIN 7 OF IC1-IC4 AND
PIN 4 OF IC5 ARE
CONNECTED TO -6V

The squarewave signal is fed at pin 1 of IC1 (CD 4024). IC1 is a 7-bit counter, but here only 6 bits are made use of. The first four bits are fed as a signal bus to IC3 (CD4066) quad bilateral switch through IC2 (CD4077B) that contains four exclusive NOR gates. It converts the 4-bit signal bus to 'up mode' and 'down mode' hexadecimal signals, simultaneously. The converted signal bus switches on and off the ladder switches inside CD4066. As a result, the net resistance of ladder varies. This varying resistance varies the charging and discharging current of capacitor C1 in the feedback path of IC5 (LM741).

The charging and discharging mode is controlled by IC4 (CD4011). In fact, capacitor C1 works as an integrator. The sinewave producing circuit needs 64-bit squarewave pulse for 360° sine wave. A missing pulse in this 64-bit sequence produces ramp.

In this circuit, all ICs except IC5 are CMOS ICs and hence the current consumption is very low.

The value of capacitor C1 may be calculated from the relationship: $C1 = 0.27/f_0$ µF. The value shown in the circuit is for 50Hz output frequency. The shape of the sinewave output may be corrected using presets VR1 and VR2.

***(EFY Lab note**. Spikes were noticed in the output waveform while operating with higher frequencies in the kilohertz range.)*

TTL THREE-STATE LOGIC PROBE

T. SURESH

A TTL logic probe is an indispensable tool for digital circuit troubleshooting. Various methods can be used to design a logic probe. The most common designs employ op-amps, logic (OR, NOT, XOR) gates, and transistors.

The circuit presented here uses NAND logic gates of Hitachi HD series IC HD74LS00, which is a quad-NAND IC. Special technique has been employed to obtain three-state operation using just a single IC.

Gate N1 is wired such that when the output of gate N1 is at logic '0' (i.e. when its input is at logic '1'), LED1 will glow, to indicate high state of the point being probed. Gate N3 is wired to light LED3 when the output of gate N3 is high or when the point being tested is at logic '0' level. At power-on, the output of NAND gate N2 goes low. This is the default state of the gate. The output of gate N2 goes low (indicated by glowing of LED2) during the following situations:

1. Power to the probe is switched 'on'.
2. The probe's tip is floating, i.e. when it is neither in contact with a point at logic '0' nor at logic '1' state.

S. No.	TIP level	Output
1.	Ground/logic 0	LED3 ON
2.	Vcc/logic 1	LED1 ON
3.	Floating/or connected to high impedance	LED2 ON

3. The probe tip is in contact with a TTL output that is in high impedance state.

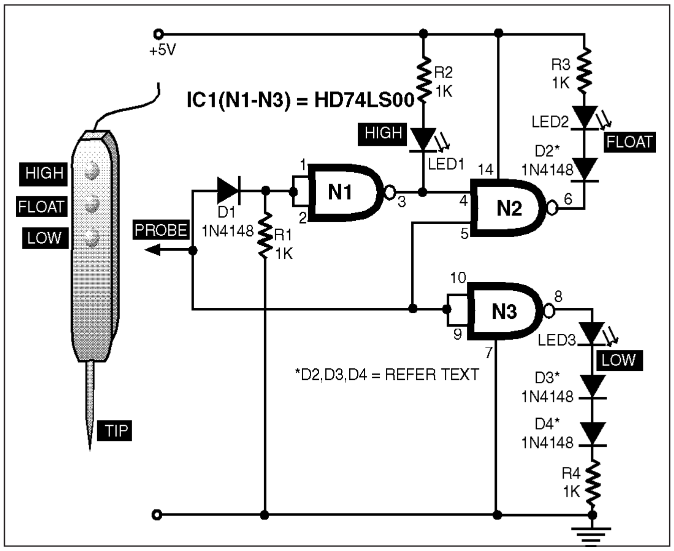
The LED indications for various tip levels are summarised in the accompanying table.

This logic probe is very well suited for use with microcontrollers, microprocessors, EEPROMs, SRAMs etc.

Some points to be noted are:

- Use IC1 of type HD74LS00 only.
- If any other type of IC (e.g. 74HCT00 or 74LS00) is used, diodes D2-D3-D4 should be added or deleted as necessary; for example, when using HD74LS00, one diode D2 is required.
- Use another diode in series with D2 if the LED indication overlaps the float indicator.

***(EFY Lab note.** The probe was found to work properly only with HD74LS00.)*


+5V
IC1(N1-N3) = HD74LS00
R2
1K
R3
1K
HIGH
LED1
LED2
FLOAT
D2*
1N4148
HIGH
FLOAT
LOW
PROBE
D1
1N4148
R1
1K
N1
N2
N3
1
2
3
4
5
6
14
10
9
8
7
LED3
LOW
*D2,D3,D4 = REFER TEXT
D3*
1N4148
D4*
1N4148
R4
1K
TIP

AM DSB TRANSMITTER FOR HAMS

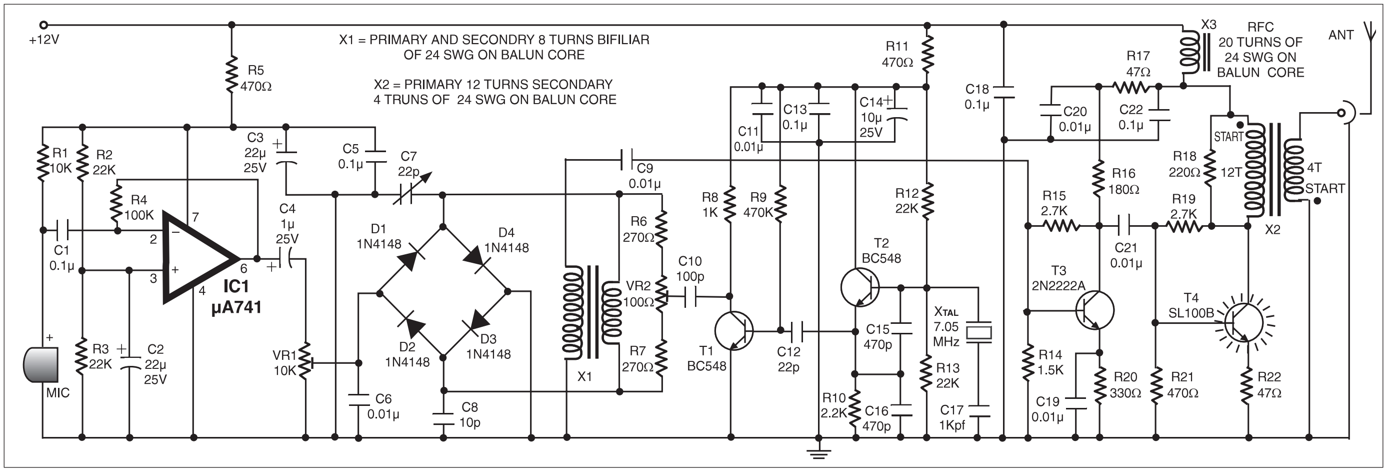
YUJIN BOBY VU3PRX

This circuit of AM transmitter is designed to transmit AM (amplitude modulated) DSB (double sideband) signals. A modulated AM signal consists of a carrier and two symmetrically spaced side bands. The two side bands have the same amplitude and carry the same information. In fact, the carrier itself conveys or carries no information. In a 100% modulated AM signal 2/3rd of the power is wasted in the carrier and only 1/6th of the power is contained in each side band.

In this transmitter we remove the carrier and transmit only the two side bands. The effective output of the circuit is three times that of an equivalent AM transmitter.

Opamp IC 741 is used here as a microphone amplifier to amplify the voice picked up by the condenser microphone. The output of opamp is fed to the double balanced modulator (DBM) built around four 1N4148 diodes. The modulation level can be adjusted with the help of preset VR1.

The carrier is generated using crystal oscillator wired around BC548 transistor T2. The carrier is further amplified by transistor T1, which also acts as a buffer between the carrier oscillator and the balanced modulator. The working frequency of the transmitter can be changed by using crystals of different frequencies. For multi-frequency operation, selection of different crystals can be made using a selector switch. The level of the carrier coupled to the DBM can be adjusted with the help of preset VR2.


+12V
X1 = PRIMARY AND SECONDRY 8 TURNS BIFILIAR OF 24 SWG ON BALUN CORE
X2 = PRIMARY 12 TURNS SECONDARY 4 TRUNS OF 24 SWG ON BALUN CORE
R5 470Ω
R1 10K
R2 22K
R4 100K
C1 0.1µ
C3 22µ 25V
C5 0.1µ
C7 22p
C4 1µ 25V
IC1 µA741
2
3
4
6
7
MIC
R3 22K
C2 22µ 25V
VR1 10K
D1 1N4148
D2 1N4148
D3 1N4148
D4 1N4148
C6 0.01µ
C8 10p
X1
C9 0.01µ
R6 270Ω
VR2 100Ω
R7 270Ω
C10 100p
R8 1K
R9 470K
T1 BC548
C12 22p
C11 0.01µ
C13 0.1µ
C14 10µ 25V
R11 470Ω
R12 22K
T2 BC548
C15 470p
C16 470p
R10 2.2K
XTAL 7.05 MHz
R13 22K
C17 1Kpf
C18 0.1µ
C20 0.01µ
C22 0.1µ
R17 47Ω
X3
RFC 20 TURNS OF 24 SWG ON BALUN CORE
ANT
R16 180Ω
R15 2.7K
R18 220Ω
START
12T
4T
START
R19 2.7K
X2
C21 0.01µ
T3 2N2222A
T4 SL100B
R14 1.5K
C19 0.01µ
R20 330Ω
R21 470Ω
R22 47Ω

The output of the DBM contains only the product (of audio and carrier) frequencies. The DBM suppresses both the input signals and produces double side band suppressed carrier (DSBSC) at its output. However, since the diodes used in the balanced modulator are not fully matched, the output of the DBM does contain some residual carrier. This is known as carrier leakage. By adjusting the 100-ohm preset (VR2) and trimmer (C7) you can null the carrier leakage.

To receive DSB signals you need a beat frequency oscillator to reinsert the missing carrier. If you don't have a beat frequency oscillator, or want to transmit only AM signal, adjust preset VR2 to leak some carrier so that you can receive the signals on any ordinary radio receiver. In AM mode 100% modulation can be attained by adjusting presets VR1 and VR2.

The DSBSC signal available at the output of the balanced modulator is amplified by two stages of RF linear amplifiers. Transistor 2N2222A (T3) is used as an RF amplifier, which provides enough signal amplification to drive the final power amplifier around transistor SL100B. The output of the final power amplifier is connected to the antenna.

All coils are to be wound on ferrite balun core (same as used in TV balun transformer of size 1.4 cm x 0.6 cm) using 24SWG enameled copper wire. Proper heat-sink should be provided for SL100B transistor used as final power amplifier.

Range of the order of a few kilometres can be easily achieved by proper choice of site, type of antenna (such as a resonant half-wave dipole of length 20 metres for 7.05 MHz frequency) and proper matching of transmitter to the antanna. Use good-quality shielded wire of short length to connect the crystals.

GROUND CONDUCTIVITY MEASUREMENT

PRASAD J.

The circuit presented here provides the simplest way to measure earth conductivity. Using this, radio hobbyists can choose a suitable site for the erection of antennae that require good grounding; for example, a vertical antenna that uses radial ground plane. This circuit is also useful for selecting a suitable site to carry out the earthing of industrial sheds or housing. With a little ingenuity and experimentation, one can even predict the availability of underground water at a site. It should be noted that geologists employ a similar probe, but in place of 50Hz AC mains used here, they employ RF for this purpose.

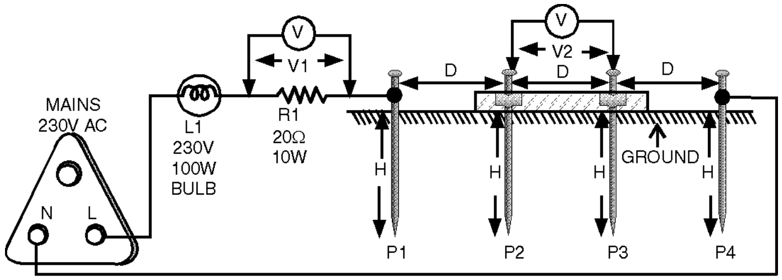
Though electronics hobbyists having a flair for gardening can measure the salinity or the fertility of soil to be used for their special plants, using the method described here, it however needs a lot of experimentation and study.

The circuit presented here employs a simple AC measurement technique. The efficiency of the circuit and results improve as the frequency of AC increases. With regular mains voltage source of 230 volts, 5-amp current capacity, and 50Hz frequency available, the measurements result in 25 per cent accuracy, which is quite reasonable and adequate for some practical applications.

The bulb (which is 230V, 100W, filament type) shown in the figure is mounted on a wooden box with a bulb holder. Connection to the mains supply is obtained using long wires, which are terminated into a 3-pin power plug that ensures non-reversibility of live and neutral leads. The bulb drops the voltage to a safer level at the terminating probe. Resistor R1 limits the current. Voltage V1 is measured across resistor R1 using AC voltmeter.

The probes, which are equidistant from each other (about 45.7 cm, or 18-inches, apart) have a height (below ground level) of about 30.5 cm (12 inches) and a diameter of 1.25 cm (or ½-inch). The probes may be made of iron, stainless steel, or copper. (The author used copper probes.)

The ends of the probes are connected securely to the wires by means of battery terminal lugs (generally used in automobiles) or power supply terminals



D = DISTANCE BETWEEN SUCCESSIVE PROBES
= 45.7 CM (18")
H = HEIGHT OF PROBES (BURIED PART)
= 30.5 CM (12")

(used in UPS, DC-AC converters, etc). The probes P2 and P3 can be fixed on hylam strips measuring 75cm(20-inch)x5cm(2-inch)x 5mm(0.2-inch). Hylam strips are generally available from switchboard dealers.

To measure the conductivity (℧), the probes are driven into the ground, as shown in the figure, and the circuit is powered with adequate safety measures against any electric hazard. Voltages V1 across resistor R1 and V2 across probes P2 and P3 are measured and noted.

The earth conductivity is then calculated as:

Conductivity = 21xV1/V2 millimhos/ metre (m℧/m)

Please note:

- For poor soil with very little moisture and bio-fertility, the conductivity ranges from 1 to 8 millimhos per metre.
- For average soil, the values range from 10 to 20 millimhos per metre.
- For fertile and good conductive soil, the conductivity ranges from 80 to 100 millimhos per metre.
- For very saline soil, or salt water with very good conductivity, the values might be as high as 5,000 millimhos per metre.

***Caution**. It should be noted that the polarity of the AC (phase and neutral) leads should never be reversed, to prevent any dangers to human/animal lives.*

STEPPER MOTOR CONTROL VIA PARALLEL PORT

SHOBHAN KUMAR DUTTA

To better understand the circuit, one needs to have some knowledge of electronics, computer programming, and the computer's parallel port.

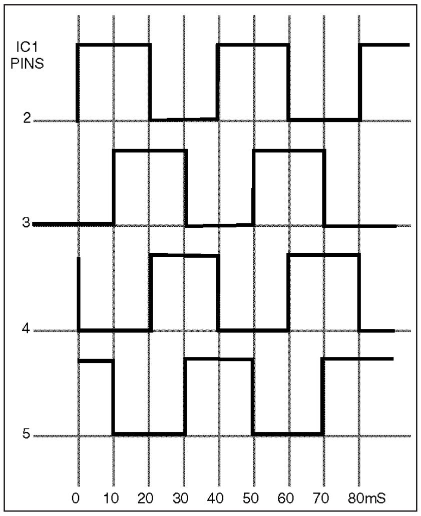
You will of course need a computer, 12-volt power supply (preferably a battery eliminator), stepper motor, ULN2003 chip, and some connecting wires.

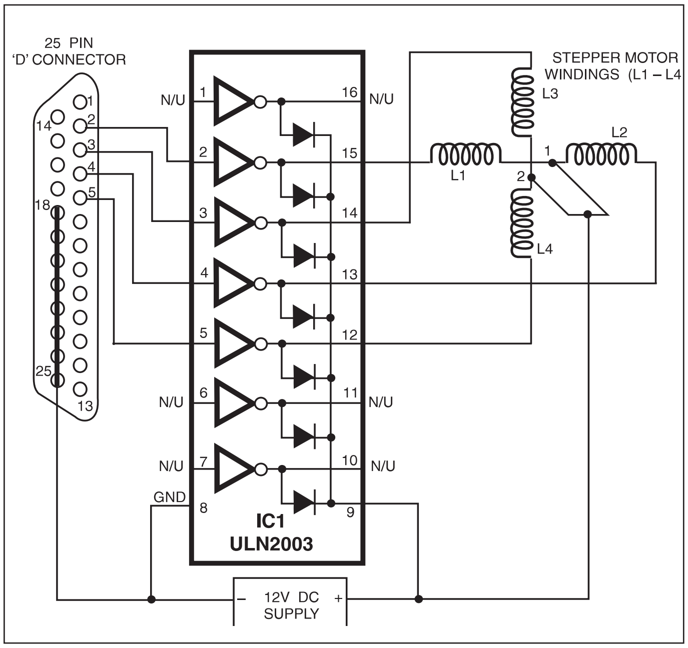
The circuit can be easily assembled on a breadboard. It is very important that you work with the smallest stepper motor available in the market, such as the one used in a floppy drive. If you go in for the large ones used in CNC machines, there is a chance of damaging the PC's parallel port. The second thing to mention is that the colours of the wires of the stepper motor are non-standard.

The parallel port of the PC is the most flexible way of getting the computer to communicate with the outside world.

The parallel port is generally used to interface printers, but we have used it to interface the stepper motor. The parallel port consists of 25 pins, but it can only transmit 8 bits of data at a time. The reason for the large number of pins is that every data pin has its own ground return pin. There are other pins for various other functions. We have used only four data pins and a ground pin.

The functions of the various pins are given in Table I. Pins 2 through 9 are data pins. Here, we will use data pins 2 to 5, corresponding to data bits D0 through D3 of port 378(hex) for LPT1 or 278(hex) for LPT2. Also, pin 25 is used as the ground pin.





The PC's parallel port cannot sink much current. At the most, it can handle a few milliamperes. So, if the parallel port is connected directly to an electrical device, it will damage the parallel port. Thus, we need a current amplifier in between the parallel port and the electrical device. The ULN2003, used precisely for this purpose, has an array of Darlington transistor pairs. A Darlington configuration is a way of connecting two transistors in order to amplify current to many times the input current value.

The stepper motor has various advantages over other motors, as far as controlling by a computer is concerned. It includes high precision of angular movement, speed of rotation, and high moving and holding torque. It comes in various flavours. We are dealing with unipolar permanent magnet stepper motor that has four coils arranged as follows:

Terminals 1 and 2 are common terminals (connected to ground or the positive supply) and the other four terminals are fed to the appropriate signals. When a proper signal is applied, the shaft turns by a specific angle, called the step resolution of the motor. On continuous application of the same signal, the shaft stays in the same position. Rotation occurs only when the signal is changed in a proper sequence. There are three modes of operation of a stepper motor, namely, single-coil excitation mode, dual-coil excitation mode, and half-step modes.

- ***Single-coil excitation.*** Each coil is energised successively in a rotary fashion. If the four coils are assumed to be in a horizontal plane, the bit pattern will be 0001, 0010, 0100, 1000, and 0001.

- ***Dual-coil excitation.*** Here, two adjacent coils are energised successively in a rotary fashion. The bit pattern will be 0011, 0110, 1100, 1001, and 0011.

- ***Half-step mode.*** Here, the stepper motor operates at half the given step resolution. The bit pattern is 0001, 0011, 0010, 0110, 0100, 1100, 1000, 1001, and 0001.

Two software control programs STEP.C, one for DOS and another for Linux, are included here. The program for DOS can be used to run the motor in full- or half-step mode, or in single-coil or double-coil excitation mode.

(EFY Lab note*. The method used at EFY for correct identification of the stepper motor coils involved measuring the windings' resistance as well as their continuity in ohms*x1 *scale, using any good multimeter. The resistance of individual coils with respect to the middle points will roughly be half the resistance of the combined coil pairs (L1 and L2 or L3 and L4 in the figure). After having identified the coils in this fashion, connect them to the circuit as shown in the figure. Now, if the sequence of input to the coils happens to be wrong, the shaft, instead of moving (clockwise or anti-clockwise), will only vibrate. This can be corrected by trial and error, by interchanging connection to the coils. The output waveforms for full-step single-coil mode, as seen on the oscilloscope, are shown in the figure.)*

TABLE I

Pin No (D-type 25)	Signal	Direction In/Out	Register	Hardware Inverted
1	$\overline{\text{Strobe}}$	In/Out	Control	Yes
2 thru 9	D0 thru D7	Out	Data	—
10	$\overline{\text{Ack}}$	In	Status	
11	Busy	In	Status	Yes
12	PE	In	Status	—
13	Select	In	Status	—
14	$\overline{\text{AFeed}}$	Out	Control	Yes
15	$\overline{\text{Error}}$	In	Status	—
16	$\overline{\text{Initialise}}$	Out	Control	—
17	$\overline{\text{SLCT}}$ (Printer)	Out	Control	Yes
18 thru 25	Ground	—	—	—

STEP.C DOS PROGRAM

```
#include <conio.h>
#include <dos.h>
#define FULLSTEP_SINGLECOIL
//#define FULLSTEP_DOUBLECOIL
//#define HALFSTEP
unsigned char fullstep_singlecoil_
val[]={1,2,4,8};
unsigned char fullstep_doublecoil_val[]={3,6,12, 9};
unsigned char halfstep_val[]={8,12,4,6,2,3,9};
void main()
{
unsigned int i=0;
while(!kbhit())
{
#ifdef FULLSTEP_SINGLECOIL
outportb(0x378,fullstep_singlecoil_val[i%sizeof
                        (fullstep_singlecoil_val)]);
#elif defined(FULLSTEP_DOUBLECOIL)
outportb(0x378,fullstep_doublecoil_val[i%sizeof
                        (fullstep_doublecoil_val)]);
#elif  defined(HALFSTEP)
outportb(0x378,halfstep_val[i%sizeof(halfstep_val)]);
#endif
delay(10);
i++;
if(i==65535u) i=0;
}
outportb(0x378,0);
}
```

Compile and run the program under any compiler like turboc for dos or Borland C++.

STEP.C LINUX PROGRAM

```
#include <sys/io.h>
#include <unistd.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
//#define FULLSTEP_SINGLECOIL
//#define FULLSTEP_DOUBLECOIL
#define HALFSTEP
unsigned char fullstep_singlecoil_val[]={1,2,4,8};
unsigned char fullstep_doublecoil_val[]={3,6,12,
                                              9};
unsigned char halfstep_val[]={8,12,4,6,2,3,9};
void main()
{
unsigned int i=0;
if(ioperm(0x378,1,1)==-1) exit(1);
while(1)
{
#ifdef FULLSTEP_SINGLECOIL
outb(fullstep_singlecoil_val[i%sizeof(fullstep_
                              singlecoil_val)],0x378);
#elif defined(FULLSTEP_DOUBLECOIL)
outb(fullstep_doublecoil_val[i%sizeof(fullstep_
                              doublecoil_val)],0x378);
#elif  defined(HALFSTEP)
outb(halfstep_val[i%sizeof(halfstep_val)],0x378);
#endif
usleep(5000);
i++;
if(i==65535u) i=0;
}
outb(0,0x378);
}
```

Compile and run the program as follows:

```
#gcc –O6 –o motor motor.c
#./motor
```

The –O6 flag is necessary for using the 'outb' function.

Top 20 Projects (Out of 91)

- Conversion of Audio CD player to Video CD Player
- Microprocessor-controlled Transistor Lead Identifier
- PC Based Speed Monitoring System
- Digital Number Shooting Game
- Portable Ozone Generator
- Build Your Own C Band Satellite TV Receiver
- Display Schemes for Indian Languages
- 8085μP Kit Based Simple IC Tester
- MOSFET based 50Hz UPS-cum-EPS
- R-2R D/A Converter Based Function Generator Using PIC16C84 Microcontroller
- PC-to-PC Communication Using Infrared/Laser Beam
- Multi-effect Chaser Lights Using 8051 Microcontroller
- Automatic Bathroom Light
- Digital Water Level Meter
- Laser Controlled On/Off Switch
- Phone Broadcaster
- Simple Electronic Code Lock
- Electronic Digital Tachometer
- Emergency Light
- Simple Switch Mode Power Supply

EFY SINCERELY YOURS

EFY Enterprises Pvt Ltd
D-87/1, Okhla Industrial Area, Phase I, New Delhi 110 020; Ph: +91-11-26810601-03
Fax: +91-11-26817563; E-mail: info@efyindia.com; Website: www.efyindia.com